



199K-2 Kazuo

u

Ma
sua do

<36640490960018

<36640490960018

Bayer. Staatsbibliothek

LA3AMONS BRUT,

OR

CHRONICLE OF BRITAIN.

VOL. II.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY THE SOCIETY OF ANTIQUARIES OF LONDON.

1847.

LAYMONS BRUT

or

CHRONICLE OF BRITAIN

VOL. II

LAȜAMONS BRUT,
OR
CHRONICLE OF BRITAIN;
A POETICAL SEMI-SAXON PARAPHRASE
OF
THE BRUT OF WACE.

NOW FIRST PUBLISHED FROM THE
COTTONIAN MANUSCRIPTS IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM;
ACCOMPANIED BY
A LITERAL TRANSLATION, NOTES, AND A GRAMMATICAL GLOSSARY.

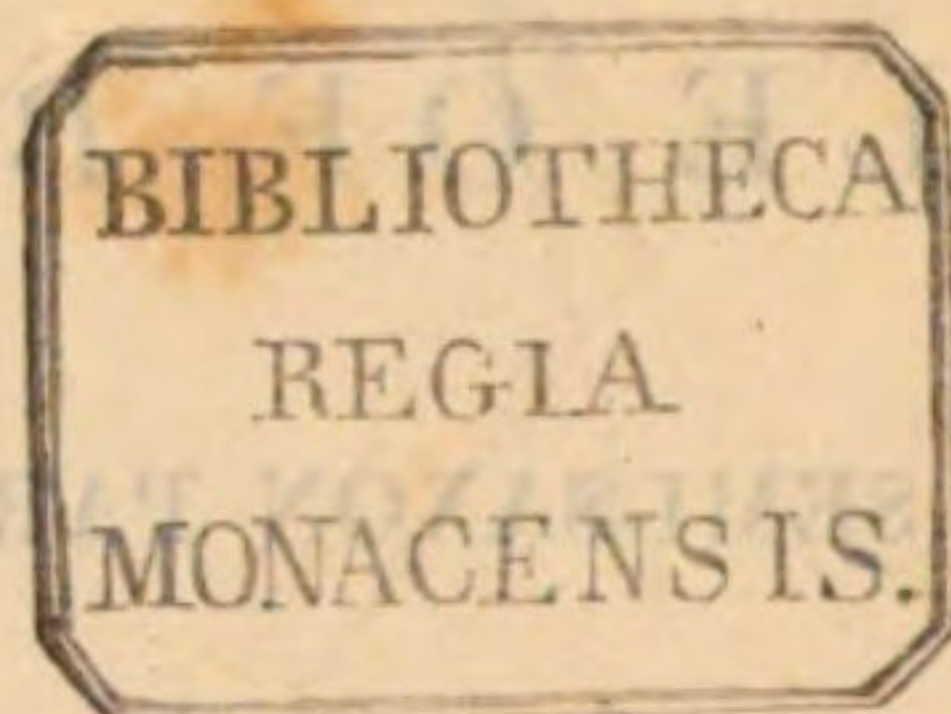
By SIR FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H.,
KEEPER OF THE MSS. IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

VOL. II.



LONDON:
PUBLISHED BY THE SOCIETY OF ANTIQUARIES OF LONDON.
1847.

197-9,



PRINTED BY
RICHARD AND JOHN E. TAYLOR,
RED LION COURT, FLEET STREET.



LONDON:
PUBLISHED BY THE SOCIETY OF ANTIQVARIIS OF LONDON.
1847.

LAȜAMONS BRUT,

OR

CHRONICLE OF BRITAIN.

[v. 10230—10241.]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Luces þe leod-king : [f. 58. c. 1.]

leouuede wel longe.

twa and feowerti wintre :

mid muchere¹ winne.

her wes mete her wes drænc :

men þer of dræmden.

her wæs unimete fare : [c. 2.]

a þiffere folc riche.

þiſ² heo gunnen driuen :

& forȝeten to ſwiðe.

þat heom tæhte þe hehȝe mon :

þe gode biſcop Dunian.

Two and fourti winter : [f. 50^b. c. 1.]

liuede Lucas here.

here was mete and dringe :

and inoh of alle bliſſe.

10

ſo þat hii for-ȝeten :

þat tehte ham þe biſſop Baſan³.

‘Lucas the ſovereign lived well long;’ two and forty winters ‘with much joy [lived Lucas here]; here was meat, ‘here was [and] drink,—‘men thereof rejoiced [and enow of all bliſs]; ‘here was fare without measure among this rich folk. Thus they gan to drive,’ ‘and forgot too ſoon [ſo that they forgot] what the ‘noble man [biſhop Fagan] taught them, ‘the good

¹ muchelere? muchele?

² þus?

³ Fagan?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& Fagan his iuære :

þe while þe heo weorē here.

Inne griðe þurh alle þīg :

wunede Lucas þe king.

þat cō þe ilke dæi :

þat þe kīg dæd læi.

leof him wes grið and ræd :

inne Gleochæstre he wes dæd.

þær hehȝe Bruttes :

þene kīg bureden.

10

þa wes þe weorlde swa uorðiuaren :

seoððen ure drihte wes iboren.

an hūðred ȝere and fixti :

þa þe kīg fah to grunde.

Seoððen Lucas king wes dæd :

her wunede a fwiðe strong red.

ne bi-læfde he her neouðer :

suster ne broðe¹.

ne quene ne næh cun :

þe his caðel mihte heoldē.

20

To Rome comen tiðende :

of Lucas þan kinge.

hu þe king wæs hære dæd :

Ine wele liuede þe king :

ād god lif þorh alle þing.

þo cō þe ilke dai :

þat þe king dead lai.

ine Gloucestre :

Bruttes hine leide.

So was þe worle forþ ivare :

fuppe vre drihte was ibore.

an hundred ȝer and fixti :

þo þe king deide.

Ne bilefde Lucas þe king :

broþer foster : ne no cun.

þat miht his cund :

after him habbe.

TO Rome come tidinge :

of Lucas þan kinge.

hou þe king was here dead :

bishop Dunian, and Fagan, his companion, the while that they were here.' In 'peace [weal and good life] through all things dwelt [lived] 'Lucas' the king, until that day came, that the king lay dead,—'peace and counsel were dear to him ;'—in Gloucester 'he was dead ; there' *the* 'noble' Britons 'buried the king [laid him]. The world was 'then' so forth advanced since our Lord was born, an hundred years and sixty, when the king 'fell to ground [died]. 'After Lucas the king was dead, here dwelt a most evil hap'; 'he left here neither [Lucas the king left not] sister 'nor' brother, 'nor queen,' nor 'nigh [any] kinsman, who might 'hold [have] his possessions [after him]. To Rome came tidings of Lucas the king, how the king was

¹ broðer ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& i þisse londe naf na ræd.	in þisse londe naf no read.	
Heo makeden heore uerde :	Hii makede hire ferde :	
and fenden to þissen ærde.	and fende to þisse erþe.	
Seuarus wes heore hære-toȝe :	Seuarus was ouer ȝam icore :	<i>Seuarus.</i>
inne Rome he wes ibore.	ine Rome he was ibore.	
þe ferde wes fwiðe ftrōg :	þe ferde was fwiþe strong :	<i>Anno gracie</i>
þeo comen heo to þisse lond.	þat com to þisse lond.	<i>c^oc^o. iiij^{to}.</i>
Seuerius wende anan :	Seuare wende anon :	<i>Romanorum</i>
to hæbbene þisne kinedom.	habbe þisne kinedom.	<i>.xxi^{us}. Se-</i>
ah Bruttes weoren biðie :	ac Bruttes weren kene :	<i>uarus Brit-</i>
& ofte hine a-bæileden. [f. 58 ^b . c. 1.]	and fafte him wiþ-ftode.	<i>taniam fos-</i>
ofte heo him wið fuhten :		<i>fato cinxit, a</i>
a feole cunne wifen.		<i>mare usque</i>
Seuarus hine biðodte :	Seuare hine bi-þohte :	<i>admare, per</i>
whet he don miðte.	wat he don mihte.	<i>c. xxxii.</i>
in his herede he makede grið :	he held so god griþ :	<i>milia passu-</i>
& lette awæi þat vniriht.	eche childe he wolde speke wiþ.	<i>[u]m, et</i>
þat na man ne wurðe swa wod :		<i>Eboraci</i>
ne witte bi-dæled.		<i>obiit; cui</i>
þat in his hirede breke grið :		<i>Antonius,</i>
vppe leome & uppe lif.		<i>cognomento</i>
of nauere nane þige :		<i>Caracalla,</i>
þat come to his cleopinge.		<i>[c. 2.] filius suus</i>
þis ifeȝen Bruttes :	þis ifehȝe Bruttes :	<i>succedens,</i>
þe weoren swiðe biðie.		<i>regnauit</i>
		<i>annis</i>
		<i>vii^{tem}.</i>

here dead, 'and' in this land was no counsel. They made their host, and sent to this land; Severus was 'their leader [over them chosen],—in Rome he was born. The army was most strong; 'when they [that] came to this land, Severus weened anon to have this kingdom, but *the* Britons were 'busy [keen], and 'oft him harmed [fast him withstood]; 'oft they fought with him, in many kind of wise.' Severus bethought him what he might do; 'in his host he made peace [he held peace so good, he would speak with each child], 'and did away the wrong,—that no man should be so wild, nor *so* void of wit, that in his host should break *the* peace, upon *pain* of limb and upon life, of ever any thing that should come to his call.' *The Britons*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat Seuarus in his hirede :'	þat he was god louerd to his.
hæfde hehliche grið.	
& mong heom feoluē :	and a-mong ȝam feolue :
vnimete seorȝen.	was onimete care.
Bruttes fiȝē to-gæderes :	Hii wenden heom to-gadere :
fulle seoue þufēd.	folle seoue þoufend.
& speken Seuarium wið :	and speken þan king wiþ :
& ȝirden ¹ his hiredes grið.	& ȝeorden ² his griþ.
& he heom ȝette :	and he ȝam fone :
& ȝef ȝiues swiðe gode.	10 ȝaf ȝeftes fwiþe gode.
þa wes Seuar ³ hired :	þo wes Seuarus heap :
selcuðliche iftronged.	mochel ibolded.
alle þe ær weoren buuen :	þaie þat her weore a-boue :
he heom fette bi-neoðen.	he ham fette bi-neoþe.
& muchele luue heold wið :	and mochel lofue held wiþ :
alle þat ȝirnden his grið.	alle þat ȝeornde his griþ.
He uærde to Lunden :	He verde to Londene :
& heo hine vnder-fengē.	and hii hine onderfenge.
he uerde þurh þis kinelond :	he verde þorh al þis kinelond :
& fette hit ī his aȝere hond.	20 and fette hit on his owe hond.
& æuere heo fluȝen him bi-uoren :	and euere hii flowen him bi-fore :
þe his feond weoren.	þat nolde him abouwe.
Swa fwide ³ he heom hænde :	

saw this, who were most busy, that 'Severus in his host had perfect peace [he was good lord to his *men*], and among themselves [was] 'sorrow [care] unmeet. 'The Britons [They] assembled together, full seven thousand, and spake with 'Severus [the king], and yearned his 'hosts' peace; and he 'it granted them, and' gave [them soon] gifts most good. Then was Severus host 'wonderfully strengthened [much emboldened]; 'all [those] that ere were above, he set them beneath, and much love held with all that yearned his peace. He marched to London, and they received him; he proceeded through [all] this kingdom, and set it in his own hand; and ever they fled before him, who 'were his enemies [would not submit to

¹ ȝirnden? ² ȝeornden? ³ fwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. 8M

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii. 2M

þat heo fluwē ouer Hunbre.
 heo fluȝē forð rihtes : [c. 2.] Hii flowen forþ rihtes :
 þat heo comen to þā Peohtes. þat i¹ comen to þan Peutef.
 & heo heom vnder-fēgen : and hii heom onderfenge :
 & nomen heom to iuarē. and nemen heom to iverē.
 Heo makeden enne hehne cniht : Hii makede Fulgenus þe cniht :
 heore here-toȝe forð riht. hire kine-louerd.
 fæier cniht and hēde :
 Fulgenes wes ihaten.
 he heom scolde læden : 10
 & he heon² sculde ræden.
 Enne ende of Scotlonde : On hende of Scotlonde :
 nom Fulgenes to his honde. nam Fulgenus an honde.
 þe ende him wes deore :
 he hæhte Dæire. Deire.
 Sæuarus frō Scotte wærð³ : Seuarus fram þat norþ :
 seoððe⁴ azæn wēde. fup aȝe wende.
 & his folc lædde : and his folk ladde :
 in to Lundene. in to Londene.
 & Fulgenes vt of Scotlen⁵ : 20 and Fulgenus vt of Scotlond :
 muchel scaðe makede. mochel harm makede.
 He leap in to Brutlond : Heo⁶ leap in to Brutlond :
 mid muchele balu ræffen. and mani harmes⁷.

him]. 'So much he reduced them, that they fled over *the* Humber;' they fled forth-right until they came to the Peohtes, and they them received, and took them for companions. They made 'a noble [Fulgenes the] knight their 'leader [chief] 'forth-right, a fair knight and comely, *who* was named Fulgenes; he *it was* should lead them, and he *it was* should counsel them.' One end of Scotland Fulgenes took in 'his' hand; 'the end was dear to him,—it hight Dæire.' Severus from 'Scotland-ward [the north] marched back south, and led his folk into London; and Fulgenes out of Scotland made much harm. He leapt into Britain, 'with mickle baleful onset

¹ hii?² R. heom.³ -ward?⁴ soð? Cf. vv. 10691, 10761.⁵ Scotten? Scotlond?⁶ He?⁷ harmes wrohte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

æhte he nom men he floh :

he duden feorȝen inoht¹.

& þuſ he uerde longe :

inne Scotlonde.

þis iherde Seuarus :

þe ine Rome wes kæifere.

and seoððen hider al þa lond :

ftod an his aȝere heond.

þe kæiifere fende his feonde :

ȝeōd feole londe.

lette him to beoden :

swa monie of weorcmonnen.

þat he lette mankien³ ænne dic :

þe wæf wunderliche deop.

muche ād fwiðe ſtronge :

biſides Scotlonde.

from ſæ to ſæ eode þæ dich :

ælche oðere vnlich.

þe⁴ vfenen he made ſcid wal :

wunder ane cræftie.

seoððen he fette cnihtes :

to witen hit dæies & nihtes.

and þuſ he verde longe :

ine Scotlōde.

þis ihorde Seuarus : [f. 51. c. 1.]

þat in Rome was kaiſere.

and fuþþe here al þat lond :

ftod on his owe hond.

þe kaiſer fende his fonde :

ȝeond fale le² kinelondes.

and mani ſtrong worcman :

come to þā kinge.

he lette ȝam māki ane dich ſtrang :

fwiþe deap and fwiþe lang.

fram ſée to ſée ȝeode þe dich :

[f. 59. c. 1.] alle oþer onlich.

þar vppon he made ſid wal :

fwiþe crafti.

þare he fette cnihtes :

to witien dai and nihtes.

[and many harms wrought]; 'goods he took, men he slew, he did sorrow enow;' and thus he fared long in Scotland. Severus heard this,—who was emperor of Rome, and afterwards all the land 'hither [here] stood in his own hand;—the emperor sent his messengers over many 'lands, and caused so many of workmen to be summoned to him, that he caused a dike to be made, that was wonderfully deep, [kingdoms, and many strong workmen came to the king; he caused them to make a strong dike, very deep and very long,] 'mickle, and very strong, beside Scotland';—from sea to sea went the dike, 'each [all] other unlike! Thereupon he made a broad wall, 'one wondrous [exceeding] crafty; 'afterwards [there] he set knights to guard 'it' day and night, so that never Peoht nor 'ever any' other man 'there-

¹ inoh?² Sic.³ makien?⁴ þer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ̅ neu²e Poht þ̅er ouer ne com : þ̅at neuere Peut ne oþ̅er man :
 ne næuere nan oð̅er mon. þ̅ar after ne com.
 bute wha fwa waldē ȝernen grið : mid none ginne :
 & spæken þ̅an kæifere wið. bote for harm a-winne.
 & wunien forð here :
 mid Seuare þ̅an kæifere.
 þ̅at iherde Fulgenes : þ̅is ihorde Fulgenus :
 þ̅at þ̅is weorc iuorðed wes. þ̅at þ̅es dich was imaked þ̅us.
 þ̅at he into þ̅isse londe ne mihte : þ̅at he to londe þ̅isse¹ :
 ne dæies ne nihtes. 10 daies no nihtes.
 Nufte he þ̅a næenne ræd : Nufte he þ̅o nanne read :
 þ̅e him æuere þ̅uhte god. þ̅at him euere þ̅oht god.
 he cleopede alle his dringches : he cleope al his folk :
 þ̅at heo comen to huftinge. þ̅at hii come to speche.
 heore kinge to ræden : hire kīg to rede :
 of his muchele neode. of his mochele neode.
 Heo him rædden to faren : Hii raden hin² to vare :
 riht into Cife. riht in to Scice.
 færlīche he þ̅ider com : cwiclīche he þ̅ider com :
 & fæire wes under-fon. 20 and fair he was onderfon.
 He spac wið þ̅an Peohtes : þ̅e king spac wiþ þ̅an Peutes :
 & fwa muchel heom bi-hæhte. and moche ȝam bi-hehte.
 þ̅at heo gædereden in þ̅an ærde : þ̅at he gadere in þ̅an erþ̅ :

over [thereafter] might come, 'except whoso would yearn peace, and speak with the emperor, and dwell *thenceforth* here with Severus the emperor [with no stratagem, but for to gain harm]. Fulgenes heard 'that [this], that this 'work [dike] was 'completed [made], so that he might not come 'in'to this land, by day nor night. He knew not then any counsel that ever seemed good to him ; he called all his 'thanes [folk], that they should come to 'husting [conference], to counsel their king, in his mickle need. They advised him to fare right into Scythia ; quickly he came thither, and fair [he] was received. 'He [The king] spake with the Peohtes, and 'so' much promised them, that 'they [he] gathered in the country a mickle

¹ to þ̅isse londe ne mihte? ² him?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mucle ſcip-ferde.
 & ferden bi ſæ ſtronde :
 into piſſe londe.
 He uerde riht to Euerwicke :
 Brutten þutte fellic.
 þa burh he anan bilæi :
 mid baldere ſtrengðe.
 Seoððen he dude to witen :
 þurh worde & þurh writen.
 alle his freōden : 10
 þe weoren in piſſen londe.
 þat heo ſcolden wel don : [c.2.]
 & alle comen him to.
 he heom wolden mucle wele :
 & wurðſcipe itæchen.
 & æuere to hiſ liue :
 heo ſculden beon him leoue.
 þis iherden Bruttes :
 þer fore heo weoren balde.
 & wēden from Seuere : 20
 þan Romænifce kæifere.
 moni þuſend Bruttes :

Fulge[nes].

to Fulgenes.
 & he heō faire on-feng :
 & mucche feoh bihæhte.

mochel fip-ferde.
 and wende bi féé ſtronde :
 into piſſe londe.
 He verde riht to Euerwich :
 Bruttes þohte fellich.
 þe borh he a-nan bi-lai : [c.2.]
 mid baldere ſtrengþe.
 Suppe he dude to iwite :
 bope bi word and bi write.
 alle his frendes :
 þat were in piſſe londe.
 þat hii folden wel don :
 and alle comen him to.
 and euere to his lifue :
 he ȝam wolde lofuie.
 þis ihorde Bruttus :
 þan he com to Fulgenus.
 and he ȝam faire onderfeng :
 and mochel feo bi-hehte.

ship-army, and passed by *the* sea-strand into this land. He marched right to York,—to *the* Britons *it* seemed strange,—the burgh he anon besieged with bold strength. Afterwards he caused to be informed, 'through [both by] word and 'through [by] writ, all his friends that were in this land, that they should do well, and all to him come; 'he would *do* them much weal, and honor bestow,' and ever in his life 'they should be to him dear [he would love them]. *The* Britons heard this, 'therefore they were bold;' and 'many thousand Britons' 'went [came] 'from Severus, the Romanish emperor,' to Fulgenes; and he received them fair, and much

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat iherde Sæuarus :
 þat Fugenes² dude þus.
 he fōnede uerde :
 of folke of þissē ærde.

he uufde³ touwærd Euerwic :
 to his fæi-fiðe.

þa he to Euerwic com :
 Fulgenes hī wef aforen on.
 heo bigunnen fehten :
 feondliche fwiþe.
 a ba hælue þer ful :
 folc unimete.

Sæuare þer wes of-flæzē :
 & feole his Romwæren.
 Fulgenes wes iwunde :
 wunderliche fære.

þat i þan þridde dæie :
 he farne dæd þolede.
 Of Sæueres dæðe :
 Bruttus þer demden.
 sæiden heom bi-tweonen :
 þa þat tir ahten.
 Seuarus wes god cniht :

þat ihorde Seuarus¹ :
 þat Fulgenus dude þus.
 he fomnede ferde :

and to Euerwich wende.

þo he þider com :
 Fulgenus was afornon.
 hii bi-gonne to fihte :
 10 fstarliche fwiþe.

þar was Seuare of-flaze :
 and moche of hi⁴ folke.
 Fulgenus was iwounded :

þat he fone deide.

wealth promised. Severus heard that, that Fulgenes did thus ; he assembled *his* host 'of *the* folk of this land,' [and] 'he' marched 'toward [to] York, 'to his *own* destruction.' When he came 'to York [thither], Fulgenes was before 'him'; they began to fight most 'fiercely [strongly]; 'on both sides there fell folk without number.' There was Severus slain, and 'many [much] of his 'Romans [folk]. Fulgenes was wounded 'wondrously sore,' so that 'in the third day' he 'suffered sore death [soon died]. 'Of Severus death *the* Britons there judged; those who possessed authority said them between: "Severus was good knight, and he held (ruled) us

¹ Written at first Fulgenus, but afterwards expuncted.

² R. Fulgenes.

³ uufde ?

⁴ R. his.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& he heold us fwiðe riht.
 þæ while þe we hī walden herē :
 ær we turnden to Fulgene.
 þurh heore vuele ræde :
 beien heo beoð dædde. Bruttes nemen Seuar :
 Nime we Sæuaruffes lic : for þat he ȝam lofuede.
 & ledewe hit into Eouuerwic. <sup>[f. 59^b
c. 1.]</sup> and ladde hine to Euerwich :
 & þær we hit sculleð bi-burien : and þære hine burede.
 mid muchelere blisse.
 & forð ȝelden þa duȝeðe : 10
 þe he us dude whilen.
 Al weoren þa dæden :
 al fe heo idemden.
 Sæuarus bi-lefde here tweien **S** Euare hadde twei sones :
 funen :
 þus hæhten heore nomen. soch were hire names.
 þe ældere hehte Bafiā : þe eldre hehte Bafian :
 þe ȝungere hæhte Gezan. þe ȝeongre Gefan.
 þe beiene heo weoren ibroðerē : þeos weren broþers :
 ah noht of are moder. and noht of one moder.
 Bafianes moder : 20 Bafian his moder was Brut :
 wes of Brut-lōdes ærd.
 & Gezanes moder : Gefanes Romain icud.
 of Romanisce monnen.
 Buttes nomen Bafian : Bruttes neme Bafian :

[B]afian.

[Ge]zan.

most right, the while that we would serve him, before we turned to
 Fulgenes; through their evil counsel they both are dead! 'Take we
 Severus's body, and carry we it into [The Britons took Severus, because
 that he loved them, and carried him to] York, and there 'we shall bury it,
 [him buried.] 'with much bliss, and for-yeild (repay) the good, that he
 whilom did to us.' The deeds (proceedings) were all as they determined.
 Severus 'left here [had] two sons,—thus hight [such were] their names;
 the elder hight Basian, the younger 'hight' Gezan. 'The both they [These]
 were brothers, but not of one mother. 'Basians [Basian his] mother was
 'of Britains land [*a* Briton], 'and' Gezans 'mother' 'of Romanish men

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& bitahten him þisne kinedom.	and bi-tahte him þissne kinedom.
& þa Romanisce men :	and þe Romanisse men :
to kīge made Gezan.	to kinge made Gefan.
Bruttes weoren bifie :	
& Basian heo luueden.	
& þa Romanisce men :	
luueden swiþe Gezan.	
þær aras muchel ballu :	þus arof muche wo :
bi-twenen þissen broðeren.	bi-twixte þe broþers.
heo nomen here uerdē :	hii gaderede verde :
& comen to stal fehte.	and comen to fihte.
and þer þe king Basian :	and þar þe king Basan :
sloh his broðer Gezan.	floh his broþer Gefan.
& þat Romanisce folc :	and þe Romanisse folk :
fleh of þissen londe.	fleh of þisse londe.
at ¹ monie þer weoren ifalled :	and manie þar were of-flawe :
i þan muchele fehte.	in þan mochele fihte.
I þisse londewes a ȝung mon :	In þis lond was a man :
vnder þon kinge Basian.	onder þan kinge Basan.
Carrais wes ihaten hif nome :	Carais was i-hote :
þes wes a fellich gume.	
His fader wes an unstrong cniht :	
ah þe sunne wes swiðe sturne.	cniht swiþe fterne.

[f. 51^b. c. 1.]

Carrais.

[a noble Roman]. The Britons took Basian, and delivered him this kingdom ; and the Romanish men made Gezan king. ' The Britons were busy, and Basian they loved, and the Romanish men loved greatly Gezan.' ' There [Thus] arose much 'strife between these [woe betwixt the] brothers ; they 'took their [gathered] forces, and came to battle ; and there the king Basian slew his brother Gezan, and the Romanish folk fled from this land ; 'but [and] many were there 'felled [slain] in the mickle fight. In this land was a 'young' man, under the king Basian ; 'his name was called [he was named] Carrais,—'this was a subtle man ! His father was a low person,' 'but the son was [a knight] most stern ; 'that was the busiest man

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat wes þe bifegæfte mon :	
þe wunede inne Bruttene.	
of nane quike mōne :	of none cwike manne :
næuede he care næenne.	nadde he care nanne.
wa wes him þurh alle þing :	wo was him þorh alle þing :
þat Bafian wes Bruttene king.	þat Bafian was here king.
Bafian wes griðful kīg :	
& Carrais ne likede hit naþīg.	
þa a þan ilke time :	þo in þan ilke time :
verden bi fæ rime.	verde bi féé rime.
vtlaȝen to iwitē :	vt-lawes to iwite :
fulle fixti ſcipen.	folle fixti fipes.
Carraif hīe biðohte :	Carais hine bi-þohte :
of ane hindere cræfte.	of one luper crafte.
þat he wolde ſone :	þat he wolde ſone :
faren into Rome.	wenden to Rome.
Forð he i-uufde :	
& in to Rome ferde.	
& ſpac wið þane kæifere :	and ſpeke wiþ þan kaifere :
& wið þā Romanifce here.	and wiþ Romaniffe here.
& þuſ ſeide Carrais :	and þuſ ſaide Carais :
he wes swike fuliwis.	he was ſwike foliwis.
Hæil ſeo þu Cýrian :	Hail beo þou Cirian :
þe king þe græteð Bafian.	þe king þe greteþ Baſan.
and dæð þe ful wel to witen :	an ſeggeþ mid fore :

that dwelt in Britain !' Of no man alive had he any care ; woe was he through all things, that Basian was king 'of Britain [here]. 'Basian was peaceful king, and Carrais nothing liked it.' Then in the same time fared by the sea coast outlaws (pirates), to wit,—full sixty ships. Carrais be-thought him of a 'subtle [wicked] craft, that he would soon proceed to Rome. 'Forth he went, and into Rome came,' and spake with the emperor, and with 'the' Romanish army ; and thus said Carrais,—he was deceiver full surely ! "Hail be thou, Cyrian ! The king Basian thee greeteth, and 'doth thee full well to wit, both by word and by writ

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ba bi worden & bi writē. þat he nele na more.
 þat ne mæi he þe no mare fenden : vt of Brutlonde :
 þ̃ galuel¹ of Bruttlonde. eni feo þe fende.
 for twien he haueð bigunnen : for twie hif fondefman :
 to fenden hit bi his monnen. in féé haueþ bi-raifed.
 i sæ heo funden vtlaȝen : [[f. 60. c. 1.]
 & habbeoð alle his men if laȝen.
 & iræued al þat gærfume :
 þe scolde þe to cume.
 þa vt-laȝes beoð fwa ftronge : 10 Vtlawes beoþ so ftrong :
 bi watere & bi londe. bi watere an bi londe.
 þ̃ ne mæi na man ouer sæ uaren : þat no man ne mai fare :
 bute mid fwiðe mucle care. bote ȝif he wolle habbe care.
 Ah ȝif þi wille weore : Ac ȝif þin wille were :
 þ̃ þu woldest me ihere. þat þou woldest me lene.
 & bi-tachen me þine writen : twelfe of þine fipes :
 & fenden² me twælf scipen. and þin owene writes.
 & hælden me to munde :
 a þire aȝere hond.
 into sæ ic wolde faren : 20 in to féé ich wolde fare :
 & flæn alle þa ut-laȝen. and flean þai vtlawes.
 & þi gauel þe fende : and þi feo þe fende :
 ut of Brutlonde. vt of Brutlonde.

[sayeth with sorrow], that he 'may [will] no more send thee 'the tribute of [any fee out of] Britain; for twice 'he hath began to send it by his men; in *the* sea they found outlaws, and all his men *they* have slain; and robbed all the treasure, that should to thee come [his messenger in *the* sea hath been robbed]. 'The' outlaws are so strong, by water and by land, that no man may pass 'over sea,' unless 'with very much [he will have] care. But if thy will were, that thou wouldst 'me hear, and deliver me thy writs, and send me twelve ships [lend me twelve of thy ships, and thine own writs], 'and hold me in protection, in thine own hand,' to *the* sea I would go, and slay 'all' the outlaws, and send thee thy 'tribute [fee]

¹ *R.* gauel.² lenden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

For ich æm ennes cnihtes sune : for ich ham on eorles fone : [c. 2.]
 & cun ich habbe iwide : and cun ich habbe wide.
 haueð mi fader bi þære fæ :
 castel fwiþe fæle.
 & cnihtes inowe :
 & men unifoze.
 alle heo wulleð to me drazen : alle hii wollep to me drawe :
 to quellen þa ut-lazen. forte cwelle þeos vtlawes.
 & þuſ ich wulle þurh mire hond : and þuſ ich wolle þorh min hond :
 witen þi feht¹ & þi lond. 10 wite þi feo an þi lond.
 ¶ þiſ ihærde Cýrian : þiſ ihorde þe kaiſer :
 ſpeken þene swikeful mō. and him paide fwiþe wel.
 & al he ȝette him :
 þat he him to ȝirde².
 writen he him bi-tehten : writes him bi-tahte :
 & wapnen him aræhte. and wepne him a-rahte.
 & forð hine ſenden : and forþ hine gan ſende :
 touward þiſſen londe. into þiſſe londe.
 Forð he ferde Cairais : Forþ verde Carais :
 þ he com to France. 20 þat he com to France.
 æuere his writen he vnfeold : euere he his writes onfeold :
 þer he forð ferde. aſe he forþ wende.
 & ſeiden al þan monnen : [c. 2.]

Cyrian.

out of Britain. For I am 'a knights [an earls] son, and kindred I have wide;
 'my father hath by the sea a castle most good, and knights enow, and men
 in plenty'; all they will draw to me, [for] to kill 'the [these] outlaws; and
 thus I will through my hand guard thy fee and thy land.'" 'Cyrian [The
 emperor] heard 'the deceitful man speak' this, and 'all he to him granted,
 that he of him asked [*it pleased him most well*]; writs 'he' promised him,
 and weapons delivered to him, and forth 'sent [gan send] him 'toward
 [into] this land. Forth Carrais 'he' fared, until he came to France; ever
 his writs he unfolded, 'where [as] he forth passed, 'and said to all the men

¹ feh?² ȝirnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

what he i Rome hæhde biwunnen.

& folc hī wende :

an æuerælche ende.

Carrais com to fæ :

mid felcuðe uolke.

he hafde to iueren :

fif hundred rideren.

& folc he hafde a foten :

muchel and vnnimete.

Al þa ſcipen bi fæ ſtrōde :

he nom to his honde.

he uerde forð in fæ :

uereden hine vðen.

& he ſone bi-com :

ī to Brutlonde :

& anan bigō ræuinge :

uppen Baſian þene kinge.

Carrais nom his ſonde :

& ſende ȝeond þiſſe londe.

bad ælcne ȝungne mon :

þe weorces nalde ȝeomen.

& æuere ælcne ut-laȝe :

þe his lond hadde bi-boȝen.

& auerælcne cnihtes ſune :

þ̅ his main wolde cuðen.

and folk him to wende :

on euereche ende.

Carais com to féé :

mid mochelere folke.

he hadde to ivere :

fif hundred rideres.

and folk he hadde a fote :

moche and onimete.

Al þe fipes bi þe ſtronde :

he nom to his owe honde.

and ſone he com :

in to þiſſe londe.

and anon makede reuing :

vppe Baſian þan kinge.

Carais ſende his ſonde :

ȝeond alle þiſſe lond.

and bad alle þe vtlawef :

þat pais wolde hadde.

and alle þe cnihtene ſones :

Carra[is].

what he had in Rome obtained'; and folk came to him on every part. Carrais came to *the* sea, with 'wondrous [mickle] folk; he had for companions five hundred riders, and folk he had on foot much and without number. All the ships by 'sea [the] strand he took in his [own] hand; 'he proceeded forth on *the* sea, *the* waves conveyed him,' and soon he 'arrived [came] into 'Britain [this land], and anon 'began [made] ravage upon Basian the king. Carrais 'took his messengers, and sent [sent his messengers] over [all] this land, [and] bade 'each young man who would not heed work, and' 'every outlaw [all the outlaws] who 'had come to his land [peace would have], and 'every knights son [all the knights sons

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and ælcne wiðerfulne mon :

þe god wolde biwinnen.

þat hī to scolden comen :

for golde ād gæirfume.

þas weoren cuðe :

wunder ane wide.

& þa wiðerwarde :

fumne uerde.

heo comen to Carrais :

þritti þusend fuliwis.

& heo uorð iwenden :

bi þan fæ stronde.

Heo rupten heo ræfden :

noht heo ne bi-læfden.

castles heo [nomen :]

Bruttes heo flozen.

monie heo forbarnden :

aðele Brutus.

heo uerden norh heo uerden æft : hii verden west : hii verden eft :

al þat lond heo makeden west. 20 al þat lond hii makede west.

heo ferden into Scotlon :

þer heo scaðe worhten.

& aȝan to þisse londe :

þas leoden heo for-uerden.

þat wolde habbe garifome.

þat hii to him folde come :

and habbe ȝiftes gode.

þar wende to Carais :

þritti þusend foliwis.

and he forþ wende :

bi þan fæe stronde.

Hii rupten hii refden :

noht hii ne blefden.

castles hii nemen :

Bruttes hii flowen.

and efte to þisse londe :

and þat folk flowen.

'who his strength would prove, and each valiant man,' who 'goods [treasure] would win [have], that [they] should to him come, 'for gold and for treasure [and have good gifts]. 'These words were made known wonderfully wide, and the factious assembled forces'; 'they [There] came to Carrais thirty thousand full certainly, and 'they [he] marched forth by the sea strand. They robbed, they ravaged, nought they left; castles they took, the Britons they slew; 'many noble Britons they burnt!' They fared 'north [west], they fared east, all the land they made waste; they marched into Scotland, where they wrought harm, and 'back [eft] to this land, [and] 'these [the] people 'they' 'destroyed [slew]. He 'took [sent]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

He nō ænne biſine ¹ mon :	He ſende one man :
& ſende to Brutten.	into Brutlonde.
& þas word heō sæde :	and ſeide þat Caraif :
þe Carrais heom fēde.	
Carrais þe ſtronge :	
wunieð inne comela.	wonede in comelan foliwif.
& ſend hei ² bi-halues :	
& grætet wel Bruttes.	
ȝe buð godliche gum :	ȝif ȝe me wollep come to :
& ich eow wulle griðien.	10 ich ou wolle griþie.
& freoſcipe eow ȝiuen :	
& freoðſcipe halden.	
ȝif ȝe on eowre cuððe :	and ȝe on our ³ cuppe :
king me wulleð makien.	king me wollep makie.
& Bruttus andſwereden :	And Bruttes anſwerede :
for ⁴ heo weoren aðele men.	aſe men trewe.
& ſeiden þurh alle þing :	þat hii nolde hire king :
þat heo nalden ſwiken heore king.	bi-ſwike for no þing.
for næuere quicne mon :	
ſwiken þene king Baſian.	20
& þis word aȝæn com :	And þis word a-ȝein com :
to Carrais þon ſtronge.	to Carais þan ſtronge.
Carrais hine bi-þohte :	and he hine bi-þohte :

a 'busy' man, 'and sent' 'to *the* Britons [into Britain], and 'these words' said 'to them' that Carrais 'sent them; "Carrais the strong" 'dwelleth [dwelt] in tent (?) [full truly], 'and sendeth here apart, and greeteth well *the* Britons.'—'Ye are goodly men, and [If ye will come to me] I will you free, 'and freedom give you, and friendship hold,' if ye in your country will make me king." And *the* Britons answered, 'for they were noble [as true] men, 'and said through all things' that they would not [for any thing] betray their king; 'for never *any* man alive, *would they* betray the king Basian.' And this word came back to Carrais the strong, [and] 'Carrais [he]

¹ wifne? Cf. v. 11872.² her?³ ȝoure?⁴ Written at first forð, but ð expuncted.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

whæt he don mæhte. wat he don mihte.
 bi twam wittre cnihten : he fende tweie cnihtes :
 he fende to þā Pohtes. forþ to þe Peutes.
 þa Pohtes weoren on londe :
 next Bafiane þan kinge.
 To heom com þa fode¹ : [c. 2.]
 from Carrais þon ftronge.
 & muchel heom bi-hæhte : and moche ȝam bi-hehte :
 of worliche æhte. of worliche gode.
 þa Pohtes weoren uuele : 10 þe Peutes a-non rihtes :
 he² leofeden heore aðele.
 heo fworen forð rihtes :
 & treoðen heo plihten. treuþe him plihte.
 þat heo wolden Bafian : þat hii wolde bi-fwike :
 inne fehte bi-fwiken. þane king in his riche.
 þis word com to Carrais : þo þis com to Caraif :
 þa wes he glad ful iwis. he was glad foliwis.
 forð riht he nom his fonde : he fende his fonde :
 & fende to þan kinge. forþ to þā kinge.
 & feide him forð rihtes : 20 and feide him forþ riht :
 þat wið him he wolde fehte. þat wiþ him he wolde fihte.
 buten he him wolde rumen : bote he wolde fleo :
 & bi-læuen þæs riche. vt of þis riche.

bethought him, what he might do; he sent 'by' two 'wise' knights [forth] to the Peohtes;—'the Peohtes were in *the* land next (nearest) to Basian the king. To them came the messengers from Carrais the strong,' and promised them much of worldly goods. The Peohtes 'were evil,—they losed their honor;—they swore' 'forth-right [anon right] 'and' truth 'they' [to him] plighted, that they would betray Basian [the king] in 'fight [his realm]. 'This word [When this] came to Carrais, 'then' was he glad full certainly; he 'took forth-right [sent forth] his messengers, 'and sent' to the king, and said to him forth-right, that with him he would fight, unless he would 'depart, and leave [flee out of] this realm. Then said 'the' king Basian,

¹ R. fonde.² heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii

þa feide þe king Bafian :'	þo feide king Bafian :'
ær ih ¹ wulle dæd beon.	her ich wolle dead beon.
Wið innen feouen nihte :'	Wip þan fouenihte :'
heo comen to þan fihte.	he com to þan fihte.
bi-foren þere burh Eouerwic :'	bi-fore þe borh of Euerwich :'
þat feht wes swiðe ſtorlic.	þat fiht was fwiþe ſtorlich. [c. 2.]
þa heo ſcolden bezſt fehten :'	þo hii ſolde beſte fihte :'
þa fluȝen al þa Pohtes.	þo flowen þe Peutes.
& heo Baſiā þe king :'	and hire king Bafian :'
mid alle bilæfdē.	bi-leſde al one.
& Carrais him on þrong :'	and Carais to þrong :'
and mid ſpere him of-ſtong.	and mid on ſpere hine ſtong.
Br ^u ttes heo floȝen :	Bruttes hii flowen :
& moni hundred þer nomen.	and mani hundred nemen.
þa ſtod al þis lond :	þo ſtod al þiſ lond :
a Carraiſ aȝere hond.	in Carais hond.
þa nom he al þa Peohtes :	þo nam he alle þe Peutes :
& fende in to Scotte.	and fende to Scottes.
& ȝif heō þere muchel lōd :	and ȝeſ ȝam þare mochel londe :
inne Scot-londen.	in Scot-leode :
& heore cun wunede þære :	
seoððen auere mare.	
þis word com to Rome :	þes word com to Rome :
her æfter ful ſone. [f. 61. c. 1.]	wel fwiþe ſone.

“ I will be dead first ! ” Within ‘ seven nights they [the se’nnight he] came to the fight, before the burgh [of] York,—the fight was most sturdy ! When they should fight best, then fled ‘ all ’ the Peohtes, and ‘ they ’ left ‘ withall [alone] Basian ‘ the [their] king ; and Carrais pressed towards ‘ him,’ and with [a] spear him pierced. *The Britons* they slew, and many hundred ‘ there ’ captured. Then stood all this land in Carrais ‘ own ’ hand ; then took he all the Peohtes, and sent ‘ into Scotland [to *the* Scots], and gave them there much land in Scotland ; ‘ and their kin dwelt there afterwards evermore.’ This word came to Rome, ‘ hereafter ’ ‘ full [exceeding] soon, how

¹ ich ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hu Carrais hæfde iuaren :'	ou Carais hadde ivare :'
& Bafian þene king of-flæzen.	and þane king of-flawe.
Heo fomneden twa ferden :'	Hii fomnede twei ferdes :'
of Romanifce ærden.	of Romaniffe erþe.
& nomen tweien eorles :'	and fende twie eorles :'
þe weoren swiðe aðele.	
Allec hæhte þe an :'	
wes wis & ftrong mon.	
þe oðer wes icleoped þus :'	
Liuius Gall ² .	10 Allec and Liuius Gallus.
Heo ferden of ¹ Rome :'	Hi verden vt of Rome :'
& to þiffe londe comen.	to þiffe londe hii come.
þ̅ heo bicomē :	
to Carrais þan kinge.	
Carrais heo of-flozen :	Carais hii of-flowen :
his cnihtes heo nomen.	his cnihtes hii nomen.
þus þa Romanifce mē :	
ræfden to leoden.	
& Allec nom to his honde :'	and Allec nam to his hond :'
muchel of þiffe londe.	20 mochel of þis lond.
þat ² ȝet þer weoren B ^u ttus :	þe ȝet þar were Bruttes :
monie bi-hælues.	mani bi-halues.
þe caſtles heolden fstronge :	þat caſtles heolde fstronge :
burhȝes brade & longe.	borewes brode and longe.

Allec.

Liuius
Gallus.

Carrais had acted, and slain 'Basian' the king. They assembled two hosts of Romanish land, and 'took [sent] two earls, 'who were most noble.' Allec 'hight the one, *who* was a man wise and strong'; 'the other was called thus, [and] Livius Gallus. They marched 'from [out of] Rome, 'and' to this land [they] came; 'so that they came up to Carrais the king;' Carrais they slew, his knights they captured. 'Thus the Romanish men attacked *the* people,' and Allec took in his hand much of this land. The yet there were many Britons apart, who held strong castles, *and* burghs broad and long. They caused *messengers* speedily to go southward into Cornwall,

¹ Written at first ut.² þe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Heo lætten hiȝēdliche varen :
 seoð into Cornwalen.
 æfter Aſclepidiot :
 þe wes i Cornwale duc :
 he cō an hiȝenge :
 & heo hine heouen to kinge.
 þa fomneden Bruttuf :
 sele þeines.
 hehte¹ alle þa cnihtes :
 cumen to þan kinge.
 and æuerælcne ohte mon :
 biwīnen his aðelen.
 heo budē heore uerde :
 uppe niðinges bærde.
 þa wes Allec þe king :
 iliðē in to Lunden.
 & Bruttene kīg :
 sone him bæh æfter.
 Hit wef an anne hæhȝe dæie :
 halȝedē leoden.
 wes Allec þe king :
 in are temple.
 in Lundenne :
 mid his Rom-leoden.

10

20

[c. 2.]

HI lette hiȝendliche vare :
 suþ in to Cornwale.
 hafter Eſclepidiot :
 þat wef in Cornwale duck.
 he com an hiȝenge :
 and hii makede hine to kinge :
 þa fomnede he alle þe cnihtes :
 for come to him feolue.
 and he bannede his ferde :
 of alle þis erþe.
 and wende to Londene :
 þar Allec þo wonede.

after Asclepidiot, who was in Cornwall duke;—he came in haste, and they 'raised [made] him to *be* king. Then assembled *the* Britons, [he] 'good thanes!—bade' all the knights [for] to come to 'the king [himself], 'and every brave man to win his honor;' 'they [and he] summoned 'their [his] forces, 'upon *pain of* nithings gesture*. [from all this land,] 'Then was Allec the king gone into London, [and went to London; there Allec then dwelt.] 'and *the* British king soon went after him. It was on a high-day (festival); *the* people made sacrifice; Allec the king was in a temple in London, with his Rome-folk.' Then heard [Allec] the king 'mickle [very

¹ hehten ?

* See Notes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa iherde þe king :'	þo ihorde Allec þe king :'	[f. 52 ^b .c.1.]
mucle ludinge.	fwiþe moche luding.	
in Lundene :		
ftureden þa leoden.		
Allec hī ut leop :	Allec him vp leop :	
& his wepnen he igrap.	and his wepne igrop.	
& al his Rom-leoden :	and al his Romleode :	
þa i Lunðene ¹ weoren.	þat in Londene were.	
& comen ut of þere burh :	and wend ham vt :	
& ifezen heom bi-hæluen.	and wonder fiht ifehȝe.	10
ifezen heom bi-fiden :		
fillic heom þuhte.		
wha hæfde al þa mon-uereðe :		
þidere ifende :		
Buttes heom buȝē to :	Bruttes heom refde to :	
mid bittere ræfen.	mid fwiþe gode wille.	
Allec heo floȝen :	Allec hii flowen :	
muche folc heo nomen.	mochel folk inomē ² .	
& ſum ō uæfte bæh :		
in to þere burh ³ :		20
& þe eorl Liuius :	And þe eorl Linus ⁴ :	
in to Lundenne flæh.	fleoþ in to borwe.	
lette luken þa ȝeten :	letten louke þe ȝates :	

much] noise;—‘the people stirred in London.’ Allec him ‘out [up] leapt, and his weapon ‘he’ grasped, and all his Rome-folk, that in London were; and *they* ‘came [marched them] out ‘of the burgh,’ and saw ‘them (the Britons) aside, [*a* marvellous sight.] ‘saw them beside; strange *it* seemed to them who had all the host thither sent!’ *The Britons* ‘advanced [rushed] towards them with bitter ‘onset [most good will]; Allec they slew, much folk they captured, ‘and some quickly retreated into the burgh.’ And the earl Lucius fled into ‘London [*the* burgh]; caused the

¹ *R.* Lundene.² *hii* nomen?³ *Written at first* burh fleh, but the last word expuncted by the same hand.⁴ *R.* Liuius.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& him feolf læð to walle.	and fide to walle.
and Bruttes þa burȝen :	and Bruttes Londone :
gunnen biriden.	gonne bi-ride.
& bi-leien þa burh :	
wel mid þe ¹ bezften.	
þe king Afclepediot :	And Efclepidiot :
þe wes cniht swiðe god.	þat was cniht fwiþe god.
sende his fonde :	fende his fonde :
in to Scotlonde.	in to Scotlonde.
in to Muriane :	10 in to Moraine :
æfter mon-weore ² .	after man-ferde.
& æc in to wes ³ Wales :	and eke in to Wales :
æfter Wæl-Brutten.	after Wale-Bruttes.
& swa he lette fone uaren :	
soð in to Cornwalen.	
hæhte ⁴ ælcne mon of þan ærd :	and hin to his owe erþ :
þe hæfde on his chinne bærd.	þat ech man þat hadde beord.
uppe leome & vppē lif :	vppe lime and vppe lif :
to Lundene liðen.	to Londene wende.
Inne feouē nihte :	20 And alle hii come :
ifomned heo weoren.	in lutele time.
heo heolden to walle :	and refde to walle :
mid wunderliche strēgðe.	in euereche halue.

gates to be locked, and 'himself' went to *the* wall; and the Britons gan ride round 'the burgh [London], 'and besieged the burgh well with the best.' 'The king [And] Asclepidiot, who was knight most good, sent his messengers into Scotland, into Moray, after forces, and eke into Wales, after Welsh-Britons. And 'so he caused *others* soon to go southward' into 'Cornwall [his own country]; 'ordered [that] each man 'of the land' that had beard 'on his chin,' upon *pain of* limb and upon life to proceed to London. 'In seven nights assembled they were; they [And they all came in little time, and] assaulted *the* walls 'with wondrous strength [on

¹ *þe is interlined.*² *mon-weorede?*³ *Redundant?*⁴ *The last three letters of hæhte are sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& Liuius Gall ² :	and Liuiuf Gallus :
goðliche werede. [f. 61 ^b . c. 1.]	wel hine werede.
Bruttes a þan ende :	Bruttes a þan ende :
breken þa walles.	þe walles to-breke.
& iwenden binnen :	and in hii wende :
þa wes þa burh bi-wunnen.	þo waf þe borh awonne.
& Liuius Gallus :	And Liuiuf Gallus :
gæinde to anne castle.	wende to þan castle.
& þer binen him ræfde :	
mid his Romanifce uolke. 10	
& Bruttene king :	
bæh to þæn castle.	
& lætte to læpen :	and Bruttes leope to :
alle þa Brut-leoden.	on euereche fide.
þa ifæh Liuius Gallus :	
þ his help wef fwiðe wac.	
þa leonede he ouer wal :	
& lude gon cleopien.	
Asclepidiot þene king :	
þu ært fwiðe kene. 20	
ich wullen þe speken wið :	Liuius ȝeornde griþ :
& ȝirne þe liues grið.	and þane king wolde speke wip.
þat þu mid griðe me leten uaren :	þo so feide Liuius :
forð touward Rome.	Let me hine wende þus.

every side]; and Livius Gallus 'goodly [well him] defended. *The Britons* at the end brake the walls, and 'within [in they] went;—then was the burgh won. And Livius Gallus retreated to 'a [the] castle, 'and there within he rushed, with his Romanish folk'; and '*the* British king marched to the castle, and caused all the British-folk to assault *it* [the Britons assaulted *it* on every side]. 'When Livius Gallus saw, that his help was very weak; then leaned he over *the* wall, and loud gan to call to Asclepidiot the king : "Thou art most keen,' 'I would speak with thee, and yearn of thee grace of life; that thou let me depart with peace forth toward Rome, and with me my people [Livius yearned peace, and would speak with the king; then thus said Livius: Let me hence depart thus, with the same folk]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& mid me mine leoden :
 þe ȝet beoð an liue.
 & ich þe wulle swerien :
 vppen mine fweorde.
 þat nulle ic nauere mare :
 aȝen cumen here.
 Aſclepidiot iherde þat :
 þeos word him þuhte god.
 & al hī iȝette :

þat Gallus þer ȝerde¹. 10

Of þan caſtle heo ut foren :
 & aðef heo fworen.
 & fwa heo gunnen wenden :
 uorð ut of Londen.
 þa com Scottene king :
 ſcriðē to hirede.
 & imætte Gallus :
 & his gumen alle.
 Sone cleopede Columban :
 þe wes Scottene king. 20
 Whar beo ȝe mine gumen :
 vt of Galwæiða.
 whar beo ȝe mine men :

mid þā ilke folke :
 þat ich habbe ȝet a-lifue.
 and ich þe wolle fwe[rie :]
 vppen mine fwerde. [c. 2.]
 þat nelle ich neuere more :
 aȝein comen here.
 þo faide Eſclepidiot :
 þis he wel mot.

Of þan caſtle hii fore :
 and oþes him fwore.
 and ſo hii gonne wende :
 vt of þiſſe londe.
 þo com Scottene king :
 Eſclepidiot to helpe.
 imette wiþ Liuius :
 and mid al his folke.
 Sone cleopede Columban :
 þat was Scottene king.
 Ware beo ȝeo mine cnihtes :
 fleap alle forþ rihtes.

that yet 'are [I have] alive. And I will swear to thee, upon my sword, that I will never more again come here." Asclepidiot 'heard that, these words him seemed good; and all *he* him granted, that Gallus there asked [then said, this he well might *do*]. From the castle they 'out' went, and oaths 'they [to him] swore, and so they gan depart 'forth' out of 'London [this land]. Then came *the* king of Scots 'marching to *the* host [to *the* help of Asclepidiot], 'and' met [with] Gallus, and [with] all his 'men [folk]. Soon called Columban,—who was king of Scots: "Where be ye, my 'men [knights] 'out of Galloway? where be ye, my men out of Moray? where be ye, my Scots? Follow me beside. Here

¹ ȝernde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ut of Mureine.
 whar beo ȝe mine Scottes? [c. 2.]
 scriðeð me biſide.
 her we ſculleð wel whreken :
 ure wines deore.
 & ure uulle iuan :
 fallen to þā grunde.
 ȝif þe king Aſclipidiot :
 þe is cniht ſwiðe god.
 haueð heom ſpeken wið? 10
 & iȝefuen heō liues grið. þoh hii grið habbe :
 nes ich noht þere : nas ich noht at þe reade.
 ne nan of mine iuaren¹.
 ne we hit nulleð² halden :
 for ure freōd heo habbeoð aqualde.
 Heo leiden heom bi-tweonen : Hii name ſweordes ſtrange :
 heore ſperen longe. and hire ſperes longe.
 & ladlichen ſwiðe : ſo þat loþliche ſwiþe :
 feolē Rom-leoden. fulle Romleode.
 & Gallus heo nomē : 20 And Liuius hii neme :
 & þat haſd him of-floȝen. and þat hefd of-swipte.
 & wurpen hine in ænne broc : and worpen him in one broc :
 þe þer heom bi ſtod. þat þar bi ſtod.
 & al þæt wal heo brohten :

we shall well avenge our dear friends, and fell our full foes to the ground! 'If the king Asclepidiot, who is knight most good, hath spoken with them, and given them lifes grace, yet I was not there, [Slay *them* all forth-right, though they have grace of *life*; for I was not at the counsel.]" 'nor any of my comrades, nor will we it hold, for our friends they have slaughtered.'" They laid between them [took strong swords and] their long spears, 'and [so that *they*] most hostilely felled *the* Rome-folk. And 'Gallus [Livius] they captured, and smote off 'from him' the head, and cast him in a brook that there by 'them' stood, 'and all the dead they brought into

¹ iueren?² Written originally wulleð, but corrected by the same hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in to þan broke.

þer Gallus i þan broke :

at grunde waf bi-buried.

þa wes þas þeode :

iclanfed of Rom-leode.

and Bruttes þan broke :

nome bi-tæhtē.

for Gallus wes iflaȝen þer bi :

hæhte hine nemni Galli.

& a þere Ænglifce boc :

he is ihatē Wale-broc.

Nu ich habbe þe iriht :

hu he hauede þene nome icaht.

for nu and auere mare :

is þe nome þere.

þa wes king Afclepidiot :

þe wes cniht swiðe god.

fulle ten ȝere :

mid Brutten heo luuuede here.

seoððen his ende bicom :

þat was uuele idon.

þ̅ he fculden swa raðe : [f. 62. c. 1.]

uaren of þiffen lif-dagen.

for he wes swiðe læfful :

þo was þeos þeode :

iclanfed of Romleode.

Bruttes þane broc :

Galli cleopede.

for þat Liuius Gallus :

was þar on i-pult þus.

and [a] þe Engleffe boc :

he his ihote Welebroc.

nou and euere more :

þe name ftondeþ þare.

þo waf king Efclepidiot :

þat was cniht swiðe god.

fulle ten ȝere :

mid Bruttes he wonede here.

þo com his ende :

þat he folde wende.

Galli.

Walebroc.

Afclepidiot.

the brook ;—there Gallus in the brook at *the* bottom was buried.' Then was this nation cleansed from *the* Rome-folk, and *the* Britons 'gave a name to the brook ; because Gallus was slain thereby (near), bade it be named Galli [called the brook Galli, because that Livius Gallus was therein thus cast], and in the English books it is named Wal-brook. 'Now I have informed thee, how it had acquired the name, for' now and evermore the name 'is [standeth] there. Then was Asclepidiot king, who was knight most good ; full ten years he 'lived [dwelt] here with *the* Britons ; then came his end,—'that was evilly done,' that he should depart 'so soon from this life-day!—all *the* Britons loved him, because he was most just.' 'In

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

	alle Brut luueden.		hii-smite ¹ he was in fihte :'
Rex Coel.	I Glouchæstre wes an eorl :'		mid on of Coel his cnihtes.
	of aðelene moncunne.		
	þe alre hæheste iborne mon :'		
	þe wunede inne Bruttene.		
Coel.	Coel wes ihaten :'		þeos ilke Coel ² :
	hæhst of þan Brutten.		
	he wæs if Gloief cūne :'		was of Gloi his cunne :
	þe Glochæstre ahte.		þat hahte Gloucestre. [f. 53. c.1.]
	swa þat mid alle heore mihte :'	10	
	heo comen to ane fihte.		
	Coel eorl i þan fihte stod :'		
	& floh þene king Asclepidiot.		
	Imong þissen imonge :'		Amag ³ þisse motinge :
	com reouðe to þisse londe.		come oþere tidinge.
	swa þat þe kæifere Dioclician :'		so þat þe kaifer Dioclecian :'
	sende to þisse londe Maximiaen.		fende hider Maximian.
	hider he com faren :'		
	mid muchelere ferde.		
	þa he com to londe :'	20	þo he com to Londene :
	Coel he uunde.		Coel þar he funde.
	mid compe hæfde biuunnen :'		mid fihte he hadde awonne :'
	þat he king waf him feolue.		þat he was king of londe.

Gloucester was an earl of noble race, the highest born man of all that dwelt in Britain; *he* was named Coel, highest of the Britons, he was of Gloies kindred, who possessed Gloucester; so that with all their might they came to a fight; Coel *the* earl stood in the fight, and slew the king Asclepidiot. [he was smitten in fight by one of Coel his knights; this same Coel was of his kin who possessed Gloucester.] Among (during) this business came 'sorrow to this land [other tidings], so that the emperor Dioclesian sent 'to this land [hither] Maximian;—'hither he arrived with *a* great army.' When he came to 'land [London], he found Coel [there]; with 'combat [fight he] had won that he was *become* king 'himself [of *the* land]. Coel

¹ i-smite?² A line apparently is wanting.³ Amang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Coel and Maximien : cuðliche ſpekē. & freondſcipe makeden : i-uaſtened mid treoðen. þa ſeide Maximien : mi broðer Dioclician. haueð me al þa londes : bitaht a mire honde. bi-twixe Mutgiu & Scotlonde : þat ic heo ¹ ſcal þurh ſcriðen. 10 & alle þa ilke men for-don : þat luuieð þene criſtindom. þa wes wa Coel : þe king wæs on Bruttene. þat iſæhtneffe ² : mid treoðe hafde iſemed. Coel heold hine ſtille : [c. 2.] & Maxinien ³ dude his wille. elcne criſtine mon : at þan hefde he bi-nom. 20 & þa wið-faken wolde criſtindom : he dude his markē him on. þuſ ferde Maximien : he martrede ſeint ⁴ Alban.	Coel and Maximien : frendes bi-comen. þo ſeide Maximian : mi broþer Dioclecian. haueþ me alle þe londes : bi-tahte on mine honde. bi-twixte Montagu and Scotlond : þat ich hii ſal þorh ride. and alle þe men for-don : þat loſuieþ þane criſtendom. þo was wo Coel : king of Bruttayne. þat he ſahtneffe : mid ſware hadde iſaftned. Coel heold hine ſtille : and Maximien dude his wille. echne criſtene man : þat hefd him bi-nom. and ȝif he wolde heþene beo : þanne mihte he libbe. þuſ ferde Maxiniā ³ : he martrede ſeint Albon.	<i>Dioclicianus cum Maximiano imperauit xx^{ti} annis, ex quibus poſterioribus ix. annis inceſſabiliter crudeliſſime eccle-</i>
---	--	---

and Maximian 'spake familiarly [became friends], 'and made friendship fastened with troth.' Then said Maximian: "My brother Dioclesian hath delivered me in mine hand all the lands betwixt 'Muntgiu [Montagu] and Scotland, that I shall through them 'pass [ride], and slay all 'those [the] men that love the Christendom. Then was Coel woe, 'who was' king of Britain, that [he] had fastened amity with 'troth [oath]. Coel held him still, and Maximian did his will; each Christian man 'he' took off [him] the head, and 'whoso would forsake Christendom, he put his mark on him [if he would be heathen, then might he live]. Thus fared Maximian,—

¹ heom?² he ſæhtneffe?³ R. Maximien, Maximian.⁴ R. feint.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

*siam dei
persecuti
sunt. Sub
[h]ac perse-
cutione
sanctus
Mauricius
cum sociis
suis & sanc-
tus Julianus
& sancta
Basilissa,
cum fere
x^{cem} mili-
bus marti-
ris. & mille
virginibus
coronati
sunt; quo
tempore
sanctus
Georgeus
martiriza-
tus est. Ea
tempestate
Sanctus
Albanus in
Anglia,
Sanctus
Vincencius
in Iffspan-
nia, Sancta
Margareta
in Antigia,
Sanctus
Pantaleon
in Nicome-
dea, passi
sunt.*

& seint Julien and seint Aaron : and seint Julien [and seint] Aaron :
& tweien ancrift¹ of Kærlion. and tweie ancreos of Cairlion.
Næs nan² biscop næs nan clærk : Nas no bissop naf no cleorc :
ne cniht neore he fwa fterc. ne cniht nere he fo starc.
bute he wid-foke³ cristindō : bote he for-foke cristendom :
þat he nes anan fordon. þat he nas a-non for-don.
þa þis wes al idon : þo þis was al idon :
þa uerde forð Maximian. þo ferde forþ Maximian.
& Coel bi-læfde : and Coel bi-lefde :
king inne Bruttene. 10 king a þiffere erþe.
þes king hæfuede enne dohter : þeos king hadde ane dohter :
þe wes him fwiðe deore. þat was him fwiþe deore.
& he al þis kinelond : and he al þis kinelond : [c. 2.]
bitahte þan maidene an hond. bi-cwaþ þat maide an hond.
for næfde he nan oðer child : for nadde he no cnaue :
þe mihte ipiffen londe beō king. þat mihte þat lond habbe.
þ̃ mæide hehte Elene : þat mayde hehte Eleyne :
seoððen heo wes quene. suppe ȝeo waf cwene.
i þan londe of Jerufalem : in þan lond of Jerufalem :
leoden to bliffen. 20 leode to bliffe.
þis maiden wes wel itæht : þat maide was wel itaht :
on bocken heo cuðe godne cræft. ine boke godne craft.
& wunede in þisse londe : and wonede in þisse londe :

he martyred saint Alban, and saint Julian, and saint Aaron, and two an-
chorites of Cærleon. *There* was no bishop, *there* was no clerk, nor knight
—were he *ever* so strong, that he was not anon slain, unless he forsook
Christendom. When this was all done, then marched forth Maximian, and
left Coel king in 'Britain [this land]. This king had a daughter, who was
to him very dear, and he 'delivered [bequeathed] to the 'maiden [maid] in
hand all this kingdom ; for he had no 'other child [boy], that might 'in this
land be king [the land have]. The maid hight Helen,—subsequently she
was queen in the land of Jerusalem, to *the* bliss of *the* people. 'This maiden
[The maid] was well instructed, in books 'she knew' good craft, and dwelt

¹ ancref?² man *pr. m.*³ wið-foke?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid hire fader fstronge.	mid hire fader fstronge.
Her æfter fone :	þar after fone :
þat word com to Rome.	þat word com to Rome.
þat Coel hæfden iquald :	þat Coel adde icwelled :
Afclepidiot þene king.	Efclepediot þane king.
þa weorē Rom-leoden :	þo were Romleode :
bliðe on heore mode.	bliþe on hire mode.
for he hæfde an his dāzen :	for þat he hadde iflehze :
muchel of heore cūne iflaȝen.	moche of hire cunne.
ȝet ne com Maximien : [f. 62 ^b . c. 1.]	ȝet nas Maximan :
neuere to Rome aȝen.	noht icome to Rome aȝein.
þa nom Dioclicien :	þo nam Dioclecian :
æenne eorl ¹ wel idon.	on eorl wel idon.
þat wes þe ræhȝefte mon :	he was þe boldefte man :
þe wuden ² inne Rome.	þat wonede ine Rome.
& hæfde moni lond :	
ilæid under his hond.	
nas na mā in his dāzen :	nas no man in his daize :
þ̅ durften him derf makien.	þat dorfte him derf makie.
þe kæifere hine fende :	þe kaifer hine fende :
into þiffen londe.	
in to þiffen ærde :	
mid vnimete uærde.	mid onimete ferde.
Suftance ³ hehte þe eorl :	Conftance hehte þe eorl :

in this land with her strong father. Soon 'hereafter [thereafter] the word came to Rome, that Coel had killed Asclepidiot the king. Then were *the* Rome-folk blithe in their mood, because [that] he had 'in his day' slain much (many) of their kin. Yet Maximian 'never came [was not come] to Rome again. Then took Dioclesian a brave earl, 'who [he] was the boldest man that dwelt in Rome; 'and had laid (subdued) many lands under his hand'; was *there* no man in his day that durst make *himself* hardy. The emperor sent him 'into this land, into this country,' with innumerable host. Custance hight the earl; 'noblest of all knights [knight with

¹ R. eorl.² wunede?³ R. Custance.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

æðeleft alre cnihtē.	cniht mid þan beſte.
þis iherde Coel :	þis ihorde Coel :
þ̅ icumen wæs Cuſtance.	þat icome was Conſtance her.
adრæd he wes ſwiðe :	adred he was ſwiþe :
of hiſ ahȝene liue.	of his owene lifue.
he nom forð rihtes :	he nam forþrihtes :
ſix wiſe cnihtes.	fix wiſe cnihtes.
to C ^o tance heō ſende :	and to Conſtance ſende :
& wilcumede hine to lōde.	and wilcomede hine tolonde. [wiþ :
& he ſeolf him woldē ſpecken wið :	and he wolde come and ſpeke him
ȝef he him wolden ȝifuen grið. 11	ȝef he wolde ȝeue him griþ.
& Cuſtance him ſende æfter :	And Cuſtance him ſende after :
þat he come mid twalf cnihten.	come mid twalf cnihtes.
to-ſomne heo comen :	to-gadere hii comen :
to-gædere heo ſpeken ſone.	and ſehte iworþen ſone. [f.53 ^b .c.1.]
þa queð þe kin ¹ Coel :	
Cuſtance luſt me nu wel.	
ich fugge þe þurh alle þīng :	
ich floh Aſclepidiot þene king.	
þe hæfde þurh his wiðer-laȝen : 20	
muchel of þine cunne of-flaȝen.	
& mid ſtrengðe eowat-haldē wolde :	
þ̅ gauel of þiſſen londe.	

the beſt]! Coel heard this, that Cuſtance was come [here]; adread he was greatly, for his own life; he took forth-right ſix wiſe knights, [and] ſent ‘them’ to Cuſtance, and welcomed him to land; and ſaid that he ‘himſelf’ would [come and] ſpeak with him, if he would give him peace. And Cuſtance ſent after him, ‘that he ſhould come [to come] with twelve knights; together they came, ‘together they ſpake [and became reconciled] ſoon. ‘Then quoth the king Coel: “Cuſtance, liſten now well to me. I ſay thee through all things *that* I ſlew Aſclepidiot the king, who had through his evil laws ſlain much of thy kin, and would from you with ſtrength withhold the tribute of this land; and much ſhame he did you,—

¹ king?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& muchelne scome he eow dude :
 þe ræðer he dæd þolede.
 for ich wes an of þan hæhste :
 þ̅ fwoore eow herfumnesce. [c.2.]
 to Romen þat we sculden senden :
 þ̅ gael of þissen londe.
 þaf aððes þe king bræc :
 þer fore he if nu dæd.
 Ah a-fwike wit vnker fihthes :
 & lokien we to þan rihten. 10
 & ich wullen halden to :
 & halden þe for hæerre.
 & beon þe ful liðe :
 & halden þe for lauerd.
 & ælche ȝere þe fendē :
 þat gael of Brutlonde.
 þa answere Custāce :
 riche mon & swiðe bald.
 Coel þu ært wis mon :
 & wiðdom þe folleweð. 20
 Beo nu godful kīg :
 & gumene þu beo lauerd².
 & al ich þe ȝette :
 swa þu hit ȝirneft.

þo feide Custance :
 to Coel þan kinke¹.
 Coel þou art wifman :
 and wiðdom þe folweþ.
 Beo nou god king :
 and of þis londe louerd.

the sooner he suffered death! For I was one of the highest that swore to you obedience, that we should send to Rome the tribute of this land. These oaths the king brake,—therefore is he now dead. But cease we our fight, and look we to the right, and I will submit, and hold thee for master, and be to thee full obedient, and hold thee for lord, and each year send thee the tribute of Britain.” Then answered [said] Custance,—‘noble man, and most bold [to Coel the king]: “Coel, thou art a wise man, and wisdom followeth thee. Be now a good king, and ‘be thou’ lord of ‘men [this land]; ‘and all I grant thee as thou it yearnest,’ and I will with

¹ R. kinge.² lauer, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ich wulle mid monſcipe :
 þine monradene on-fon.
 for þu uſ dedeſt² monſcipe and god :
 þa þu floze Aſclepidiot.
 Mid muchelere wurſcipe :
 sæht heo iwurðen.
 mid muchelere bliſce :
 heo wuneden in burȝen.
 Ah neſ hit buten ane while :
 þ̅ per com an oðer time. 10
 neoren noht feouwertī dazen :
 allunge iuæreden.
 þat Coel þe king :
 ſeoc lai an comlen.
 his hæfde fwiðe oc :
 & þe king wes wunderliche feoc.
 Seouen niht & ænne dæi :
 þe kīg ſwiðe ſeoc lai.
 hit heold hine bi þan ribben :
 þat ne mihte he na leng libben. 20
 & he cleopede him to :
 riſe his þeines.
 þat heo him ſculden ræden : [f. 63. c. 1.]
 at fwulchere neode.

anc¹ ich wolle mid manſipe :
 þi manradene onderfange.
 Mid mochele bliſſe :
 hii wonede ine borwe.
 Ac naſ hit bote ane wile :
 þat com an oþer time.
 þat Coel þe king :
 ſeac was in comelan.
 Soueniht and on dai :
 þe king fwiþe ſeac lai.
 and he cleopede him to :
 alle his wiſe cnihtes.
 for to him reade :
 at fochere neode.

honor thy homage receive, 'for thou didst to us honor and good, when thou slewest Asclepidiot.' With much worship they became friends, with much bliss they dwelt in *the* burgh. But it was not but a while, that 'there' came another time (change of events); 'forty days were not wholly passed,' that Coel the king 'lay [was] sick in tent(?); 'his head ached greatly, and the king was wondrously sick.' Seven nights and one day the king lay very sick; 'it held him by the ribs, so that he might no longer live;' and he called to him 'his noble thanes, that they should [all his wise knights, for to] counsel him at such need, how he might dispose of Helen his daughter.

¹ R. and.² An o is written above the first e, by second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

hu he mihte dihten :
 Ælene his dohter.
 þa heo hafden¹ al ifeid :
 þ̅wes þ̅e utemæfte rað².
 þat heo ȝeue Ælene :
 Cufstanc to are quene.
 & al his kineliche lond :
 sette in Cufstances hond.
 & Coel hī dude fwa :
 þe king wes inne B^uttene. 10
 þa nes þer nan oðer ræd :
 bute Coel king iwarð dæd.
 & Cufstanc hauede Ælene :
 biwedded to quene.
 þet wes þa wifeste wifman :
 þa wunede a B^uttene.
 Cufstanc hauede his quene :
 a child heom wes imene.
 þa þat child wes iboren :
 God sulf hit hauede icoren. 20
 þer fore wes al bliðe :
 þat wunede inne Bruttene.
 þa comen to-fomne :

hou he mihte dihte :
 Eleýne his dohter.
 And hii him radde alle :
 in boure and in halle.
 þat he hire ȝefue :
 Cufstanc to cwene.
 and al his kineworþe lond :
 sette Cufstanc an hond.
 and Coel al dude :
 afe hii him radde.
 þo nas þar non oþer read :
 bote þe king iwarþ dead.
 and Cufstanc adde Eleýne :
 bi-wedded to cwene.
 þat was þe wifest womman :
 þat wonede in londe.
 Cufstanc adde bi his cwene :
 a child fwiþe scene.

'When they had all said (spoken), that was the final counsel [And they all counselled him, in bower and in hall], that he should give 'Helen [her] to Custance for 'a' queen, and all his royal land set in Custances hand ; and Coel 'he' did 'so,—'who was king in Britain [all as they advised him]. Then was there no other lot, but *that* 'Coel [the] king should die ; and Custance had Helen wedded for queen, who was the wisest woman that dwelt in 'Britain [land]. Custance had [by] his queen, a child 'was in common to them [most fair]. 'When the child was born, God *himself* had chosen it, therefore was all *folk* blithe, that dwelt in Britain. Then came together world-prosperous men: they found the child *a* name most fair; they loved

¹ R. hafden.² ræd ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

weorlð-feli men.

heo fūden þat child :

nome fwiðe hende.

heo luueden his licame :

& ȝeuen him his fader nome.

Cuſtaz¹ hæhte þe kīg :*Coſtantin.*& Coſtantin² hæhte þat child.

þe lef wes on heorten :

alle B^utlonden.

his moder Elene :

10

wæs þiſſes londes quene.

þat child wæx and wel iþæh :

Godes mildce him wes neh.

Bruttes him weoren liðe :

& he hom luuede fwiðe.

heoweoren his moder cunnes men :

icomen heo wes of Brutten.

& Cuſtanz his fader :

[c. 2.]

inne Rome wes i-uoftrèd.

al þat þet child mid æȝen iſæh :

al hit to bæh.

21

þeo þ child wes uorð iuæred :

& wes of twealf ȝere.

Cuſtance hehte þe king :

and þat child Coſtantin.

þat leof was on erþe :

alle Brut-leode.

þe child wex and wel iþeh :

and Bruttes him lofuede ſwiþe.

³his moder was a Brut.

[c. 2.]

and Coſtance his fader :

in Rome was i-voſtrèd.

al þat þe child iſeh :

al hit him to beh.

þo þat child was :

of fulle twealf ȝere.

his body, and gave him his fathers name.' Custance hight the king, and Constantin 'hight' the child, who was dear in 'heart [land] to all 'Britain [Britons];—'his mother Helen was queen of this land.' The child waxed, and well throve; 'Gods favor was nigh him; *the* Britons were obedient to him,' and 'he [the Britons] loved 'them [him] exceedingly. 'They were his mothers kinsmen;' 'she was born of Britons [his mother was a Briton], and Custance, his father, was fostered in Rome. All that the child saw 'with eyes,' all it submitted [to him]. When the child was 'forth advanced *in age*, and was' of [full] twelve years, *there* was 'no man in this land [none

¹ R. Cuſtanz.² Cōſtantin *pr. m.*³ One line, if not two, is here deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

nes na man i þis ærd :
 þ weore of heortē fwa hærd.
 þene Coſtantin wes wrað :
 ne durſten na mon ſpeken him wið.
 & þenne he wes bliðe :
 he wes uule liðe.
 Swiðe he luuede¹ alcne cniht :
 þe wæs leof to deſ riht.
 & his Bruttifce cun :
 ſwiðe hīe bihoʒeden.
 & his Romanifce cun :
 wurðliche him radde.
 Þa þat child wes of þrittene² ʒere :
 þa iwærð his fader vnueren.
 þat wes þe uteneſten³ ræd :
 þat Cuſtance þe kīg iwærð dæd.
 & Bruttus nome þat child :
 & makeden heom þer of anne king.
 & Coſtantin þe ʒunge king :
 mid wiſdome heold þis lond.
 ſwulc he weore an æld :
 kingen alre baldeſt.
 Þa wes a þen ilke time :
 þo he was of þrittene ʒere :
 þo iwarþ his fader onviere.
 þat was þe latemiſte read :
 þat Cuſtance iwarþ dead.
 And Brutteſ an hiʒeng :
 makede Coſtantin king.
 and Coſtantin heold þis lond :
 in his owene hond.
 alſe he were of heolde :
 king alre boldeſt.
 þo was in þan dome :

Anno
 g[racie]
 .ccc.

of his age] that 'was of heart so hardy [had the same might]. When 'Constantin [he] was wrath, durst no man speak with him; and when he was blithe, he was full mild. Much he loved each knight who 'was lief to judge [loved for to say] right, 'and his British kin greatly him honored, and his Romanish kin worthily him counselled.' When 'the child [he] was of thirteen years, then became his father sick;—that was the final lot, that Custance the king should die. And *the* Britons 'took the child, and made them thereof a [quickly made Constantin] king; and Constantin, 'the young king,' held this land 'with wisdom [in his own hand], as if he were of age a king boldest of all! Then was in the 'same time [realm] an emperor 'in

¹ The letters *de* are interlined.² The letters *ne* are interlined.³ *R.* utemeſten.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

a kæifere inne Rome.
Max[enz]. he wes ihæten Maxenz :'
 þe wurfe hine luuede.
 þ̅ wes þe forcuððeste mon :'
 þe quic wes on liue.
 Al Rome he fordude :'
 þurh his muchele misbode.
 alle þa heze men :'
 þe¹ he hatede to dæðe.
 & alle þa hæne :'
 mið² harme he igrætte.
 þer weoren monie i Rome :'
 riche & wel idone. [f. 63^b. c. 1.]
 þe bi-læfdan al þat leoden :'
 & fluzen of þan londe.
 for þan scamen & for þan bifemare :'
 þe heom dude þe kæifere.
 & comen to þissen londe :'
 to Costāstine³ þā kinge.
 & menden to him heore fæder :'
 & heore forh-fiðes.
 & þan vnimete scome :'
 & þenne muche grome.

10

an kaifer at Rome.
 he was ihote [M]axenz :'
 þe feōd hine lofuede.
 þat was þe forcouþest man :'
 þat cwick were on erþe.
 Al Rome he for-dude :'
 þorh his mochele misbode.
 alle þe eze men :'
 he hatede to deaþe.
 so þat þorh his sconde :'
 manie floze of þan londe.
 for þan fame and þe bifmare :'
 þat heom dude þe kaifer.
 an comen to þisse lond :'
 to Constantin þan kinge.
 and menden hir for :'
 ou hii ilore hadde.
 and of þan onimete fame :'
 and of þan mochele grame.

[at] Rome; he was named Maxenz,—the 'Worse [Fiend] loved him!—who was the wickedest man that was 'quick in life [alive on earth]. All Rome he destroyed through his mickle ill-rule; all the noble men he hated to death, 'and all the poor with harm he greeted.' 'There were many in Rome, rich and brave, who left all the 'folk, and [so that through his wickedness many] fled from the land, for (on account of) the shame and 'for' the disgrace that the emperor did to them, and came to this land, to Constantin the king, and told 'him' their grief, 'and their sorrowful haps [how they had *been* injured], and [of] the unmeet shame, and [of] the mickle injury

¹ *Redundant?*² *mid?*³ *R. Costātine.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe Maxenz heom hæuede idon :'	þat Maxenz heom hadde idon :'	[f.54. c.1.]
& idriuen of heore lōde.	an of hire londe i-dreue.	
For nuften heo nenne king :'	For nuften hii to wā mene :	
þe heo mihten to kennen.		
swa heo mihten to Coſtantine :		
for he wes of heore cunne.	bote to hire cunne.	
ȝeorne heo hine beden :	ȝeorne hii him beode :	
þat he heom ſcolden ræden.	þat he ȝam folde reade.	
hu heo mihten awrækē :		
heore wanfiðes.		10
vppe Maxenze :		
þe heore monſcipe hæfde auællled.		
Swa longe heo ræd ȝeornden :		
þat he heom ræd ȝette.		
þat he wolde riden :		
wið ræizere ſtrengðe.		
forð in to Rome :		
& þa riche biwinnen.		
& wreken heom on Maxenz :		
þe his cun hæfde i-ſcæd.	20 Constantin bi-þohte :	
& Coſtantī þe king gode :	wat he don mihte.	
gaderede uærde.	he gaderede ferde :	
vnimete folc :	of manian erþe.	
mōianes cunnes.		
þe king gon to ridē :	þe king gan to ride :	

that Maxenz had done them, and driven from their land. For they knew 'no king [not to whom to speak] 'that they might make *it* known to, as they might to Constantin,' 'for he was of [except to] their kin. Earnestly they prayed him that he should them advise, 'how they might avenge their calamities upon Maxenz, who had laid low their honor. So long they yearned counsel, that he granted them counsel,—that he would ride with bold strength forth into Rome, and conquer the realm, and avenge them on Maxenz, who had injured his kin.' 'And Constantin the good king [Constantin bethought *him* what he might do; he] gathered *an* army, 'innumerable folk' of many a 'kind [land];—the king gan to ride toward

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

touward Rom-leoden.

þat he cō to Rome :

mid ræzere strengðe.

þe king wes swiðe god cniht :

& he ȝarkede his fiht.

& he Maxenz of-floh :

þer wes blisse inoh.

þa weoren Rom-leoden :

bliðen on heore þeoden.

þa wes Costatī þe king :

kæifere of Rome.

and þer wes Elene þe halie quene :

& hire þreo æmmes.

þe ældeste hæhte Leonin :

Trahern & Marī.

þe eorles weoren wel idone :

Costantin heom bitæhte Rome.

to ræden þa leden :

to dihten þere þeoden.

& þa læuedi Ælene :

þa halie quene.

to Jerufalem wende :

mid richere genge.

& spæc wid¹ þā elde :

toward Romleode.

þat he com to Rome :

mid rehere strengþe.

þe king was fwiþe god cniht :

and he ȝarkede his fiht.

and he Maxēz of-sloh :

þar was wele i-noh.

þo was Constantin þe king :

kaifer of Rome.

and þar was Eleyne :

and hire þreo heames :

þat þus were i-hote.

Traharn Marin and Leonin :

þeos were eorles wel idon.

Constantin ȝam bi-tahte :

al Romleode.

20 And Eleyne þe leafdi :

to Jerufalem wende.

and spæc wiþ holde :

Traher.
Marin.

the Rome-folk, so that he came to Rome with fierce strength. The king was knight most good, and he made ready his fight, and he slew Maxenz,—there was 'bliss [weal] enow!—'then were *the* Rome-folk blithe in their land.' Then was Constantin the king emperor of Rome; and there was Helen, the holy queen, and her three uncles; 'the eldest hight Leonin,—Trahern, and Marin [that thus were named, Traharn, Marin, and Leonin];—'the [these] earls were brave! Constantin delivered to them 'Rome [all *the* Rome-folk], 'to counsel the people, *and* to govern the nation.' And the lady Helen, 'the holy queen,' went to Jerusalem 'with *a* rich retinue,' and spake with 'the' elders of the Jews that were bold; 'and she promised

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

of þan Judean þe weoren balde.	of Jues þan ¹ weren bolde.
& heo heom bihehte :	
swiðe mucle ² æhte.	
þat heo hire scolden ræden :	and hii hire gonne reade :
to vinden þa rode.	þat finde heo folde þe rode.
þe Crift ure lauerd :	þat Crift vre lou ² d :
alifden on þes middelærd.	þar on was i-ftonge.
þeo Judeus heo fohten :	þo Judas hire fohte :
& þere quene heo itæhten.	and þe cwene bi-tahte.
þa wes heo fwa bliðe :	þo was 3eo fo bliþe :
10 swa heo nes neuere ær on liue.	fo 3eo nas neuere on liue.
& heo vele 3ere :	an 3eo fale 3er :
þurh þan ³ wunede ⁴ þere.	mid þan rode wonede þar.
þe while hire æem Leonin :	þe wile Leonyn hire heam :
wes in Rome mid Coſtantin.	in Roma was mid Coſtantin. [c. 2.]
Of þan broðeren he wes ældeſt :	Of þan broþers he waſ eldeſt :
of wiſdome alre feleſt.	and wiſeſt and feleſt.
nomen þa Romwiſen :	nemen þe wiſe of Rome :
& wīman him 3euen.	and wimman him 3efue.
of þan hehſte cunne :	20 of þan heheſte cunne :
of Romanifce monnen.	of Romaniffe manne.
þa wiſman wes biwedded :	þe womman was i-wedded :
& Leonin heo hæfde to hiſ bedde.	an hi-ladd to hiſ bedde.

*Anno gracie
ccc°. ii°. Eusebius
papa ſedit
viiij^{to}.
menſes. Sub
huius tem-
pore inuen-
ta eſt crux
domini, v°. Nonas Mai.*

them very much wealth,' 'that they should [and they gan] counsel her 'to [that she should] find the Rood, 'on which [that] Christ our Lord 'redeemed this middle-earth [was pierced thereon]. The Jews sought it, and delivered 'it' to the queen. Then was she so blithe, as she never was 'ere' in life, and she many years dwelt there 'by [with] the Rood, the while her uncle, Leonin, was in Rome with Constantin. Of the brothers he was eldest, 'of wisdom best of all [and wisest and best]; the wise *men* of Rome took and gave him *a* wife of the highest kin of Romanish men. The woman was wedded, and 'Leonin had her [led] to his bed; he did as

¹ þat?² Or *muche*; the MS. is doubtful.³ þan rode?⁴ The letters *de* are interlined.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he dude alfe hit is wune :	he dude afe hit his wone :
he streonede hire on enne fone.	on hire he strene one fone.
þa þat child wes iboren :	
þa funden heo him hehne nome.	
heo hehten hine forð riht anan :	þat child was ihote :
þene hæȝe Maximian.	Maximian þe gode.
& Coſtantin þe king :	[f. 64. c. 1.] and Coſtantin þe king :
luuede ſwiðe þat child.	þat child louede þorh alle þing.
þus hit ferde þære :	þus hit eode þare :
wurf hit ferde here.	10 worfe hit ferde here.
þa wes inne Walſce londe :	þo was in Walſe lōd :
a duc þe wes fwiðe ſtrong.	a duck þat was ſwiþe ſtrong.
Octaues he hehte :	Octaues he hehte :
he wes of heȝe cūne.	he was of heȝe cunne.
he cleopede to Brutlonde :	
þ hit wes his icunde.	
& al þat þe sæ bi-gæð :	
Octaues wes fwide ¹ mah.	
he nom muchele uærde :	
& wenden ȝeond þiſſen ærde.	20
ærſt he floh þæ eorles :	
& þrallede þæ chærles.	
he heomelede þa reuen :	
nalde he mænne ² bi-lefuen.	

Octaues.

it is usage, he begat on her a son. 'When the child was born, then found they for him a noble name;' 'they called him forth-right anon [the child was named] Maximian the 'noble [good]; and Constantin the king loved the child 'greatly [through all things];—thus it fared there, *but* worse it fared here. Then was in Welsh-land a duke who was most strong; Octaves he hight, he was of noble kin; 'he claimed Britain, that it was his territory, and all that the sea surroundeth. Octaves was most valiant; he took a great host, and marched over this land; first he slew the earls, and enslaved the churls; he humbled the reeves, none would he leave';—

¹ fwide?² nænne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

al þis kineliche lond :
 Octauus nom to his hond.
 þis word com to Costantin :
 in Rome þer he wunede in.
 hu Octauus hauede idon :
 his folc iflaȝen and ihon.
 Særi wes þa Costantin :
 & forhful ā heorte.
 for he ne mihte¹ nanes weies cu-
 to þiffere kineriche.
 for he hauede al Rome-lond :
 þe stod an his aȝere hond.
 & his moder Elene :
 him hafde ifend æfter.
 þa nom he Traher his æm :
 & tæhte hine to rade.
 & þis lond him bi-tahte :
 biwinnen ȝef he hit mahte.
 for him feolf Costantī :
 ne com he nauere mare her ī.
 Ah he nom folc & æhte :
 & Traher bi-tehte.

mid mucheleŕ uerde :
 fende hine to þiffen ærde.

[c. 2.]

al þis kinelōd :
 Octaues nam to his honde.
 þis word com to Constantin :
 in Rome þar he wonede in.
 ou Octaues adde idon :
 his folk i-flaȝe and an-hon.
 Sori was þo Constantin :
 & forhfulle on heorte.
 for he ne mihte none weies come :
 to þiffe kineriche.
 for he hadde al Rome-lond :
 þat stod in his owē hond.
 and his moder Eleýne :
 he hadde ifende after.
 þo nam he his moder heam :
 Traharn ihote.
 and þis lond him bi-tahte :
 awinnet of² he mihte.
 for him feolf Costantī :
 ne com he nauere mare her ī.
 Ah he nom folc & æhte :
 & Traher bi-tehte.
 mid mucheleŕ uerde :
 fende hine to þiffen ærde.

bi-tahte him mochele ferde :

for lede to þiffe erþe.

all this 'kingly land [kingdom] Octaves took in his hand. This word came to Constantin, in Rome wherein he dwelt, how Octaves had done, his folk slain and hung. Sorry was then Constantin, and sorrowful in heart, because he might *in* no wise come to this kingdom; for he had all Rome-land, which stood in his own hand, and his mother Helen 'him [he] had sent after. Then took he 'Trahern his [his mothers] uncle, [named Trahern,] 'and betook him to counsel,' and delivered him this land, if he it might win;— 'for Constantin himself never more came he herein. But he took folk and wealth, and 'delivered 'to Trahern [him], 'with' *a* great force; 'sent

¹ This word is added in the margin by a later hand.² awinne hit ȝif?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& for he wes his moder æm :
 ȝef he mihte Octauus flæn.
 & he mihte fwa wel don :
 halde him feolf þisne dō.
 Traher forð wende :
 toward þissen londe.
 mid ferde mid þan mæste :
 he com to Portchæstre.
 þa Bruttes weoren swiðe whæte :
 & heolden fæsten heore ȝæte. 10
 & Traher heom fæht wið : [grið. þe Brut in þan þrid dai :
 & þæne þridde dæi heo ȝerden¹ grið of him beode.
 & Traher ferde binnen : and Traharn wende wip ine :
 & Portchæstre wes biwunne. þus was þe borh a-wonne.
 & þonnene he gon wende : And þanene he gan wende :
 riht to Winchæstre. into Winchestre.
 & Octauus wes icumen bi-uoren : and Octauef was icome bi-vore :
 in to þære burhȝe. into þare borwe.
 to-gædere heo comen : to-gadere hii comen :
 heo fæhten & floȝen. 20 hii fohte hii flowen.
 þ̅ flæht ne mihte :
 na mare beon i fihte.

He ifæh his muchelne lure : Traharn ifeh his mochele lure :

him [for to lead] to this land ; 'and for he was his mothers uncle, if he might slay Octaves, and he might do so well,—to hold himself this realm.' Trahern forth proceeded 'toward [into] this land ; with *an* army 'with' the most (greatest) he came to Portchester. The Britons 'were exceeding brave, and held fast their gates, and Trahern fought with them, and' [in] the third day 'they' 'yearned [prayed] peace [of him] ; and Trahern marched within, 'and Portchester [thus was the burgh] won. And thence he gan proceed 'right to [into] Winchester ; and Octaves was come before into the burgh. Together they came ; they fought 'and [they] slew, 'so that no greater slaughter might be in fight' ! 'He [Trahern] saw his

¹ ȝerden ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& nom him oðerne cure.

& ferde bi nihte :

to þære fæ rihte.

Ær Bruttes hit mihtē iwitē :

his ferde wes al ifcipen.

& forð heo gunnen wenden :

i Scot-londe.

& [he al Scotlond :]

iwon to his aȝere hōd.

& he wende ouer Humbre : 10

mid hæhzere strēgðe.

& in þiffere Bruttene :

burȝes he awefte.

Octaus þ̅ iherde :

þe king wes an ærde.

& he mid his folke :

þiderward fufde.

to-gadere heo comen : [f. 64^b.c.1.]

& fuhtē ful fone.

Nu hæfde Traher :

swiðe muchel folc þer.

Scottes & Peohtes :

& Romanifce cnihtes.

and wende awe¹ bi nihte.

into Scotlonde :

mid his ferde ftronge.

and he al Scotlond :

wan to his owene hond.

and he wende ouer Humbre :

mid reȝere ftrengþe.

Octaues þis ihorde :

and him to-ȝeines wende.

to-gadere hii comen :

and fohte wel fone.

Nou hadde Traharn :

moche folk igadered.

of Scottes of Peutes :

of Romaniffe cnihtes.

great loss, 'and took him *another* choice,' and departed [away] by night 'right to the sea. Ere *the* Britons might know it, his host was all shipped, and forth they gan proceed' into Scotland [with his strong army], and [he all Scotland] won to his own hand; and he passed over *the* Humber with great strength, 'and he ravaged *the* burghs in this Britain.' Octaves heard 'that [this], 'who was king in *the* land,' and 'he with his folk thitherward marched [advanced against him];—together they came, and fought 'full [well] soon. Now Trahern had 'very' much folk 'there [assembled, of] Scots, 'and [of] Peohtes, 'and [of] Romanish knights. 'Trahern fought

¹ awei?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Traher feht wið Octaues :

& he hine fone ouercō.

Scottes huuen up muchelne ræm : Traharn his folk remede :

& Octaues folc nam flē.

and þe oþ⁹ gonne to fleonde.

& Romanifce beornes :

flozen þa Bruttes.

þa wes Octaues wa :

& he wende to þere fæ.

Octaues wende to þar fée :

bi þere sæ ftronde :

þer he fcipen funde.

10 þar he fip funde.

in to þane fcipen he lað :

he and þritti cnihtef :

& in to Norwæize he draf.

to Norwei wende.

nafde he of his fihte :

bute an & þritti cnihtes.

& alle þa oðere weoren inomen :

and alle þe oþer weren inome :

& Traheres men bi-cumen.

and Traharn his men bi-come.

& fiftene þufend iflæzen :

and fiftene þufend iflawe :

& idon of heore lif-dazen.

and idon of lif-daiȝe.

þa wes in Norweoȝe ærd :

þo waf in Norweie his erþ :

[Com]pert.

a king þe hæhte Compert.

20

a king þat hehte Compert.

Octaues him fpæc wið :

& ȝernde mildeliche his grið.

& feide him hu Traher :

Octaues him tolde ou Traharn :

mid teone hine hauede iflæmed. hine hadde iflemid.

with Octaves, and he soon overcame him'; 'the Scots raised up a great shout [Trahern his folk shouted], and 'Octaves folk took flight [the others gan to flee]; 'and the Romanish men slew the Britons. Then was Octaves woe, and 'he [Octaves] proceeded to the sea, 'by the sea strand' there he found a ship; 'into the ship he went, and into Norway he drove [he and thirty knights went to Norway]. 'He had but one and thirty knights out of his fight,' and all the others were captured, and became 'Traherns [Trahern his] men, and fifteen thousand were slain, and deprived of 'their' life-day. Then was in 'Norwegian [Norway his] land a king that hight Compert. Octaves 'spake with him, and mildly asked his favor, and 'said [told] to him how Trahern 'with injury' had banished him:—"And if thou

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ȝif þu me wult wlstē :
mid muchele þine ferden.
þat ich maȝen aȝæn cumē :
to mine kineriche.

ich þe wulle luuien :
& halden þe for lauerd.
mid fæhte & mid fibbe :
þa while þ̅ ich libbe.
& after mine dæiȝen :
mine duȝeðe þe bi-tachen. 10

þa ænswærede Compert :
þe king wes of þā ærd. [c. 2.]
þu fælt in þisse ȝere :
beon mid me hære.
& deornliche fende :
in to Brutlonde.

mid weorden and mid writen :
bi monnen þe heom cunnen witen.
& fenden þine fonden :
to þine bezfte freonden. 20
bi-hæten seoluer & gold :
muchel æhte & lond.

ȝif ai mon mihte Traher king :
tuhten to dæðe.

mid drenche oðer mid dweomer-
oðer mid fteles bite.

And ȝef þou me woldest helpe :
to winne mine riche. [c. 2.]
ich þe wolde lofuie :
euere in mine lifue.
and þe for louerd holde :
wile þat ich libbe.

þo answerede Compert :
þat king was of þilke erþ.
þou falt al þis ȝer :
beo mid me her.
an deorneliche fende :
in to Brutlonde.

ȝif eni man mihte Traharn king :
[lace : bringe to deaþe.

'wilt [wouldst] me help 'with thy powerful army, that I may again come' to [win] my kingdom, I will thee love [ever in my life], and hold thee for lord 'with amity and with peace, the' while that I live; and after my day, deliver to thee my people.'" Then answered Compert, who was king of 'the [that] land: "Thou shalt 'in [all] this year be with me here, and send secretly into Britain, 'with word and with writ, by men that can understand them; and send thy messengers to thy best friends, promise silver and gold, much wealth and land'; if any man might bring Trahern the king to death 'with draught (poison), or with magic, or with steels

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

oðer mid æie crafte :
 bi-winnen him his mahte.
 þēne mihtes þu aȝen faren :
 mucle þe laffe weoren þi kare.
 þēne wlle i¹ þe aȝan bringen :
 & makiē þe to kingē.

Al dude Octaues :

Compertes lare.

sende his sōde :

in to þisse londe.

10

þurh þan ilke crafte :

þe Compert king hī tæhte.

& Traher wes on Bruttene :

king swiðe bliðe.

næfde he of Octaue :

caræ næuer nane.

na mare þeh he næf iboren :

oðer i watere forloren.

Traher wes i Lundene :

bliðe mid his leoden.

20

fulle feouen nihte :

bliðe mid his cnihten.

þa wes i Kent an eorl :

Aldolf.

Aldolf i-haten.

Al dude Octaues :

Compert his lore.

Ine Kent was on eorl :

Eldol ihote.

bite (wound), or with any craft deprive him of his might, then mightest thou return,—much the less were thy care,—then would I thee back bring, and make thee king.” Octaves did all ‘Comperts [Compert his] instruction; ‘he sent his messengers into this land through the same craft that king Compert taught him. And Trahern was in Britain king most blithe; he had never any care of Octaves, no more than if he were not born, or in water destroyed (drowned)! Trahern was in London, blithe with his people; full seven nights blithe with his knights. Then’ was in Kent an earl, named

¹ ich?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

feond he wes þes kinges :'	he lofde lute þis kinge :'
for Octaues þingē.	for Octaues his þinge.
ofte he ferde to þan kinge :'	ofte he verde to þan kinge :'
& hernede ¹ tiðinge.	hercnie tidinge.
Chæpmen bunden heore ware :'	þo feide me him ware :'
þa wolde þe king faren.	þat þe king wolde vare.
Aldolf ferde him bi-foren :'	Eldol wende him bi-vore :'
mid feower hundred cnihten.	mid fif hundred cnihtes.
& leop ut of ane wude :'	and leop ut of one wodc :'
wunder wel iwepned.	10 wonder wel iwepnid.
Traher king he þer fond :'	Traharn king he þar fond :'
& mid spere hine ftong.	and mid on spere hine þorh ftong.
& his muchele uerde :'	and alle his men :'
fette to fleonde.	fette to flende.
& Aldolf heom after droh :'	and Eldol after droh :'
and muchel folc he þer of-floh.	and mochel folk he þere floh.
& seððen he uerde in to Kent :'	And suppe he wende into Kent :'
in to ane fstronge castle.	in to one castle.
& fende an hizinge :'	and fende an hizenge :'
after Octaue þan kinge.	20 after Octaues þan kinge.
& he anan cō :'	And he an hizenge :'
to þiffere kineriche.	com to his riche.
to kinge he wes vnder-fon :'	to king he was onder-fon :

Aldolf; 'enemy he was of the [he loved little this] king, on account of Octaves [his] affair; oft he went to the king, 'and hearkened [to hearken] tidings. 'Chapmen bound their ware; then [Then said men to him where that] would the king fare. Aldolf went before him with 'four [five] hundred knights, and leapt out of a wood, wondrously well weaponed. Trahern *the* king he there found, and with [a] spear pierced him [through]; and 'his great host [all his men] set to flight. And Aldolf pursued after 'them,' and much folk he there slew; and afterwards he marched into Kent, into a 'strong' castle, and sent speedily after Octaves the king. And he 'anon [in haste] came 'this kingdom [his realm]; he was received as king,—'then [that]

¹ hercnede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa þuhte hit hin wes ¹ idon.	þat him þohte wel idon.
Heo ² ferde ȝeond þas þeoden :	He verde oueral þeos þeode :
& floh þa Romleoden.	and floh þe Romleode.
þa hæhne & þa riche :	þe pore and þe riche : [f. 55. c. 1.]
alle heo ² floh iliche.	alle he floh iliche.
whar fwa he mihte hine kēnen :	ware fo he mihte eni kenne :
ne læuede he nauer ænne.	ne lefde he neuere anne.
& twa & twēti ȝere :	and two and twenti ȝere :
he wuneden feoððen here.	he wonede fuppe here.
inne griðe & inne friðe : 10	
mid freond-scipe of Brutten.	
þa þe he wes wel ald mon :	þo he was wel hold man :
þa com him uuel on.	þo com him vuel an.
þ̃ vuel hine heold ftronge :	hit heolde hine fo ftrong :
ah he þreowede longe.	þat he ne mihte libbe longe.
þe king hine bi-ðohte :	þe kng ³ hine bi-þohte :
what he don mihte.	wat he don mihte.
whā he mihte bi-tæchen :	wan he mihte bi-take :
al his kineriche.	al his kineriche.
and al his duȝeðe : 20	
æft ⁹ his dæie.	
Mid carte he for to Lundene :	He lette cleopie his heȝe men :
& fette his huftige.	to one grete fpeche.
eorles þer comen :	

seemed 'it' to him well done. He passed over [all] this land, and slew the Rome-folk; the poor and the rich, all he slew alike; wheresoever he might 'him [any] ken, he left never one. And two and twenty years he afterwards dwelt here, 'in peace and in quietness, with friendship of *the* Britons.' When 'that' he was *a* well old man, then came on him sickness; 'the sickness [it] held him [so] strongly, 'but he suffered [that he might not live] long. The king bethought him what he might do; to whom he might deliver all his kingdom, 'and all his people, after his day.' 'With *a* cart he went to London, and set his husting [He caused his noble men to be called to a

¹ him wel?² he?³ R. king.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

riche & wel idone.

& alle þa wife :

þe wuneden on Bruttene. [c. 2.]

þa þe king heom hauede ifæid : þo þe king hadde i-feid :

& bæd heom ræden him ræd. he bad ȝam reade him read.

whæm he mihte bi-tæche : wan he mihte bi-take :

al his kine-riche. al his kineriche.

for nefde he nenne fune : for he nadde bote one dohter :

þe his land mihte halden.

ne child bute ane dohter : 10

þe him wes swiðe deore. þat he lofuede deore.

& hire he wolde bi-tachē : and hire he wolde bi-take :

al his kineriche. al his kine-riche.

& ȝefuen hire lauerd : and ȝefue hire louerd :

þene hæhfte mon of þis ærd. þan beſte of þis erþ.

Summe him ræden a-nan : Somme him radde on¹ :

þat he heo ȝeuen þan eorle Conan. þat he hire ȝefue eorl Conan.

he wes wif and riche :

him heo he mihte bitæche.

oðere þer weoren : 20 oþer þar weren :

þe þiſ nalden ihæren. þat þiſ nolde i-heren.

I Cornwale wes an eorl god : In Cornwale was an eorl god :

þe wes ihaten Cradoc. he was i-hote Cradoc.

he ſtod up i þan huſtīge : he ſtod vp a-non riht :

Cra[*doc*].

great conference]; 'there came earls, rich and brave, and all the wise *men* that dwelt in Britain.' When the king had said 'to them,' 'and [he] bade them advise him counsel, to whom he might give all his kingdom; for he had 'no son, who might hold his land, nor child' but a daughter, 'who was to him most [that he loved] dear; and on her he would bestow all his kingdom, and give her *for* lord (husband), the 'highest man [best] of this land. Some him counselled anon, that he should give her to 'the' earl Conan; he was wise and rich, to him he might deliver her; others there were, who would not this hear. In Cornwall was an earl good, 'who [he] was named Cradoc; he stood up 'in the husting [anon right], and 'thus spake

¹ anon ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and þus spæc wið þan kinge.

and þeof word faide.

Hercne me Octaue :

hercne me kinelauerd.

Hercne me min louerd :

no here ich nenne godne ræd :

ne ihere ich nanne godne read.

þe þe ȝet beo ifæd.

ȝif þu bi-tacheft Conan :

ȝef þou bi-takeft Conan :

þine kineriche.

þine kineriche.

þat word comeð sone :

þat word comeþ sone :

vorð into Rome.

forþ in to Rome.

Helena.

For nu is Ælene :

10

For nou his Eleyne :

Jerusalem quene.

Jerusalem his cwene.

Coſtan[tin].

& þe king Coſtantin :

and þe king Conſtantin : [c. 2.]

& alle his cnihtes mid him.

and alle his cnihtes mid him.

& dæd his þe riche Leonin :

and dead his þe riche Leonin :

& his broðer Marī.

and his broþ⁹ Marin.

& Maximien þe ȝunge cniht :

and Maximian þe ȝonge cniht :

i Rome haldeð muchel fiht.

in Rome holdeþ ſtrong fiht.

& Traher i þiſſe londe :

mid ſpere wes of-ſtungen.

& ælche dæi inne Rome : [f. 65^b. c. 1.]

Maximien þe wel idone.

21

haldeð ſwiðe muchel iwin :

wið Gracien & wið Valantin.

& Coſtantī þe king :

and Conſtantin þe king :

of us ne þencheð naðing.

of vs ne þencheþ no þing.

with the king [said these words]: "Hearken to me, 'Octaves, hearken to me,' 'sovereign [my lord]; I hear no good counsel 'that yet is said to thee'. If thou givest to Conan thy kingdom, the tidings will come soon forth into Rome; for now is Helen 'of Jerusalem [Jerusalem his] queen; and the king Constantin, and all his knights with him; and dead is the powerful Leonin, and his brother Marin; and Maximian, the young knight, in Rome holdeth 'mickle [strong] fight, 'and Trahern in this land was slain with spear. And each day in Rome Maximian the brave maintaineth very great contest with Gracien and with Valantin'; and Constantin the king of us thinketh nothing, and thus are we of Britain 'of friends [clean]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þus we beoð of Bruttene :
freonden biræued.

Bute þu wifliche bitæche :
þine kineriche.

wulleð Romleode :
cumen to þissere þeode.

& for-uaren v̅f mid fehte :
& ure freōd wallen¹.

& maken vnfæhte :

& binimē us ure irihten. 10

þenne þu beoſt forð faren :
ne beon we næuere buten caren.

Ah fend into Rome :
æfter Maximien þā wel idone.

he is fwiðe hende gume :
& he wes Leonines fune.

his fader wes Ælenen æm :
he is of aðele cunne.

& ȝif him þine dohter :
þa þe is fwiðe deore. 20

& make hīe to kinge :
& þine dohter to q̅ne.

þenne mæze we libben :
mid fæhte & mid fibben.

and þus we beoþ of Bruttes :
clene bi-reued.

Bote þou wifliche bi-take :
þine kineriche.

wolleþ Romleode :
come to þisse

and for-fare vs mid fihte :
and houre freondes falle.

wan þou hart forþ fare :
ne we² ham wiþ-ſtonde.

Ac fende into Rome :
after Maximian wel idon.

he his fwiþe riche gome :
and he his Leonines fone.

his fader was Eleyne heam :
of Bruttene cunde³.

and ȝef him hine dohter :
þat þe his swiþe deore.

and make hine to kinge :
þi dohter to cwene.

þanne mawe we libbe :
mid fehte and mid fibbe.

bereaved. Except thou wisely bestowest thy kingdom, the Rome-folk will come to this country, and destroy us with fight, and fell our friends, 'and make strife, and take from us our right'; when thou art dead, we 'shall never be without care [shall not be able to withstand them]. But send into Rome, after Maximian 'the' brave; he is *a* man most 'fair [powerful], and he 'was [is] Leonins son; his father was Helens uncle, 'he is of noble [of British] race. And give him thy daughter, who is to thee most dear, and make him king, 'and' thy daughter queen; then may we live

¹ ivallen?² ne mawe we?³ *Written at first kinge cunde, but the former word expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& a to ure liue :'	and euere to vre lifue :
witen ure leoden.	witie oure freondes.
mid winne & mid wurðſcipe :	mid winne and mid worſipe :
mid muchele wiſdome.	and mid wiſdome.
þa aras Conan :	þo aros Conan :
& ſtod biuorē þan kinge.	and ſtot to-vore þan kinge.
he wes wunderliche wrað :	he was wonderliche wroþ :
for þeos ſpeche him wes lað.	for þeos ſpeche him was loþ.
he ſpæc aȝen Cradoc :	
alſe he hine wolde fordon.	10
Ah ne rohte næuere Cradoc :	Ac ne rohte neuere Cradoc :
of al þat Conan eorl ſpæc. [c. 2.]	of Conanes wraþþe.
for al þat huſtinge :	
þe wes biuoren þan kinge.	
bi-luueden Cradockes ræd :	for alle lofde Cradokes read :
for heo iſeȝen þat hit wes neod.	for hit was wiſliche iſeid.
þu ¹ cleopede Octaues :	þo cleopede Octaues :
Brutlondes lauerd.	king of Brutayne. [f. 55 ^b .c. 1.]
Hail ſeo þu Caradoc ² :	Hail beo þou Cradoc :
	20 wel beo þou Cradoc.
herfore þu ſcælt habben :	her vore þou ſalt habbe :
wurhſcipe muchele.	worſipe heȝe.
Læ me Mauric þinne ſune :	Lean me Mauric þine ſone :
þe is a ſwiðe wiſ gume.	þat [is] a ſwiþe wiſ gome.

with amity and with friendship, and ever in our lives defend our 'people [friends] with joy and with worship, [and] with 'much' wisdom." Then arose Conan, and stood before the king; he was wondrously wrath, for this speech was hateful to him; 'he spake against Cradoc as *if* he would him destroy.' But Cradoc recked never of 'all that earl Conan spake [Conans wrath]; for all 'the husting that was before the king' approved Cradocs counsel, for 'they saw that it was need [it was wisely said]. Then called Octaves, 'Britains lord [king of Britain]: "Hail be thou, Cradoc! [Well be thou, Cradoc!] Herefore thou shalt have 'great [high] worship. Lend me Maurice thy son, who is a man most wise, to go in

¹ þa ?² A line is here deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to uarē a mire neode :
 in to Rom-þeode.
 æfter Maximiane :
 þane richen & þane kene.
 þæt he cume swiðe :
 þe while þe ich beo on liue.
 And ich him wulle bitæchen :
 mine kine-riche.
 and mine dohter Orien :
 to habben to quene.
 & ic wulle Maurike :
 mede bi-tæchen.
 ich ȝeue him Norhhūberlond :
 here mid mire aȝere hond.
 þis ich him bitæchen :
 of mine kine-riche.
 wið þan þe he me brīge :
 Maximien þæ hende.
 Al fwa þe king ȝirde¹ :
 Mauric hit him ȝette.
 he ferde uord² rihtes :
 mid þreom wīfe cnihtes.
 þ̅ he com to Rome :
 to Maximiene.
 þer wes muchel vnfrið :

to wende in mine neode :
 touward Romleode.
 after Maximian :
 þe riche and þe kene man.
 þat he come fwiþe :
 wile ich ham a-lifue.
 And ich him wolfe bi-teche :
 mine kineriche.
 ... mine dohter Oriene :
 to habbe to cwene.
 And ich wolfe Mauric :
 mede bi-take.
 ich him ȝefue Norþhumberlond :
 here mid min owe hond.
 wiþ þan þat he me brīge :
 Maximian þan hende.
 Al fwa þe king ȝirde :
 Mauric verde vorþ riht :
 mid þreo wīfe cnihtes.
 forte þat he come :
 to Maximian to Rome.

Oriene.

my need 'into [toward] Rome-land, after Maximian, the rich and the keen [man], that he come quickly, 'the' while 'that' I 'be [am] alive. And I will deliver to him my kingdom, and my daughter Oriene to have for queen. And I will bestow reward on Maurice; I give him Northumberland here with mine own hand; 'this I bestow on him *out* of my kingdom,' on condition that he bring me Maximian the fair." 'All as the king desired Maurice it granted him'; 'he [Maurice] proceeded forth-right with three wise knights until [that] he came to Maximian at Rome. 'There was mickle strife; in

¹ ȝirnde ?² uorð ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in al þā londe nas na grið.

ah mid vnfriðe þer wes muchelwin: þar was fiht an lutel¹ win: [tin.

mid Gracien & mid Ualantin. bi-twixte him Gracien and Valen-

heo duden Maximiene: hii dude Maximian:

vnimete teone². onimete teone. [nome:

muchel lond heo hæfden binomē: moche lond hii hadde hine bi-

ære þider come Maurich þe gume. þo com Mauric þe gome.

Sone fwa Maximiane i-fæh: [f. 66. Sone so Maximian ifeh:

swa he him to bæh. ^{c.1.]} he to hī beh.

& fæire hine igrætte: 10

mid guðfulle worden.

& he iradliche:

lædde hine to ræde.

& he þus spæc: and he þus spæc:

wunderliche feire. wonderliche faire.

Hercne Maximian: Hercne me Maximian:

þu ært of mucche cunne. þou hart of mochele cunne.

þu weore Elene æmes fune:

of hæhze cunne þu ært icumen.

Ær ich hider uore: 20 Er ich hider verde:

nis hit nawhit zære. nis hit noht zare.

Octaues ure king:

i Lundene heold his husting. Octauf heold his speche³.

all the land was no peace, but with strife' there was [fight and] great conflict 'with [betwixt him] Gracien and 'with' Valentin. They did to Maximian injury unmeet; much land they had taken [from him] 'ere [when] the man Maurice 'thither' came. So soon as Maximian saw *him*, he came to him, 'and greeted him fair with goodly words; and he (Maurice) prudently led him to counsel,' and he thus spake wondrously fair: "Hearken [to me], Maximian, thou art of great race; 'thou wert Helens uncles son, of noble lineage thou art come.' Ere I hither came,—it is 'no whit [not] of yore,—Octaves, 'our king, in London' held his 'husting [conference];

¹ mochel?

² The last two letters of teone are by second hand sup. ras.

³ A line is here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ̅ huſtinge wes god :
 hit wes witene-imot.
 vnhæle & ælde :
 hæueð þene king vnbaldeð.
 þer wes moni cniht god :
 & þe king heom æxede ræd.
 wham he mihte bitæchen :
 his dohter & his riche.
 & alle his doʒeðe :
 æfter his dæie. 10
 þreo eorles anan :
 icure þe eorl Canaan¹.
 þat me ſculde him Brutlond :
 bitachen al on his hond.
 & þa fæire Oriene :
 þes kinges dohter to q̅ne.
 Conanes eorldom :
 Kent is ihaten.
 & mi fader iſ an icorren eorl :
 Cornwalen lauerd. 20
 he is ihaten Caradoc :
 he is of þine cunne.
 & ich hatte Mauric :
 þe mæſte of his childeren.
 þa heo hæfden a-nan :

for vneale and heolde :
 haueþ hine on-baldeð.
 þar was mani cniht god :
 and [þe] king am axede read.
 wam he mihte bi-take :
 his dohter and his riche. [c. 2.]
 and alle his folk :
 after his daie.
 þreo eorles anon :
 choſe þan eorl Conan.

'the husting was good, it was *a* meeting of councillors,' [for] sickness and age hath enfeebled 'the king [him]. There was many *a* good knight; and the king asked counsel of them, on whom he might bestow his daughter and his realm, and all his folk after his day. Three earls anon chose the earl Conan; 'that Britain should be delivered to him all in his hand, and the fair Oriene, the kings daughter, for queen. Conans earldom is named Kent.' And my father 'is a chosen earl, lord of Cornwall; he is named' Cradoc; 'he is of thy kindred; and I hight Maurice, the eldest of his children. When they had anon thus chosen Conan, then leapt up my father

¹ *R. Conaan.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þus icoren Conan.	
þa lep mi fader up :	
swulc hit an liun weore.	
& wið-feide þene cure :	þane read wiþ-ftod.
bi-foren ure kinge.	
þer wes swiðe muchel dune :	[c.2.]
þeines þer dremden.	
& mi fader Caredoc :	and Cradoc makede lust :
makede lust & þus spæc.	and to þan king spac þus.
While wes Elene :	10
Custances quene.	
Ælene hæfde enne æm :	
þe æðele wes on londe.	
he wes i-haten Leonin :	
uorð he ferde mid Costantin.	
Traher hæhte his broðer :	
& Marin þe oðer.	
T ^a her i þiffen londe :	
wes iflæzen mid worng ¹ .	
Conanes fader hine floh :	20
þat wes swiðe muchel woh.	
for her ² king wende :	
þat heo weoren ifreonde.	
Lufteð wel B ^a ttes :	Lufteþ wel Bruttus :
þe her beoð bi-hælues.	þat her beoþ bi-haluef.

as if it were a lion, and' opposed the 'choice [counsel], 'before our king. There was exceeding great din; thanes there clamored'; and 'my father' Cradoc made silence, and thus spake [to the king]: "'Awhile was Helen Custances queen; Helen had an uncle, who was noble in land; he was named Leonin, forth he fared with Constantin. Trahern hight his brother, and Marin the other. Trahern in this land was slain with wrong; Conans father slew him,—that was very great injury, for Trahern *the* king weened that they were friends.' Listen well, Britons, that are here beside.

¹ wronge?² Traher?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Leonī hadde ænne sune :
 & inne Rome he wuneð.
 Maximien he hatte :
 of þan aðele cunne.
 Sēde we to Rome :
 & haten hine cumen fone.
 & in ure huftige :
 hæhuen hine to kinge.
 & þa feire Oriene :
 bithæchen him to q̄ne. 10
 þenne mazen we libben :
 mid fæhten & mid fibben.
 þus spæc mi fader Caradoc :
 biforn þan folke.
 þa andswerede þe king :
 hit wes him swiðe iqueme.
 & alle his beornen :
 þe wunieð on Brutene.
 bute Conaan wes swiðe wræð :
 for þe cure him wes læð. 20
 Cleope nu to ræde :
 þine rædʒiuen gode.
 & sæie me her of andswere :
 for nu to marwen ich wulle faren.
 þa wef Maximien :

Leonin hafde ane sone :
 and in Rome he woneþ.
 Maximian hi-hote :
 of Bruttene cunne.
 To þe ich ham ifend :
 þorþ hire alre read.
 þat þou come to him :
 ād he þe wole make king.
 and his dohter Oriene :
 to habbe to cwene.

Maxi-
m[ien].

Leonin had a son, and in Rome he dwelleth; 'he hight [named] Maximian; of 'the noble [British] race. 'Send we to Rome, and pray him to come soon, and in our husting raise him to *be* king, and the fair [To thee I am sent through counsel of them all, that thou shouldest come to him, and he will make thee king, and his daughter] Oriene 'bestow on him [to have] for queen; 'then may we live with amity and with friendship." Thus spake my father Cradoc before the folk. Then answered the king; it was most pleasing to him, and to all his men that dwell in Britain; but Conan was very wrath, for the choice to him was odious. Call now to counsel thy good councillors, and say me here of answer, for now to-morrow I will

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

for þisse wordeswide ¹ fæin. [f. 66 ^b . c. 1.]	for þisse worde fwiþe fain.
he cleope his rædʒiuen ⁊	he cleopede to reade ⁊
& eoden to rune.	alle his wife.
þe ræd wes sone iræd ⁊	þe read was sone irad ⁊
al swa Mauric hit bad.	for do þat Mauric hine bad.
Stille iwende fone ⁊	Stille he wende fone ⁊
Maximien of Rome.	Maximian of Rome.
i þan seouen nihte ⁊	in þan fouenihte ⁊
mid alle his cnihten.	mid alle his cnihtes.
wenden þa Rō-leoden ⁊	10 wende þa Rō-leoden ⁊
þat he wolde to heore vn-neode.	
þ he wolden fehten ⁊ [cnihtes ² .	
aʒan Valentin & Gracian mid his	
for a heo weoren auaren ³ ⁊	
of Maximian & of his hīrde.	
Ah anan heo ⁴ wende ⁊	Ac anon he wende ⁊
toward þiffen londe.	toward þisse londe.
& fwa he gon liðen ⁊	and so he gon liþe ⁊
into Londēne.	into Londene.
faiir-lac he gon brīge ⁊	20 fair-lock he gan bringe ⁊
Octaue þan kingē.	Octaues þan kinge.
& þe king him for ⁵ ʒef ⁊	and þe king þar vore him ʒaf ⁊

depart.” Then was Maximian most glad for these tidings; he called [all] his ‘councillors [wise men] ‘and went’ to counsel; the counsel was soon advised all as [for to do what] Maurice ‘it [him] prayed. Secretly [he] went soon, Maximian, *out* of Rome; *within* the se’nnight with all his knights; ‘the Rome-folk weened that he would *go* to their harm, that he would fight against Valentin and Gracien with his knights, for ever they were afraid (?) of Maximian and of his troops.’ But anon he proceeded toward this land, and so he arrived in London; presents he gan bring to Octaves the king, and the king him [therefore] gave his daughter for queen.

¹ swiðe?² These three last words are, apparently, superfluous, and repeated from a previous line. A plummet mark in the margin of the MS. shows there is some error here.³ auæred?⁴ he?⁵ Some attempt has been made to erase this word.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

his dohter to quene.

his dohter to cwene.

þa wes king Maximien :

þo was king Maximian :

hit þuhte Bruttes i-don wel.

hit þohte Bruttes wel idon.

And Conaan eorl mid wraððen :

And Conan eorl mid wreppe :

wende to Scotten.

wende to Scottes.

& monie Scottes him buȝen to :

and he þare :

& ane burh bigūnen.

ane borh makede.

næs þa in al þan ende :

burh al swa hende.

þa þeo burh wef al imaked :

10

mid muchelere strengðe.

he fette hire æne nome :

æft⁹ him seoluen.

ofte he ræd hire þurh & þurh :

hofte he rod þorh :

& hehte heo Cuninges-burh.

and hehte hine Conanes-borh. [f.56.c.1.]

nu and æuere mare :

nou and euere more :

þe nome ftondeð þere.

þe name ftondeþ þare.

Conaan ladde ferde :

Conan ladde ferde :

in þan norð ærde.

in þan norþ ende.

he hatede Maximien :

20

he hatete Maximian :

þat abohte momi¹ mon.

þat a-bohte mani man.

þa wise men of þisse londe :

[c.2.]

þe wise of þisse londe :

þe luueden þas leoden.

makeden huftinge :

makede paifinge.

Then was Maximian king; it seemed to the Britons done well. And earl Conan with wrath went to *the* Scots; 'and many Scots came to him,' and 'began [he there made] a burgh; 'in all the world then was not *a* burgh so fair! When the burgh was all made, with much strength, he set on it a name after himself'; oft he rode 'it through and' through, and named it Conans-burgh; now and evermore the name standeth there. Conan led *an* army into the north country; he hated Maximian,—that many *a* man bought *dear*! The wise 'men' of this land, 'who loved this people,' made '*a* husting [peace] 'betwixt Conan and the king'; 'there they became [and

¹ *R.* moni.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bitwexen Conaan & þan kinge.

þer heo iwurðen sæhte :

& þer heo iwurðen fomme.

& makede¹ i þiffen londe grið :

god mid þan bezfte.

& þe king him bihæhte a-nan :

to makienne riche mon.

swa he dude feoððen :

þet abohte moni mon.

mid grþe² he wuneden here :

fulle fif 3ere.

þa hefde Maximien :

gærfume vninete³.

for he næfde of his londe :

na gael ifende to Rome.

þa þe fif 3er weoren agan :

þa sæide Maximian.

þ he wolde ouer sæ uaren :

& fehten wið þan Frenscen.

& 3if he þere mihte spedē :

toward Rome he wolde riden.

to wreken his teone :

on Gracien and on Valentin.

and makede heom ifehte :

and cufte wel ilome.

And þe king him bi-hehte a-non :

to maki him a riche man.

mid griþe hii wonede here :

folle fif 3ere.

þo hadde Maximian :

onime⁴ garifom.

for he nadde of his londe :

no feo ifend to Rome.

þo þe fif 3er were a-gon :

þo feide Maximian.

þat he wolde ouer féé :

and fihte wiþ þan Frence.

and 3if he þare mihte spede :

to Rome he wolde ride.

to wreken his teone :

of Valentin and Gracien.

made them] reconciled, and 'there they became friends [kissed well often], 'and made peace in this land, good with the best.' And the king promised him anon to make [him a] rich man; 'so he did afterwards,—that many a man bought *dear*!'—with peace 'he [they] dwelt here full five years. Then had Maximian immense treasure, for he had of his land no 'tribute [fee] sent to Rome. When the five years were gone, then said Maximian, that he would 'pass' over sea, and fight with the French; and if he there might speed, to 'ward' Rome he would ride, to avenge his wrongs on Gracien and 'on' Valentin, 'who had done to him many injuries in Rome.' Thus

¹ The last two letters of makede are interlined.³ R. vnimete.² R. griðe.⁴ R. onimete.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe monie him hæfdē idone :
teonen inne Rome.

þus spæc Maximien :
uor him wes to murie.

for þis lond wes þa swiðe god :
& he hit hæfde al vnder fot.

& him ne stod æie to naþing :
for dæd wes Octaues þe kīg.

Maximien bæd ferde :
feorliche store.

þe king hafde kene men :
& vnimete gærfume.

forð he gon wenden :
ut of þissen londen.

forð he gon liðen :
ut of þissen leoden.

he makede him feluen muchel
ne ifæh he nauere æft þis lond.
Ouer sæ he wende :

and wel com to londe. [f. 67. c. 1.]

[in ane londe] fwiðe riche :
þe hehte Armoriche.

þa scipen urnen a ðen lond :
þat folc wenden uppe ftrond.

þus spæc Maximian :
for him was to murie.

for þis lond was so god :
and he hit hal¹ onder fot.

and him ne stod eye of no þing :
for dead was Octaues þe king.

Maximian bad ferde :
wonderliche store.

þe king hadde kene men :
and onimete garifome.

forþ he gan wende :
vt of þisse londe.

[don :

he makede him feolf mochel to
ne come he neuere her a-ȝein.

Ouer féé he wende :

and wel com to londe. [c. 2.]

in one londe fwiþe riche :
þat þo hehte Armoriche.

spake Maximian, for he was too merry, because this land was 'then most [so] good, and he 'had [held] it 'all' under foot, and he stood in awe of nothing, for dead was Octaves the king. Maximian summoned an army, wondrously strong; the king had keen men, and immense treasure; forth he gan proceed out of this land, 'forth he gan pass out of this country';—he made for himself much 'disgrace [to do], he never 'eft saw this land [again came here]! Over sea he went, and came well to land, [in a land] most rich, that hight Armoriche. 'The ships run on the land; the folk went upon *the* strand'; they began a castle good with the best; they

¹ hald? hadde hal?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo bigunnen ænne castel :
 god mid þā bæzsten.
 heo riden ȝeond þæn leode :
 & nomen þer muchele prude.
 heo funden herre-feng inoh :
 & lædden to heore ferde.

& æc heo nomen wummen :
 wunder ane monie.
 & duden þat heo wolden :
 ȝeond Ærmoriche londe.

Humbald.

þis iherde Humbald :
 þe wes wes² lauerd i þa lond.
 hu þe king Mæximien :
 amerde his riche.

Humbald fende fonde :
 ȝeond al þan londen.
 þer he æine freond hæfde :
 þe him helpen wolde.

& þohte þat he wælde :
 heom driuen of his londe.

Heo comen bi dæie lihte :
 to ane stronge fihte.

Bruttes heom ou⁹comen :

& Humbald heo floȝen.

& fiftene þufende þer weoren ifla-

Hii bi-gonne anne castel :
 god mid þan beste.
 hii reoden ȝeond þe leode :
 and neme mochel prude.

and eke hii nemen wifmen :
 wonderliche manie.
 and dude wat iwolde¹ :
 oueral þan londe.

PIs ihorde Humbald :
 þat was þare louerd.
 hou þe king Maximian :
 a-morde his riche.

Humbald fende fonde :
 oueral his kinelonde.

þar he enȝ freond hadde :
 þat him helpe wolde.

and þohte þat he wolde :
 him driue of his londe.

Hii comē bi dai lihte :
 to one strange fihte.

Bruttes heom ouercomen :

[ȝen : and Humbald hii flowen.

and fiftene þufend :

rode over the country, and took 'there' much booty; 'they found spoil enow, and led to their host'; and eke they seized 'a wonder [wondrously] many women, and did what they would 'over Armoriche [all the] land. Humbald heard this, who was lord 'in the land [there], how the king Maximian ravaged his realm. Humbald sent messengers over all 'the land [his kingdom], where he had any friend that would him help, and thought that he would drive 'them [him] from his land. They came by day-light to a strong fight; *the* Britons overcame them, and Humbald they slew;

¹ hii wolde?² *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& idon of lif-dæȝen.	þar weren of-flaȝe.
þa þiſ feht wes idon :	þo þiſ fiht was idon :
þa wende Maximien.	þo wende Maximian aȝein.
aȝen in to herberȝe :	to hiſ herborewe :
to reſten hine feolue.	to reſte him feolue.
A marȝen þa hit dæi wes :	A morwe þo hit dai waſ :
duȝeðen heom gereden.	
heo wenden to þere heȝe burh :	
þe Nāſtes ¹ iſ ihaten.	to Nantes he wende.
ne fundē heo þer inne :	10 ne funde ² þar ine :
noht of moncunne.	noht of mankunne.
þe heom wið wolde ſtonden :	þe him wolde wiþ-ſtonde.
& þa burh heolden.	
al hit wæs awæi ifloȝen :	ac alle hii were awei iflowe :
and of þan londe iboȝen. [c.2.]	and of þan londe itowe.
buten a lute wiſmen :	bote ane feue wiſmen :
þe weoren þer wið innen.	þat were þar wiþ ine.
þa burh nom Maximien :	þe borh nam Maximian :
& fette mid hiſ monnen.	and dude þar on hiſ men.
þeo cleopede Maximien :	20 þo cleopede Maximian :
to þan eorle Conaan.	to þā eorl Conan.
Conaan þu ært god cniht :	Conan þou hart god cniht : [f.56 ^b .c.1.]
þu hæfueſt ³ ihalden wel mi fiht :	þou haueſt iholde wel mi fiht.

and fifteen thousand there were slain, 'and deprived of life-day.' When this fight was done, then went Maximian back 'into [to his] quarters, to rest himself. On the morrow when it was day, 'the people made them ready'; 'they marched to the noble burgh that is named Nantes [to Nantes he marched]; 'they' found therein nought of mankind that would withstand 'them [him], 'and hold the burgh,' [but] all 'it was [they were] away flown, and from the land departed, except a few women who were there within. Maximian took the burgh, and 'set with [placed therein] his men; then called Maximian to the earl Conan : "Conan, thou art good knight, thou hast maintained well my fight, 'and' I will bestow on thee much re-

¹ Nantes?² funde he?³ hæhuest *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ich þe wulle mede :	ich þe wolle mede :
muchele bitæche.	mochel bi-the ¹ .
for þu hæfueft ² al Brutlōd :	for þou haddest al Butlond ³ :
i þire azere hond.	in þin owene hond.
ʒif ich hit nere :	ʒef ich hit nere :
þu weore king þere.	þou were king þere.
and þe eorl Caredoc :	
þe is of mine cunne.	
ʒet hit mai ilimpe :	
hit is þe an vnðonke.	10
Ah loke wulche wæstres ⁴ :	Ac loke woche wateres :
& wunliche londes.	and woche riche londes.
whulche wurðliche wude :	woche faire wodes :
whulche wilde deores.	
whul ⁵ liðe londe :	
on to libbenne.	ine for to wonie.
þis lond hehten Armoriche :	þis lond hette Armoriche :
þis ich þe bitæche.	þis ich þe bi-teche.
& muchele mare her to :	and mochel mo þer to :
ʒif ich hit mæi ifo.	20 ʒef ich mote libbe.
her of þu scalt beō king :	her of þou salt beo king :
& þas riche aʒen.	and þeof riche oʒe.
Vt ich wullen driuen :	Vt ich wolle driue :
al þat ich finde on liue.	al þat ich finde a-lifue.
ʒungen and alde :	ʒonge and holde :

ward ; for thou haddest all Britain in thine own hand ; if I were it not, thou wouldst be king there ; ‘ and yet it may pertain to the earl Cradoc, who is of my kin,—it is to thee displeasing.’—But look what waters, and ‘ fair [what rich] lands ; what ‘ noble [fair] woods, ‘ what wild deer ; what pleasant land ‘ to live in [for to dwell in] ! This land hight Armoriche ; this I bestow on thee, and much more ‘ hereto [thereto], if I ‘ it may get [may live] ; hereof thou shalt be king, and this realm possess. Out I will drive all that I find alive, young and old, out of this land ; ‘ and whoso I

¹ bi-teche ? ² hæfdest ? ³ R. Brutlond. ⁴ wætres ? ⁵ whulche ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

vt of þisse londe. vt of þisse londe.
 and wulcne swa ich mai here ifon :'
 i þan stude he beoð fordon.
 & fende ich wulle to Aðionærd : And fende ich wolle to Yþenard :
 þe is min aȝene stiward. þat his min owe stiward.
 eorl he is treowe :
 for æuer¹ he is að-neowe.
 for hī ich habbe wel bi-tæht :
 Brutlōd to witene.
 & he me fla² fenden : 10 þat he me fal fende :
 in to þisse londe. into þisse londe.
 wapmen and wifmen :
 of wel feole cræften.
 cnihtes & þeines : [f. 67^b. c. 1.]
 & al heore sweines.
 fixti hundred cnihtē : sixti hundred cnihtes :
 þe gode beon to fihten. þat gode beon to fihte.
 ten hundred þeines : ten hundred þeines :
 seoue þusend sweines. sceoue þusend sweines.
 seoue þusend burh-mē : 20 sceoue þusend borhmē :
 þe fæle beon on æhte. þat riche beoþ and wise.
 þritti þusend wifmen : þritti þusend wifmen :
 þe wel beon ifūden. þat wel beon ifundē.
 þenne þis folc bið hider icumen : Wane þis folk his hider icome :
 & heo³ stude habbeð inumen. and habbeþ hire stude inome.

here may take, on the spot he shall be slain.' And send I will to 'Athio-
 nard [Ythenard], who is mine own steward,—' earl he is true, for ever he
 is ready; for to him I have well delivered Britain, to guard it,'—'and [that]
 he shall send to me, into this land, 'men and women of well many crafts;
 knights and thanes, and all their swains;' sixty hundred knights, who are
 good in fight; ten hundred thanes; seven thousand swains; seven thou-
 sand burghers, who are 'good in wealth [rich and wise]; thirty thousand
 women, who are well found (of good condition). When this folk is

¹ æue, *pr. m.*² fal?³ heore?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þenne bið al þis fæire lond :
ifet Brutten an hond.

æfter þine leoden :
bi-tæche heom name.

¹ Brutlond þat laffe.

Nu and auere mare :

þe nom stondeð þere.

& þus Armoriche nome :

niðer wæs auællad.

swa þat næuere mare : ¹⁰

ne bið he aræred.

Conaan þeof ȝeue afeng :

& iwarð⁴ þeos kinges freond.

mid muchelere wurðscipe :

& wel heo hit heolden.

And þe king fende :

in to þisse londe.

& hæhte Aðionard :

þe biwufte Brutlondes ærd,

þat he him fwiðe fende : ²⁰

þæt folc of Brutlonde.

& folc of ælche cræfte :

fundri scipen bitæhte.

þan his al þis faire lond :

ifet Bruttes an hond.

hafter ȝam mid iwiffe :

cleope hit Brutlond þe laffe.

Nou and euere more :

þe name stondeþ þare.

and þus Armorichef name :

adun was a-falled. [c. 2.]

so þat neuere more :

ne worþet² arered.

Conan þeos ȝeft onderfend³ :

and iwarþ þis kinges freōd.

And þe king fende :

in to þisse londe.

and hehte Yþenard :

Brutlondes stiward.

and⁵ he him fwiþe fende :

þæt folk þat he ȝornde.

hither arrived, and hath taken their abode, then shall all this fair land be set in *the* hand of Britons; after 'thy people give them name [them surely call it] Britain the Less.'" Now and evermore the name standeth there; and thus Armoriches name was cast down, so that never more it shall be raised. Conan received this gift, and became this kings friend, 'with much honor, and well they it held.' And the king sent into this land, and bade Athionard, 'who had charge of Britains land [Britains steward], that he should send quickly to him the folk 'of Britain [that he desired]; 'and to folk of each craft should deliver sundry ships, and among

¹ A line, apparently, is wanting here.

³ onderfeng?

⁴ iwarð?

² worþe hit?

⁵ þat?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& mong þan wifmonnen : wepmon næuer enne. buten þa feoluen ſcipmē : þe heom ſcullen læden. Al eoden þeos ræd : swa þe king hæfde ifeid. & Conaan þer heold to : mid hæþere ſtrengðe. & þe kīg ferde : uorð toward France. & bi-ȝæt al þ̅ kine-lond : & fette hit on his aȝere hond. & þeōne he gon liðen : in to Lohernne. al þat lond he bi-ȝæt : swa he dude Liuiene æc. swa he gon liðe : in to Lombardie. al þat lond he bi-ȝæt : þær wes Caradoc dæd. þa hauede Mauric his ſune : sorȝen inowe. nes þer nan oðer ræd : buten þe Mavric iwærð dæd. To Rome wende Maximian : uppe Valentin & vppen Gracien.	Al ȝeode þes read : aſe þe king hadde ifed. and Conan þar to heold : mid heȝere ſtrengþe. And þe king wende forþ : in toward France. and bi-ȝet al þat kinelond : to hiſ owene hond. and þanene he gan wende : into Loherenne. and al þat lond he bi-ȝet : ſo he dude Loueine heck. ſo he gan wende : in to Lombardie. al þat lond he bi-ȝeat : þar was Cradoc dead. ſo fori was hiſ ſone : þat he deiȝede eke. To Rome wende Maximian : vppe Valentin and Gracien.
---	--

the women never one man, except the ſelfſame ſhipmen who ſhould conduct them.' This counſel all proceeded as the king had ſaid, and Conan held thereto with great ſtrength. And the king went forth [in] toward France, and won all the kingdom, 'and ſet it' in his own hand; and thence he gan march into Loraine, [and] all the land he obtained, as he did alſo Lovaine; ſo he gan proceed into Lombardy; all the land he conquered,—there was Cradoc dead; 'then had Maurice hiſ ſon ſorrow enow; there was no other hap but that Maurice ſhould die [ſo ſore was hiſ ſon, that he died alſo]! To Rome went Maximian, upon (againſt) Valentin

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

i fehte he nō þene oðer :
 þa ȝirnde grið þa oðer.
 cnihtes heo weoren hende :
 þe king heom dude i bende.
 & he anan fone :
 ahnede hī al Rome.
 þ̅ word com to Conaan :
 hu iuaren hæfde Maximiaen.
 & þ̅ Caradoc wes dæd :
 inne Lūbardie.

10

& al fwa Mauric his sune :
 for muchele farineffe.

þa nom² þe eorl Conaan :
 æenne fwiðe wifne mon.
 & fende to þiffen londe :
 to Adionard þā stronge.
 þe wes ftiward fwiðe bifi :
 inne þiffi³ Bruttene.

Adionard.

To Adionard me brohten writ :
 þ̅ dæd wes his broðer.
 Caradoc þe mære :
 & Mauric his fune deore.
 þa næfde Caradoc i þif ærd :
 broðer bute Adionard.

ine fihte hii¹ neme þan oþer :
 þo ȝeornde griþ þe oþer.
 cnihtes hii weren hende :
 þe king ham dude in bende.
 and he anon fone :
 ohnede al Rome.
 þat word com to Conan :
 ou ifare hadde Maximian.
 and þat Cradoc was dead :
 and his fone Mauric eck.

þo nam þe eorl Conan :
 ane fwiþe wifne man.
 and fende to þiffe londe : [f. 57. c. 1.]
 to Yþenard þan stronge.

To Yþenard me brohte writ :
 þat dead was his broþer :
 Cradoc þe more :
 and Mauric his fone deore.
 þo nadde Cradoc in þis erþ :
 broþer bote Yþenarþ.

and 'upon' Gracien; in fight he captured the one, then yearned the other peace. Knights they were fair; the king placed them in bonds, and he anon soon obtained 'to him' all Rome. The word came to Conan, how Maximian had fared; and that Cradoc was dead 'in Lumbardy,' and 'also [eke] his son Maurice, 'for much sorrow.' Then took the earl Conan an exceeding wise man, and sent to this land, to Athionard the strong, 'who was steward most busy in this Britain.' To Athionard men brought writ, that dead was his brother Cradoc the great, and Maurice his son dear;—then had Cradoc in this land no brother but Athionard; and he

¹ he?² inom *pr. m.*, but i erased.³ þiffe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& he forð riht nom an hif hond :'	and he forþriht nom :
al Caradokes lond.	[[f.68. c.1.] al Cradoc his lond.
þa iherden þa Frence men :	þo ihorde þe Frence men :
þ at Rome wes Maximien.	þat at Rome was Maximian.
& Cradoc wes dæd :	and Cradoc was dead :
þa nomen þa Frence ænne ræd.	þo nemen hii anne read.
þat heo wolden flæme :	þat hii wolde Conan :
Conaan þene kene.	drive vt of londe.
vt of þan londe :	
þe Maximian him ȝæf an honde.	
þe is bi-halues France :	
& Bruttaine is ihaten ¹ .	
& Conaan ne ȝiŕde na grið :	And Conan ne ȝeornde no griþ :
ah feſtliche heom feht wið.	ac faſtliche ham faht wiþ.
& wel he makede his caſtles :	and wel he makede his caſtles :
treowe & fwiðe uæſte.	treuliche and faſte.
& alle his beornen he wes leof :	and alle hine lofuede :
þe comen of þiſſen londe.	þat come of þiſſe londe.
For alle he hæfde þa cnihtes :	For alle he hadde þe cnihtes :
þe Maximien hi bi-hehte.	þat Maximian hine bi-hehte.
& ec þa eorles :	and eke þe eorles :
& þa ſweines & þa cheorles.	þe ſweines and þe cheorles.
& alle þa burh-men :	and alle þe borh-men :
þa him bi-hehte Maximien.	þat him bi-hahte Maximian.

forth-right took 'in his hand' all 'Cradocs [Cradoc his] land. When the Frenchmen heard that Maximian was at Rome, and Cradoc was dead, then took 'the French [they] a counsel, that they would drive Conan 'the keen' out of 'the' land 'that Maximian gave him in hand, that is beside France, and is named Bretagne.' And Conan asked not any peace, but fought with them stoutly; and well he made his castles, 'true [truelly] and 'most' fast; and 'to all his men he was dear [all loved him], that came from this land. For he had all the knights that Maximian promised him, and eke the earls, 'and' the swains and the churls, and all the burghers that Maxi-

¹ bi-haten, *pr. m.*, but *b* erased.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Wifmen neuede he noht feole :	Wimmen nafde ¹ noht fale :
buten fiftene hundred.	bote fiftene hūdred.
for wifmen nolden noht liðen :	for þe wifmen nolde noht wende :
vt of þiffen londe.	vt of þiffe londe.
buten þe eorl Adionard :	bote þe eorl Yþenard :
þe wes þe hæhfte i þis ærd.	þat was þe ftrengeft in þif erþ.
walde heore borh beon : [bi-teon.	wolde hire borh beon :
þat heo fcolden heore while wel	þat hii folde hire wile wel bi-teon.
þa hæhuede Adionard :	to þan eorle Yþenard.
æenne dohter swiðe deore. 10	ane dohter fwipe deore.
heo hæfde al þat hære-word :	3eo hadde al þat here-word : [c. 2.]
of þan maidenē of þif ærd.	of alle þe maydene.
<i>Vrefele.</i> þeo wimman wes on fele :	þe womman waf feale :
heo hæhte Vrfele.	3eo hehte Vrfele.
Conaan fende to þif ærd :	Conan fende to þis erþ :
to þan eorle Adionærd.	þo hadde Yþenard :
& bed þat he him 3eue :	and [bede] þat he him 3efue :
his dohter to quene.	his dohter to cwene.
Adionard 3æf andfwere :	Yþenard 3ef anfwere :
wurðfcipe habbe he þer fore. [c. 2.]	worþipe habbe ² þar vore.
Monfcipe habbe Conaan : 20	
þat he mire dohter wel on.	
nu to dæi a feouen nihten :	Nou to dai a feoueniht :
ich heo fenden him bi mine cnihten.	ich hire fende foþ riht.

mian promised him. Women had he not many, but (only) fifteen hundred, for [the] women would not go out of this land, unless the earl Athionard, who was the 'highest [strongest] in this land, would be their surety, that they should their time well employ. Then had Athionard a daughter very dear; of [all] the maidens 'of this land' she had (bore away) all the fame; the woman was fortunate; she hight Ursele. Conan sent to this country, to the earl Athionard, and bade that he should give him his daughter for queen. Athionard gave answer,—worship have he therefore!—" 'Honor have Conan, that he well grants to my daughter!' Now to-day a se'nnight

¹ nafde he?² habbe he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& alle þa wimmen :	and alle þe wifmen :
þe him ȝef mi lauerd Maximien.	þat him ȝef Maximian.
þider heo scullen liðen :	þider hii folde wende :
ȝif heo wulleð libben.	ȝef hii wolde libbe :
oðer ich heom wullen alle for-don :	oþer ich ȝeom alle wolle for-don :
& bi þan tittē an-hon.	and bi þan týttes for-hon.
þa ȝarkedē Adionard :	þo ȝarkedē Iþenard :
þiffes londes lauerd.	þat was þeos londes stiward.
his dohter Urfæle :	his dohter Vrfele :
þe wimman wes wel fæle.	þat was a maide fele.
he þohte heo to fende :	he þohte here to fende :
ou ⁹ fæ fframes.	ouer féé ftremes.
in to Bruttaine lōde :	into Brutaines londe :
to Conaan þan fstronge.	to Conan þan fstronge.
þa iherden þa wimmen :	þo ihorde þe wifmē :
wide ȝeond þas Bruttene.	oueral þan londe.
þat me wolde fenden :	þat me wolde fende :
Vrfeine ¹ to ² þan londe.	Vrfele of londe.
hire comen to inoȝe :	hire come to i-nowe.
monie & vnifoȝe.	manie an onifoȝe.
þ̅ wolden mid here uarē :	þat wolde mid hire fare :
to þan kinge Conaane.	to þan kinge Conane.
fwiðe feole heo bi-fohte :	fwiþe fale hire bi-fohte :
ma þeone heo rohten.	mo þane ȝeo rohte.

Vrfele[e].

I will send her 'to him 'by my knights [right sooth], and all the women that 'my lord' Maximian gave him; thither they shall go, if they 'will [would] live, or *else* I will kill them all, and hang up by the teats!" Then Athionard, 'lord of this land [who was this lands steward], made ready his daughter Ursele, who was 'woman [a maid] 'well' good; he thought to send over sea streams into Bretagnes land, to Conan the strong. When the women heard 'wide over this Britain [over all the land], that men would send Ursele from 'the' land, enow came to her, many and numerous, who would go with her to the king Conan; very many besought her, more than she cared

¹ R. Vrsele.² of?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa þe dæi wes icumen :	þo þe dai was icome :
þe Adionard hafde inumen.	þat Yþenard adde inome.
þ forð scolde uaren :	þat forþ folde fare :
þat mæiden Vrefele.	þat maide Vrfele.
þa hafden to iwiten :	þeo hadde to iwite :
feouen and twenti fcepen.	fceouene and twenti fipes.
alle heo weoren ifunde :	alle hii weren ifunde :
i þere burh of Lunden.	in þare borh of Londene.
Inne þere Temefe :	In þare Temefe :
heo teuhten heore feiles.	10 hii drowen vp feiles.
wind heo hæfden wunfum :	wýnd hii hafde wonfō :
weder mid þan bezften.	weder mid þan beste. [f.57 ^b . c.1.]
& heo feiledē forð :	and hii feileden :
þ inne fæ heo comen.	forte hii to féé come.
þa vmbe ftunde :	þo bi on lutel ftunde :
ne fæþe heo noht of londe. [f.68 ^b . c.1.]	ne fehþe hii noht of londe.
þa araf heom a wind :	þo aros heom a wind :
a þere wiðer fide.	in þare wiþer fide :
fwurken vnder funnen :	þirkede vnder fonne :
sweorte weolcnen.	20 þuſtrede þe wolkne.
hazel & ræin þer aræs :	reyn and hawel þar a-ros :
þe hit i-feh him agras.	þat hit iſeh fore a-grof.
vðen þer urnē.	wazeſ þar arne :
tunes ¹ fwulche þer burnen.	ſtreme þar vrne.

for. When the day was come that Athionard had taken (appointed), that the 'maiden [maid] Ursele should forth proceed, 'then' had [she] to wit seven and twenty ships; they were all safe in the burgh of London. In the Thames they drew [up] 'their' sails; wind they had fair, weather with the best; and they sailed 'forth,' until they came 'in [to] the sea; then after [a little] while, they saw nought of land. Then arose to them a wind on the contrary side; 'swart clouds [the welkin] darkened [and blackened] under the sun; hail and rain there arose,—whoso it saw, became [sorely] alarmed;—the waves there ran 'as if towns there were burning

¹ The two first letters of this word are on an erasure. Cf. v. 4577. vol. i. p. 195.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bordes þer breken : bordes þar breken :
 vimmen¹ gūnen wepen. wimmen þar wepen.
 þa ſcipen þa urnen bi-uoren : þe fipes þat vrne bi-vore :
 twelue þer weoren for-loren. twealfe þar were for-lore.
 þa oðere weoren al to-driuen :
 & forð mid þere fæ iliðen.
 nes þer na ſteores-mon : nas þar no ſterefmā :
 þat æuere aht cuðe þer on. þat er ohte coupe.
 Nes næuere na mon iboren : Nas neuere no man ibore :
 ne of nane londe icoren. 10 ne in none londe icore.
 þ̅ hæleð weore ſwa ſtærc :
 ne ſwa hærd iheorted.
 þe iherde þefne weop : þat i-horde þane cri :
 & þisne wunderliche ræm.
 & cleopien² to þan halhȝen : hou hii gradde to þan halwes.
 mid hæhȝere ſteuene.
 þ̅ his heorte neore ſæri : þat his heorte ne mihte beo fori :
 for þan vnimete forhȝen. for þane deolfulle cri.
 Seoððen þis world wes aftald :
 & monnen an honde ifælde. 20
 ne com nauere wurfe hap :
 to nane wummānē.
 Summe þe ſcipen wundē : Somme of þaie fipes :

[*the* streams there flowed]; boards there brake; *the* women 'gan [there] weep.
 Of the ships that ran before, twelve there were lost; 'the others were all
 driven in pieces, and carried forth by the sea'; there was no steersman that
 'therein' aught ever could *help*. Never was 'there' any man born, nor 'of
 [in] any land chosen, 'who were champion so stark, or so hard hearted,'
 who should have heard 'this weeping, and this wondrous shout, and calling
 [the cry, how they called] to the Saints 'with high voice,' that his heart
 'were not [might not be] sorry for the 'measureless sorrow [doleful cry]!
 'Since this world was made, and given to men in hand, never came worse
 hap to any women!' Some of the ships rode 'forth' with the storm,—full

¹ summen, *pr. m.*² cleopung?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

forð mid þan wederen.	wonde mid þan wedere.
fulle fiftene ⁊	fulle feftene ⁊
i þan ane wes Oriene ¹ .	þan ² on was Vrfele.
þe sæ wes wunder ane wod ⁊	þe fee was wonderliche wod ⁊
and ladliche iwraððed.	and þe féé wrappede.
& þa fcipen ³	and þe féé ⁴ walkede ⁊
i þere wildere fæ ⁊	in þare féé wilde.
æuere norð forð riht ⁊	euere norþ forþriht ⁊
þreo dæies & þreo niht.	þreo daies and þreo nihit.
þa weoren ut of Norweiȝen ⁊ 10	þo weren of Noreweie ⁊
tweien eorles iuarē.	eorles ivaren tweie.
Mælgam & Wanis ⁊ [c. 2.]	Melga an Wanis ⁊
heo weoren kene ful iwis.	hii weren kene foliwis.
of Denemarke & of Norweiȝe ⁊	hii were vtlazet ⁵ beie ⁊
heo weoren iqueðen vt-lazē.	in Denemarche and Noreweie.
& heo ferden bi fæ fiden ⁊	and hii ferde bi þare fide ⁶ ⁊
vnimete wide.	onimete wide.
Heo i-cneowen wel a þan wolcnē ⁊	Hii cneowe bi þe wolkne ⁊
þaƿ wederes cuſtes.	þeos wederef cuſtes.
heo droȝen to ane ait-londe ⁊ 20	and droȝen to on ýllond ⁊
þer heo leoðe hafueden.	þar hii lioþe hadde. [c. 2.]
Wanis wes in Hungrie ⁊	Wanis was in Hongri ⁊
þer he harm worhte.	þar he harm wrohte.

Melga.
Wanis.

fifteen;—in the one was Ursele;—the sea was wondrously wild, and 'bitterly [the sea] enraged, and the ships [labored] in the wild sea, ever northward forth-right, three days and three nights. Then had gone two earls 'out of [from] Norway, Melga and Wanis,—they were keen full certainly;—'of [in] Denmark and Norway they were outlaws 'declared [both], and they proceeded by [the] sea-side, widely without bounds. They knew 'well' 'in [by] the welkin this weathers (storms) indications; 'they [and] drew to an island, where they had refuge. Wanis was (had been) in Hungary, where he harm wrought; Melga was in Scythia, where he made

¹ Urfele?² in þan?³ A word seems to be deficient.⁴ fipes?⁵ vtlazes?⁶ þare féé fide?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Mælgas wes inne Scife :	Melga was in Scice :
þer he scaðe makede.	þar he scape makede.
þat he ne mihte i þan londe :	
na lengere at-ftonde.	
& of Norweiȝe iflemed :	
þer heo fiht þoleden.	
& inne fæ heo weoren iuaren :	and þus in see hii weren ivare :
uulle feoue ȝeren.	fulle foue ȝere.
& fwa heo leien i þan æit-londe :	and so hii leie in þat ȝllond :
& ifeȝen þat weder stronge.	and ifehȝe þat weder strōg.
10 ifeȝen ſcipes an & an :	Hii ſehe ſipes on and on :
while ma while nan.	wile mo wile non.
þeonne feowere þenne fiue :	þan foure þan fifue :
fellic heom þuhten a þiffē liue.	wonder heom þohte in þiffe lifue.
whæt weoren þa ȝemere ſcipes :	wat weren þe ilke ſipes :
þa ȝeond þa fæ weolkē.	þat þus in fēē walkede.
þe wind gOND ¹ aliðen :	þe wīd gan a-legge :
& þat weder leoðede.	an þat weder ſofti.
& Wanis ifæh i þere fæ :	
þa ſcipes wandrien.	20 and Melga feide þare :
& þus ſpæc þere :	and Melga feide þare :
wið Malgan his iuere.	to his ivere.
Forð wit nu ſwuðe :	Vare we nou bliſue :
& after heom bliue.	hafter heom ſwiþe.

scathe; so that he might not in the land any longer remain; and driven from Norway, where they sustained a battle; and [thus] on *the* sea they had fared full seven years; and so they lay in the island, and saw the strong storm. [They] saw *the* ships *by* one and one—awhile more, awhile none,—then four, then five,—wonder *it* seemed to them in this life, what 'the wretched [those] ships were, that [thus] 'over the [on *the*] sea tossed! The wind gan to abate, and the weather 'assuaged [to soften]; 'and Wanis saw the ships wandering in the sea,' and 'thus spake there with [Melga said there to] 'Melga' his companion: "Go we now soon, 'and' after

¹ gon?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid gode fiftene ſcīpen :'	
faren we heom æfter.	
mid ure beẏften cnihten :	mid oure beẏte cnihtes :
þe gode beon to fihten.	þat gode beon to fihte.
& leten ælle ure oðere ſcīpen :	
ure herberwe bi-witen. [f. 69. c. 1.]	
for þiſ is ſum riĉe king :	for þiſ ¹ ſom riĉe king :
rædes bi-dæled.	reades bi-dealed.
þe wolde mid hiſ folke :	þat wolde mid hiſ folk :
uaren to ſumme londe.	faren to ſomme londe.
& haueð þeos wið & þeos weder :	and haueþ þiſ wind and þiſ weder :
a wiðer him i-ſtonde.	a wiþer him i-ſtonde.
þ wa is him aliue :	þat wo hiſ ham a-lifue.
nuwe ² him to biliue.	wende we to bliſue.
& ẏif hit wule Appolin :	For ẏeſ hit wole Appolin :
þat iſ deore lauerd min.	þe hiſ deore louerd min.
þat we maẏen mid fihte :	
biwinnen hine & hiſ cnihtes.	
& heo ne beō of ure laẏen :	
we ſcullen him dō of liſ-dæẏen.	
& ſwa we ſcullen nimen a hond :	we ſolle nimen of heom :
heore ſeoluer & heore gold.	hire ſeoluer and hire gold.
& faren to ure inne :	and fare to vre ine :
& ẏeolpen for þere winne.	and ẏelpen of þan winne.

them quickly! 'With fifteen good ships fare we after them,' with our best knights, that are good in fight, 'and let all our other ships guard our harbour'; for this 'is' some rich king, void of counsel, who would with his folk proceed to some land, and hath encountered this wind and this weather adverse to him, so that woe 'he is [they are] alive! Go we to 'him' quickly! 'And [For] if Appolin wills it, who is my lord dear, 'that we may with fight conquer him and his knights, and they be not of our law, we shall deprive him of life-day, and so' we shall take 'in hand [from them] their silver and their gold; and come to our inn (place of refuge), and boast 'for

¹ þiſ is?² wende we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Forð heo wenden mid flode:⁹	Forþ iwende¹ mid flode:⁹
fiftene ſcipē gode.	[3en:⁹ fiftene fipes gode.
þe ſtrengeste þe weoren a þan dæ-	þe ſtrengest þat weren in þat daze:⁹
& fulled mid vt-laȝen.	ifulled mid vtlazeſ.
& a-nan of-token fif ſcipē:⁹	and of-toke fif fipes:⁹
of wimmonnen afulled.	of wifmen ifulled.
Seolcuð heom þuhte:⁹	Wonder heom þohte:⁹ [f. 58. c. 1.]
what hit beō mahte.	wat hit beon mihte.
& heo cleopeden heom ō:⁹	and hii cleopede him² on:⁹
nes þer nan ændfwere.	10 ac anfwere naſ þar nō.
for al weoren þa wimmen:⁹	for alle were þe wifmen:⁹
awald to þan deðe.	a-wild to þan deape.
To heom heo droȝen:⁹	To heō idrowen³:⁹
and þaſ fif ſcipen nomen.	and þeos fipes nomen.
and furðer heo iwenden:⁹	and forþere hii wēde:⁹
& niȝene heo iuengen.	and niȝe fipes onderfēȝe.
and heo mid þan feowertene ſcipen:⁹	and hii mid þane fourtene fipes:⁹
ferden to þā londe.	ferde to londe.
Seoððen þis worlde weſ aſtald:⁹	Suppe þeſ worle was aſtald:⁹
nes hit neowhær itald.	20 naſ hit nohwere itald.
on ſonge no on ſpelle:⁹	
ne miðte hit na mon telle.	
þ weoren æi wimman:⁹	þat euere eni wifmen:⁹

[of] the booty!" Forth they went with *the* flood, fifteen ships good; the strongest that were in that day, 'and' filled with outlaws; and 'anon' overtook five ships filled with women. 'Strange [Wonder] *it* seemed to them, what it might be; and they called to them, [but] answer was there none, for all the women were destroyed to the death. To them they drew, and these 'five' ships took; and further they went, and nine [ships] 'they' captured, and they with the fourteen ships returned to 'the' land. Since this world was made, was it nowhere told 'in song nor in story, nor might any man tell it,' that [ever] any women 'were' so 'wretchedly [ruefully] treated,

¹ hii wende?

² ham?

³ hii drowen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

swa wræcchelichē atoȝene. [c.2.] fo reuliche a-towen.	
ne swa reoliche :	
inne fæ for-radde.	
Melga nom Oriene ¹ :	Melga nam Vrfele :
þa scolden beon quene.	þat folde beō cwene.
& scome hire bi-hedde :	and fame hire hedde :
& ladde heo to his bedde.	and nom hire to his bedde.
þa þe heðene mon :	
hæfuede on hire his wille idō.	
he ȝæf heo his his ² hired-mōnē sone :	
to makien to heore.	11
& fūme heo heom falden :	And alle þe oþer men :
for feoluer for gold.	chose of þis wifmen.
& monie & vnifoȝe :	
heo þer of-floȝen.	
& fumme heo heō drēgte :	and somme hii adreinte :
in þere fæ deope.	in þare féé deope.
& fūme heo godd wið-foken :	and somme god for-foke :
& to haðenescipe token.	and to hepenfipe toke.
& þus heo weoren for-radde :	20 and þus hii were for-rad :
mid reowðe þan mæste.	mid reuþe þan meste.
Melga and Wanis :	Melga and Wanis :
ihurden suggē ful iwis.	ihorde segge foliwis.
þat þas Bruttene :	þat þeos Brutaine :

‘nor so piteously in *the* sea betrayed.’ Melga took Ursele, that should be queen, and offered her shame, and ‘led [took] her to his bed; ‘when the heathen man had done on her his will, he gave her to his followers soon, to make as whore.’ And ‘some they them sold for silver *and* for gold, and many and innumerable there they slew [all the other men chose of these women]; and some they ‘them’ drowned in the deep sea, and some ‘they’ forsook God, and took to heathendom. And thus they were betrayed with sorrow the most! Melga and Wanis heard say full truly, that this Britain was

¹ Urfele?² *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wes of cnihte bi-dæled.	was cnihtes bi-reifed.
for Conaan hauede swiðe monie :	for Conan hadde manie :
ilæd to Armoriche.	ilad to Armoriche.
& Maximiaen ladde to Rome :	and Maximian to Rome :
monie & wel idone.	manie wel idone.
swa wes þis kinelond :	an so waf al þif kinelond :
of folke fwiðe vnstrong.	of folke fwiþe onstrong.
Melga & Wanis :	Melga and Wanis :
iwenden in to Scotten.	iwende into Scottes.
þ̃ lond heo þurh arnden :	þat lond iþorh ¹ harnde :
& herȝeden & barnden.	and floȝe and barnde.
þa ahte heo nomen :	
þ̃ folc heo of-floȝen.	
& fwa heo wenden hiderward :	and so hii wende hiderward :
ouer þere Humber.	
hermes heo worhten :	
and hene lond makeden.	and pore lond makede.
þif iherden Bruttes :	þis ihorde Bruttes : [c.2.]
and weoren þer fore færi ² .	and were fwiþe sori.
heore fonde heo mõ ³ sone :	heore fonde hii fende fone :
& fenden touward Rome.	forþ toward Rome.
Heo grættten Maximian :	Hii grette Maximian :
and talden him of Melgan. [f. 69 ^b . c.1.]	and tolde him of Melga.
& of Wanif his iuere :	and of Wanes his ivere :

bereaved of knights; for Conan had led 'very' many to Armoriche, and Maximian 'had led' to Rome many 'and' brave; [and] so was [all] this kingdom of folk most weak. Melga and Wanis proceeded to *the* Scots; the land they through-ran, and 'harried [slew] and burnt, 'the wealth they took, the folk they slew'; and so they marched hitherward 'over the Humber, harms they wrought,' and made *the* land poor. This heard *the* Britons, and were 'therefore [most] sorry; their messengers they 'took [sent forth] soon, 'and sent' toward Rome. They greeted Maximian, and told him of Melga, and of Wanis his companion, what they did here,

¹ hii þorh?² fære *pr. m.*³ nomen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

whet heo duden heŕ.	wat hii duden here.
& beden hine heom ræden :	and beden him ȝam reade :
oðer ælles heo weoren dæde.	oþer elles iweren ¹ deade.
Maximien wef sari :	Maximian was fori :
for fwulche tiðende.	for foche tidinge.
& anā dude ut of bende :	and anon dude vt of bende :
Gracien þene hende.	Gracien þe hende.
anan fwa he him to cō :	
þus he cleopede him on.	
Gracien bicum mi mon :	10 Graciē bi-com mi man :
& þu ſcelt ſeoððen wel don.	and þou ſalt ſwiþe wel don.
& ich þe wullē ſenden :	and ich þe wolle ſende :
in to Brutlonde.	into Brutlonde.
ich wulle al þat kinelond :	and here al þat kinelond :
bi-techē þe a þire hond.	ich bi-take in þine hond.
& þu ſcalt beon mi ſtiward :	and þou ſalt beo mi ſtiward :
ſwa wes þe eorl Adionard.	aſe was þe eorl Yþenard.
& ȝif þu wult wel don :	And ȝef þou wolt wel don :
ich wulle þe makien riche mon.	ich wolle maki þe riche man.
and driuen of mire þeoden :	20 and drif of mine þeode :
vncuðe leoden.	oncouþe leode.
þa andſwerede Gracien :	þo anſwerede Gracien :
mid griðfulle worden.	mid godfolle worde.
Al ich wulle wurchen :	Al ich wolle werechen :

and prayed him to counsel them, or else they should die. Maximian was sorry for such tidings, and anon released Gracien the fair out of bonds. 'Anon as he came to him, thus he called to him : ' " Gracien, become my man, and thou shalt 'then' do [most] well ; and I will thee send into Britain, [and here] all the kingdom I 'will' give 'to thee' in thine hand, and thou shalt be my steward, as the earl Athionard was. And if thou wilt do well, I will make thee rich man, and drive from my country foreign people." Then answered Gracien with 'peaceful [goodly] words : " All I will

¹ hii weren?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

after þine willen.	after þine wille.
liðen wuder fwa þu wult :	wende woder þat þou wolt :
& halden þe for lauerd.	and holde þe for louerd.
þe aðes weoren ifworene :	þe oþes weren ifwore :
& æft heo weoren for-loŕne.	and hefte hii were for-lore.
Maximien þe keifere :	Maximian þe kaifere :
bæd swiðe muchelne here.	gaderede moche here.
& he chæf of þan iwihte :	and ten þuſend cnihtes :
ten þuſend cnihten.	tock Gracien forþrihtes.
& makede Graciē :	
gumene ælder.	
& fwa heo gunnen wenden :	And Gracien wende :
ī to þiffen londe.	into þiffe londe.
& her he fæht ful iwis :	and here he ouer-com :
wið Melga & wið Wanis.	Melga an Wanes fon.
þ̅ wes fwiðe wel idon :	
þ̅ he heo ¹ æt compe ouer-com.	
& draf heom ouer ſæ ſtronde :	and drof heom ouer ſée ſtronde :
in to Yrlonde.	in to Yrlonde.
& ſeoððen ferde ȝeond þif lond :	
ſwa him wef alre leofueft.	
& þe kæifere Maximiæn :	And þe kaifer Maximian :
inne Rome wes hæh mon.	in Rome was heh mā.

work after thy will ; go 'whereso [whither that] thou wilt, and hold thee for lord.' The oaths were sworn, and eft they were broken ! Maximian the emperor gathered 'very' great host, and 'he chose of the brave [Gracien took forth-right] ten thousand knights, 'and made Gracien *their* chieftain.' And 'so they gan proceed [Gracien proceeded] into this land, and here 'he fought full surely with [soon overcame] Melga and 'with' Wanis ; — 'that was done most well, that he in combat should overcome them !' — and drove them over sea-strand into Ireland ; 'and afterwards marched over this land as to him was liefest of all.' And the emperor Maximian in Rome was high (chief) man, and [he] had Valentin inclosed 'well' fast

¹ heom ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& hæuede Valentin wel uafte.	and he hadde Valentin fafte :
bi-clufed in ane caſtle.	bi-clufed in an caſtle.
þa hafuede ¹ Valentin & Gracien :	þo hadde Valentin and Gracien :
inne Rome muchel cun.	in Rome hadde ² mochel cun.
& iſezen þene enne broðer :	and iſehzen þan anne broþer :
idæled from þen oðer.	idealed frā þan oþer.
Heo fenden heore fonde :	Hii fende hire fonde :
in to Puille londe.	into Poillonde.
& heo fenden to Gradie :	
þan duc of Lumbardie.	10 into Alemaine and Lombardie :
& in to Alemaine :	
to aðelen þan folke.	
and in to feole londe :	and oþer mani londes.
þæ læien þer abeoten.	
& beden of heore ærde :	and gaderede ferde :
alle gaderen værde.	of manian erþe.
& to ane iſette dæie fone :	and to one iſet dai fone :
cumen abeotē Rome.	come aboute Rome.
& wreken uppen Maximien :	and wreken vppe Maximian :
Valentin & Gratien.	20 Valentin and Gracien.
Her of n ^o te na þing :	Her of noht nuſte :
Maximiē þe riche king.	Maximian þe riche.
ah he wunede inne Rome :	

[f. 58^b.
c. 1.]

in a caſtle. Then (at that time) had Valentin and Gracien much kindred in Rome, and *they* ſaw the one brother ſeparated from the other. They ſent their meſſengers into Puille-land (Apulia?), ‘and they ſent’ ‘to Gradie, the duke of Lumbardy, and into Alemaine [into Alemaine (Germany) and Lombardy], ‘to the noble folk,’ and ‘into many [many other] lands, ‘that lay thereabout’; and ‘bade all to gather forces from their country [gathered forces from many a country], and at a ſet day ſoon to come about Rome, and avenge Valentin and Gracien upon Maximian. Maximian the rich ‘king’ knew nothing hereof, ‘but he dwelt in Rome with much ſplendor.

¹ A ſecond hand has ſtruck out the letters ue, and ſubſtituted e above for a.

² Redundant?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid muchele riche-dome.

Vmbe lutle virfte :

þa comen þa uerden.

al abeoten Rome :

riden feouen kinges.

heo to-brekē Rome wal :

& eoden in ou⁹ al.

Rome burh heo nomē :

& Maximien heo floȝen.

& duden vt Valentin :

& alle his iueren mid him. [f. 70. c. 1.]

of þan fstronge caſtle :

& keiſer hine makede.

& nomen heore fōde :

& fenden to þiſſe londe.

& fenden Gratien word :

whæt þer wes iwurðen.

& Gratien forð riht anan :

ahnede þiſne kinedom.

þiſne kinedom haueden Gratien :

þe ær ahte Maximien. 21

& Valentin of Rome :

ahte þa riche.

þus riht þurh ſwulne ræd :

wes Maximien dæd.

þare come foue kinges :

and breke Rome walles.

and þane borh nemen :

and Maximian of-floȝen.

10 and dude vt Valentin :

and alle his veres mid him.

of þan fstronge caſtle :

and kaiſer hine makede.

And nemen hire fonde :

and fende to þiſſe londe.

and fende Gracien word :

hou hit was iworþe.

And Gracien forþriht anon :

ohnede þiſne kinedom.

and Valentin þe riche :

hadde al Rome.

þus riht þorh ſochne read :

was Maximian dead.

After a little time, then came the host; all about Rome 'rode [there came] seven kings; [and] 'they' brake Rome walls and 'marched in over all,' 'Rome-burgh [the burgh] 'they' took, and Maximian 'they' slew, and released Valentin, and all his companions with him, from the strong castle, and made him emperor. And took their messengers and sent to this land, and sent Gracien word 'what there [how it] was done. And Gracien forth-right anon possessed this kingdom; 'this kingdom had Gracien, that ere had Maximian'; and Valentin [the rich] 'possessed the realm of [had all] Rome. Thus right through such counsel was Maximian dead, and Gracien

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and Gracien wes king her :

þat wes cuð wel iwar.

Wið innen ane ȝere :

nes þer first na mare.

iwarð² þe kīg Gracien :

gumene forcuðest.

al he for-uerde þis lond :

þa leoden him weoren laðe.

þa riche he for-uerde :

þa wræcche he drof of ærde. 10

ne durste þa riche þeines :

nowhær him cumen to-ȝeines.

ah alle heo hine fluȝen :

and alle heo hine bibuȝe.

þa weoren in Æst Ængle :

æðele iborne cheorles.

twene ibroðeren :

itwinnes heo weoren.

Ethelbald.

þe oðer hehte Eðelbald :

Alfwald.

& þe oðer Ælfwald. 20

Heo isehȝen on feole studen :

hou þe kīg þis lond fordude.

þas cheorles heom bi-þohten :

and Gracien was king her :

þat was cuþ wel iwar.

Wiþ¹ one ȝere :

nas þar forst na more.

iwarþ þe king Gracien :

manne for-coupest.

al he for-ferde þis lond :

and alle hī hatede.

PO were in Eft Engeland :

twei boldde cheorles.

broþeres hii were :

of one beor-time.

þe on hehte Eþelbald :

þe oþer Alfwald.

Hii isehȝen in eche stude : [c. 2.]

hou þe king þis lond for-dude.

þeos cheorles heom biþohte :

was king here,—that was known every where. Within a year,—there was no more (longer) space,—the king Gracien became most wicked of men ; he destroyed all this land, 'the people were hateful to him [and all him hated] ; 'the rich he destroyed, the poor he drove from land ; the rich thanes durst not anywhere come against him, but all they fled *from* him, and all they avoided him.' Then were in 'East-Ængle [East-England] two 'brothers' noble-born [bold] churls, 'twins [brothers] they were [of one birth] ; the one hight Ethelbald, 'and' the other Ælfwald. They saw in 'many places [each place] how the king destroyed this land. These churls bethought

¹ Wiþ ine?² iwarð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

whæt heo don mihtē.	wat he ¹ don mihte.
& speken heom ful stille ⁊	and speken wel stille ⁊
þ̅ þene king heo walden quellē.	þa hii hine wolde a-cwelle.
& fēden in Æst Ængle ⁊ [c.2.]	
wide ȝeond þan londe.	
& fumnede on ærde ⁊	Hii gaderede to-gaderes ⁊
feouen hundred cheorles.	foue hundred cheorles.
& feiden þurh alle þīg ⁊	and feide þorh alle þing ⁊
þ̅ heo walden bi-fechen þene king.	þat hii wolde feche þane king.
& bidden hine mildce ⁊ 10	and bidde him milce ⁊
þurh þene milde godd.	þorþ þane god milde.
þ̅ he þurh his mihte ⁊	þat he þorh his mihte ⁊
heolde heom to rihte.	heolde ham to rihte.
Ah Ælfwald & his b ^o ðer ⁊	Ac Alfalf ² and his broþer ⁊
al heo þuhten oðer.	al hii þohte an oþer.
heo uerden fwiðe warliche ⁊	
mid wūfūme ladef.	
& ælc bær an honde ⁊	ech bar on his honde ⁊
æenne faȝel fstronge.	ane staf fstronge.
and biſiden heo gunnen heongē ⁊	and bi-fide honge ⁊
cniues fwiðe longe. 21	cnifes fwiþe longe.
vnder heore barme ⁊	
to ſcilden heom wið hæreme.	

them what they might do, and spake 'them' 'full [well] still; that 'the king [him] they would kill; 'and sent to East-Ængle, wide over the land, and' 'assembled in *the* country [They gathered together] seven hundred churls, and said through all things that they would seek the king, and ask his grace, through God the mild, that he through his might should hold them in right. But Ælfwald and his brother they thought all another *thing*; 'they fared most warily with winsome looks, and' each bare in [his] hand a strong staf, and by *their* sides 'they gan hang [hung] very long knives, 'under their bosom, to shield them from harm'; and so they 'forth'

¹ hii?² R. Alfwald.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fwa heo forð ferdē :

alle i-funde.

& vmben are mile :

heo ræftē ane while.

& au⁹ ælcne hired-gume :

feire heo igrættē.

& mildeliche þurh alle þing :

fræinedē whær weoren þe king.

& hiredmen heom tahtē :

whær heo hine finden mæhtē.

whær he wes ī anne wude :

in ane wilderne.

æfter ane bare :

he hine a-bohte ful fære.

þa cheorles wenden to þan wuden :

& warliche heō hudden.

alle bute tweien :

toward þan kīge heo weoren beien.

and iuunden þene kīg :

þær he wes an flæting.

& him to cleopeden :

quickere ftæuene.

Hiderward lauerd king :

and so iwende¹ one mile :

and reſte one wile.

and euere amag² oþer þing :

hii axede ware were þe king.

And hiredmen heom tahte :

ware hii hine finde mihte.

war he huntēde in on wode :

in an wilderne.

huntēde one wilde bor :

þat he boht wel for.

þe cheorles wende to þan wode :

and warliche heom hudde.

al bote tweie :

þat to þan king wende.

And hii funde þane king :

þær he was an hontýng.

and hii him cleopede :

mid ſwiþe loude ſtemne.

Com hider louerd king :

proceeded 'all in safety, and after' a mile 'they [and] rested a while. And 'every courtier they greeted fair, and' 'mildly through all [ever among other] things [they] asked where the king was. And *the* courtiers taught them where they might find him, where he 'was [hunted] in a wood, in a wilderness, 'after [hunted] a 'wild' boar,—he bought 'him full [that well] sore! The churls went to the wood, and warily hid them, all except two ;— 'toward the king they were both [that to the king proceeded]. And [they] found the king where he was a-hunting; and [they] called to him with 'quick [very loud] voice : [Come] hither'ward,' lord king, [and] we will to

¹ hii wende ?² amang ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

we þe wulleð cuðen a wunderlic and we þe wollep teche.

þing. [f. 70^b. c. 1.]

of ane fwulche bare : of one wilde bore :

þe her is bi-halues. þat her his bi-fide.

vnder ane berhȝe : vnder one borewe :

þer he burh hafueð i-chosen. þar he him restep. [f. 59. c. 1.]

ne iherde we næuere on liue :

tellen of fwulche fwine.

ȝif þu þider wult riden : ȝef þou þider wolt ride :

þer he þe abideð. þar he þe abideþ.

þer fore wes þe king glad : 10 Her fore was þe king glad :

& þiderwærd wes swiðe ræd. and þiderwardes he rod.

& þa cheorles him biuoren : and þe cheorles him bi-fore :

beien to-gædere. beine to-gadere.

þa cheorles up þreowē : þe cheorles vp þreuwen :

þene king heo icneowen. þā king icnewen¹.

& heo hine niðer setten : and hine adun þreuwe :

& al hine to-heowen. ad² al hine to-hewe.

þus Gratien þe king : þus Gracien þe king :

for ut an flæting. vt wende an hontige.

Sone hit wes ouer al ifeid : 20 Sone hit was ouer al ifeid :

þat þe luðere king wes dæd. þat þe luper king was dead.

þa weoren inne Bruttene : þo was gladniffe :

bliffen inowe. ifiȝe to londe.

thee 'make known [teach] a wondrous thing,' of 'such a [a wild] boar, that here is aside under a mount, where he 'hath chosen *his* lair [he him resteth];—'never heard we tell alive of such a swine!'—if thou wilt thither ride, where he abideth thee." The king was 'therefore [herefore] glad, and 'thitherward was ready [thitherwards he rode]; and the churls before him, both together. The churls started up, the king they knew, and 'they' threw him down, and hewed him all in pieces. Thus Gracien the king went out a-hunting! Soon it was over all said, that the wicked king was dead; then 'were in Britain blisses enow [was gladness come to land],

¹ hii cnewen?² R. and.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ah fone þer æfter :	ac fone þer hafter :
sorȝen heō weoren ȝiueðen.	forhþe was riue.
þa wes æuer ælc cheorl :	þo was eche cheorl :
al fwa bald alfe an eorl.	fo bolde fo an eorl.
& alle þa gadelīges :	and alle þe gadelinges :
alfe heo weoren funen kinges.	afe hit were kinges.
þis word com to wel iwhare :	
hu þe king wes iuaren.	
comen fæ-liðende men :	
uorð into Irlonde.	10
& funden þer ful iwis :	Comē men foliwis :
Melga & Wanis.	to Melga and Wanis.
& talden heom tiðende :	and ȝam tidinge tolde :
al of þiffen londe.	al of þiffe londe.
hu hit al wes iuaren :	ou hit al was ivare :
& þ cheorles næfdē nane kare.	and þe cheorles nadde none care :
& hefden al þis kine-lond :	and was al þat kinelond :
ifet a cheorlene hond.	hii-fette in cheorlene hond.
þa weoren glade ful iwis :	þo weren glade foliwis :
Melga & Wanis.	20 Melga and Wanis.
& feiden þ heo walden :	and feide þat hii wolde :
toward þiffen londe.	[c. 2.] toward þiffe londe.
Mid muchelere uerde :	Mid mochele ferde :
heo comen to þiffen ærde.	icome ¹ to þif erþe.

Wanis.

but soon thereafter 'sorrows were given to them [sorrow was rife]! Then was 'every [each] churl as bold as an earl, and all the gadelings as 'if they [it] were 'sons of' kings! 'This word came every where, how the king had fared. Seafaring' men came 'forth into Ireland and found there' full truly [to] Melga and Wanis, and told them tidings all of this land, how it all was done; and that *the* churls had no care, and 'had [was] set all 'this [the] kingdom in churlish hand. Then were glad full certainly Melga and Wanis, and said that they would *go* toward this land.

¹ hii come?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo hæfden of Gutlonde:⁹

ut-lazen fstronge.

of Neorewæi & of Denemarke:⁹

men swiðe fstarke.

& of Yrlonde:⁹

Gillemaur þene fstronge.

of Scottene heo hafde:⁹

alle þa hæhftē.

& of Galeweoðe:⁹

gumen fwiðe kene.

10

& fwa heo gunnen wenden:⁹

ut to Norðhūberlond.

ahten heo nomen:⁹

folc heo þer flozen.

castles heo arardē:⁹

& ahneden þa arde.

þa burhzen heo nomen:⁹

& al þ̅ heo neh comē.

þa ifeȝen Bruttes:⁹

þ̅ balu wes on lōde.

20

nuften heo nænne ræd:⁹

heo wenden alle wurðen dæd.

Sondē heo nomen fone:⁹

hii hadde of Gutlond:⁹

vtlazes fwiþe fstrong.

of Denemarche and of Noreweie:⁹

men fwiþe kene.

and of Yrlonde:⁹

Gillomaur þan fstronge.

And so hii gonne wende:⁹

in to þan norþ ende.

hii barnden hii flowen:⁹

[c. 2.]

borwes hii nomen.

þo ifeȝen Bruttes:⁹

þat wo was in londe.

nadde hii nadne¹ read:⁹

hii wende alle beo dead.

Sonde hii neme fone:⁹

With *a* great army they came to this country; they had of Gothland outlaws [most] strong, of Norway and of Denmark men most 'bold [keen], and of Ireland Gillemaur the strong; 'of Scotland they had all the highest, and of Galloway men most keen.' And so they gan wend 'out [in]to 'Northumberland; goods they took, folk there [the north end; they burnt] they slew; 'castles they areared, and took possession of the land; the' boroughs they seized, 'and all that they came nigh.' When *the* Britons saw that 'bale [woe] was in *the* land, they 'knew [had] no counsel, they weened all to be dead. Messengers they took soon, and sent 'toward [to]

¹ *R.* nanne.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fenden toward Rome.
 & beden heore are :'
 þa & auere mære.
 ȝif heo heom wolde helpen :'
 to hæȝere neode.
 a to heore liue :'
 heo walden heom² liðe.
 & luue to heom halden :'
 ȝif heo heom helpen wolden.
 þis word wes ifend :'
 bi write fwiðe deore³.
 & þat writ wes irad :'
 imæg⁴ þan Rom-leden.
 þa speken fone :'
 þæ wiffeste of Rome.
 Bi vfelen iwurhten :'
 fculden we heom to wenden.
 for Gratien heo floȝen :'
 his men heo for-foren.
 & neoðeles we heom fculden fendē :'
 ferde of þiffen ærde.
 of þiffen ænde :'
 æenne ælpi verde.

and fende to Rome.
 and beden hire ore :'
 þo and euere more¹.
 ȝef hii ȝam wolde helpe :'
 to þan ilke neode.
 and euere wil hii lifde :'
 lofue ȝam hi wolde.
 10 þis word was ifende :'
 bi writ fwiþe deorne.
 and þat writ was irad :'
 a-mang Romleode.
 þo speke fone :'
 þe wifest of Rome.
 Mid luþer wille :'
 folde we ȝam helpe.
 Gracien iflowe⁵ :'
 and of houre men inowe.
 and noþeles we ham folle [fende] :'
 21 cnihtes i-nowe.

Rome, and prayed their favor, then and evermore, if they would them help at 'great [that] need, [and] ever 'in their lives [while they lived] they would 'be obedient to [love] them, 'and love to them hold, if they them would help.' This word was sent by a writ most secret, and the writ was read among 'the' Rome-folk. Then spake soon the wisest of Rome: "'By evil desert [With ill will] should we 'go to [help] them, 'for' Gracien they slew, [and] 'his [of our] men 'they destroyed [enow]. And nevertheless we shall send them 'forces of this land, [knights enow.]" a little troop of this country."

¹ In the MS. the words *beden hire hore* are written by negligence a second time, after more.

² beon heom ?

³ deorne ?

⁴ imæg ?

⁵ hii flowe ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Vt heo fendē of Rome :	Vt hii fende of Rome :
cnihtes wel idone.	cnihtes wel idone.
fif and twenti hundred :	fif and twenti hundred :
[f. 71. c. 1.] comen in to Lūden.	come to Londene.
& buden al þa ferde :	and gadere al þe ferde :
of Brutlondef ærde.	of Brutlondef erþe.
& ferden forð ful iwīs :	and verden forþ foliwīs :
to Melga & Wanis.	to Melga and to Wanis.
& heo fehten heom wið :	and hii fohten heom wiþ :
& floȝen heore uerde.	and flowen hire ferde.
10 & heo fulf mid ærhscipe :	and hii mid harþfipe :
arndē to heolde.	to þan wode flowe.
& letten flæn heore folc :	and lette flean hire folk :
heore vnimete uerde.	in euereche fife ¹ .
& heo feolf liðden forð :	and hii flowe forþ :
biuoren Scotlonde.	bi norþe Scotlonde.
& Febus heom æfter :	and Phebus him ² hafter :
mid his Romanisce cnihten.	mid Romanisse cnihtes.
ah heo ne mihten for nane þīgen :	ac he ne mihte for noþing :
Melgan iūiden.	20 Melga i-finde.
& heo bi-gunnen feorlic :	And hii bi-gonne verlich :
ane swiðe deope dich.	anne fwiþe deope dich. [f. 59 ^b . c. 1.]
& þer ouen on ouer al :	and þar vp on oueral :

Febus.

They sent out of Rome brave knights; five and twenty hundred came 'in'to London, and gathered all the host of Britains land, and marched forth full surely to Melga and [to] Wanis; and they fought with them, and slew their forces; and they '*themselves*' with difficulty fled to 'hold [the wood]; and caused their folk to be slain, 'their innumerable host [on every side]. And they '*themselves*' 'proceeded [fled] forth 'before [by north of] Scotland, and Febus after them, with 'his' Romanish knights, —but 'they [he] might not for any thing find Melga. And they began quickly a ditch exceeding deep, and thereupon over all a 'strong' stone

¹ fide?² ham?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

æne fstrongne fstanene wal.	one ftonene wal.
bi þere fæ ftronde :	bi þare féé ftronde :
bi-fide Scotlonde.	bifides Scotlond.
þer weoren æuere iwuned :	þar were euere iwoned :
þe vt-laȝen to londen cumen.	vtlawes to londe come.
& seoððe heo heom dihten :	and fuþþe he hit dihte :
to bi-witen þa dich mid cnihten.	to witie hine mid cnihtes.
þa dic & þa wal weoren ȝare :	þe dich and þe wal weren ȝare :
þa næfde Bruttes nane kare.	þo nadde Bruttes nanne care.
aȝan heo gūnen wenden :	10 aȝen hii gonne wende :
to þare burh of Lūden.	to þare borh of Londene.
& Febus of Rome :	And Phebus of Rome :
huftinge bad fone.	heold þar fpeche fone.
þer com moni riche mō :	þar com mani riche eorl :
to þan huftinge anan.	
moni cniht moni eorl :	
moni þein mōi cheorl.	mani cniht mani cheorl.
moni riche burh-mon :	mani riche borh-man :
þer wende beon bliðe anan.	þat wende beo bliþe anon.
þa forhfulle weoren an heortē :	20 þat sorþfolle eoden :
ær þe dæi weoren agan.	her þe dai a-gon were.
Febus þe feire cniht :	Phebus þe faire cniht :
lette beoden his ferde uorð riht.	bed his ferde forþriht.
þ heo comen to huftinge :	

wall by the sea-strand beside Scotland, where 'the' outlaws were ever accustomed to come to *the* land. And afterwards 'they [he] prepared 'them [it] to guard 'the ditch [it] with knights. 'The ditch and the wall were ready (completed), then had *the* Britons no care; back they gan wend to the burgh of London. And Febus of Rome 'assembled *a* husting [held there *a* conference] soon; there came many *a* rich 'man [earl] 'to the husting anon'; many knight, 'many earl, manythane,' many churl, many rich burgher 'there [that] weened to be blithe anon, who 'were in heart [departed] sorrowful ere the day were passed. Febus the fair knight 'caused his host to be assembled [bade his host] forth-right, 'so that they should come to husting with all their troops; and the swains at

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid alle heore þringe.

& þa fweines at hærberwē : [c. 2.]

letten heore horf¹ wel ȝærwen.

& makien þa heorf al fwa ȝare : make hire hors alle ȝare :

fwa heo fculden forð faren. afe hii folde anon vare.

& al þat folc duden þuf :

fwa hit hæhte Febus.

& fwa heo gunnen wenden :

to heore huftinge.

þa þat folc wes al icumen : 10

& ælc hif ftude hafde inomen.

þa hehte me luften :

inne Lundene.

þa stod him up Febus :

þo stod vp Phebus :

þe riche cniht and feide þuf.

þe riche cniht and faide þus.

Lufteð me nu Bruttes :

Lufteþ me nou me² Bruttes :

þe her beoð bihalues.

þat here beoþ bi-halues.

ich habbe eow to fuggen :

foð word of Rome.

ȝe uf fende fonde :

ȝeo vs fende fonde :

in to ure londe.

in to Rome londe.

of þare forhȝe ful iwis :

of þane wo foliwis :

þe eow duden Melgan & Wanis. þat ou dude Melga and Wanis.

their quarters to cause their horses (?) to be well prepared ; and ' to make 'the [their] horses all 'as' ready, as *if* they should 'forth [anon] march. 'And all the folk did thus as Febus commanded it, and so they gan proceed to their husting. When the folk was all come, and each had taken his place, then silence was commanded in London.' Then stood 'him' up Febus, the rich knight, and said thus : "Listen to me now, Britons, that here are beside ; 'I have to say to you sooth words from Rome.' Ye sent us messengers into 'our [Rome] land, of the 'sorrow [woe] full truly that Melga and Wanis did to you. 'And I with my army came to this country,'

¹ *Sic MS.*² *Redundant.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& ich mid mire ferde :

com to þiffen ærde.

& ich habbe eower iuā :

iualled to þan grunde.

& iflemed ut of ærde :

Melgan buten uærde.

Nu we mazen to ȝere :

careles wunien here.

of þare ilke uerde :

þe iflaȝen if on ærde.

10

ȝe uf habbeð ofte imaked wrað :

þer uore inne Rome ȝe beoð lað.

for ofte ȝe uf habbeð at-halden :

þat gauel of þiffen londe.

& æc we¹ habbeoð ufele idon :

iflæȝe þene king Gratien.

& ofte ȝe uf bi-hateð :

treoðe to halden.

& æuere a þan ænde :

ȝe wakieð an hōde.

20

We habbeð for eower luuē :

ilofed ure leoden.

cnihtes i þiffen londe :

an hundred þuſende.

seoððen Juliuf Cefar : [f.71^b.c.1.]

and ich habbe ȝoure fon :

afulled to þan grunde.

and iflemid vt of erpe :

Melga boutte ferde.

Nou we maze to ȝere :

careles wonie here.

Ac ȝe vs habbeþ ofte imaked wroþ :

þar fore in Rome ȝe beoþ loþ.

for ofte ȝeo habbeþ at-holde : [c.2.]

þat feo of oure londe.

and eke ȝe habbeþ vuel idon :

iflæȝe þane kīg Gracien.

and ofte ȝe vf bi-hoteþ :

treuþe to holde.

ac euere a þan ende :

ȝeo wakieþ an honde.

We habbeþ for oure loue :

ilore of vre leode.

cnihtes in þiffe londe :

an hundred þuſend².

and I have felled your foes to the ground, and driven out of *the* land Melga, without *his* host. Now may we at present dwell here careless 'of that host which is slain in *the* land.' [But] ye have oft made us wrath, therefore in Rome ye are odious! For oft ye have withheld from us the 'tribute [fee] of 'this [your] land, and eke ye have done evil,—slain the king Gracien; and oft ye promise us to hold troth, 'and [but] ever in the end ye weaken in hand (break pledge). We have for your love lost [of] our people, a hun-

¹ ȝe?² R. þuſend.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ærft bicō her.	
ah fwa we ibiden are :'	ac fo ic ibide ore :'
nulle we nō mare.	nolle we fo na more.
ah we wulleð fone :'	ac we wollep fone :'
uaren in to Rome.	wende aȝen to Rome.
& bi-tachē eow þif kine-lond :	and bi-take ȝou þis kinelond :
& haldeð hit on eowre hond.	to ȝoure owene hond.
& brukeð hit mid vnne ¹ :	and broukep hit wel euere :
for nulle we nauere mare :	for vs ne fe ȝeo neuere.
aȝan comen here.	
We habbeð of þiffe londe :	
ihaued monie þufend punde.	
þa we habbeð her bi-foht :	
ah heo beoð ful deore aboht.	
we beoð ofte hider ifaren :	
mid wandreðe & mid fare.	
& nu ȝe mazen wel don :	
bifecheð eow wepnen a-nan,	
& werieð eow feoluē :	weriep nou ȝou feolue :
wið vncuðe leoden.	wiþ oncoupe leode.
Neoren eower ælderen :	Nere ȝoure heldre :
aðelene cæppen.	ftaleworpe cnihtes.
heōne to Rome al þ̅ lond :	hinene to Rome :

dred thousand knights in this land 'since Julius Cæsar first arrived here.' But as 'we [I] pray for grace we will [so] no more! But we will soon go 'unto [back to] Rome, and deliver you this kingdom; 'and hold *ye* it' in your [own] hand, and possess it 'with joy [well ever], for 'we will never more again come here [us ye see *nevermore*]. 'We have had of this land many thousand pounds, that we have here acquired, but they are full dear bought, *for* oft we are (have) hither come, with trouble and with sorrow. And now ye may do well; procure to you weapons anon, and 'defend [now] yourselves against foreign folk. Were not your ancestors 'noble fellows

¹ The first letter of vnne is sup. ras. R. wunne, as in f. 140. c. 1. A line is also here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

stod on heore aȝere hond.	stod at hire dome.
& al þat lond þat heo ifezen :	al þat hii i-feh of lond :
fone heo hit bi-wunne.	hii wonne to hire oȝe hond.
al heo hit biwunnen :	al þif hi bi-wonne :
mid heore ahte wæpnen.	mid hire main fstronge.
Ah makieð in eowre londe :	
castles fwiðe fstronge.	
and werieð eowre þeode :	
wið vncuðe leode.	
& wunieð her hal and hæil :	10 wonieþ here niht an dai :
& habbeð alle godne dæie.	and nou ich wolle fare min way.
þa þeos word weoren [isæid] :	þo þeos wordes weren ifeid :
þa wes her a fstrōg ræd.	þo was þar a ftron ¹ read.
næs nauere þe mon iboren :	nas neuere þe man ibore :
inne nare burhȝe.	in none borewe.
þe auere mihte tellen :	þat al mihte [telle] :
þurh nane spellen.	mid worde no mid spelle.
of þere muchele færinæffe :	half þe foriniffe :
þa ifizen wes to folke.	þat i-feȝe waf to londe.
þa weoren inne Lundenne :	20
laðliche iberen.	[c. 2.]
þer wes wop :	þer wes rop :
	þar was wop þar was cri :

[strong knights]? hence to Rome 'all the land' stood 'in [at] their 'own hand [will]; 'and' all 'the [of] land that they saw, 'soon' they won 'it' [to their own hand]; all they 'it [this] won with their 'brave weapons [strong might]. 'But make *ye* in your land castles very strong, and defend your country against foreign folk; and' dwell here 'whole and hale [night and day], and 'have *ye* all good day! [now I will go my way].'' When these words were said, then was 'here [there] an evil chance; never was the man born in any burgh, that 'ever [all] might tell, 'through any [with word nor with] story, 'of the great [half the] sorrow that was come on *the* 'folk [land]! 'Then were in London dreadful cries'; there was weeping, there was 'lament [cry], and sorrow 'unmeet [too much], 'when

¹ strong?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& reoðen vnimete.

and roupe to fale.

þa þeo Rom-leoden :

riden toward ſcipene.

& Bruttes bilafde :

inne þiſſe londe.

mid vnimete reoðe :

ne cuðe heo ræd nænne.

þas tiðinde ful iwis :

þes tidinge foliwiſ :

iherde Melga & Wanis.

hi-horde Melga and Wanis.

*Melga.
Wanis.*

heo hefden ane verde : 10 hii [hadde] hane ferde :

of vnimete folke.

of onimete folke. [f. 60. c.1.]

& heo gunnen wenden :

and hii gonne wende :

in to Norh-hūberlond.

into Norþhumberlonde.

ʒeōnd þ̅ lond heo arnden :

oueral hii arde¹ :

and floʒen & barnden.

and flowen and barnde.

& swa heo forð wenden :

and ſo hii forþ wende :

þat heo comen to þan walle.

þat hii comen to þan walle.

þeo þa Rom-leoden :

þat þe Romleode :

hæfden aræred.

hadde þar arered.

Brutteſ weoren wið innen : 20 Bruttes were wiþ ine :

mid ſwiðe feole monnen.

mid ſwiþe fale māne.

& Melga wið vten :

and Melga wiþ houte :

& ʒeorne wes abutē.

and ʒeorne was a-boute.

hu he mihte aʒeinnen :

hou he mihte a-winne :

þ̅ he weorē binnen².

þat he were wiþ ine.

the Rome-folk rode toward *their* ships, and left *the* Britons in this land, with sorrow unmeet;—they knew no counsel! Melga and Wanis heard these tidings full certainly; they had an army of innumerable folk, and they gan wend into Northumberland; over [all] ‘the land’ they ran, and slew and burnt, and so they forth proceeded until they came to the wall that the Rome-folk had [there] areared. *The* Britons were within, with very many men, and Melga without, and earnestly was about how he might win so that he were within. They ‘rushed to the wall, *the* bold thanes’;

¹ arnde?² R. binnen.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Heo ræfden to þan walle :

ræize þeines.

fomned alle þa uerde :

feole cunnen ærde.

þa dich wes fwiðe wid & deop :

& þa ferde to-leop.

& Bruttes weoren igærede :

& þene wal weoreden.

heo scuten in : heo scuten ut :

scalkes þer feollen. 10

arwen fluȝen ouer wal :

al abuten ouer al.

swa þicke wes heore uæræ :

swulc hit hazel wæren. [B^uttes :

þat for þa arewen ne mihte þa þar fore ne mihte Bruttus :

ȝemen manes² fihtes.

ah a-dun of þan walle :

iwendē heo alle.

& fetten to fleme :

feondliche fwide³. [f.72.c.1.]

& þa oðer breken þane wal : 21

& eoden binnen ouer al.

& after heo droȝen :

Hii gaderede al þe ferde :

of mani cunnes erþe.

þe dich was fwiþe wid and deop :

and þe ferde to-leop.

And Bruttus weren igadered :

and þane wal werede.

hii foten in hii foten vt :

mani man þar folle.

harwe floȝe oueral :

al abou¹ þe wal.

hii fette to fleonde :

feondeliche fwiþe.

And þe oþer breken þane wal :

and eoden in oueral.

and after droȝen :

gathered all the force of many kind of land;—the ditch was very wide and deep, and the host toward it leapt. And *the* Britons were 'prepared [gathered], and defended the wall; they shot in, they shot out,—men [many a man] there fell,—*the* arrows flew over *'the* wall [all] all about 'over all [the wall]; 'so thick was their flight, as if it were hail,' 'so that for the arrows [therefore] 'the' Britons might not 'maintain any fight [guard their wall], 'but down from the wall they all went, and' [they] began to flee exceeding quickly. And the others brake the wall, and passed 'with'in over all, and after 'they' pursued, and 'greatly them [many there]

¹ aboute?² nanes?³ fwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fwiðe heom flozen.	and mani þar of-flozen.
heo flozen þer muchel wunder :	and floze þare mochel wonder :
twa & fifti hundred.	two an twenti hundred.
al of Brutten feoluē :	al of feolue Bruttes :
wið uten þan Scotten.	wiþ houte þe Scottes.
& wið utten þan Dænscæn :	and wiþ houte Denfe :
þa inne þere dic bi-læfden.	þat in þan dich leie.
þus iþæh þis kinelōd :	þus i-þeh þis kinelond :
a þere Bruttene hond.	ine Bruttene hond.
Whæren Bruttes :	10 Wile were Bruttus :
cnihtes icorene.	icnowe gode cnihtes.
ah nu heo weoren alle :	ac nou hii beoþ wel neh :
fwiðe for-lorene.	a-falle to þan grunde. [c. 2.]
ne beoþ heo neuere hæze :	þat ne worþ hii neuere hehere :
buten heo hælp habben.	bote hii help habbe.
of oðere moncunne :	of oþer mancunne :
for heo feolf ne cunne.	for heom feolf noht ne conne.
þus ferde ful iwif :	þus ferde foliwis :
Melga & Wanif.	Melga and Wanis.
þa Bruttes of Lundene :	20 þe Bruttes of Londene :
to Rome fende fone.	to Rome fende fonde.
bedē heom fwiðe cumen :	and beden fwiþe come :
& don alfe heo ær weoren iwuned.	and do alse hii were iwoned.
þat heo arædde þis lond :	þat hii a-redde þis lond :

slew ; 'they [and] slew there great wonder,—two and 'fifty [twenty] hundred, all of *the* Britons *themselves*, without the Scots, and without the Danes, who in the ditch 'remained [lay]. Thus throve this kingdom in 'the' Britons hands. [Whilom] *the* Britons were 'chosen [known good] knights, but now they 'were all greatly deteriorated ; [are well nigh fallen to the ground, so that] they never will 'be high [become higher], unless they have help of other men, for 'they' *of* [them]selves can not [aught] !—Thus fared full truly Melga and Wanis. The Britons of London sent 'soon [messengers] to Rome, [and] bade them come quickly, and do as they 'ere' were accustomed, that they should rule this land, and take

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& nomen hit al to heore hond.	and neme hit to hire owe hond.
for heom heo hit vðē:	
bet þane þan vncuðen.	
þa ȝeuen heo þuf anfwære:	þo ȝefuen hii foch anfwere:
Nulle we nauere þider faren.	Nolle we neuere þider fare.
to þolien þat fwuc ¹ & þ iwin:	
aȝæn þat heðene cun.	
for þat if goddes wiðer-fake:	
Wanif ihaten.	
& Melgan his iuere:	10
nulle we nauere cumen þere.	
þ if al þe ende:	þat his al þe ende:
nulle we þuder wende.	nolle we þider wende.
an oðer halue we habbeoð:	
mare þene we mazen an-hebben.	
Nes þer nā oðer andfwere:	Nas þar non oþer anfwere:
& þas fondēgunnē aȝænfaren.[c.2.]	þe fondes gonne aȝen fare.
¶ þa heo aȝan comen:	þo hii aȝen come:
þa Bruttes from Rome.	þe Bruttus fram Rome.
þa tiðinde talden:	20 þe tidinges tolde:
þe Romleoden heom falden.	þat hii ham helpe nolde.
þa wes Lundene folc:	þo was Londenenes folk:
mid forȝen ibunden.	mid moche wo ibunde.

it 'all' to their [own] hand, 'for they would grant it to them better (rather) than to the strangers.' Then gave they 'thus [such] answer: "We will never go thither 'to endure the toil and the conflict against the heathen race,—for that *man* is Gods enemy named Wanis, and Melga his companion,—we will never come there'; that is all the end (conclusion), we will not thither go; 'on *another* side we have more than we may up-hold.'" Was there no other answer, 'and' 'these [the] messengers gan return. When they came back, the Britons from Rome, *they* told the tidings that 'the Rome-folk gave them [they would not them help];—then was 'London

¹ swinc?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa wes þer an ærchebiscop :	þo was þar an archebiffop :
þat wes hali mon igod ¹ .	þat was holy man and god.
& mid godde fwiðe hæh :	and mid god fwiþe heh :
Guencelin ihatē.	Gwenselin i-hote.
He fende his fonde :	He fende his fonde :
ȝeond alle Brutlonde.	oueral Brutlonde.
æfter alle þan clæreken :	after alle þe clerekes :
þe godes lare cuðen.	þat godes lore couþe.
alle þaie ihade gumen :	alle þe hodede gomes :
hiȝendliche him to comen.	hiȝenliche to him come.
& heo ful fone :	and hii fol fone :
to Lundene comen.	to londe ² come.
þuſ Guencelin heom ſpæc wið :	þuſ Gwencelin heom ſpac wiþ :
Mid uſ wunien godes grið.	Mid vs wonie godes griþ.
þat iſ on latī ful iwiſ :	
þat me ſæið Pax vob.	
& heo heo ³ him feiden forn to :	
Et cum ſpū tuo.	
þa bi-gon he lar-ſpæl :	þo bi-gan he lorſpel :
& of gode ſpæc ſwide ⁴ wel.	and heō likede ſwiþe wel.
A þan dazen þat ⁵ ſeit ⁶ Pauwel :	In þan daiȝe at ſeint Poul :
wef þe ærchebiscop ſtol.	was þe archebiffopes ſtolle.

Guen-
[celin].

[Londons] folk with 'sorrow [much woe] bound ! Then was there an archbishop, who was *a* holy man and good, and most high with God, named Guencelin. He sent his messengers over all Britain, after all the clerks that knew Gods lore, all the hooded men, speedily to come to him ; and they full soon to London came. Thus spake Guencelin with them : " With us dwell Gods grace ! " — ' that is in Latin full truly what men say " Pax vobis ! " ' And they said again to him, " Et cum spiritu tuo ! " ' Then began he *a* discourse, and 'of good spake [*it* liked to them] most well. In those days

¹ & god ?³ Redundant ?⁵ Written at first þant, but n expuncted. R. at ?² Londene ?⁴ ſwiðe ?⁶ R. ſeint.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& wel feole ȝere :	
þe ærchebiscopes weoren þere.	
ah seoððen þa feit Austin com :	ac supþe feint Austin com :
hit wes to Cantuare-buri idon.	he was to Cantelburi idon. [f. 60 ^b . c. 1.]
Nu feide Guencelin :	Nou feide Gwencelin :
þa wes þa heolie mon.	þat was þe holie man.
Lusteð lauerdindes ¹ :	Lustep louerdlinges :
of ure tiðendef.	of houre tidinges.
þa þes haðene mon :	lo ² þif heþene man :
þe if ihatē Melgan.	þat his ihote Melga.
& Wanif & heore uerde :	and Wanis his i-vere :
habbeð ibroht to þissen ærde.	habbeþ ibrohte to þif erþe.
& wulleð þefne cristindom :	and wollep þifne cristendom :
al for-faren & for-don.	wollep ³ for-fare and for-don.
& ich wulle habben leue :	And ich wolle habbe lefue :
forð ich wulle liðen.	hinene to wende.
& ouer fæ wenden :	[f. 72 ^b . c. 1.]
to fūme hæȝe kinge.	to fomme hehȝe kinge :
& bidde þane hæȝe king :	
þat hæ ⁴ uf hælpēn þurh alle þing.	and feche helpinge.
& ȝif ich mai iuīden :	21 And ȝef ich mai ifinde :
to fpeken wið fwulche kinge.	to fpeke wiþ foche king.
þenne wulle ich wel fain :	þan wolle ich wel fain :

the archbishops stool was 'then' at Saint Pauls, 'and well many years the archbishops were there,' but since 'that' Saint Austin came, it was removed to Canterbury. Now said Guencelin, who was the holy man : "Listen, lordings, of our tidings, that this heathen man who is named Melga, and Wanis 'and their host [his comrade] have brought to this land, and will 'all' destroy and annul this Christendom. And I will have (take) leave ; 'forth I will go [hence to depart], 'and over sea pass' to some high king, 'and pray the high king,' 'that he help us through all things [and seek help]. And if I may find to speak with such king, then

¹ lauerdinges?² þat?³ Redundant.⁴ R. he.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

cumen hidere aȝæin.
 oðer allef næuere mare :
 nulle ich cummen here.
 & ȝe bidden for me :
 on eower bare cneowen.
 & habbeð alle godne dæi :
 cumē ich wulle ȝif ich mai.
 þa wes þat folc færi :
 & forhful on heorte.
 ne biden nauere Brutware : 10
 an heore liue fwulche care.
 Forð wende Guencelin :
 & his clærkes mid him.
 riht forð to þere fæ :
 þær heom fæl þuhten.
 Scipen heo þer funden :
 & fone in wenden.
 & heo ful fone :
 ou⁹ sæ comen.
 in to Bruttaine : 20
 þer foren heo weoren faine.
 þa þe king Maximien :
 ȝæf þan eorle Conaan.
 ah dæd wef þa Maximien :
 swa wes þe kīg Conaan.

come hider a-ȝein.
 oþer elles neuere more :
 nelle ich comen here.
 And ȝeo bidde for me :
 vppe ȝoure bare cnouwes.
 and habbeþ alle godne dai :
 ich wolle come wane ich mai.
 þo was þat folk fori :
 and forþfolle on heorte.
 nadden hii neuere here :
 fo mochel care.
 Forþ wende Gwencelin :
 and his clerkes mid him.
 riht to þare féé :
 þar heom beft þohte.
 Sipes hii funden :
 and ouer féé comē.
 into Brutaine :
 þat Conan hadde wile.

will I well fain come hither again, or else nevermore will I come here. And pray ye for me 'on [upon] your bare knees ; and have *ye* all good day, I will come *back* 'if [when] I may.'" Then was the folk sorry, and sorrowful in heart ; 'the Britons [they] never had 'in their lives such [ere so much] care ! Forth went Guencelin, and his clerks with him, right ' forth ' to the sea,—where *it* seemed best to them. Ships ' there ' they found, and ' soon in went, and they full soon ' over sea came into Bretagne,—' therefore they were fain,'—that 'the king Maximian gave the earl Conan [Conan awhile had], ' but dead was then Maximian, so was the king Conan.' But

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

[*Aldro*]ein. Ah Aldroein hæhte his fune : Ac Aldroim heh¹ hehte his fone :
 þe wes of Conaan icumen. þat was of Conan icome.
 Britaine þ̅ lond : he hadde þo Britaines lond :
 he hafde al in his hond. al in his owe hond.
 Armoriche hæhte þat lond :
 ah þene nome hit losede an hond.
 Androgien² wes þer king : Aldroim was þare king :
 vnder him wes moni hæh dring. and hadde mani herdling.
 Guencelin to þan kinge com : [c. 2.] Gwencelin to þan king come :
 & he hine lette wel a-fon. [fot : and he lette hine faire vnder-fon.
 þe ærchebiscop feol to þes kinges þar þe archebissop : [c. 2.]
 & bæd hine biðenche uppen godd. fulle to þis kinges fot.
 Lauer³ king Aldroein : 13 and feide louerd Aldroim :
 ofte þe wurðe godd fæin. ofte þe worþe god fain. [fone :
 Iþench þ̅ þu weore Conaanes fune : Bi-þenche þat þou were Conanes
 of B^utten þu ært al icumen. al of Bruttes icome.
 ich æm icumen to speken þe wið : and ich ham icome to þeode :
 & ȝeornnen þe liues grið. for oure mochele neode.
 In to ure londe beoð icumen : þar beoþ to oure londe icome :
 twæine hæþene gumen. tweie heþene gomes.
 Melga & Wanis : 20 Melga and Wanis :
 muchel ufel heo doh us. mochel wo hii doþ vs.

his son hight Aldroein, who was of Conan begotten ; he had [then]
 'Bretagne the [Bertagnes] land all in his [own] hand. 'Armoriche hight
 the land, but the name it lost in hand.' Aldroein was there king ; 'under
 him was [and had] many 'noble thane [subjects]. Guencelin came to the
 king, and he caused him to be 'well [fairly] received ; [there] the arch-
 bishop fell to 'the [this] kings feet, and 'prayed him to think upon God
 [said] : " Lord 'king,' Aldroein, oft may God be gracious to thee ! Bethink
 that thou wert Conans son, of Britons 'thou art' all descended. [And]
 I am come to 'speak with thee, and yearn of thee grace of life [*thy* land, for
 our great need]. 'In'to our land [there] are come two heathen men, Melga
 and Wanis ; much 'evil [woe] they do to us. They have of our land all

¹ Redundant.² R. Aldroein.³ Lauerd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo habbeoð of ure londe : hii habbeþ of oure londe :
 al þene norð ende. al þane norþ ende.
 & fwiðe we beoð auæred : and we beoþ adrad fore :
 ꝥ heo nu nabben mare. leste he¹ habbe nou more.
 & ȝet heo þencheð ufele don : And hii þencheþ mocheþ vuel don :
 to fallen þæne cristindom. to falle þane cristendom.
 & turne to heðeneffe : and teorne to heþenniffe :
 þa hæȝe & þa læffe. þe more and þe laffe.
 For þi fader nom of Brutlonde : For þi fader nam al þe strengþe :
 alle þa cnihtes stronge. 10 of Brutlond.
 & moni þusend ladde to Rome : and mani þusend ladde :
 Maximien þe wel idone. Maximian to Rome.
 & nu liggeð of-flaȝen : and nou liggeþ of-flaȝe :
 þa heo bilæfden an ure dazen. þat hii blefde bi hire daze.
 & þus is Brutlondes ærd : and þus his Brutlond :
 of folke bidæled. of cnihtes bi-reifed.
 Sonde we fende to Rome : Sonde we fende to Rome :
 & bedē ꝥ heo comen. and bede þat hii comen.
 and heo uf habbeoð worð² ifend : and hii anwerede wordes fore :
 bi vre fond-monnen. 20
 þat we don ꝥ bezfte þat we muȝen :
 for nulleð heo nauer mare cumen. þat hii nolleþ þat lond helpen a more.

the north end, and 'greatly [sorely] we are 'afraid that [adread lest] they
 now should have more. And 'yet' they think [much] evil to do, to de-
 stroy the Christendom, and turn to heathendom the 'high [greater] and the
 less. For thy father took all the 'strong knights [strength] of Britain,
 and Maximian 'the brave' led many thousands to Rome, and now lie slain
 what they left 'in our [by their] days; and thus is 'Britains land [Britain]
 of 'folk [knights] bereaved. Messengers we sent to Rome, and prayed
 that they should come; and they 'have sent word to us [answered sore
 words] 'by our messengers,' that 'we should do the best that we might,
 for' they would 'never more come [no more help the land]; but 'order [bid]

¹ hii?² word?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ah hateð us bi-winnen :	ac biddeþ vs a-winne :
hælp ȝif we cunnen.	help ȝef we conne.
& habbeð iqueðen us scere :	and habbeþ icweþe vs scere :
nu & auere mare.	nou and euere more.
Ah wel mæi dō hu hit ga : ¹ [f. 73. c. 1.]	Ac wel mai don ou hit go :
for wræcches we beoð æuere ma.	for wrecches we beoþ euere mo.
Whilen weoren Bruttes :	Wile weren Bruttes :
þa bezste men of londe.	þe best mē on lond. [f. 61. c. 1.]
al þ̅ heo bigunnen :	al þat hi bi-gonne :
al heo hit biwūnen.	10 al hii hit a-wonne.
Nu heo beoð ouercumen :	Nou beoþ hii ouercome :
æiðer iflaȝen & inomen.	and iflawe and inome.
& awæi ivaren mid Maximian :	
& mid þi uader Conaan.	
þ̅ miſ ¹ þer bileued wel neh nan :	þat nis þar bi-leffed non :
þ̅ auere beo æi tale on.	þat euere eni tale beo on.
Ah þu ært of uſ cunne :	Ac þou har of houre cunne :
of us naue þu nane fūne.	
help us nu for þu miht :	helpes nou mid winne.
æelles we habbeoð muchel pliht.	
þus spæc þe ærchebiſcop : ²¹	þus spac þe archebiſſop :
þ̅ Aldroein king hit vnder-ftod.	þat Aldroim king hit vnderſtod.
þe king gon fiche fare :	and he gan fike fore :

us to obtain help if we can ; and have declared us quit now and evermore. But well may do (*it* is sufficient ?) how *so* it goes, for wretches we are evermore ! Awhile were Britons the best men 'of [on] land ; all that they began, they it all won. Now they are overcome, 'either [and] slain, and captured, 'and away departed with Maximian, and with thy father Conan,' *so* that there is not left 'well nigh' one, that ever should be of any estimation. But thou art of our kin ; 'of us thou hast no fault ;' help 'us' now, 'for thou mightest [with joy], 'else we have mickle danger.' " Thus spake the archbishop, *so* that Aldroein *the* king understood it ; [and] 'the king [he] gan sorely to sigh, [*so* that there] tears 'gan to' glide 'from him,' and

¹ R. nif.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

him gunnen glide teores.	þat þar glide teres.
& urnen his æzene :	and vrenen his ezene :
þat his hired-men hit ifezen.	þat al hit i-feze.
þa ȝæf þe king andfwære :	þo ȝaf þe king anfwere :
& wið Guencelin he spæc þus þeȝ.	and wiþ Gwencelin spæc þus þare.
Ich eow wulle helpen :	Ich ou wole helpe :
mid hæzere strēgðe.	mid hezere strengþe.
ich þe wullen bitæchen :	ich þe wolle bi-take :
two þusend cnihtes.	two þousend cnihtes.
þat scullen beon þa bezste :	þat sullen beo þe beste :
þæ wunieð inne Brutene.	þat wonieþ in londe.
& Costātin minne broðer :	and Constantin mine broþer :
swulcne nat ich næenne oðer.	soch not ich non oþer.
swa wið swa if þes dæi liht :	
nat ich nenne betere cnihte.	not ich nanne betere cniht :
ne nat ich a wærlde riche :	in þisse worle riche.
cniht his iliche.	
makieð hine lauerd :	makeþ hine louerd :
ouer al Brutlondes ærd.	of al Brutlondes erþ.
þa axede Aldroein þe king :	þo cleopede Aldroim þe king :
his deore broðe ¹ Costantin.	his leofue broþer Constantin.
& he forð rihtes :	[c. 2.] and he forþrihtes :
bitahte him þa cnihtes.	bi-tock him þeos cnihtes.
Forð ferde Costantin :	Forþ wende Constantin :

Costan[tin].

his eyes ran, so that 'his courtiers [all] saw it. Then gave the king answer, and with Guencelin 'he' spake thus there : "I will help you with great strength ; I will deliver to thee two thousand knights, that shall be the best that dwell in 'Britain [land], and Constantin my brother,—I know not such another ; 'as wide as is this daylight,' I know not any better knight, 'nor know I' in [this] worlds realm 'knight his like (equal)';—make *ye* him lord 'over [of] all Britains land." Then 'asked [called] Aldroein the king his dear brother Constantin, and he forth-right delivered him 'the [these] knights. Forth went Constantin, and the archbishop with him ;

¹ *R.* broðere.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þe ærchebiscop mid him.	and þe archebissop mid him.
& þe king him seolf walde uaren :	and þe king him seolf wolde fare :
ah ¹ of Frenſce monnen he hæfde ac of þe Frence he hadde care.	
Hiderward wende :	[kare. Hider ward wende :
Coſtantin þe hende.	Constantin þe ende.
and al his uerde ifund :	and alle his mid i-funde :
at Totteneis heo cōen a lond.	at Totenas comen a lond.
þeder ² com þe ohte mō :	þider come þeos cnihtes :
wælla wel wes he ibon.	alle wel idiht.
& mid him twa þuſend cnihten :	
ſwulche na king ne æhte.	11 Forþ hii gonne wende :
Forð heo gunnen liðen :	into Londene. [c. 2.]
in to Lundenne.	
and ſenden æfter cnihtē :	and ſende after cnihtes :
Ʒeōd þ̅ kineriche.	ouer al þan londe.
and æuerælc oht mon :	and euerech oht man :
þ̅ hiȝenliche come anan.	hiȝenliche come a-non.
þet iherde Bruttes :	þat ihorde Bruttus :
þer heo wuneden i þan puttes.	þar hii wonede in puttes.
inne eorðē & inne ſtockes :	20 in eorþe and in ſtockes :
heo hudeden ³ heō alfe brockes.	hii hudde ham afe brockes.
i wude i wilderne :	
inne hæðe & inne uærne.	
þ̅ ne mihte wel neh na man :	þat ne mihte wel neh no mā :

and the king himself would go (have gone), but of [the] French 'men' he had care (anxiety). Hitherward proceeded Constantin the fair, and all his 'host' in safety; at Totnes 'they' came ashore; thither came the 'bold man,—well was he brave!—and with him two thousand knights such as no king possessed [these knights, all well dight]. Forth they gan march into London, and sent after knights over [all] the 'kingdom [land], and every brave man, 'that' speedily 'he should come [to come] anon. The Britons heard that, where they dwelt in 'the' pits; in earth and in stocks they hid them as (like) badgers, 'in wood and in wilderness, in heath and in fern,' so

¹ & *pr. m.*² *þeoder pr. m.*³ *huddeden pr. m., but d expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

nenne Brut iuinden.	nanne Brut finde.
buten heo weoren in castle :	bote he were in castle :
oðer ý burhȝe iclufed uafte.	bi-clufed fwiȝe fafte.
þat ¹ heo iherden of þiffen worde :	þo hii horde þis word :
þ Costantī wef an ærde.	þat Constantin was in eorþ.
þa comen ut of munten :	þo com þar vt of wilderne :
moni þufend monnē.	mani þufend manne.
heo leopen ut of þan wuden :	
swulc hit deor weoren.	
Liðen toward Lundenne :	10 Wende toward Londene :
moni hundred þufend.	mani þufend manne.
bi straten & bi waldē :	
al hit forð hælden.	
& þa æhte wifmen :	[[f. 73 ^b .c.1.] and stilleworþe wifmen :
wæþmōnef claðes duden heom on.	wepmenne cloþef dude heom on.
& heo forð wenden :	and alle forþ geinde :
toward þere uerde.	toward þare ferde.
þa iſæh þe eorl Costantin :	þo i-feh þe eorl Constantin :
al þis folc cumen to him.	al þis folk come to him.
þa wes he fwa bliðe :	20 þo was he fo bliþe :
fwa he nes næuer ær an liue.	fo he nas neuere on lifue.
Forð heo nomen heore wæi :	Forþ hii nemen hire wai :
twa niht & enne dæi.	two niht and one dai.

that well nigh no man might find any Briton, except 'they [he] were in castle 'or in burgh' inclosed [most] fast. When they heard 'of' this word, that Constantin was in *the* land, then came out of *the* mounts [wilderness] many thousand men; 'they leapt out of the wood as if it were deer.' Many 'hundred' thousand [men] marched toward London, 'by street and by weald all it forth pressed;' and 'the brave [peaceful] women put on them mens clothes, and 'they [all] forth journeyed toward the army. When the earl Constantin saw all this folk come to him, then was he so blithe as he was never 'ere' in life. Forth they took their way two nights and a day,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ heo comen ful iwis :	þat hii come foliwis :
to Melga & Wanif.	þar was Melga and Wanis.
To-gadere heo ræfden :	To-gadere hii refde :
mid ræȝe strengðe.	mid reȝere strengþe.
fuhten feodliche ¹ :	
feollen þa uæie.	
ær þe dæi weorē agan :	her þe dai was agon :
iflaȝen wes Wanif & Melgan.	iflaȝe was Melgan and Wanis.
& Peohtes inowe :	and Peutes inowe :
& Scottes vnifohȝe.	and Scottes onnifowe,
Denſce & Norenifce :	Denſe and Norweniſſe.
Galewazes & Irreiſce.	Galeweies and Ýriſſe.
þa while þat þe dæi wes liht :	þe wile þat þe dai waſ liht :
ilæſte auere þis flæht.	euere ilaſte þat fiht.
þa com hit to þan æuen-time :	þo hit com to þan eue-time :
þa cleopeden þe æorl Coſtantin.	þo faide þe eorl Coſtantin.
& bad þa wæi-wit ⁹ e :	þat wei-wittie :
for-ærnen þa wat ⁹ es.	hernde to þe wateres.
and ſnelle men toward þære ſæ :	and ſnelle men to þe ſée : [f. 61 ^b .c.1.]
þet þer heom ſculden ſechen.	for to heom kepe.
þe mon þe iſeȝen þat gomen :	þe man þe iſehȝe þe game :
hu forð gengden þa quenē.	ou forþ geinde þe cwenes.

so that they came full truly 'to [where was] Melga and Wanis. Together they rushed with stern strength, 'fought fiercely,—the fated fell! Ere the day 'were [was] gone, slain was Wanis and Melgan, and Peohtes enow, and Scots without number, Danes and Norwegians, Galloways and Irish. The while that the day was light lasted ever 'this slaughter [the fight]. When it came to the eventime, then 'called [said] the earl Constantin, 'and bade' that guides should ride to the waters, and active men 'toward [to] the sea, 'that should seek them there [for to guard them]. The man that saw (should have seen) the game, how the women forth marched over woods and 'over' fields, 'over hills and over dales [towns

¹ feondliche

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

3eond wudes & 3end feldes :	3eond wodes and feldes :
3eond hulles & 3eond heldes.	tounes and teldes.
whær fwa heo funden :	war fo ifunde ¹ :
æine mon at-wūden.	eni man at-wonde.
þe weore mid Melga :	þat were mid Melga :
þan hæðene kinga.	þan heþene kinge.
þa quenen lude lo3en :	þe cwenes loude lowe :
& al hine to-dro3en.	and al hine drowe.
& beden for þere feole :	
þ hire neuere sæl nere.	
þus þa Bruttifce quenen :	þus þe Bruttesfe cwenes :
moni þufend aq ^l den.	[[c. 2.] mani þufend cwelde.
& þuf heo areden þæfne kinedon ² :	and þus hii aredde þifne kinedom :
of Wanis & of Melgan.	of Wanis and of Melgan.
& Coſtantin þe ohte :	And Conſtātin þe hahte :
ferde to Selechæſtre.	wende to Cireceſtre.
& heold his huſtinge :	hand heold þar his ſpeche :
of alle his Brut þringen.	mid bolde his Bruttes.
alle þa Bruttes :	
buzen to þan mote.	
& nomen Coſtantin aðeling :	Brutteſ nemen þeos aþeling :
and makeden hine Bruttene kīg.	and makede Coſtantin king.
muchel wes þa murðe :	moche was þo þe murþe :

and coverts], wheresoever they found any man escaped, that were with Melga, the heathen king, the women loud laughed, and tore him all in pieces, 'and prayed for the soul, that never should good be to it.' Thus the British women killed many thousands, and thus they freed this kingdom of Wanis and of Melga. And Constantin the brave marched to 'Silchester [Cirencester], and held [there] his 'husting [conference] 'of all his British thanes [with his bold Britons], 'all the' Britons 'came to the meeting, and' took 'Constantin *the* [this] noble, and made 'him [Constantin] king 'of Britain',—much was [then] the mirth that was among men.

¹ hii funde ?² R. kinedom.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

*Costanz.**Aurelius.*

þ̅ wæs a mancunne.	þat was mid mancunne.
& feoððen heo him ȝefuen wif :	And hii him ȝeuen a wif :
wunder ane hende.	þat was swiþe hende.
i-boren of þan hæsten :	ibore of þan heheft :
of Bruttene þan alre bezsten.	of al Brutleode.
Of þissen hæȝe wiue :	Bi þissere wifue :
Coſtantin hæfuede.	Constantin hadde.
īne þissere leode :	þreo ſones lutle :
þreo ſunen lutle.	ine þiſſe londe.
Hæfde þe æreſte ſune :	10 Hadde the ereſt ſone :
wel neh hiſ fader nome.	wel neh þe fader name.
Coſtantin hæhte þe king :	Constantin hehte þe king :
Coſtanz hæhte þat child.	and þe child Conſtance.
þa þis child wes iwaxen :	þo þat child waſ iwox :
þ̅ hit cuðe riden.	þat hit couþe ride.
þa lette hiſ fader hit munekien :	þo lette hiſ fader hine monaki :
þurh luðere mōnene ræde.	þorh luþer manneſ lore.
& þ̅ child munec wes :	and þat child monek waſ :
inne Winchæſtre.	in Wincheſtre.
Aft ⁹ him wes iboren an oðer :	20 After him waſ an oþer :
þe wes þe midleſte broðer.	þat waſ þe middel broþer.
he wes ihaten Aureli ⁹ :	he waſ ihote Aurelius :
hiſ to-nome hæhte Ambroſi ⁹ .	hiſ toname waſ Ambroſius.
þa wes alre laſt iboren :	þo waſ alre laſte ibore :

[c.2.]

And 'afterwards' they gave him [a] wife, 'one wondrous [that was exceeding] fair, born of the highest, of 'Britain the best of all [all Britons]. By this 'noble' wife Constantin had in this land three little sons. The first son had well nigh 'his [the] fathers name; Constantin hight the king, 'Constance hight the child [and the child Constance]. When this child was waxed, that it could ride, then his father caused 'it [him] to be made a monk, through counsel of wicked men; and the child was a monk in Winchester. After him was born another, who was the middle brother; he was named Aurelius, his surname 'hight [was] Ambrosius. Then was last of all born a child that was well 'chosen [disposed]; he was named

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

a child þat wes wel icoren. a child þat was wel itowe.
 he wes ihaten Vther. he was ihote Vter. *Vther.*
 his aȝelen weore store. his dedes weren gode.
 he wes þe ȝungeste broðer.
 ah he leouede lēgere þane þa oðere.
 Guencelin þe ærchebiscop. Gwencelin þe archebissop.
 þe toward gode wef ful god. þat touward god was fwiþe god.
 he bi-wufte þa twa childere. bi-wufte þeos children.
 for luue of þan kinge. for leue¹ of þan kinge.
 Ah wale þat heore fader. [f.74.c.1.] Ac wolawo þat hire fader.
 na lengere ne moſte libben. 11 no lengere ne moſte libbe.
 for he hafde gode laȝen. for he hadde gode lawes.
 þa while þe he luuede. þe wile þat he lifuede.
 ah he nes king here. ac he nas king here.
 buten twælf ȝere. bote twealf ȝere.
 & feoððen wæs þæ king dæd. and þo was þe king dead.
 hercne nu þurh wulcne ræd. hercne nou þorh woche read.
 He hafde in his huſe ænne Poht. He hadde in his houſe one Peut.
 hende cniht and fwi² aht. a cniht fwiþe kene.
 he uerde mid þan kinge. 20
 & mid alle his dringē.
 nanes weies oðer. mid þan king he nas non oþer.
 bute al fwa hiſ b^oðer. bote afe hit were his broþer.

Uther, his 'virtues [deeds] were 'strong [good]; 'he was the youngest brother, but he lived longer than the others.' Guencelin the archbishop, who toward God was 'full [most] good, 'he' took charge of 'the two [these] children, for love of the king. But alas! that their father might live no longer!—for he had good laws the while that he lived; but he was king here but twelve years, and then was the king dead,—hearken now through what chance. He had in his house a Peoht, 'fair knight and most brave [a knight most keen]; he 'fared [was] with the king, 'and with all his thanes by' no other 'wise' but as [it were] his brother. Then became

¹ loue?² fwiþe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa iwarð he fwa riche :'	þo iwarþ he fo riche :'
al his iferen vnliche.	alle oþer onliche.
þa þohtē he to fwiken :	þo þohte he to fwike :
Coſtantin þene richen.	þane king in his riche.
he com biuoren þan kinge :	he com bi-fore þan kinge :
& feol an his cneowen.	and ful on his cnowes.
& þus leh ¹ þa leod-fwike :	
biuoren his lauerd ² .	
Lauer ³ king cū uorð riht :	Louerd king forþ riht :
& ſpec wið Cadal þīne cniht. 10	ſpec wiþ Cadal þine cniht.
& ic þe wulle tællē :	and ich þe wolle telle :
of uncuðe ſpællen.	of oncouþe ſpelles.
fwulc þu næuere ære :	soch þou neuere er :
an ærde ne herdeſt.	an erþe ne hordeſt.
þa araſ þe king Coſtantī :	þo aros þe king Coſtantin :
& eode forð ut mid him.	and eode forþ mid him.
ah wale þat hit nuſten :	ac walawo þat hit nuſte :
Coſtantines cnihtes.	Coſtantin his cnihtes.
Heo eoden fwa longe forð ward :	So lond ⁴ hii eode forþward :
þat heo comē in ænne orchærd. 20	þat hii come in on horechard.
þa feide þa fwike þere :	þe ⁵ feide þe fwike þare :
lauerd beon wit heſ.	louerd beo wer ⁶ ere. [f.62.c.1.]
þe fwike ſet adun :	þe fwike ſat adun :

Cadāl.

he so potent, to all 'his companions [others] unlike; then thought he to betray 'Constantin the powerful [the king in his realm]. He came before the king, and fell on his knees, 'and thus lied the traitor before his lord :'
 " Lord king, 'come' forth-right, 'and' speak with Cadal thy knight, and I will thee tell of strange speeches, such as thou never ere on earth heardest."
 Then arose the king Constantin, and went forth 'out' with him. But alas! that 'Constantins [Constantin his] knights knew it not! They proceeded so long forward that they came in an orchard. Then said the traitor there: " Lord, be we here." The traitor sat down, as if he would

¹ leoh *pr. m.*, but o erased.⁴ long?² lauer *pr. m.*⁵ þo?³ Lauerd?⁶ we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alfe he wolde holdē run.	alfe he wolde run.
& he bah to þan kinge :	and beh to þan kinge :
alfe mon dæð of runīge.	afe man deþ rouning.
He igrap ænne cnif fwiðe long :	He igrop ane knif wel long :
& þene kīg þer mid of-ftong. [c. 2.]	þe king þar mid he of-ftong.
in to þere heorte :	in to þare heorte :
& he hī feolf at-fterte.	and him feolf atftorte.
þer þe king dæd læi :	þar þe king dead lai :
& þe fwiike fleh awæi.	and þe fwiike fleþ awai.
þat word com to herede :	þat word coman fone :
10 hu þe king iuaren hafde :	ou þe king ivare hadde.
þa wef muchel reoðe :	þo was mochel rouþe :
& rumede ¹ to folke.	ifalle to folke.
þa weoren Bruttes :	
bifie an þonke.	
heo n ² ten þurh nane þinge :	þo nuſte Bruttus þorh noþing :
whet heo mihten to kinge.	wat hii mihte do after king.
for þas kinges funen tweien :	for þeos kinges fonef beiene ² :
lutlen heo weoren beien.	lutle weren beiene.
Ambrofie cuðe vnneðe :	20 Ambrofie cuþ oneþe :
riden an horfe.	ride vppe horfe.
& Vther his broðer :	and Vther his broþer :
þa ȝæt fæc hiſ moder.	þe ȝet foc hiſ moder.

'hold secret discourse [whisper], and 'he' approached to the king, as a man doth 'in' whispering. He grasped a knife 'very [well] long, 'and' the king therewith [he] pierced into the heart; and 'he' himself escaped, —there the king dead lay, and the traitor fled away. The tidings came 'to court [soon], how the king had fared; then was mickle sorrow 'spread [fallen] to *the* folk. Then 'were' *the* Britons 'busy in thought, they' knew not through anything what they might 'have for [do after a] king, for 'the [this] kings two sons, little 'they' were both. Ambrosie could scarcely ride 'on [upon] horse, and Uther, his brother, the yet (still) sucked his mother;

¹ irumed?² tweien?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& Coſtance þe aldeſte :'	and þe heldeſte monek was :
wef i Winchæſtre.	ine Wincheſtre.
munec claðes he hauede an :	
alſe an of his iueren.	
þa comen to Lundēne :	þo comen to Londene :
al þiſ leodiſce folc.	alle þeos Bruttes.
to heore huſtinge :	to one ſpeking :
& to ræden heō of kinge.	for reade ȝam of kinge.
wulche weis heo mihten don :	woche weies hii mihte don :
& heu heo mihtē taken on.	and ou hii mihte taken on.
& wulc an of þiſſen children :	and woche of þiſſe childrene :
heo mihtē habben to kinge.	hii mihte maken to king.
þa curen þas leoden :	þo choſen þeof leoden :
Aureliæn Ambroſiā.	Aurelia Ambroſie to abbe to kinge.
to habben to kinge ouer heō ¹ .	
þ̅ iherde Uortiger :	þ̅at ihorde Vortiger :
ȝæp mō & ſwide ² war.	ȝep man and ſwiþe war.
imong þan eorlen he ſtod :	amag ³ þeos eorles he ſtod :
& faſtliche hit wið-foc.	and faſteliche wiþ-ſock.
& he þus ſæide :	and þus ſaide :
soð þæh hit nære.	ſoþ þoh hit neore.
Ich eow wulle ræden :	Ich ou wolle reade :
ræd mid þan beȝſten.	read mid þan beſte.

and 'Constance' the eldest was [monk] in Winchester; 'monks clothes he had on, as one of his companions.' Then came to London all 'this land-folk [these Britons], to 'their husting [a conference], 'and [for] to advise them of a king, what wise they might do, and how they might take on, and which 'one' of these children they might 'have [make] for king. Then chose this people Aurelie Ambrosie, to have for king 'over them.' That heard Vortiger, a crafty man and most wary; among 'the [these] earls he stood, and firmly withstood 'it,' and 'he' thus said,—sooth though it were not: "I will advise you counsel with the best; abide a fortnight, and come 'we'

¹ A line here seems wanting.² ſwide?³ amang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

abideð feouwertene niht: [f. 74 ^b . c. 1.]	abideþ fourtene niht: [c. 2.]
& cumen we æft her riht.	and comeþ eft hider riht.
& ich eow wullen fuggen:	and ich ou wolle fegge:
foðdere ¹ wordes.	foþere wordes.
þat mideowere ȝenen ȝe scullen ifeo:	þat mid ȝoure ehene ȝeo folle ifeo:
& eowre while wel bi-teon.	and ȝoure wile wel beo teo ² .
þif ilke we scullen ibiden:	þis ilke we folle abide:
& to ure londe þa while riden.	and to oure homes ride.
& halden grið & halden vrið:	
freoliche on ærde. 10	
Al duden þat hird:	Alle dude þat folk:
fwa Uortiger demde.	fo Vortiger demde.
& he him feolf wende:	and he him feolf wende:
al fe he walde to his londe.	al fo he wolde of londe.
& turnde riht þene wæi:	and tornde riht þane way:
þe in to Wīchæstre lai.	þat toward Winchestre lai.
Vortiger hafde Walisc lond:	Vortiger hadde Walf lond:
þ haluendæl an his hond.	haluendeal in his hond.
feouwertī cnihtes gode:	fourti cnihtes gode:
he hauede on his hirede. 20	he hadde to i-vere.
He wende to Winchæstre:	He wende to Winchestre:
þer he Coftanz funde.	þar he Constance wifte.
& spæc wið þæne abbod:	and bad leue of þe abbod:

eft right 'here [hither], and I will say to you sooth words, so that with your eyes ye shall see, and your while well bestow; this same *time* we shall abide, and to our 'land [homes] 'the while' ride, 'and hold amity and hold peace, freely in land.' " All the folk did as Vortiger deemed; and he himself went as *if* he would *go* 'to his [from] land, and turned right the way that 'into [toward] Winchester lay. Vortiger had Welshland 'the' half-part in his hand; forty knights good he had 'in his retinue [for companions]. He proceeded to Winchester, where he 'found [knew] Constance, and 'spake with [asked leave of] the abbot 'who governed the monastery where

¹ foððere?² be-teo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe þat mūſter biwat.
 þer Coſtanz wes munec :
 þas kinges ſune of Bruttene.
 He wende in to þan munefſtre :
 mid mildere ſpeche.
 he fæide þat he wolde :
 ſpeken wið Coſtance. for ſpeke mid þan childe.
 þe abbed hit him uðe :
 & he hine ladde to ſpæc-huſe.
 þus ſpæc Vortiger : 10 þus ſpac Vortiger :
 wið þene munec þa þær. wiþ þan childe þo þer.
 Cuſtanz hærcne minne ræd : Conſtance hercne mine read :
 for nu iſ þi fader dæd. nou hiſ þi fader dead.
 þer iſ Ambroſie þi broðer : þar hiſ Aurelie þi broþer :
 & Vther þe oðer. and Vther þe oþer.
 Nu habbeð þa ælde : Nou habbeþ alle Bruttes :
 þa aðeleſte an londe.
 icorē Aurilien : [c. 2.] Aurelie hii-choſe to kinge.
 hiſ to-nome iſ Ābroſien.
 ȝiſ heo mazen þurh alle þīg : 20 heo wulleð makien hine king.
 & Vðer þi broðer :
 ſukeð ȝet hiſ moder.
 Ah ic heom habbe wið-fæid : Ac ich ham habbe wiþ-fed :

Constance was monk, the kings son of Britain. He went into the monastery with mild speech; he said that he would' [for to] speak with 'Constance [the child]. 'The abbot granted it to him, and he led him to *the* speech-house.' Thus spake Vortiger with the 'monk [child] then there: "Constance, hearken my counsel, 'for' now is thy father dead. There is 'Ambrosie [Aurelie] thy brother, and Uther the other. Now have 'the elders [all *the* Britons], 'the noblest in land,' chosen Aurelie,—'his surname is Ambrosie,—if they may through all things they will make him' [for] king; 'and Uther, thy brother, yet sucketh his mother.' But I have opposed them, and think to 'forsake [withsay], for I have been steward of all

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& for-fake þenche.	and wiþsegge þenche.
for ich habben ibeon ſtiward :	for ich habbe i-beo ſtiward :
of al Brutlōdes ærd.	of al Brutlondes erþ.
& eorl ich æm riche :	and eorl ich ham riche :
mine iueren vnliche.	mine veref onliche.
& ich habbe Walſce lond :	
haluēdæl in mire hond.	
mare ich habbe ane :	more ich habbe one :
þane þa oðere al clæne.	þane þe oþer alle cleane.
Ich æm icome to þe :	10 Ich ham icome to þe :
for monne leofueſt ært tu me.	for manne lefueſt hart þou me.
ʒif þu wult me ſwærie aðes :	ʒef þou me wolt ſwerie oþes :
ich wulle don of þe þas claðes.	ich wolle don of þes cloþes. [f.62 ^b .c.1.]
ʒif þu wult æchen mi lond :	ʒef þou wolt eche mi lond :
& þin ræd don in mire hond.	and þi read do in mine hond.
& makien me þinne ſtiward :	and makie me þin ſtiward :
ouer al Brutlondes ærd.	of al Brutlondes erþ.
& þurh mine ræde :	
don al þine dæde.	
& þu wulle me an hōd plihtē :	20 and wolt me an hond plihte :
þ̅ ich hit ſcal al dihtē.	þat ich hit al ſal dihte.
ich þe wulle þurh alle þing :	ich þe wolle þorh alle þing :
makien Brutlondes kīg.	makie Brutlondes king.
þes munec ſæt wel ſtille :	þis monek was wel ſtille :
þa ſpæche him eode an wille.	þeos ſpeche him eode at wille.

Britains land, and earl I am potent, unlike to my companions, 'and I have Welshland half-part in my hand'; more I have alone than the others all clean. I am come to thee, for dearest of men thou art to me; if thou wilt swear to me oaths, I will take off 'thee' these clothes, if thou wilt increase my land, and thy counsel place in my hand, and make me thy steward 'over [of] all Britains land, 'and through my counsel do all thy deeds,' and *if* 'thou' wilt pledge me in hand, that I shall rule it all, I will through all things make thee Britains king." This monk 'sate [was] well still, 'the [this] speech went to him at (at his) will. Then answered

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa andfwarede þe munec :	þo answereðe þe monek :
mid muchelere lifte.	mid fwiþe gode wille.
Wel wurðe þe Vortiger :	Wel worþe þe Vortiger :
þat þu ært icumen her.	þat þou euere come her.
ȝif auere mare cumeð þæ dæi :	ȝef euere more come þe dai :
þ̅ ich king beon mæi.	þat ich king beon mai.
al mi ræd & al mi lond :	al mi read and mi lond :
ich wulle don i þire hond. [f. 75. c. 1.]	ich wolle don in þine hond.
& al þat þu wult don :	
mine men hit scullen vnder-uon.	
& aðes ich þe fwerie :	11 and ich þe wolle fwerie :
þat þis ich wulle uorien.	þat ich þe fwiþe neolle.
þuſ feide þe munec :	þuſ faide þe monek :
he murnede fwiðe.	he mornede fwiþe.
hu hit al weore :	ou hit alles were :
þat he ¹ munec neore.	monek þat he nere.
for him weorē blake claðes :	for him were blake cloþes :
wunder ane laðe.	wonderliche loþe.
Vortiger [wes] ȝæp ² & war :	Vortiger was ȝep and war :
þat he cuðe ³ wel iwar.	20 þat he tahte wel þar.
he nom ane cape :	he nam one cloke :
of his ane cnihte.	of his one cnihte.
on þene munec he heo dude :	and on þe monek he hire dude :

the monk with 'much delight [exceeding good will]: "Well worth thee, Vortiger, that thou 'art come [ever came] here; if evermore cometh the day that I may be king, all my counsel and 'all' my land I will place in thine hand, 'and all that thou wilt do, my men shall accept it.' And 'oaths' I [will] swear to thee, that 'this I will further [I will not deceive thee]." Thus said the monk; he mourned greatly how else it were, that he were monk; for to him were black clothes wondrously odious. Vortiger was crafty and wary,—that he 'made known everywhere [well shewed there],—he took a 'cape [cloak] of a knight of his, [and] on the monk he

¹ This word is inserted by a later hand.² wæp *pr. m.*³ cuðde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ladde hine ut of þan ftude.	and ladde hine vt in þe ftude.
he nom ænne fwein anan :'	and nam one fwein a-non :'
and þa blake claðes dude him on.	and þe blake cloþes dude him on.
& heold rune wið þane fwæin :'	and heold roun wiþ þe fwein :'
swulc hit þe munec weore.	alfe hit þe monek were.
Munekes eoden vpward :'	Monekes eoden vpward :'
munekes eoden dunward.	monekes eodes ¹ dunward.
ifeʒē ² bi þan weien :'	hii fehen bi þe woves :'
þane fwein mid munec claðen.	þe fwein mid monekes cloþes.
þe hod ³ hongede adun :'	10 alfe he hudde his crune.
wende æche oðer :'	alle hii wende :'
þat hit weoren ⁴ heore broðer.	þat hit hire broþer were. [c.2.]
þe þer sæt fwa fære :'	þat alle þan dai-lihte :'
i þa spæc-hufe.	fete in fpec-hufe.
a þan dæi-lihte :'	
imong alle þan cnihten.	
Heo comen to heore abbode :'	þe monekes eode to hire abbod :'
& hine gretten þurh gode.	and hine grette þorh god.
Lauerd benedicite :'	20 Louerd benedicite :'
we beoð icumen biuoren þe.	we beoþ icome to-vore þe.
for fellic uf þuncheð :'	for wonder vs þincheþ :'

put it, and led him out of the place; 'he [and] took a swain anon, and the black clothes put on him, and held secret discourse with the swain, as if it were the monk. Monks passed upward, monks passed downward; they saw by the 'way [walls] the swain with monks clothes; 'the hood hanged down as if he hid his crown'; 'each one [they all] weened that it were their brother, who 'there' sate 'so sorry' in 'the' speech-house, 'in [all] the daylight, 'among all the knights.' 'They came [The monks went] to their abbot, and greeted him in Gods name: "Lord, benedicite, we are come before thee, for 'strange [wonder] it seemeth to us what Vortiger thinketh in

¹ R. eoden.³ Inserted in the margin by a later hand.² heo feʒen?⁴ n is struck out sec. m.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

whet Vortiger þencheð.	wat Vortiger þencheþ.
in ure spæc-huse :'	in vre spec-houfe :'
þer he spel haldeð.	þare he spel holdeþ.
þurh ut þefne dæi :'	[[c. 2.] þorh vt þifne dai :'
na munec þer in cumen ne maie.	no monek þare ine come ne mai.
buten Coftanz ane :'	
& þa cnihtes al clane.	
sære we adredeð :'	sore we a-dredeþ :'
þat heo him miſ-ræden.	þat he him miſ-reade.
þa anſwerede þe abbed :'	10 þo anſwerede þe abbod :'
Næi ac heo him radeð god.	Nai ac he redeþ him god.
biddeð hine haldē his hod :'	biddeþ hine holde his hod :'
for nu is his fader dæd.	for nou his his fader dead.
Vortiger þer abed :'	Vortiger þa . abod :'
þe while Coſtance awæi rad.	wile Conſtance awai rod.
Vortiger up araf :'	Vortiger forþrihtes :'
of þan mūſtere vt lað.	
& alle his cnihtes :'	mid alle his cnihtes.
ut wenden ford ¹ rihtes.	vt wende a-non :'
Munekes þer urnen þider anan :'	20 and monekes Conſtance fohten.
wenden to uinde Coſtance.	
þa iſezen heo þa claðes :'	þo iſehzen hii þe cloþes :'
liggen bi þan wazes.	ligge bi þe woves.

our speech-house, where he holdeth discourse ; throughout this day no monk may come therein, 'except Constance alone, and the knights all clean.' Sore we dread, that 'they [he] him 'miscounsel [miscounsels].'' Then answered the abbot ; "Nay, but 'they counsel [he counselleth] him good ; 'they bid [he biddeth] him hold his hood (holy order), for now is his father dead.' Vortiger there abode 'the' while Constance away rode. Vortiger 'up arose, from the monastery departed' 'and [with] all his knights out went [anon] forth-right. [And] *the* monks 'there ran thither anon, *they* weened to find [sought] Constance ; when they saw the clothes lie by the walls, then each

¹ forð ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa ælcā to oðer :	þo ech to oþer :
mænden of heore broðer.	mende hire broþer.
þe abbed an horfe leop :	þe abbod vppe his horfe leop :
& æfter Uortiger rad.	and after Vortiger rod.
& fone gon of-ærne :	and fone gan of-herne :
þe eorl Uortigerne.	þane eorl Vortigerne.
þuſ feide þe abbed :	þuſ ſpac þe abbod :
to Vortigerne þer he rad.	to Vortiger þar he rod.
Seie me þu wode cniht :	Sai me þou wode cniht :
whi deſt þu swa muchel vnriht.	10 wi deſt þou ſo moche onriht.
þu bi-nineſt ¹ us ure broðer :	þat bi-nemeſt vs houre broþer :
let hine & nim þene oðer.	bi-lef and nim on oþer.
nim Ābroſie þat child :	nim Aurelie þorh alle þing :
& make of him ænne king.	and make þar of anne king.
& newrað þu noht Sæint Benediht :	newraþþe þou noht ſeint Benediht :
ne do þu him nā vnriht.	ne do þou him non onriht. [f.63.c.1.]
þiſ iherde Uortige ² :	þiſ ihorde Vortiger :
he wes ȝæp & fwiðe iwar.	he was ȝep and fwiþe war.
sone he aȝan com :	sone he aȝein com :
& þe abbed he nom.	20 ād þan abbod he nom.
& ſwor bi his hōdē :	and ſwor bi his honde :
þat he hine wolde an-hongē. [f.75 ^b .c.1.]	þat he hine wolde an-honge.
buten he him plihte :	bote he wolde onhodi :

to other lamented their brother. The abbot leapt 'on [upon his] horse, and after Vortiger rode, and soon gan overtake the earl Vortiger. Thus 'said [spake] the abbot to Vortiger where he rode: "Say me, thou mad knight, why dost thou so great wrong? 'Thou [that] takest from us our brother;—leave 'him,' and take 'the other [another]. Take 'Ambrosie the child [Aurelie, through all things], and make 'of him [thereof] a king, 'and' anger thou not Saint Benedict, nor do thou to him any wrong!" Vortiger heard this,—he was crafty and very wary;—soon he came back, and the abbot he took, and swore by his hand, that he would him hang, unless 'he

¹ R. bi-nimeſt.² R. Vortiger.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ he wolden vorð rihtes.
 vnhadien Costanz :
 þas kinges fone of þis londe. þane kinges fone of londe.
 & for fwulchere neode : and for soche neode :
 he sculden beō kīg of þissere þeode. he solde be king of þeode.
 þe abbed ne durste nan oðer : þe abbod ne dorste non oþer :
 þar he vnhadede his broðer. þar he on-hodede his broþ⁹.
 & þat child ȝef þan abbode an hond : and þe child ȝaf þe abbod an hond :
 twenti fullhene lond. twente folzene lond.
 & feoððen heo liðeden forð : 10 and suppe hii wende forþ :
 in to Lūdēne. into Londene.
 Vortiger þe hæze : Vortiger anon rihtes :
 for-bad his hired-mōnnen. for-bead alle his cnihtes.
 þet heo nane manne ne tælden : þat non of ȝam ne tolde :
 whæt heo hæfden on anwolde. wat he hadde on anwolde.
 Vortiger i Lundene læi : Vortiger ine Londene lai :
 þ com þe ilke ifæte dæi. forte com þe ilke i-fette dai.
 þat sculden to huftinge cumen : þat folde to speche come :
 þa cnihtes of þissen londe. þe cnihtes of þis lōde.
 To þan dæie heo comen : 20 To þan daie come :
 monie & vniuoȝe. manie and onifoȝe.
 heo reddē heo runden : hii radden hii rouneden :
 ræiȝe þa beornes. riche þes beornes.
 þat Ambrosie heo wolden habben : þat hii wolde Aurelie :

him pledged, that' he would 'forth-right' unhood 'Constance' the kings
 son of 'this' land, and for such need he should be king of 'this' country.
 The abbot durst no other; there he unhooded his brother, and the child gave
 the abbot in hand twenty ploughlands; and afterwards they proceeded forth
 into London. Vortiger 'the high [anon right] forbade 'his attendants [all
 his knights], that 'they to no man [none of them] should tell, what 'they [he]
 had in design. Vortiger lay in London, until the same set (appointed) day
 came, that the knights of this land should come to 'husting [conference]. At
 the day 'they' came, many and numerous; they counselled, they communed,
 'the stern [these powerful] warriors, that they would have 'Ambrosie [Au-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& to kinge hæbben.	habbe to kinge.
for Vther wes to lutel :	
þa ȝet he moſte fukē.	
& munec wes Coſtanz :	
þe ældeſt wes of heō.	
& heo nalden for nane þīge :	
munec makie ¹ to kinge.	
þis iherde Vortige ² :	þis ihorde Vortiger :
þe wes ȝæp [&] ſwuðe iwar.	he was wiſ and ſwiþe war.
& an uotē leop :	10 and an fot leop :
ſwulc hit an liun weore.	alfe hit a lȝon were.
Nuſten þa Bruttes na whon :	[c.2.] nuſte þar non :
whæt Vortiger hæfde idon.	wat Vortiger hadde idon.
he hæfde in ane bure :	
Coſtanz þene deore.	
wel ibaððed & iſcrud :	
& ſeoððen mid twælf cnihten ihud.	
þa ſpæc þuſ Vortiger :	þo ſpac Vortiger :
he wes of ȝæpſcipe war.	þat was ȝep an war.
Luſteð lauerd þīges :	20 Luſteþ louerdlinges :
þe while þe ich ſpeke of kinges.	þe wile ich ſpeke of kinges.
Ich wes i Winchæſtre :	Ich was ine Wincheſtre :
þer ich wel ſpedde.	þar ich wel ſpedde.
ich ſpæc wið þene abbed :	ich ſpac wiþ þan abbod :

relie], ‘and raise’ for king; ‘for Uther was too little,—the yet he might suck,—and Constance was monk, who was eldest of them; and they would not for anything make a monk king.’ Vortiger heard this, ‘who [he] was crafty and most wary, and leapt on foot as if it were a lion. None ‘of the Britons’ [there] knew what Vortiger had done. ‘He had in a chamber Constance the dear, well bathed and clothed, and afterwards hid with twelve knights.’ Then ‘thus’ spake Vortiger,—‘he [who] was ‘of craft [crafty and] wary: “Listen, lordings, the while ‘that’ I speak of kings. I was in Winchester, where I well sped; I spake with the abbot, who is a holy

¹ R. makien.² R. Vortiger.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat is hali man i god ¹ .	þat his holi man and god.
& feiden him þa neode :	and tolde him þe neode : [c. 2.]
þe icumen if to þiffere þeode.	þat icome waf to þeode.
of Coſtantineſ dæðe :	of Conſtātineſ deape :
þer fore him is vneðe.	þat him fore a-þohte.
& of Coſtance þan childe :	
þe he hæfde ihalden.	
& ich bad hine for gode :	And ich him bad for lofue of god :
don þat child of hade.	don Conſtance of his hod.
& for ſwulchere neode : 10	and for ſoche neode :
king he ſcolde beon on þeode.	king he ſolde beo of þeode.
& þe abbed nom his ræd :	And þe abbod nam his read :
& dude al þat ich hine bed.	and dude al þat ich hine bad.
& here ich habbe hiſ munekeſ :	and here ich habbe hiſ monekeſ :
þe gode beoð and mære.	
þat ſculleð witneſſe beren :	for ſegge þat ſoþe.
eowe alle biuoren.	
Leo wær here if þat ilke child :	Lo war hiſ þe child ȝong :
make we her of enne king.	make we þar of one king.
& her ich halde crune : 20	and here ich holde croune :
þa þer to bi-houeð.	þat þar to bi-houeþ.
& þat þiſ wule wið-ſuggen :	and þe þiſ wole wiþ-ſegge :
he hit ſcal abuggē.	he hit ſal a-bugge.

man and good, and 'said [told] him the need that 'is [was] come to 'this' nation by Constantins death,—'therefore he is uneasy [that seemed to him sore],—'and of Constance the child, that he had holden.' And I bade him for [love of] God, to take off 'the child's [Constance his] hood, and for such need he should be king 'in [of] the country. And the abbot took his counsel, and did all that I bade him; and here I have his monks, 'who are good and chief,' ~~who~~ shall witness bear before you all [for to say the sooth]. Lo! where 'here' is the 'same' [young] child, make we 'hereof [thereof] a king, and here I hold the crown that thereto be-hoveth; and whoso will this withsay, he shall it buy dear!" Vortiger was

that they

¹ & god?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Vortiger wes fwiðe strong :

þe hæhste mon of Brutlōd.

nes þer nauernan fwa hæh : [f. 76. c. 1.] Nas þar neuere man so bold :

þat his quides durste halfien. þat þis wolde wiþ-telle.

Wes i þere ilke wike :

þe ærchebiscop forð iwiten.

nes þer nan biscop :

nas þar nō biffop :

þ forð on his wæi ne scoc.

na munec ne nan abbed :

þ he an his wæi ne rad.

10 þat sone a-wai ne rod.

for heo ne durstē for gode :

for hii ne dorste for god :

don þer þa misbode.

don þare þan misbod.

nime þane munec child :

& makien Brutlondes king.

þis is æh Vortig⁹ :

þis i-feh Vortiger :

of ufele he wes wel iwar.

of alle vuele he was war.

up he gon stonden :

vp he gan stonde :

þe crune he nom an honden.

þe croune he nam an honde.

he setten heo vppe Costance :

and sette hire vppe Constance :

þat him wes on þonke.

20 þat him was i-cweme.

Nes næuere na mam¹ :

Nas þar neuere no man :

þ don þer mihte cristindom.

þat don þar mihte cristendom.

þ mihte bleffinge :

þat mihte bleffinge :

most strong, the highest man of Britain'; was there never 'any [man] so bold that 'his words durst deprecate [this would deny]. 'In the same town was the archbishop dead'; and there was no bishop that 'forth on his way did not pass, nor monk nor any abbot,' that 'he on his way [soon away] did not ride, for they durst not for *fear of* God do there the wrong, 'to take the monk child, and make *him* Britains king.' Vortiger saw this,—of [all] evil he was 'well' ware; up he gan to stand, the crown he took in hand, [and] 'he' set it upon Constance,—that was to him 'in thought [pleasing]. Was there never any man that might there do Christendom, that might do

¹ R. man.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

don in þan kinge.
 bute Vortiger ane :
 hit dude for alle clane.
 þe frume wes vnhende :
 & al fwa wef¹ þe ænde.
 he for-lette goddes had :
 þer fore he forȝen ibad.
 þus wef kīg Coſtance :
 & Vortiger wef hiſ ſtiward.
 Conſtanz al hiſ kinelond :
 fette i Vortigeres hōd.
 & al he dude an londe :
 fwa him fulf wolde.
 þa iſæh Uortiger :
 of muclen vfele he wef wær.
 þ̅ Coſtanz þe king :
 ne cuðe of londe³ na þing.
 for he neſde ileorned :
 nauer nane lare.
 buten in hiſ munſtre :
 þ̅ munec ſcolde drigen.
 Vortiger þ̅ iſæh :
 þe wurſe him wes ful neh.

don vppe þan kinge.
 bote Vortiger one :
 hit dude for alle cleane.
 þat forme was on-hende :
 ſoch was þe hende.
 he for-let godes hod :
 þar vore forewe he a-baod².
 þus was he king of þis erþ :
 and Vortiger hiſ ſtiward.
 Conſtance al hiſ kinelond :
 fette in Vortigernes hond.
 þo iſeh Vortiger :
 of moche vuele he was war.
 þat Conſtance þe king :
 ne coupe of londe noþing.
 for he nadde hii-leornid⁴ :
 in neuere none lore.
 bote wat he ſolde dreie :
 a-mag⁵ hiſ iveres.

[f.63^b. c.1.]

[c. 2.]

blessing [up]on the king, but Vortiger alone did it clean for all! The beginning was unfair, 'and also [such] was the end; he deserted Gods hood (holy order), therefore he had sorrow! Thus was 'Constance [he] king [of this land], and Vortiger 'was' his steward. Constance set all his kingdom in Vortigers hand, 'and he did all in *the* land, as *he* himself would.' Then saw Vortiger,—of much evil he was ware,—that Constance the king knew nothing of land (government?), for he had not learnt [in] ever any learning, except what 'a monk [he] should perform 'in his monastery, [among his comrades]. 'Vortiger saw that,—the Worse was

¹ The last letter of wef is sup. ras.³ This word is sup. ras.² abod?⁴ R. i-leornid.⁵ amang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ofte he hine bi-ðohte :	ofte he hine bi-þohte :
wæht he don mahte.	wat he don mihte.
hu he mihte mid læfinge :	ou he mihte mid lefinge :
iquemen þan kinge.	icweme þan kinge.
Nu þu miht iheren :	Nou þou miht ihere :
hu þes fwiken him gon uaren.	ou he gan vare.
Weoren of Brutlonde :	Weren of Brutlonde :
þa bezfte alle dæde.	þe beſte alle deade.
nu weoren þas kinges broðeren :	nou were þes kinges broþerf :
beien ful lutle.	beiene lutle.
& Guēcelin ærchebiſcop :	and Gwencelin þe archebiſſop :
þer bi-forē wes dæd.	þar bi-vore was dead.
& him ſulf þiſſes londes king :	and him ſeolf þes londes king :
of þare laze ne cuðe na þing.	of laze ne couþe noþing.
Vortiger þiſ i-fah :	Vortiger þiſ iſeh :
& he to þan kinge bæh.	and he to þan kinge beh.
mid mildere ſpæche :	mid mildere ſpeche :
his lauerd he gon gretē.	he gan his louerd grete.
Hal ſeo þu Coſtanz :	Hayl beo þou Conſtance :
Brutlondes lauerd.	Bruttene louerd.
Ich æm icumen þe þuſ næh :	Ich ham icome þe þuſ neh :
for muchelere neode.	for mochelere neode.
for fuggen þe tiðende :	for ſegge þe tidingde :
þe beoð icume to londe.	þat icome beoþ to londe.
of ſwiðe muchele plihte :	of ſwiþe mochele plihte :
nu þe bi-houeð mihte.	nou þe bi-oueþ mihte.

full nigh him !—oft he bethought him what he might do, how he might with leasing please the king. Now thou mayest hear ; how 'this traitor [he] gan 'him' fare. The best *men* of Britain were all dead ; now were the kings brothers both 'full' little, and Guencelin [the] archbishop therebefore was dead, and this lands king himself of 'the' law knew nothing. Vortiger saw this, and he came to the king, with mild speech his lord he gan greet : " Hail be thou, Constance, Britains lord ! I am come thus nigh thee for much need, for to say to thee tidings that are come to land, of very great danger. Now thee behoveth might, now weapons behove thee to

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. 31

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii. 31

nu þe bi-houeð wepnen :'	nou þe bi-houeþ wepne :
to werie þine þeodē.	to witie þine cunde.
Her beoð chæpmen icumen :	Her beoþ chepmen icome :
of oðere londen alfe hit is iwune.	of oþer londe alfe hit his wone.
heo habbeoð ibroht to me :	
tol for heore æhte.	
and heo habbeoð me itald :	hii habbeþ me itold :
& treowðen iplihte.	wiþ forþere ¹ fpelle.
þ þe king of Norewæize :	þat þe king of Norweie :
neowenliche wule hider uarē.	10 neuwenliche wole hider fare.
& þere Dēfemōne king :	and þe king of Denemarche : [c. 2.]
þaſ Denen wulle atſechen.	þeos Denes wole ſeche.
& þe king of Ruſie :	and þe king of Ruſie :
ræhzeſt alre cnihten.	[f. 76 ^b . c. 1.] rezeſt alre cnihte.
& þe kīg of Gutlonde :	and þe king of Scotlond :
mid ferde ſwiðe ſtronge.	mid mochelere ferde.
& þe king of Friſe :	and þe king of Friſye :
þer uore me a-grifeð.	her vore me agrifeþ.
þa tiðende beoð ſtronge :	þeof tidinge beoþ ſtronge :
þe icumen beoð to londe.	20 þat icome beoþ to londe.
her uore ich æm ſwiðe adred :	her vore ich ham adrad :
for ne con ich nēne godne ræd.	for ne can ich nanne godne read.
buten we moten mid mihtē :	bote we mote mid mihte :
fēden æfter cnihten.	fende after cnihtes.

defend thy country. Here are chapmen arrived from other lands, as it is *the* custom; 'they have brought to me toll for their goods, and' they have told me, 'and plighted troth [with sooth speech], that the king of Norway will newly fare hither, and the 'Danish king [king of Denmark] these Danes will seek, and the king of Russia, sternest of all knights, and the king of 'Gothland [Scotland] with host 'most strong [great], and the king of Frise,— 'therefore [herefore] *it* alarmeth me. 'The [These] tidings are evil that are come to land; herefore I am 'most' adread, for I know no good counsel, unless we may with might send after knights, that are good and strong, and

¹ soþere?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat beon gode & fstronge :	þat beo gode and fstronge :
& þat wel cunnen a londe.	and wel conne a londe.
& fetten þine castles :	and fulle þine castles :
mid kene monnen.	mid wel gode cnihtes.
& fwa þu miht þi kinelond :	and fo þou miht þin kinelōd :
werien wið vnleoden.	werie wiþ onleode.
& þine wurhscipe halden :	
mid hæzere ftrenðe.	
For nis nan kine-lond :	For nis þar no kinelond :
na fwa brad næ swa long.	ne beo hit neuere fo fstrong.
þat ne bið fone inomen :	þat ne worþ fone inome :
3if þær bið to lute gumen.	3ef þar beoþ to feue gomes.
þenne anfwereðe þe king :	þo anfwereðe þe king :
of londe ne cuðe he naðing.	þat of londe ne couþe noþing.
Vortiger þu ært ftiward :	
ouer al Brutlondes ærd.	
& þu hit fcalt waldē :	
æft ⁹ þine willen.	
Send after cnihten :	Send after cnihtes :
þe gode beon to fihtē.	þat gode beon to fihtc.
& nim al i þire hond :	and nim al in þine hond :
mine castles & mi lon ¹ .	mine castles and min lond.
& do al þine iwille :	and do al þine wille :
& ich wulle beon ftille.	and ich wolle wonie ftille.

'that' are well able in land; and 'set [fill] thy castles with 'keen men [well good knights], and so thou mightest defend thy kingdom against foreigners, 'and maintain thy worship with high strength.' For there is no kingdom, 'so broad nor so long [be it ever so strong], that will not soon be taken if there are too few warriors." Then answered the king,—[that] of land 'he' knew nothing,—“ 'Vortiger, thou art steward over all Britains land, and thou shalt it rule after thy will.' Send after knights that are good in fight; and take all in thine hand, my castles and my land, and do all thy will, and I will be still, except 'the single [one only] thing, [that] I will

¹ lond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bute þe an læpi þing :	bote on alpi þing :
ich wulle beon icleoped king.	þat ich wolle beo icleoped king.
þa loh Uortiger :	þo loh Vortiger :
he wes of vfele fwi ¹ iwær.	þat was of vuele war.
nes he nauere swa bliðe :	nas he neuere fo blipe :
ær on his liue.	her on his lifue.
Uortiger nam læue :	Vortiger nam lefue :
& forð he gon liðe.	[[c. 2.] and forþ he gan wende.
& swa he uorð ferde ² al þ lond :	and so he þorh ferde :
	10 al Brutlodes ³ erpe.
	alle þe castles and þat lond :
he fette an his azere hond.	he fette in his owene hond. [f. 64. c. 1.]
& þe monraddene he nom :	
æuere æwher he com.	
& swa he nō his sonde :	And suppe he nam his fonde :
& fende to Scotlonde.	and fende to Scotlond.
& hæhte þa Pohtes :	and hehte þe beste cnihtes :
þa alre bezfte cnihtes.	þat were a-mag ⁴ þe Peutes.
þreo hundred him cumen to :	þreo hundred him come to :
& he heon ⁵ wolde wel don.	20 and he ȝam wolde wel fon.
And þa cnihtes him to come :	And þeos cnihtes comen :
þer æfter wel fone.	to him riht fone.

be called king." Then laughed Vortiger,—'he [that] was of evil 'most' ware,—was he never so blithe ere in his life! Vortiger took leave, and forth he gan pass, and so he [proceeded through all Britains land; all the castles and] 'all' the land he set in his own hand, 'and the fealty he took ever where he came.' And 'so [afterwards] he took his messengers, and sent to Scotland, and ordered 'the Peohtes, the knights best of all [the best knights that were among the Peutes], three hundred to come to him, and he would well 'do to [receive] them. And 'the [these] knights came to him

¹ fwiþe?² Thus written at first, but ferde afterwards expuncted. A line and half are evidently deficient.³ R. Brutlondes.⁴ amang?⁵ heom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þus spæc þe swikefulle gume :

Cnihtes ȝe beoð wulcume.

ich habbe i mire hond :

al þis kinewurðe lond.

mid me ȝe scullen liðen :

for ich eow wullen luuien.

& ich eow wullen bringe :

bi-uoren ure kinge.

ȝe scullen habbe feoluer & gold :

þe bezfte horf of þis lond. 10

claðes & fæire wif :

eore wille ich wulle driȝen.

ȝe sculleð beon me leofue :

for þa Bruttes me beoð laðe.

lude & stille :

ich wulle ¹

ȝif ȝe wulleð in londe :

halden me for lauereð.

þa forð rihtes :

anwarede þa cnihtes. 20

Al we wulleð :

don þine iwille.

& heo gunnen wenden :

to Coſtace² þan kinge.

þus spæc þe falſe gome :

Cnihtes ȝe beoþ welcome.

ich habbe in mine hond :

al þis kineworþe lond.

mid me ȝeo folle wōnie :

and ich ou wolle lofuie.

ȝeo ſollen beo me leofue :

for Bruttus beoþ me loþe.

loude and ſtille :

ich wolle don oure wille.

ȝef ȝeo wollep oueral :

holde me for loud.

þo forþrihtes :

anſwerede þe cnihtes.

Don we hit wolle :

al þine wille.

and hii gonne wende :

to Conſtance þan kinge.

'thereafter' 'well [right] soon; thus spake the 'traitorous [false] man :
 "Knights, ye are welcome. I have in my hand all this regal land ; with
 me ye shall 'go [dwell], and I will you love, 'and I will you bring before
 our king ; ye shall have silver and gold, the best horses of this land, clothes,
 and fair wives ; your will I will perform.' Ye shall be to me dear, for 'the'
 Britons are hateful to me ; loud and still I will [do your will], if ye will
 'in land [over all] hold me for lord." Then forth-right answered the
 knights : "We will [it] do all thy will"; and they gan proceed to Constance

¹ Half a line is here wanting, which the other text supplies.² R. Coſtance.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

To þan kinge com Uortiger :'	þo faide Vortiger :'
of ufele he wes wel war.	þat was fwiþe wis and war.
& feide him of hiſ dæde :'	
hu he idon hæuede.	
& her ich habbe Peohtes :	
þa ſcullen beō hired-cnihtes.	
and alle ich habbe þine caſles ¹ :	Alle þine caſtles :
ſwiðe wel bitæht.	c. 1.] ich habbe wel iſtored.
& þas uncuðe cnihtes :	and þeos oncouþe cnihtes :
bi-uoren uſ ſcullen fihten.	10 folle bi-vore vs fihte.
Al þe king bi-luſde :	And al þe king liſde :
ſwa Fortiger hoʒede.	þat Vortiger faide.
ah wale þat nuſte þa king :	ac wolawo þat nuſte þe king :
of hiſ þohte naðing.	of hiſ þohte noþing.
ne of hiſ ſwikedome :	ne of hiſ ſwikedome :
þe he dude þer æfter ſone.	þat he dude þar after ſone.
þas cnihtes weorē an hirede :	þeof cnihtes wonede þare :
hæhliche iwurðed.	
fulle twa ʒere :	folle two ʒere.
mid þan kīge heo wuneden þere.	
& Uortiger þe ſtiward :	21 and Vortiger þe ſtiward :
wes heore alre lauerd.	[c. 2.] was hire alre louerd.
A he feide þat Bruttes :	

the king. 'To the king came [Then said] Vortiger,—'of evil he was well ware [that was most wise and wary],—' and said him of his deed, how he had done.—"And here I have *the* Peohtes, who shall be household knights; and' I have 'most' well stored all thy castles; and these foreign knights shall before us fight." The king commended all 'as [that] Vortiger 'purposed [said], but alas! that the king knew nothing of his thoughts, nor of his treachery, that he did soon thereafter! These knights 'were in court highly honored'; full two years 'with the king they' dwelt there, and Vortiger the steward was lord of them all. 'Ever he said that *the*

¹ *R.* castles.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

neoren noht to nuttes.

ah¹ he feide þat þa Peohtes :

weoren gode cnihtes.

A weoren Bruttes :

godes bidaled.

& þa Peohtes walden :

al þat heo wolden.

heo hafden dræncheo hafden mete :

heo hafden muchel blisse æke.

Vortiger heom falde :

al þat heo wolden.

& heom wef² al fwa leof :

fwa heore aȝene lif.

fwa þat heo al speken :

þer heo heore mete ætē.

þat Uortiger weoren wurðe :

to walden þas þeode.

þurh ut alle þinges :

bæt þene swulche þreo kinges.

Vortiger ȝef þissen gumen :

fwiðe muchele gærſūe.

þa ilomp hit on ane dæie :

10 Vortiger ȝam folde :

al þat hii wolde.

and eke he ȝam ȝef :

ȝiftes fwiþe riche.

so þat he ham waf so lef :

alfe hire oȝe lif.

and hii stille speken :

þar þat hii feten.

þat Vortiger were worþe :

to welde þeos riche.

20 þorh vt alle þinges :

bet þane foche þreo kinges.

þo bi-fulled³ in hon dai :

Britons were not of use, but he said that the Peohtes were good knights. Ever were *the* Britons deprived of goods, and the Peohtes wielded all that they would. They had drink, they had meat, they had eke much bliss. Vortiger granted them all that they would, and [eke he gave them gifts most rich, so that he] was to them as dear as their own life; 'so that [and] they 'all [stilly] spake, where [that] they 'ate their meat [sate], that Vortiger were worthy to govern this realm throughout all things, better than three such kings! 'Vortiger gave these men very much

¹ a?² The last two letters of wef are by second hand sup. ras.³ bi-fulle hit?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa Uortiger at his inne laie.	þat Vortiger at his hinne lai.
he nom ¹ his tweiene cnihtef:	he fende tweie cnihtes:
& fende æfter þan Peohtef.	after þeos Peutes.
hæhten heom cumen her: [c. 2.]	þat hii folde alle:
for alle heo sculden æten þer.	heote mid him soolue ² .
To him comen þa cnihtes:	And anon forþrihtes:
to hif inne forð rihtes.	to him come þeos cnihtes.
he uondede heom mid worde:	he fondede ȝam mid wordes:
alfe heo feten at borde.	alfe hii fete at þe bordes.
he lette heom bringen schenches:	
of feole cunne drēches.	
heo drunken heo dremde:	hii dronke hii dremde:
dæi þer forð eode.	þe dai forþ eode.
þa heo weor̃ fwa drunken:	So lang i ³ weren þere:
þ̃ wakeden heore sconken.	þat hii dronge were.
þa spæc Uortiger:	þo spac Vortiger:
þ̃ he hæfde iþoht ær.	þat he hadde iþoht her.
Hercneð nu me cnihtef:	Hercneþ nou cnihtes:
ich wulle fuggen eow uorð rihtes.	ich wolle telle ou forþrihtes.
of mire muchele forȝen:	20 of þane mochele forewe:
þ̃ ich fore ⁴ habbe imurned.	þat ich for ou habbe.
þe kīg me bi-tahte þif ard:	

treasure.' Then befell it on a day, that Vortiger lay at his inn; he 'took his' two knights 'and' sent after 'the [these] Peohtes; 'bade them come here, for they all should eat there [that they should all eat with himself. And anon] forth-right 'the [these] knights came to him, 'to his inn'; he tried them with words as they sate at [the] board, 'he caused draughts to be brought them of many kinds of drinks'; they drank, they revelled, [the] day 'there' forth passed. 'When they were so drunk that their shanks weakened [So long they were there, that they were drunk], then spake Vortiger what he had previously thought: "Hearken now 'to me,' knights, I will 'say [tell] to you 'forth-right [right sooth] of 'my [the] mickle sorrow that I for [you] have 'mourned. The king delivered

¹ inom *pr. m.*, but i erased.² seolue?³ hii?⁴ for eow?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

for to beon his stiward.

ȝe beoð me on liue :

alre mōnen leofst¹.

ah nabbe ich æhtē :

to ȝiue mine cnihten.

for þes king æh al þis lond :

and he is ȝung & þæh strong.

and al ic him mot ȝelden :

þat ich nime of his londe.

& ȝif ich his for-leofe :

ich sal laȝe þolie.

& mine ahten ich habbe ispēd :

for ich eo³ wulle iquemen.

& nu ich mot heonene uarē :

feor to summe kinge.

heren him mid sæhte :

& bi-winnen mid him ahte.

ne mæi i⁴ noht formuchele scome :

habben here þesne wone.

ah forð ich mot liðen :

to uncuðe leoden.

& ȝif auere cumeð þe dæi :

þ ich æhten bi-ȝiten mæi.

ȝeo beoþ me on lifue :

cnihtes alre leofuest.

ac nabbe ich more to ȝefue :

ne ȝou for to holde.

for þe king haht al þat lond :

and he his his² ȝong and swiþe

[strong.

ȝef ich his god mis-spene :

ich mot laȝe þolie. [[f.64^b.c.1.]

and mine hæhte ich habbe ispened :

for ich ou wolde cweme.

And nou ich mot of londe fare :

for to somme kinge.

and ȝef euere comeþ þe dai :

þat ich hæhte bi-ȝete mai.

me this land for to be his steward.' Ye are to me liefest of all 'men [knights] alive, but I have not 'wealth [more] to give 'my knights [nor you for to maintain], for 'this [the] king possesses all 'this [the] land, and he is young and 'also [most] strong, 'and all I must yield to him that I take of his land; and 'if I 'destroy [mis-spend] his [goods], I 'shall [must] suffer the law; and mine own wealth I have spent, because I would please you. And now I must 'depart hence [go from the land] far to some king, 'serve him with peace, and gain wealth with him; I may not for much shame have here this abode, but forth I must go to foreign lands.' And if the day shall ever come, that I may acquire wealth, and I may so well thrive, that

¹ leofuest?² Sic MS.³ eow?⁴ ich?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and ich mazen fwa wel ipeon :'	and ich mawe fo wel ipeon :
þat 3e cumen a londe þer ich beon.	þat 3e come in londe war ich beon.
ich eow wulle wel biwiten :	ich ou wolle wel bi-wite :
mid muchelere wurðscipe.	mid mochelere manfipe.
and habbeoð alle godne dæi :	and habbeþ alle godne dai :
to niht ich wulle faren awæi.	to niht ich wolle varen awai.
hit bið a muchele wæne :	
whær 3e i-seon me auere mare.	
Nuften noht þas cnihtes :	Nufte noht þe cnihtes :
¹ wæt þe fwike þohte.	io wat þe fwike þohte.
Vortiger wes fæc :	
for her he hiſ lauerd bi-fwæc.	
& þe cnihtes heolden hit for ſoh :	
þat þe fwike fæide.	
Fortiger hæhte his sweines :	Vortiger hehte his ſweines :
sadeli his blonken.	fadeli his ſtedes.
& nemnede twalf ſcalkes :	and nam twealf cnihtes :
to laden mid him ſeoluen.	forþ mid him ſeolue.
to horſen heo eoden :	to horſe hii eoden :
ſwulc heo wolden of þeoden.	20 alſe hii wolde of þeode.
þat iſeo3en þa Peohtes :	þiſ iſeh3e þe Peutes :
þa for-drunkene cnihtes.	þe fordronkene cnihtes.

ye come in *the* land where I am, I will well reward you with much worship. And have *now* all good day, *for* to-night I will go away; 'it is a great doubt whether ye see me evermore.'"—'These [The] knights knew not what the traitor thought. 'Vortiger was treacherous, for here he betrayed his lord, and the knights held it for sooth, what the traitor said.' Vortiger ordered his swains to saddle his steeds, and 'named [took] twelve 'men to lead [knights forth] with himself; to horse they went as *if* they would *depart* from *the* land. The Peohtes saw 'that [this],—the drunken knights,—' how Vortiger would depart; herefore they had much

¹ *This and the two following lines are written by the first hand out of order, but marked for transposition. A second hand has struck them out in the text, and re-copied them in the margin in the order above given.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hu Vortiger wolde uaren : [kare.
 her uore heo hæfden muchelne
 heo eodē to ræden :
 heo eoden to rune.
 alle heo menden heore lif :
 for Vortiger heom wes swa leof.

& þus feiden þa Peohtes :

þa drūkene cnihtes.

Whæt mæge we nu to rade :

whæ scal us nu rædē. 10

wha scal us feden :

wha scal us scruden.

wha scal an hirede :

beon ure lauerd.

Nu Vortiger is iuaren :

alle we mote fufen. [c.2.]

nulle we for nane þinge :

munec habbe to kinge.

Ah wulle we wel don :

forð riht faren we him to. 20

diȝelliche & stille :

& don al ure iwille.

in to his bure :

& drincken of his beore.

þenne we habbeð idrunkē :

and to hire herre hii fede :

Wat his vs nou to reade.

wo fal vs nou scrude :

wo fal vs nou veode.

Nou Vortiger his a-fare :

and we ibroht in mochel care.

nole we for none þinge :

monek habbe to kinge.

care; they went to counsel, they went to communing; all they lamented their life (exceedingly), because Vortiger was so dear to them.' And 'thus said the Peohtes [to their chief they said], 'the drunken knights': "What 'may we [is to us] now in counsel? 'who shall us now advise?' who shall us 'feed [now clothe], who shall us 'clothe [now feed], 'who shall be our lord at court?' Now Vortiger is gone, 'we all must depart [and we *are* brought in mickle care];—we will not for anything have *a* monk for king! 'But we will do well, forth-right go we to him, secretly and still, and do all our will, into his chamber, and drink of his beer. When we have drunk,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

dreme we lude.

& summe sculleð to þere dure :

mid fweorden stoden¹ þer biuoren.

& summe forð rihtes :

nimen þene king & his cnihtes.

& flæn² of þa hafden :

& we feolf hired haben.

& leten fone of-æren :

uræ lauerd Uortigerne.

& seoððen þurh alle þinge : 10

hæbben hine to kinge.

þenne mah we libben :

swa uf bið alre leofuest.

Wenden þa cnihtes :

to þan kinge forð rihtes.

eoden heo alle :

þurh ut þære halle.

in to þas kinges bure :

þer he sæt bi fure.

Nes þer nan þat word spæc : 20

bute Gille Callæt.

þuf he wið þæne kinge spæc :

fwiken he þohte þet³.

Luft me nu leod-kīg :

Wende þes cnihtes :

to þan kinge forþrihtes.

geoden þes cnihtes alle :

þorh vt þære halle.

in to þe kinges boure :

þar he fat bi þan fure.

loudly revel we ; and some shall *go* to the door, *and* with swords stand therefore, and some forth-right take the king and his knights, and smite off the heads *of them*, and we *ourselves* have *the* court ; and cause soon our lord Vortiger to be overtaken, and afterwards through all things raise him to *be* king ;—then may we live as to us is liefest of all.' ” 'The [These] knights proceeded to the king forth-right ; 'they [these knights] all went throughout the hall into the kings chamber, where he sate by *the* fire. 'There was none that spake *a* word except Gille Callæt ; thus he spake with

¹ stonden? ² The second letter of flæn is by second hand, *sup. ras.*

³ þer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

nulle ich þe lizen naðing.
 we habbeoð ibeon an hirede :
 hæhliche iwurðed.
 þurh þinne ftiwærd :
 þe haueð iwiten al þif ærd.
 he uf haueð wel iued :
 he uf haueð wel ifcrud.
 & to foðe ich fugge þe mai :
 mid him we æten nu to dæi. [f.78.c.1.]
 ah fare uf of-þuncheð : 10
 nefden we noht to drinken.
 & nu we beoð in þine bure :
 ȝef uf drinken of þine beore.
 þa ȝæf þe kīg anfware :
 þ̃ ſcal beon eowre laſte kare.
 for ȝe ſculleð habben to drinken :
 þa while þe eow god þunche.
 Me heom brohte drinken :
 & heo gunnen dremen.
 þuſ ſæide Gille Calæt : 20
 to þere dure he wes ful wæt.
 Whær beo ȝe cnihtes :
 ſturieð eow forð rihtes.
 & heo þene king igripen :
 & his hæfde of ſmiten.

And hii þane king igrepe :
 and þat heued of ſmite.

the king *whom* he there thought to betray : "Listen to me now, monarch ; I will nothing lie to thee. We have been in court highly honored through thy steward, who hath governed all this land ; he hath us well fed, he hath us well clothed. And in sooth I may say to thee, with him we ate now to-day, but sore *it* us grieveth, we had nought to drink, and now we are in thy chamber, give us drink of thy beer." Then gave the king answer : "That shall be your least care, for ye shall have to drink the while that you think good." Men brought them drink, and they gan to revel ; thus said Gille Callæt,—at the door he was full active : "Where be ye, knights ? Bestir you forth-right !" And they seized the king, and smote

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& alle his cnihtes :
 heo floȝen forð rihtes.
 & nomen ænne fondes-mon :
 and fenden toward Lūden.
 þat he fwiðe ſculde ærne :
 æfter Uortigerne.
 ꝥ he fwiðe comen :
 & þene kinedom nome.
 for þat wuſte he þurh alle þīg :
 iſlæȝen wes Coſtanz þe king. 10
 þet iharde Uortigerne :
 þe ſwike wes ful derne.
 þuſ he hæhte þene fondes-mon :
 aȝan forð riht anan.
 & hat heom wel bi-witen :
 al ure wurð-ſcipen.
 ꝥ nauer anne wende :
 ut of þan ænde.
 ah alle me abiden :
 a ꝥ ich cune³ riden.
 & ſwa ich wulle dele :
 þiſ lond uſ alle imæne.
 Forð wende þe fondes-mon : [c.2.]
 and Vortiger nom anan.

and alle his cnihtes :
 hii floȝen forþ rihtes.
 And nemen ane fondesman :
 and fende to Londen.
 þat he ſwiþe folde ernne : [c.2.]
 after Vortigerne.
 þat he ſwiþe come :
 and þane kinedom nome.
 for þat wite þou þorh alle :
 hii-ſleȝe¹ we habbeþ þane king.
 þat ihorde Vortigerne :
 þat ſwike was fol deorne.
 þuſ a² hehte þane fondes-man :
 aȝen forþrihtes a-non.
 and bidde þat non ne wende :
 vt of þan ende.
 ac alle me a-bide :
 20 forte ich come ride.
 and þan ich wolle deale :
 þiſ lond vs imene.
 Forþ wede⁴ þe fondesman :
 and Vortiger fende a-non.

off his head, and all his knights they slew forth-right. And took a messenger, and sent to 'ward' London, that he should ride quickly after Vortiger, that he should come speedily, and take the kingdom, for that 'he should know [know thou] through all 'things,' slain 'was [we have] 'Constance' the king. Vortiger heard that, who was traitor full secret; thus he ordered the messenger back forth-right anon, and 'bade [bid] 'them well to keep all our worship,' that 'never one [none] depart out of the place, but all abide me, until that I arrive, and 'so [then] I will divide this land among us 'all.' " Forth went the messenger, and Vortiger

¹ R. i-ſleȝe.² he?³ cume?⁴ R. wende.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fende ȝeond Lūden :
 & to huſtinge hehte heom.
 ræðen & ful fone :
 þ̅ heo alle comen.
 Icumen¹ weoren þa burmen :
 þe fwiðe balde weoren.
 þa fpæc Vortigerne :
 þe fwike wes ful deorne.
 ſwiðe he gon to wepen :
 & færiliche fiken. 10
 ah hit wes an hafde :
 & noht an his heorte.
 þa axeden hine þa burhmen :
 þe fwiðe balde weoren.
 Lauerd Vortigerne :
 whæht if þ̅ þu murneſt.
 nert þu na wimman :
 fwa fære to wepen.
 þa anſwarede Vortigerne :
 þe wes fwike ful deorne. 20
 Ich eow wulle telle :
 for reoliche ſpelle.
 of mucche færneſſe :

ouer al þan londe :
 þat þar a-boute were.
 and hehte ȝam fone :
 þat hii to him come.
 þo icomen were borhmen :
 þat were fwiþe bolde.
 þo fpac Vortigerne :
 þat fwike was wel deorne.
 ſwiþe he gan wepe :
 and biterliche fike.
 ac hit was on his heued :
 and noht on his heorte.
 þo axede þe borhmen :
 þat fwipe bolde weren.
 Louerd Vortigerne :
 wi his þat þou wepeſt.
 nert þou no wifman :
 ſo fore to fike.
 þo anſwerede Vortigerne :
 þat fwike was fol deorne.
 Ich ȝou telle :
 roupliche ſpelles.
 of mochele forineſſe :

'took [sent] anon 'and sent' over 'London [all the lands that there were about], and ordered them 'quickly and full' soon, that they 'all' should come to 'husting [him]. When 'the' burgh-men were come, who were most bold, then spake Vortiger, who was traitor 'full [well] secret;—much he gan to weep, and 'sorrowfully [bitterly] to sigh, but it was in [his] head, and not in his heart. Then asked 'him' the burgh-men, who were most bold: "Lord Vortiger, 'what [why] is that thou 'mournest [weep-est]? Thou art no woman so sore to 'weep [sigh]." Then answered Vortiger, who was traitor full secret: "I 'will' tell you piteous speeches,

¹ þa icumen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe ifiȝen if to londe.	þat ifeȝe his to londe.
Ich habbe iðif ærd ibeon :	Ich habbe þane king iloued :
eower kingef ftiwærd.	
& ifpæken hin ¹ wið :	
& iluued hine fwa mi lif.	more þan mi feolue.
Ah nalde he at þan ende :	And ² nolde he aþan ende : [f.65.c.1.]
næenne ræd luuien.	noht hit onderftonde.
	ne non of dedes :
	don after reade.
he luuede þa Peohteſt ³ :	10 he louede þe Peuteſ :
þa vncuðe cnihtes.	þe oncoupe cnihtes.
& uf nalde he god don :	
ne neower feire vnderfon.	
ah heom he wes liðe :	
a to heore liue.	
Ne mihte ic of þan kinge :	
habben ſcipinge.	
ich ſpende mine ahte :	
þa wile þa heo ilaſte.	
& ſeoððē ich nam leue :	20
to mine londe liðe. [f.78 ^b .c.1.]	
and þenne ich hæfde mine gauel :	
cumen aȝan to hirede.	
þa ifæhȝen þa Peohtes :	

of much calamity that is come to *the* land. I have 'been in this realm your kings steward, and spoken with him, and' loved 'him as my life [the king more than myself]. But he would not at the end 'any counsel approve, [understand it, nor do any deeds after counsel]; he loved the Peohtes, the foreign knights, 'and he would not do good to us, nor anywhere fair receive, but to them he was gracious, ever in their lives. I might not of the king have remuneration (or wages); I spent my wealth, the while that it lasted, and afterwards I took leave to go to my land, and when I had my tribute, come again to court. When the Peohtes saw that the king had no

¹ him?² Ac?³ R. Peohtes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat þe king nefde nane cnihtes.

neo nauere nænne cunef mō :

þe heo¹ wolden oht fore don.

heo nomen heore uore :

in to þas kīges bure.

ich fuggen eow þurh alle þing :

iflæzen heo habbeoð þæne king.

& þencheð þifne kine-dom :

& uf alle for-don.

& wulleð forð rihte : 10

makien king of ane Peohte.

Ah ic wes hif stiward :

wæken³ ich wulle minne lauereð. wreken ich wolle min louerd.

& æueræche oht mon :

hælpen me þ̅ to don.

on ich wulle mid mine gærē :

& forð riht ich wulle uaren.

Wenden ut of Lunden :

cnihtes þritti hundred.

heo riden & heo arnden : 20

forð mid Vortigerne.

þat heo nehlæhten :

þer weoren þa Peohtes.

& he nom enne of his cnihtes :

hii nemē hire vore :

into þe kingef boure.

ich fegge ȝou þorh alle þing :

hii habbeþ i-flaze vre king.

and þenches² þifne kinedom.

and vs alle for-don.

Ac ich was his stiward :

wreken ich wolle min louerd.

and euerech oht mon :

helpe þat to don.

Wenden vt of Londene :

cnihtes þritti hundred.

hii riden and hii ernde :

forþ mid Vortigerne.

þat hii nehlepte :

þar wonede þes Peutes.

knights, nor ever any kind of man that would aught for them do,' they took their course into the kings chamber. I say you through all things, they have slain 'the [our] king, and think to destroy this kingdom and us all, 'and will forth-right make *them* king of a Peoht.' But I was his steward; avenge I will my lord; and every brave man help 'me' to do that! 'On I will with my gear, and forth-right I will go.' " Thirty hundred knights marched out of London; they rode and they ran, forth with Vortiger, until they approached where 'the [these] Peohtes 'were [dwelt]. 'And he

¹ heom?² þencheþ?³ wræken?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fende to þan Peohten.

& feide heō þat he com :

ȝif heo hine wolden vnder-uon¹.

þa Peohtes weorē bliðe :

for heore² fæi-fiðe.

& heo nomen heore gode gærē :

nef þer neowðer ſceld ne ſpære.

Vortiger forð rihtef :

wepnede alle hiſ cnihtes.

& comē þa Peohtes :

& bruhten hæued þas kingef.

þa Vortiger þis hæued iſæh :

þa hælde he to grūde ful neh.

swulc he hafuede mod-kare :

meſt of alre monne.

mid hiſ lechen he gon liȝē :

hiſ heorte wes ful bliðe.

þa feide Vortigerne :

þe ſwike weſ ful deorne.

Auerælc oht mon :

mid ſweorde leggeð heom on.

Vortiger and his cnihtes :

wepnede ȝam forþ rihtef.

þare come þe Peutes :

and brohte heued þeos kinges.

þo Vortiger þis heued i-ſeh :

þo helde he to grunde neh.

alſe he hadde mod-care :

meſt of alle māne.

mid hiſ³ he gan liȝe :

hiſ heorte was wel bliȝe.

þo faide Vortigerne :

þat ſwike was deorne.

Euer ech oht man :

mid ſweorde legge heom an.

took one of his knights, and sent to the Peohtes, and said to them that he came, if they would him receive. The Peohtes were blithe for their murder (that they had committed), and they took their good gear,—there was neither shield nor spear.' Vortiger 'weaponed all his knights [and his knights weaponed them] forth-right, 'and' the Peohtes [there] came, and brought *the* head of the king. When Vortiger saw this head, then fell he 'full' nigh to *the* ground, as *if* he had grief most of all men; with his countenance he gan lie, *but* his heart was 'full [well] blithe. Then said Vortiger, who was traitor 'full' secret: "Every brave

¹ vnde-uon *pr. m.*² *This seems a harsh construction. Perhaps we should read þes kinges fæi-fiðe, —the kings death.*³ *A word is here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& wrækeð wel an ærde :'	and wrekeþ wel on erþe :'
þe feorze of ure lauerd.	þe forewe of vre louerd.
Nænne heo ne nomen :'	Nanne hii ne nemen :'
ah alle heo heom flozen.	ac alle hii flozē.
& to þan inne wende :'	and to þan hinne wende :'
in to Winchæstre.	in to Winchestre. [c. 2.]
& flozen heore fweines :'	and flozē þare of hire folk :'
& heore burh-þeīef.	al þat hii funde.
heore cokes & heore cnaues :'	
alle heo duden of lif-dæzen. 10	
þus ferden þa tiðinde :'	þus ferde þe týdinge :'
of Coftanz þan kinge.	of Conſtance þan kinge.
& þa weorlde-wis mon :'	þe worle-wifemen :'
þa oðere childre bi-wuſten.	þe oþer children wiſte.
for heo hafden care of Vortiger :'	for drede of Vortiger :'
heo nomen Ambroſie & Vðer.	hii neme Aurelie and Vther.
& landen ¹ heom ouer fæ :'	and ladde heom ouer féé :'
in to þere laſſe Brutene.	in to þe laſſe Britayne.
& fæire heom bi-tahten :'	and ȝam bi-tahte :'
Bidiz ² þan kinge. 20	Biduz þan kinge.
& he heom feire vnder-fēg :'	and he ȝam faire vnder-feng :'
he wes heore cun & heore freond.	for he was hire cun.
& mid muchelere liſte :'	

man lay on them with sword, and avenge well in *the* land the sorrow of our lord!" None they captured, but all they 'them' slew; and proceeded to the inn, into Winchester, and slew 'their swains, and their chamber-servants, their cooks, and their boys, all they deprived of life-day [there of their folk all that they found]. Thus fared the tidings of Constance the king. 'And' the worldly-wise men took charge of the other children; for 'they had care [dread] of Vortiger they took 'Ambrosie [Aurelie] and Uther, and led them over sea, into the Less Britain, and delivered them 'fairly' to Biduz the king. And he them fairly received, [for] he was their kin 'and their friend, and with much joy the children he brought up'; and

¹ ladden?² Budiz *mān*, *sec*.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Vortiger.

þa childere he biwufte.

and fwa wel fele ȝere :

mid him heo weoren þere.

Vortiger a þiffen londe :

wes ihoue to kinge.

alle þa Brut¹ ftronge :

ftoden an his honde.

fif & twenti ȝeren :

he wes king hef.

He wes wod he wes wild : 10

he wes ræh he wes bald.

of alle þinge he hæfde his iwille :

bute þa Peohtef neoren næuere bote þat Peutef nere neuere ftille.

ah eouere heo wenden : [ftille.

ȝeond þene norh enden.

& hunden² þif kinelond :

mid hærmes vnimete.

& wreken heore cun inoh :

þat Vortiger here of-floh.

Vnder þan comen tiðende : 20

in to þiffen londe.

þat Aurelien wes cniht :

þe Ambrofiæn wes ihæten.

& al swa wes Vther :

and fo fale ȝere :

þe childerne wonede þere.

Vortiger in þiffe londe :

was ihoue to kinge.

and þe borewes ftronge :

ftode on his honde.

fife and twenti ȝere :

he was king here.

Of alle þinges he hadde his wille :

ac euere hii hiende his kinelond :

mid harme onimete.

and wreken hire cun inoh :

þat Vortiger here of-floh.

Vnder þan com tidinge :

in to þiffe londe.

þat Aurelie was cniht :

on mid þan beſte.

and al fo was Vther :

so 'well' many years 'with him they were [the children dwelt] there. Vortiger in this land was raised to *be* king; 'all [and] the strong burghs stood in his hand; five and twenty years he was king here. 'He was mad, he was wild, he was cruel, he was bold'; of all things he had his will, except 'the [that] Peohtes were never still, but ever they 'advanced over the north end, and' afflicted 'this [his] kingdom with prodigious harm, and avenged their kin enow, whom Vortiger slew here. In the mean *time* came tidings into this land, that Aurelie was knight, 'who was named Ambrosie [one with the best], and also was Uther, 'good knight and most [knight most wise and]

¹ burghes?² *Sic pr. m.; henden sec. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

god cniht & swiðe iwar.	cniht fwiþe wis and war.
and wolden comen to þissen londe :	and wolde come to þisse londe :
& leden here fwiðe stronge.	mid ferde stronge.
þis wes feole fiðe iqueðe :	
ofte iquidded.	
ofte comen tiðinde :	Ofte com þeos tidinge :
to Vortiger þā kinge.	to Vortiger þan kinge.
þer fore him ofte fcomede :	þar fore he ofte famede :
& his heorte gromede.	and his heorte gramede.
for men hit sæiden wel iwhær :	for men hit faide wel i-war : [f. 65 ^v . c. 1.]
Nu cumed ¹ Ambrofie & Vther.	Nou comeþ Aurelie and Vther.
and wulleð wrækē Coſtance :	and wollep wreke Conſtance an
þene king of þif lōd.	þat was king in þiſſe lond. [hond :
nuf ² þer coſt nan oðer :	nif þar coſt non oþer :
wærken ³ heo wulleþ heore broðer.	wreke hii wollep hire broþer.
and flæn Vortigerne :	
& to duſte hine for-berne.	
þuſ heo wulleð al þif lond :	
ſetten an heore aȝere hond.	
Swa quiddeden ælche dæi :	þuſ cwiddede eche dai :
al þat verden æfter wæi.	al þat ȝeode bi þan wai.
Uortiger hine biðohte : [c. 2.]	Vortiger hine bi-þohte :
whæt he don mihte.	wat he don mihte.

wary, and would come to this land, 'and lead [with] *an* army 'most 'strong. 'This was many times *a* saying oft repeated'; oft came [these] tidings to Vortiger the king; therefore 'it oft shamed him, [he oft was ashamed], and his heart angered, for men said it everywhere :—"Now will come 'Ambrosie [Aurelie] and Uther, and will avenge [soon] Constance, 'the [who was] king 'of [in] this land; there is no other course, avenge they will their brother, 'and slay Vortiger, and burn him to dust; thus they will set all this land in their own hand!' " 'So [Thus] spake each day all that passed by [the] way. Vortiger bethought him what he might do, and thought to send messengers

¹ cumeð?² nif?³ wræken?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii. M.

& þohte fende fende¹ fonde :
 into oðere londe.
 æft² vncuðe cnihten :
 þa hine biwiten mihten.
 and þohte to beō wær :
 wið Ambrofie & wið² Vther.

Vnder þan comen tiðende :
 to Vortiger þan kinge.
 ꝥ ouer fæ weoren icumen :
 fwiðe felcuðe gumen.
 inne þere Temefe :
 to londe heo weorē icūmen.

þreo ſcipen gode :
 comen mid þan flode.
 þreo hundred cnihten :
 alfe hit weoren kingef.
 wið uten þan ſcipen-mōnen :

þe weoren þer wið innē.
 þiſ weoren þa færeſte men :
 þat auere her comen.

ah heo weore hæðene :
 ꝥ wes hærm þa mare.

Uortiger heom fende to :
 and axede hu heo weoren idon.

ȝif heo grið ſohten :

and þohte fende fōde :
 in to oþer londe.
 after vncoupe cnihtes :
 þat hine bi-witie mihte.

Vnder þan com tyðinge :
 to Vortiger þan kinge.
 þat ouer féé weren icome :
 10 fwiþe felliche gomes.

þreo fipes gode :
 i-come were mid þan flode.
 þar on þreo hundred cnihtes :
 alfe hit were kempes.

þes weren þe faireſte men :
 20 þat euere come here.
 ac hii weren heþene :
 þat was har³ þe more.

into other lands, after foreign knights, who might him defend ; ‘and thought to be wary against Ambrosie and Uther.’ In the mean *time* came tidings to Vortiger the king, that over sea were come men exceeding strange ; ‘in the Thames to land they were come’ ; three ships good ‘came [were come] with the flood, [therein] three hundred knights, ‘kings [champions] as it were, ‘without (besides) the shipmen who were there within.’ These were the fairest men that ever here came, but they were heathens,—that was the more harm ! ‘Vortiger sent to them, and asked how they were disposed

¹ Sic MS.² wið ?³ harm ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& of hif freond-scipe rohtē.
 Heo wifliche andfwerden :
 swa heo wel cuðen.
 & feiden ꝥ heo walden :
 speken wið þan kinge.
 & leofliche him heren :
 & hælden hine for hærre.
 and swa heo gunnen wenden :
 forð to þan kinge.
 þa wes Uortigerne þa kīg : 10
 in Cantuarie-buri.
 þer he mid his hirede :
 hæbliche spilede.
 þer þas cnihtes comē :
 bi-forē þan folc-kinge.
 Sone swa heo hine imetten : [f. 79^b. þeos comen to þan kinge :
 fæire heo hine igrætten. c.1.] and faire hine grette.
 & feiden þat heo him wolden : and feide þat hii wolde :
 hæren i þisse londe. him farui in his lōde.
 3if he heom wolde : 20 3is¹ vs þou wolle :
 mid rihten at-halden. mid rihte at-holde.
 þa andfwerede Vortig⁹ : þo answereðe Vortiger :
 of elchen vuele he wes war. þat of eche vuele he was war.
 An alle mine iliue : In al mine lifue :

.....Vorti-
 gerni.....
 venerunt

(their business) ; if they sought peace, and recked of his friendship ? They answered wisely, as well they knew, and said that they would speak with the king, and lovingly him serve, and hold him for lord ; and so they gan wend forth to the king. Then was Vortiger the king in Canterbury, where he with his court nobly diverted *themselves* ; there these knights came before the sovereign. 'As soon as they met him, they [These came to the king, and] greeted him fair, and said that they would serve him in 'this [his] land, if 'he would them [thou wouldest us] with right retain. Then answered Vortiger,—[who] of each evil he was ware,—“In all

1 3if?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

[Saxon]es
in Bri[tan-
ni]am, scili-
cet Hen[ges
et Hors],
cum tribus
na[vibus],
anno gratie
qua[dra-
ge]ntesimo
xl^o. xx^o.

þe ich iluued habbe.

bi dæie no bi nihtes : [cnihtes.

ne sæh ich nauere ær fwulche

for eouwer cumē ich æm bliðe :

& mid me 3e scullē bilæfuen.

& eouwer wille ich wulle driȝen :

bi mine quicke liuen.

Ah of eou ich wulle iwiten :

þurh soðen eouwer wurðscipen.

whahæt cnihtē 3e feon : 10

& whænnenen 3e icumen beon.

& whar 3e wullen beon treowe :

alde & æc neowe.

þa answerede þe oðer :

þat wes þe aldeste broðer.

Luft me nu lauerd king :

& ich þe wullen cuðen.

what cnihtes we beoð :

& whanene we icumen seoð.

Ich hatte Hēges :

Horf is mi broðer.

we beoð of Alemaïne :

aðelest alre londe.

of þat ilken ænde :

þe Angles if ihaten.

þat ich ileued habbe :

bi dai no bi nihte :

ne feh ich foche cnihtes.

for 3ou ich ham blipe :

and mid me 3e folle bi-lefue.

Ac forst ich wolle wite :

for 3oure mochele worfipe.

wat cnihtes beo 3eo : [c. 2.]

and wanene 3eo i-comen beo.

þo answerede þe oþer :

þat was þe elder broþer.

20 Ich hatte Hengeft :

Hors hatte min broþer.

we beoþ of Alemaine :

of one riche londe.

of þan ilke hende :

þat Englis hif ihote.

my life that I have lived, by day nor by night saw I 'never ere' such knights; for 'your arrival [you] I am blithe, and with me ye shall remain, 'and your will I will perform, by my quick life!' But [first] I would of you learn, 'through [for] your 'sooth [mickle] worship, what knights ye be, and whence ye are come, 'and whether ye will be true, old and eke new?' Then answered the one who was the eldest brother: "Listen to me now, lord king, and I will make known to you what knights we are, and whence we are come.' I hight Hengest; Hors 'is [hight] my brother; we are of Alemaine, 'a land noblest of all [of a rich land], of the same end that

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Beoð in ure londe :
 felcuðe tiðende.
 vmbe fiftene ȝer :
 þat folc hī¹ ifomned.
 al ure iledene folc :
 & heore loten werpeð.
 vppen þan þe hit faled³ :
 he scal uaren of londe.
 bilæuen scullen þa fiue : [c. 2.]
 þa sexte scal forð liðe. 10
 ut of þan leode :
 to ucuðe⁵ londe.
 ne beo he na fwa leof mon :
 uorð he scal liðen.
 For þer if folc fwiðe muchel :
 mære þene heo walden.
 þa wif fareð mid childe :
 fwa þe deor wilde.
 æueralche ȝere :
 heo bereð child þere. 20
 þ̅ beoð an uf feole :
 þat we færen scolden.
 ne mihte we bilæue :

Beoþ in vre londe :
 wonder þenges gonde.
 bi eche fiftene ȝer :
 þat folk his i-fomned.
 and werpeþ þare hire lotes :
 fo² to londes feche :
 vt⁴ wan þat lot falleþ :
 he mot need wende.
 ne beo he noht fo riche :
 he mot lond feche.
 Forþe wifues goþ þar emid childe :
 alfe þe deor wilde.
 bi euereche ȝere :
 hii goþ mid childe þere.
 þat lot on vs ful :
 þat we faren folde.
 ne moſte we bi-lefue :

Angles is named. In our land are 'strange tidings ; after [many good things ; by each] fifteen years the folk is assembled, 'all our nation-folk,' and cast [there] their lots [for to seek *other* lands] ; upon whom 'that it [the lot] falleth, he 'shall depart from *the* land [must needs depart]. 'The five shall remain, the sixth shall forth proceed out of the country to a foreign land' ; be he 'man' ever so 'loved [rich], he 'shall forth depart [must seek *other* land]. For 'there is folk very much, more than they would' (desire) ; the women go [there] with child as the wild deer, [by] every year they 'bear [go with] child there ! 'That is fallen [The lot fell] on us, that we

¹ is ?² for ?³ faleð ?⁴ vp ?⁵ uncuðe ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

for liue ne for dæðe.	for life ne for deape.
ne for nauer nane þinge :	
for þan folc-kinge.	
þus we uerden þere :	þus hit fareþ þere :
& for þi beoð nu here.	þar fore we beoþ nou here.
to fechen vnder luste :	
lond & godne lauerd.	
Nu þu hæfueft iherd lauerd kig ¹ :	Nou þou haueft ihord louerd king :
soð of uf þurh alle þig ² .	soþ of vs and no lefing.
þa āfwærede Vortiger :	10 þo faide Vortiger :
of alc an vfele he wes war.	þat was wis and fwiþe war.
Ich ileue þe cniht :	
þ þu me fugge soð riht.	
& wulche beoð æoure i-leuen :	And woche beoþ 3oure bi-léue :
þ 3e on ileueð.	þat 3eo an bi-léfeþ.
& eoure leofue godd :	
þe 3e to luted ³ .	
þa andfwarede Hænges :	
cnihtene alre fæireft.	
nis in al þif kine-lond :	20
cniht fwa muchel ne ⁴ fwa strong.	
We habbeð godes gode :	We habbeþ godes gode :

should depart; we might not remain, for life nor for death, 'nor for ever anything, for *fear of* the sovereign. Thus 'we fared [it fareth] there, 'and' therefore are [we] now here, 'to seek under heaven land and good lord.' Now thou hast heard, lord king, sooth of us 'through all things, [and no leasing].'' Then 'answered [said] Vortiger,—'of each evil he was ware [who was wise and most wary],—“‘I believe thee, knight, that thou sayest to me right sooth'. And what are your creeds, that ye in believe, 'and your dear god, whom ye worship?'” Then answered Hengest, fairest of all knights,—in all this kingdom is not *a* knight so tall nor so strong :—

¹ king?² þing?³ luted?⁴ The words muchel ne are *sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe we luuieð an ure mode.	þat we louieð in mode.
þa we habbeð hope to :	
& heoreð heom mid mid ¹ mihte.	
þe an hæhte Phebus :	þe on hatte Phebus :
þe oðer Saturn ² .	þe oþer Saturnus.
þe þridde hæhte Wodē :	þe þride hatte Woden :
þ̅ if an weoli godd.	þat was a mihti þing.
þe feorðe hæh ² Jupit ² : [f.80. c.1.]	þe feorþe hatte Jubiter :
of alle þ̅ige he if whar.	of alle þ̅inges he his war. [f.66. c.1.]
þe fifte hæhte Mercuri ² :	þe fifþe hatte Merchuri ² :
þat uf ³ þe hæhste ouer uf.	þat his þe heheft ouer vs.
þæ sæxte hæhte Appollin :	þe fixte hatte Appolin :
þ̅ if a godd wel idon.	þat his a god of gret win.
þe feoðueðe hatte Teruagant :	þe foueþe hatte Tervagant :
an hæh godd in ure lon ⁴ .	an heh god in vre lond.
ȝet we habbeð anne læuedi :	ȝet we habbeþ an leafdi :
þe hæh is & mæhti.	þat heh his and mihti.
heh heo is & hali :	
hired-men heo luuieð for þi.	
heo if ihate Fræa :	ȝeo hif i-hote Frea :
wel heo heom dihteð.	heredmen hire louieþ.
Ah for alle ure goden deore :	To alle þeos godes :
þa we scullen hæren.	we worfiþe wercheþ.

“We have good gods, whom we love in ‘our’ mind, ‘whom we have hope in, and serve them with might.’ The one hight Phebus; the second Saturnus; the third hight Woden, who ‘is [was] a mighty ‘god [thing]; the fourth hight Jupiter, of all things he is aware; the fifth hight Mercurius, who is the highest over us; the sixth hight Appolin, who is a god ‘brave [of great power]; the seventh hight Tervagant, a high god in our land. Yet (in addition) we have a lady, who is high and mighty, ‘high she is and holy, therefore courtiers love her,’—she is named Frea,—‘well she them treateth [courtiers her love]. ‘But among all our dear gods whom we shall serve, [To all these gods we work worship, and for their love these

¹ *Redundant.*² hæhte?³ *R.* if.⁴ lond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Woden hehde þa hæhste laȝe :	and for hire loue :
an ure ælderne dæȝen.	þeos dæȝes we heom ȝefue.
he heom wes leof :	Mone we ȝefue monedæȝ :
æfne al fwa heore lif.	Tydea we ȝefue tifdei.
he wes heore walden ¹ :	Woden we ȝefue wendesdei :
and heom ² wurðscipe duden.	þane þonre we ȝefue þorifdai.
þene feorðe dæi i þere wike :	Frea þane fridaȝ :
heo ȝifuen him to wurðscipe.	Saturnus þan fateresdai.
þa þunre heo ȝiuen þūref dæi :	
for þi þat heo heom helpen mæi.	
Freon heore læfdi :	
heo ȝiuen hire fridaei.	
<i>Saturnus.</i> Saturnus heo ȝiuen fætterdæi :	
þene Sunne heo ȝiuen sonedæi.	
Monenen heo ȝifuenen monedæi :	
Tidea heo ȝeuen tifdæi.	
þuſ ſeide Hægeſt ³ :	þuſ ſaide Hengeſt :
cnihten alre hendefſt.	cniht alre hendefſt.
þa anſwerede Vortig ⁹ :	þo anſwerede Vortiger :
of ælchen vfel he wæs wær.	of alle harme he was war.
Cnihtes ȝe beoð me leofue :	Cnihtes ȝeo beoþ me leofue :
ah þaſ tiðende me beoð laðe.	ac ȝoure bilefues me beoþ loþe.

days we give them.] ‘Woden had the highest law in our elders days; he was dear to them even as their life, he was their ruler, and did to them worship; the fourth day in the week they gave him for *his* honor. To the Thunder (Jupiter) they gave Thursday, because that it may help them; to Frea, their lady, they gave her Friday; to Saturnus they gave Saturday; to the Sun they gave Sunday; to *the* Moon they gave Monday; to Tidea they gave Tuesday [To *the* Moon we give Monday; to Tydea we give Tuesday; to Woden we give Wednesday; to the Thunder we give Thursday; to Frea the Friday; to Saturnus the Saturday].’ Thus said Hengest, fairest of all knights. Then answered Vortiger,—of ‘each evil [all harm] he was ware,—“Knights, ye are dear to me, but ‘these tidings

¹ waldend?² heo him?³ Hængeſt?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

eouwer ileuen¹ beoð vnwrafte :ȝe ne ileoueð noht an criftre².

ah ȝe ileoueð a þene wurfe : [c. 2.]

þe godd feolf awariede.

eoure godes ne beoð nohtes :

in helle heo niðer liggeð. [hælde :

Ah neoðeles ich wulle eou at-

an mine anwalde.

for norð beoð þa Peohtes :

swiðe ohte cnihtes.

þe ofte ledeð in mine londe :

ferde fwiðe fstronge.

& ofte dod³ me muchele fcome :

& þerfore ich habbe grome.

& ȝif ȝe me wulleð wræken :

& heore hæfden me biȝeten.

ich eou wullen ȝeuen lond :

muchel feoluer & gold.

þa andfwerede Hængeft :

cnihtene alre feireft.

ȝif hit wulle Saturnuf :

al hit fcal iworðe þuſ.

& Woden ure lauerd :

Ac ich wolle ou at-holde :

in min anwolde.

for norþ beoþ þe Peutes :

10 wiþe ohte cnihtes.

þat ofte doþ me fame :

and þar vore ich habbe grame.

And ȝef ȝe wollep me wreke :

of [hire] wiþere dedes.

ich ȝou wolle ȝeue :

ȝeftes fwiþe deore.

þo faide Hengeft :

al hit fal iworþe þuſ.

[your creeds] are loathsome to me; 'your creeds are wicked, ye believe not on Christ, but ye believe on the Worse, whom God *himself* cursed; your gods are of nought, in hell they lie beneath.' But 'nevertheless' I will retain you in my power, for northward are the Peohtes, knights most brave, who oft 'into my land lead host most strong, and oft' do me 'much' shame, and therefore I have grief. And if ye will me avenge, 'and procure me their heads [of their evil deeds], I will give you 'land, much silver and gold [gifts exceeding precious].' Then answered [said] Hengest, 'fairest of all knights: "If Saturnus *so* will it, and Woden, our

¹ ilauerd *pr. m.*² crifte?³ doð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe we on bi-liueð.
 Hengeſt nō læue :
 & to ſcipen gon liðe.
 þer wes moni cniht ſtrong : [lōd. and al hire godeſ : [c. 2.]
 heo droȝen heore ſcipē uppe¹ þe hii beore to londe.
 Forð wenden dringches : Forþ hii wende alle :
 to Vortigerne þan kenge. to Vortiger his halle.
 biuoren wende Hengeſt :
 & Horf him alre hændeſt.
 ſeoððen þa Alemainiſce men :¹⁰
 þa aðele weorē an deden.
 & ſeoððen heo ſenden him to :
 heore Sæxiſce cnihtes wel idon.
 Hengeſteſ cunneſmen :
 of hiſ aldene cudðē.
 Heo comen in to halle :
 hændeliſche alle.
 bett² weoren iſcrudde : bed³ weren i-ſcrud :
 & bed³ weoren iuædde. and bet weren ived.
 Hængeſt ſwaine⁴ : [f. 80^b. c. 1.] Hengeſtes ſweines :
 þene Vortigerneſ þeines. 21 þane Vortiger his cnihteſ.
 þa wes Vortigernes hired :
 for hehne ihalden.

lord, on whom we believe,' it shall all thus be!" Hengest took leave, and
 gan wend to *his* ships; 'there was many *a* strong knight; they drew their
 ships upon the [and all their goods they bore to] land. Forth went 'the
 warriors [they all] to Vortiger 'the king [his hall]; 'Hengest went before,
 and Hors, next of all to him; then the Alemainish men, who were
 noble in deeds; and afterwards they sent to him (Vortiger) their brave
 Saxish knights, Hengests kinsmen, of his old race. They came into hall,
 fairly all'; better were clothed and better were fed Hengests swains, than
 'Vortigers thanes [Vortiger his knights]! Then was Vortigers court

¹ *Sup. ras.*³ bet?² *bette pr. m., but e erased.*⁴ *fwaines?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Bruttes weoren færi :
 for fwulchere ifihðe.
 Nes hit nawiht longe :
 þat ne comen to þan kinge.
 cnihtes funen uiue :
 þa ifaren hafden biliue.
 heo fæiden to þan kinge :
 neowe tiðeden.

Nu forð rihtes :
 icumē beoð þa Peohtes. 10
 þurh þi lond heo ærneð :
 & hærzieð & berneð.
 & al þene norð ænde :
 iuæld to þā grūde.
 her of þu most ræden :
 oðer alle we beoð dæden.
 þe king hine bi-þohte :
 whæt he don mihte.
 he fende to þan innen :
 after al hif monnen. 20
 þer com Hengeft þer com Horf :
 þer com mini¹ mon ful oht.
 þer comē þa Saxifce men :

Bruttes weren fori :
 for þan ilke fihte.
 Nas noht longe :
 þat ne come tydinge.
 þat þo forþ rihtes :
 icomen were þe Peutes.
 Oueral þin lond hii erneþ :
 and fleap þin folk and bearneþ.
 and alle þane norþ ende :
 hii falleþ to þan grūde.
 her of þou most reade :
 oþer alle we beoþ deade.
 þe king fende his fonde :
 to þeos cnihtes hinne.
 þat hii fwiþe fone :
 to him feolue come.
 þar com Hengeft and his broþer :
 and manian oþer.

held in contempt'; *the* Britons were sorry for 'such *a* [that] sight. It was 'no whit [not] long before 'five knights sons who had travelled quickly' came 'to the king; they said to the king new' tidings: "Now [that then] forth-right the Peohtes 'are [were] come; 'through ["Over all] thy land they run, and 'harry [slay thy folk], and burn, and all the north end [they] fell to the ground; hereof thou must advise *thee*, or we all shall be dead." The king 'bethought him what he might do, he' sent [his messengers] to 'the [these knights] inn, 'after all his men [that they very soon should come to himself]. There came Hengest, 'there came Hors, there came many *a* man full brave; [and his brother, and many an-

¹ mani?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Hengestes cunnes-men.

& þa Alemainisce cnihtes :

þe beoð gode to fihte.

þiſ iſæh þe king Vortiger :

bliðe wes he þa þa¹ þer.

þa Peohtes duden heore iwune : þe Peutes dude hire wone :

a þas hælf þere Humbre heo weo- a þiſ half Vmbre hii were icome.
ren icume.

& þe king Vortiger :

of heore cume wes ful war.

to-gadere heo comen :

& feole þer of-floȝen.

þer wes feht swide² ſtrong :

comp swiðe ſturne.

þe Peohtes weoren ofte iwuned :

Vortigerne to ou³-cumen. [c.2.]& þa heo þohten aſwa³ :

ah hit ilomp an oðer þa.

for hit wes heom al hele :

þat Hængeſt wes þere.

& þa cnihtes ſtronge :

þe comen of Saxelōde.

þat þe king Vortiger :

bliþe was þo þer.

þe Peutes dude hire wone :

a þiſ half Vmbre hii were icome.

And þe king Vortiger :

of hire come was war.

to-gadere hii comen :

and manie þar of-sloȝen.

þer wes feht swide² ſtrong :

comp swiðe ſturne.

þe Peutes weren ofte iwoned :

Vortiger to ouercome.

and þo iþohten⁴ al ſo :

ac hit bi-ful oþerweies þo.

for hii hadde mochel care :

for Hengeſt was þare.

þe comen of Saxelōde.

other, so that] ‘there came the Saxish men, Hengests kinsmen, and the Alemainish knights, who are good in fight.’ The king Vortiger ‘saw this’; blithe was ‘he’ then there. The Peohtes did their custom (as they were accustomed),—on this side of ‘the’ Humber they were come. And the king Vortiger of their coming was ‘full’ aware; together they came (encountered), and many there slew; ‘there was fight most strong, combat most stern!’ The Peohtes were oft accustomed to overcome Vortiger, and so they thought then *to do*, but it befell then ‘in other wise [otherways], for ‘it was safety to them (the Britons) that [they had much care because] Hengest was there, ‘and the strong knights who came from Saxland, and the brave Alemainish, who came thither with Hors,’ [for] very many Peohtes

¹ *Redundant.*² swiðe?³ aſwa?⁴ hii þohten?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þa ohte Alemanifce :
 þe þider comen mid Horfe.
 swiðe monie Peohtes : for fwiþe manie Peutes :
 heo floȝen i þan fehte. hii floȝen in þan fihte.
 feondliche heo fuhten :
 feollen þa fæie.
 þa þe non wes icumen : þo þat non was icome :
 þa weoren Peohtes ouer-cumen. þo were Peutes ouer-come.
 & fwiðe heo awæi floȝen : and fwiþe hii aweȝ floȝe : [f. 66^b.c.1.]
 an ælche helue heo forð fluzen. 10 on euereche fide.
 & alle dai heo fluzen :
 monie & vnnifoȝe.
 þe king Vortigerne : And Vortiger þe king :
 wende to herberwe. wende aȝen to his hin.
 & æuere him weorē on uaft :
 Horf & Hængeft.
 Hængeft wes þan kinge leof¹ : and to Hengeft an his cnihtes :
 & him Lindefaȝe ȝef. he ȝef riche ȝeftes.
 and he ȝæf Horfe :
 madmes inoȝe. 20
 & alle heore cnihtes :
 he fwiðe wel dihte.
 & hit gode ftūde :
 ftod a þan ilke.

they slew in the fight; 'fiercely they fought, the fated fell!' When the noon was come, then were *the* Peohtes overcome, and quickly away they fled, on 'each [every] side' they forth fled, and all day they fled, many and without number.' [And] the king Vortiger went [back] to 'lodging [his inn]', 'and ever were nigh to him Hors and Hengest. Hengest was dear to the king', and to 'him [Hengest and his knights] he gave' Lindesey [rich gifts], 'and he gave Hors treasures enow, and all their knights he treated exceeding well, and *thus* a good time it stood in the same *wise*.' *The* Peohtes durst never come into 'the

¹ This word and half of the next line are on an erasure. We should probably read & him Lindefaȝe he ȝef.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Ne durſte nauere Peohteſtes ¹ :	Ne dorſte neuere Peutes :
cumen i þan londes.	come in þiſſe londe.
no ræueres no utlaȝen :	þat hii nere ſone of-ſlaȝe :
þ heo neoren ſone of-flæȝen.	and idon of lifdaȝe.
& Hængeſt ſwiðe fæire :	and Hengeſt ſwiþe hendeliche :
herede þane king.	cwemde þan kinge.
þa ilōp hit in ane time :	þo hit bi-ful in on time :
þ þe king wes ſwiðe bliðe.	þat þe king ² was ſwiþe bliþe.
an ane hæȝe dæie :	
imong hiſ duȝeðe monnen. 10	
Hengeſt hine bi-þohte :	
what he don mihte.	
for he wolde wið þan kige :	Hengeſt wolde wiþ þan kinge :
holdē runige. [f.81.e.1.]	holde rounig ³ .
þan kinge he eode to-foren :	þane kinge he com bi-vore :
& fæire hine gon ⁴ greten.	and faire hine grette.
þe king ſone up ſtod :	
& fætte hine bi him ſeoluen.	
heo drunken heo dremden :	
bliffe wes among heom. 20	
þa queð Hengeſt to þan kinge :	þo faide Hengeſt to þan kinge :
Lauerd hærcne tiðende.	Louerd hercne tȝdinge.
& ich þe wulle ræcchen :	and ich þe wolle telle :
deorne runen.	of deorne rouniges.

[this] land, 'no rrobbers nor outlaws,' that they were not soon slain [and deprived of life-day]; and Hengest exceeding fairly 'served [pleased] the king. Then befell it on a time, that the king was very blithe, 'on a high-day (festival), among his people.' Hengest 'bethought him what he might do, for he' would hold secret discourse with the king; he 'went [came] before the king, and 'gan greet [greeted him] fair. 'The king up stood, and set him by himself; they drank, they revelled,—bliss was among them.' Then 'quoth [said] Hengest to the king: "Lord, hearken tidings, and I will tell thee [of]

¹ Peohtes?² Originally written ren king, but ren expuncted.³ rouning?⁴ At first written gonde, but de expuncted.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ȝif þu mine lare :
 wel wult luften.
 & noht halden to wraððe :
 þat ich wel leare.
 þe king anfwaredede :
 swa Hengef¹ hit wolde.
 þa fæide Hængeft :
 cnihten alre fæireft.
 Lauerd ich habbe moni a dæi :
 þine monscipe ihæȝed. 10
 & þin holde mon ibeō :
 i richen þine hirede.
 & in ælche fæhte :
 hæhft of þine cnihtē.
 & ich habbe ofte ihærd :
 hohfulle ronenen².
 imong þine hired-monnen :
 heo hatieð þe fwiðe.
 in to þan bare dæðe :
 ȝif heo hit dursten cuðe. 20
 Ofte heo ftilledliche³ fpækeð :
 & fpilieð mid runen.
 of twam ȝūge monnen :
 þat feor wunieð hennen.

ȝef þou mine lore :
 wel wolt i-hure.
 and noht holde to wraþpe :
 ȝef ich þe wel leore.
 And þe king anfwaredede :
 alfe Hengeft hit wolde.
 Louerd ofte ich habbe ihord :
 a-mong þine cnihtes.
 þat hii þe hatieþ swiþe :
 into þare bare deathe.
 Ofte hii ftille spekeþ :
 of two ȝonge cheldrē.

secret discourse, if thou wilt well 'listen to [hear] my advice, and not hold in wrath 'what I [if I thee] well teach.' [And] the king answered as Hengest would it. 'Then said Hengest, fairest of all knights': "Lord, I have 'many a day advanced thy honor, and been thy faithful man in thy rich court, and in each fight *the* highest of thy knights. And I have 'often heard 'anxious whisperings' among thy 'courtiers; [knights, that] they hate thee exceedingly, unto the bare death, 'if they it durst shew.' Oft they speak stilly, 'and discourse with whispers,' of two young 'men [children], 'that dwell far hence'; the one hight Uther, the other 'Am-

¹ R. Hengeft.² ronen?³ ftilleliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe an hæhte Vther :	þe on hatte Vther :
þe oðer Ambrosie.	þe oþer Aurelie.
þe þridde hæhte Costance :	þe þridde hehte Constance :
þe wes king i þisse lond ¹ .	
& he her wes of-flazen :	þat þou dedest to deape.
þurh fwiçfulle lazen.	
Nu wulleð cume þa oðere :	Nou wollep come þe oþer :
& wræken heore broðer.	and wreken hire broþer.
al forbærnen þi lond :	[c. 2.] al for-bearne þi lond :
& flæn þine leoden.	10 and flean þine leode.
þe feoluen & þine duzeðen :	
driuen ut of londe.	
& þus fuggeð þine men :	and þus seggeþ þine men : [c. 2.]
þer heo somned fitteð.	stille bi-twine heom.
for þa twene broðere :	
beoð beyne ² kine-borne.	
of Androeinnes kunne :	
þas aðele Bruttes.	
& þus þine duzeðe :	
stille þe fordemed ³ .	20
Ah ich þe wulle ræde :	Ac ich þe wolle reade :
of muchele þire neode.	of mochele þine neode.
þ þu biȝite cnihteft ⁴ :	þat þou bi-ȝete cnihtes :

broisie [Aurelie],—the third hight Constance ‘who was king in this land,’ ‘and he here was slain through traitorous usage [whom thou puttedst to death]. The others will now come, and avenge their brother, all consume thy land, and slay thy people, ‘thyself and thy folk drive out of land’. And thus say thy men, ‘where they sit together [stilly between them], ‘because the twain brothers are both royally born, of Androeins race, these noble Britons; and thus thy folk stilly condemn thee.’ But I will advise thee of thy great need, that thou procure knights that are good in fight; and give

¹ This word is interlined by a later hand.

² beoren *pr. m.*, but corrected by a second hand in the margin.

³ fordemeð?

⁴ Originally mihteft; the first letter corrected, but the last not. *R.* cnihtes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa gode beoð to fihte.	þat gode beon to fihte :
& bi-tache me æenne castel :	and bi-tak me one castel :
oðer ane kineliche burh.	
þat ich mai inne ligge :	þat ich mai on wonie.
þa while þa ich libbe.	
Ic am uor þe iuaid :	For ich ham for þe i-veipet :
þær fore ic wene beon dæd.	þat ich wene beo dead.
fare þer ic auer fare :	vare ware ich euere vare :
næm ich næuere bute care.	nam ich neuere bout care.
buten ich legge faste :	10 bote ihc legge faste :
biclufed inne castle.	bi-clufed in on castle.
3if þu þif me wult don :	3ef þou þis woldes don :
ich hit wulle mid luue a-fon.	
& ich wulle biliue :	
fenden after mine wiue.	mi wif folde come fone.
þat if a Sexisc wimmon :	
of wiſdome wel idon.	
& after Rouwēne : mire dohter :	and mi dohter Rowenne :
þe me if fwiðe deore.	and moche of mine cunne.
þenne ich habbe mi wif :	20
& mine wine-maies.	
& ich beo i þine londe :	Wan we þos beoþ in londe :
fulliche at-ftonde.	folliche at-ftonde.
þa bet ich wullen hiren þe :	þe bet we wollep cweme þe :
3if þu þif 3etteft me.	3ef þou þis wolt granti me.

to me a castle, 'or a royal burgh,' that I may 'lie [dwell] in, 'the while that I live. [For] I am for thee hated,—'therefore [so that] I ween to be dead; fare wherever I fare, I am never without care, unless I lie fast inclosed in [a] castle. If thou 'wilt [wouldest] do this 'for me, I will it receive with love,' and 'quickly I will send after my wife [my wife should come soon], who is a Saxish woman, of wisdom excellent,' and 'after' my daughter Rouwenne, 'who is most dear to me, [and much of my kindred]. When 'I have my wife, and my kinsmen, and' 'I [we thus] are in 'thy' land fully settled, the better 'I [we] will 'serve [please] thee, if thou 'grant-est [will grant] me this.' Then answered Vortiger,—[who] of each evil

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa anſwerede Vortiger :	þo anſwerede Vortiger :
of ælchen vuele he wef war. [f. 81 ^b . c.1.]	þat of ech vuele waf war.
Nim cnihtes biliue :	Nim cnihtes ſwiþe :
& ſend æfter þine wiue.	and ſend after þine wifue.
& æfter þine children :	and after þine childrē :
þan ȝūgen & þan olden.	þe ȝong and þe heoldre.
& æfter þine cunnen :	and after þine cunne :
& afeoh heom mid wunne.	and onderfang heom mid winne.
þenne heo to þe cumeð :	wane hii to þe comeþ :
þu ſcat ¹ habben gærfume. 10	þou ſalt habbe garifome.
hæhliche heom to uedē :	hehliche heom to fede :
& wurðliche ſcruden.	and worþliche to ſcrude.
Ah nulle ich caſtel na burh :	Ac nelle ich caſtel ne borh :
nane þe bi-techen.	nanne þe bi-take.
for men me wolden ſcenden :	for men me wolde ſende :
i mine kine ² kine-lond.	in mine kinelonde.
for ȝe haldeð þa hæðene laȝe :	ȝef ich heþene men : [f. 67. c.1.]
þat ſtod on eoure ælderen dæȝe.	londes bi-toke.
& we haldeð criſtes laȝe :	
& wulleð auere an ure dæȝe. 20	
þa ȝet ſpæc Hængeſt :	þe ȝet ſpac Hengeſt :
cnihten alre hendefſt.	cniht alre hendefſt.
Lauerd ich wulle þin iwil :	Louerd nou ich wolle :
driȝē her & ouer al.	don al þine wille.

‘he’ was ware,—“Take quickly knights, and send after thy wife, and after thy children, the young and the old, and after thy kin, and receive them with joy; when they to thee come, thou shalt have riches to feed them nobly, and worthily to clothe *them*. But I will not give to thee any castle or burgh, for men would reproach me in my kingdom; ‘for ye hold the heathen law that stood in your elders days, and we hold Christs law, and will ever in our days [if I gave lands to heathen men].’” The yet spake Hengest, fairest of all knights: “Lord, I will ‘perform [do now all] thy will, ‘here and over all, and do all my deeds after thy counsel.’ Now will

¹ *R. scalt.*² *Redundant.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& don al mine dæde :	
æfter þine ræde.	
Nu ic wulle biliue :	Nou ich wolle bliue :
fende after mine wiue.	fende after mine wifue.
& æfter mire dohter :	
þe me if fwa deore.	
& æfter ohte mōnen :	
þa bezfte of mine cunne :	
and þu ȝif me fwa muchel lond :	and þou ȝef me fo mochel lond :
to ftonden a mire aȝere hōd. 10	to ftonde on min owe hond.
swa wule anes bule hude :	afe wole a bole hude :
ælches weies ouer-fpræden.	in grene ouer-fprede.
feor from ælche caſtle :	for fram eche caſtle :
amidden ane ualde.	a-midde one felde.
þeñe ne mai þe atwite :	þanne ne mai þe atwite :
þe hæne ne þe riche.	þe pore no þe riche.
þ̃ þu æi hæhne burhȝe : [c. 2.]	þat þou eni heh borh :
hæðene monne hadde bi-tæht.	heþene man bi-takeſt.
þe king him iȝette :	And þe kīg him ȝaf :
fwa Hengeſt ȝirnde. 20	þat lutel þat he ȝornde.
Hengeſt nom ¹ læue :	Hengeſt nam lefue :
& forð he gon liðe.	and forþ he gan wende.
& æfter hiſ wiue fende fonde :	and after hiſ wifue he fende fonde :
to hiſ aȝene lōde.	to hiſ owene londe.

I speedily send after my wife, 'and after my daughter, who is to me very dear, and after brave men, the best of my kin.' And thou give me so much land, to stand in mine own hand, as a bulls hide will 'each way [on *the* green] overspread, far from each castle, amidst a field. Then nor the poor nor the rich may blame thee, that thou 'hast given [givest] any noble burgh to a heathen man." [And] the king 'granted [gave] him 'as Hengest [the little that he] yearned. Hengest took leave, and forth he gan pass, and after his wife [he] sent messengers, to his own land; and 'he *himself*

¹ inom *pr. m.*, but i erased.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& he feolf wende ȝeond þif lōd ⁊	and him feolf wende ⁊
to fechen ænne bræne ¹ fæld.	oueral to bi-holde.
þer he mihte wel fpræde ⁊	ware he mihte wel fprede ⁊
on hif feire hude.	his bole hude.
He com æn enne ende ⁊	
in enne fæire uelde.	
he hafde ane hude ⁊	
biȝite to hif neode.	
of ane wilde bule ⁊	
þe wes wunder ane ftrong. 10	
He hæfden ænne wifne mon ⁊	Hengeft hadde one wifne man ⁊
þe wel cuðe a craften.	þat wel coupe of crafte.
þe nom þaf hude ⁊	he nam þeos bole hude ⁊
& a bord leide.	and a borde laide.
and whætte hif færes ⁊	
alfe he fchæren wolde.	
Of þere hude he kærfe enne þwong ⁊ þar of he makede ane þwang ⁊	
fwiðe fwal ² & fwiðe long.	fwiþe fmal and fwiþe lang.
nes þe þwong noht fwiðe bræd ⁊	nas þe þwang noht brod ⁊
buten fwulc a twines þræd. 20	bote afe hit were a twined þred.
þa al iflit wes þe þong ⁊	
he wes wunder ane long.	
a-buten he bilæde ⁊	a-boute þar mid he leide ⁊
muchel del of londe.	moche deal of londe.

[*he himself*] went over 'this land, to seek a broad field [all, to behold], where 'on' he might well spread his 'fair [bulls] hide. 'He came to a spot, in a fair field; he had obtained a hide to his need, of a wild bull, that was wondrously strong.' 'He [Hengest] had a wise man, who well knew of craft, 'who [he] took this [bulls] hide, and laid *it* on a board, 'and whet his shears, as *if* he would shear.' 'Of the hide [Thereof] he 'carved [made] a thong, very small and very long; the thong was not 'very' broad, but as [it were] a thread 'of twine [twined]; 'when the thong was all slit, it was wondrously long,' about [therewith] he encompassed a great deal of land.

¹ brædne?² *R.* fmal.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

He bigon to deluen ⁊
 dic fwiðe muchele.
 þer uppe ſtenene wal ⁊
 þe wes ſtrong ouer al.
 ane burh he arerde ⁊
 muchele & mare.

þa þe burh wel¹ al ȝare ⁊
 þa ſcop he hire nome.
 he hæhte heo ful iwif ⁊

Kaer-Carrai an Bruttife. 10

& Ængliſce cnihtes ⁊ [f.82.c.1.]

heo cleopeden þwong-Chaſtre.

nu and auere mare ⁊

þe nome ſtodeð² þere.

& for nan odere³ gome ⁊

næueden þæ burh þene nome.

a þet come Denſce men ⁊

and driuen ut þa Bruttis.

þene þridde nome heo þer fætte ⁊

& Lane-caſtel hine hæhten. 20

& for ſwolche gomen ⁊

þæ tun hafde⁴ þaſ þreo nomen.

Vnder þan com liðen hider ⁊

He lette þo delue ⁊

on euerech halue.

þar vppe ſtonene wal ⁊

ſwiþe ſtrong oueral. [c. 2.]

ane caſtel he arerde ⁊

fair to bi-holde.

þo þe borh was al ȝaru ⁊

þo fette he hire name.

he hehte hire foliwiſ ⁊

Caȝr-Karri in Bruttif.

and Engliſſe cnihtes ⁊

þwangcheſtre.

nou and euere more ⁊

þe name ſtondeþ þare.

forte þat Dence men ⁊

driuen vt þe cnihtes.

þane þridde name þar fette ⁊

and Leane-caſtel hine cleopede.

Vnder þan com liþe hider ⁊

*Kaer-
Carrai.*

*þwo[n]g-
Chæſtre.*

Lane-caſtel.

He 'began to dig a ditch very mickle [caused then to be dug on every side]; there upon a stone wall, 'that was [exceeding] strong over all, a 'burgh [castle] he areared, 'mickle and lofty [fair to behold]. When the burgh was all ready, then 'shaped [set] he to it a name; he named it full truly Kaer-Carrai in British, and English knights 'they called it' Thongchester. Now and evermore the name standeth there, 'and for no other adventure had the burgh the name,' until that Danish men 'came, and' drove out the 'Britons [knights]; the third name 'they' set there, and Lane-caſtel (Lancaster) it 'named [called]; 'and for such events the town had these three names.' In the mean *time* arrived hither Hengests wife with her

¹ *R.* weſ.

² ſtondeð?

³ oðere?

⁴ hafde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Hengestes wif mid hire scipen.
 heo hæfde to iueren :
 fiftene hūðed¹ ridern.
 mid hire comē to iwiten :
 muchele æhtene scipen.
 þer comen inne :
 muchel of Hengestes cunne.

& Rouwē hif dohter :
 þe him wes swide² deore.

Hit wes umbe while :
 10

þ com þe ilke time.

þ iʒarked wes þa burh :

mid þan alre bezfte.

Hengeft. Hēgeft com to þan kinge :

& bad him giftninge³.

& feide þ he hafde an in :

iʒarked to-ʒeines him.

& bad þat he come þer to :

& he scolde beon fæire under-fon.

& þe king him ʒette :
 20

fwa Hengeft hit wolde.

Hit com to þan time :

þ þe king gon forð liðe.

mid þan deorefte monnen :

Hengestes wif mid hire fipes.

ʒeo hadde to iveren :

fiftene hundred rideres.

and Rowen hif dohter :

þat was him fwiþe deore.

Hit was bi on wile :

þat com þe ilke time.

þat i-ʒarked was þe borh :

mid þan alre beſte.

and Hengeft wende to þan kinge :

and bad hine to gýftnīge.

and feide þat he hadde on in :

hi-makede to-ʒenef him.

And þe king him grantede :

alfe Hengeft wolde.

ships; she had for companions fifteen hundred riders; 'with her came, to wit, mickle good ships; therein came much of Hengests kin,' and Rouwenne, his daughter, who was to him most dear. It was 'after [a] while, that that time came, that the burgh was completed with the best of all. [And] Hengest 'came [went] to the king, and asked him to a banquet, and said that he had 'prepared [made] an inn against him (his coming), 'and bade that he should come thereto, and he should be fairly received.' And the king granted him as Hengest *it* would. 'It came to the time that the king gan forth proceed, with the dearest men of all his folk'; forth 'he [they]

¹ hūðred?

² swiðe?

³ guftninge *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

of alle hif duȝeðe.

forð he gon buȝen :

þ he to burh com. [c. 2.]

he bi-heold þene wal :

up and dun ouer al.

al him wel likede :

þ he ð lokede.

He wende in to halle :

& hif heleðes mid him alle.

bemen heo bleowen : 10

gomē men gunnen cleopien.

bord heo hetten bređen :

cnihtes fetten þer to.

heo æten heo drunken :

dræm wes i burhȝen.

þa þe duȝeðe hafde iȝeten :

þa wes heom þa bet iloten.

Hængeft eode in to þan inne :

þer wunede Rouwenne.

he heo lette fcruden : 20

mid vnimete¹ prude.

al þ fcrud þe heo hafde on :

heo weoren fwiðe wel ibon.

Forþ hii gonne wende :

þat hii come to þan ende.

þe king bi-heold þane wal :

vp and dun oueral.

al him wel likede :

þat he on lokede.

He wende in to halle :

and his cnihtes mid him alle.

bordes hii lette fprede :

cnihtef þar to fete.

hii eoten hii drongken : [f. 67^b. c. 1.]

bliffe was a-mang heom.

Hengeft wēde to þe ine :

þar Rowenne was hinne.

he hire lette fcrude :

mid onimete prude.

gan proceed until 'he [they] came to 'the burgh [the spot]. 'He [The king] beheld the wall up and down over all; all *it* liked him well, that he on looked. He went into *the* hall, and all his knights with him; 'trumps they blew, games men gan to call,' boards they 'ordered [caused] to be spread, knights sate thereat; they ate, they drank, 'joy [bliss] was 'in *the* burgh [among them]!—'when the folk had eaten, then was the better befallen to them.' Hengest went 'in'to the inn, where Rouwenne 'dwelt [in was]; he caused her to be clad with excessive pride; 'all the clothes that she had on, they were most excellent, they were good with the best,

¹ The last two letters of vnimete are interlined by second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo weoren mid þan bezfte :

ibrufted mid golde.

Heo bar an hiȝ honde :

ane guldene bolle.

i-uulled mid wine :

þe wes wunder ane god.

Hæȝe iborēne men :

heo lædden to hallen.

biuoren þan kinge :

farrest alre þinge.

Reowen sæt a cneowe :

& cleopede to þan kinge.

& þus ærest sæide :

in Ænglene londe.

Lauerd king wæf hæl :

for þine kime ich æm uæin.

þe king þis ihærde :

& nuste what heo feide.

þe king Vortigerne :

fræinede his cnihtes fone.

what weoren þat speche :

þe þ maide spiledede.

þa andswerede Keredic :

a cniht fwiðe fellic.

he wes þe bezfte latimer :

ȝeo bar in hire hond :

ane goldene bolle.

hi-fulled mid wine :

ne mihte non be richere.

Hehȝe ibore mē :

hire ladde in to halle.

bi-vore þan kinge :

10 fairest alle þing.

Rowenne fat a cnouwe :

and feide to þa kinge.

þus ereft ȝeo spac :

in Englene lond.

Louerd king waffaȝl :

for þine comes me beoþ hail.

þe kīȝ hit ihorde :

and nuste wat ȝeo faide.

þe king Vortigerne :

20 haxede his cnihtes.

wat were þe speche :

þat þe maide speke.

þo answereðe Ketherēh :

cniht mid þe wifest.

he was þe beste latimer :

embroidered with gold.' She bare in her hand a golden bowl, filled with wine, 'that was one wondrous good [none might be richer]. High-born men led her [in]to *the* hall before the king, fairest of all things! Rowenne sate on *her* knee, and 'called [said] to the king, 'and' thus first [she] 'said [spake] in English land: "Lord king, wassail! for thy coming 'I am glad [is health to me]." The king 'this [it] heard, and knew not what she said; the king Vortiger asked his knights 'soon', what were the speech that the maid spake. Then answered 'Keredic [Ketherēh], 'a' knight 'most admirable [with the wisest]; he was the best interpreter that 'ere

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat ær com her.	þat euere wone ¹ her.
Luft me nu lauerd king :	Luft nou mi louerd king :
& ich þe wulle cuðen.	and ich þe wolle cuðen.
whæt feið Rouwenne :	wat feiþ Rowenne :
fæireft wimmonnen.	faireft of al wommanne.
Hit beoð tiðende :	Hit his þe wone :
inne Sæxe-londe.	ine Sax-londe.
whær fwa æi duzeðe :	
gladieð ² of drenche.	
þat freond fæiðe to freonde :	þat freond faiþ to his freond :
mid fæire loten hende.	wane he fal dringe.
Leofue freond wæf hail :	Leofue freond waffail :
þe oðer fæið drinc hail.	þe oþer faiþ dringhail.
þe ilke þat halt þene nap :	þe ilke þat halt þane nap :
he hine drinkeð up.	þane dringe dringþ vp.
oder ³ uul me þider fareð :	and aȝeo me hine fulþ :
& bi-thecheð hiſ iuerē.	and takeþ his iverē.
þenne þat uul beoð icumen :	
þenne cuſſeoð heo þreoien.	
þiſ beoð fele laȝen :	þiſ beoþ þe lawes :
inne Saxe-londe.	ine Saxlonde.
& inne Alemaine :	
heo beoð ihalden aðele.	

[c. 2.]

came [ever dwelt] here : “Listen ‘to me’ now, [my] lord king, and I will make known to thee what Rouwenne saith, fairest [of all] women. It is [the] custom in Saxland, ‘wheresoever any people gladden (make merry) in drink,’ that friend sayeth to [his] friend, ‘with fair comely looks [when he shall drink], “Dear friend, wassail !”—the other sayeth, “Drinchail !” The same that holds the cup, ‘he’ drinketh ‘it [the drink] up ; ‘another full *cup* men thither bring [and again men fill it], and give to his comrade. ‘When the full *cup* is come, then kiss they thrice.’ These are [the] ‘good’ customs in Saxland, ‘and in Alemaine they are accounted noble !’” Vortiger

¹ wonede ?² *Written at first gladeieð, but e expuncted by the same hand.*³ oðer ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þif iherde Uortiger :	þif ihorde Vortiger :
of alchel ¹ uuele he wes war.	of eche vuele he was war.
& feide hit an Bruttisc :	and faide hit on Brutteffe :
ne cuðe he nan Ænglisc.	ne couþe he noht on Englisse.
Maiden Rouwenne :	Mayde Rowenne :
drinc bluðeliche þenne.	dring bloþeliche þanne.
þat maide dronc up þat win :	þat maide drong vt þat win :
& lette don oðer þer in.	and lette don oþer þar in.
& bi-tæhten þan kinge :	and bi-tahte þan kinge :
& þrien hine cuſte.	and he hit vp fwipte.
& þurh þa ilke leodē :	And þorh þifne ilke game :
þa lazen comen to þiffen londe.	þe lawe come to londe.
[Wæf-h]ail. wæf-hail & drinc-hæil :	waffayl and dring-hayl :
moni mon þer of if fain.	þat mani mē lofuieþ.
Rouwenne þe hende :	þe faire Rowenne :
fat bi þan kinge.	fat bi þan kinge.
þe king heo ȝeorne biheold :	þe king hire ȝeorne bi-heold :
heo was him an heorte leof.	ȝeo was him leof on heorte.
ofte he heo cuſte :	ofte he hire cuſte :
ofte he heo clupte.	and ofte he hire clupte.
al his mod & his main :	
halde to þan mæidene.	
þe wurfe wef þer ful neh :	þe worfe was þare wel neh :

heard this,—of each evil he was ware,—and said it in British, *for* he knew 'no [not in] English] : “Maiden Rouwenne, drink then blithely!” The maid drank 'up [out] the wine, and let do (put) other *wine* therein, and gave to the king, and 'thrice him kissed [he drank it up]. And through 'the [this] same 'people [game] the custom came to 'this' land of Wassail and Drinchail,—'many a man thereof is glad [that many men love]! Rouwenne the fair sate by the king; the king beheld her longingly, she was dear to him in heart; oft he kissed her, [and] oft he embraced her; 'all his mind and his might inclined *towards* the maiden.' The Worse was

¹ alchen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe in ælche gomene is ful ræh.	þat to foche game his wel fleh.
þe wurfe ne dude næuere god :	þe worfe þat neuere ne doþ god :
he mæingde þas kinges mod.	he meýnde þare þef kinges mod.
he murnede ful fwiðe :	þe king mornede fwiþe :
to habben þat mæidē to wiue.	for habbe hire to wifue.
þat wes swide ladlic ¹ þing :	þat was fwiþe loþlich þing :
þat þe cristine king.	þat þe cristene king.
luuede þat hæðene maide :	louede þat maide heaþene :
leoden to hæreme.	folk to harme.
þ̅ maiden wes þan kinge leof : 10	
æfne alfe his aȝene lif.	
he bad Hengeft his dring :	To Hengeft bad þe king :
ȝiuen him þat maide-child.	þat he þat maide ȝefue him.
Hēgeft funde an his ræd :	Hengeft funde on his reade :
to don þ̅ þe king him bed :	don þat þe king him beade.
he ȝef him Rouwenne :	he ȝef him Rowenne :
wimmon fwiðe hende.	womman fwiþe hende.
þan kinge hit was [icweme] :	þane king hit was icweme :
he makede ² heo to quene.	he makede hire to cwene. [f.68.c.1.]
al after þan laȝen : 20	al after þe lawes :
þe ftoden an hæðe ³ dæȝen.	þat ftode in heaþene daiȝe.
nes þer nan cristindō :	nas þar preost ne cristendom :

Rouwenne.

there full nigh, who in 'each [such *a*] game is 'full cruel [well sly]; the Worse [who] never 'did [doth] good, he troubled the kings mood; 'he [the king] mourned 'full' much, to have 'the maiden [her] for wife. That was *a* most loathly thing, that the christian king should love the heathen maid, to *the* harm of *his* people! 'The maiden was dear to the king, even as his own life'; 'he [The king] prayed [to] Hengest, 'his chieftain,' [that he should] give him the maid-'child.' Hengest found in his counsel to do what the king asked him; he gave him Rouwenne, *the* woman most fair. To the king it was pleasing; he made her queen, all after the laws that stood in *the* heathen days; was there 'no [nor priest nor] Christendom, where the king

¹ swiðe laðlic?² imakede *man. sec.*³ hæðene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

<i>Vortimer.</i> <i>Pascent.</i> <i>Catiger.</i>	þer þe king þat maide mon¹. ne preost ne na biscop : ne nauere ihandled godes boc. ah ā heðene wune he heo wedde : þat maide he weddede : & brohte heo to his bedde. Maidē he heo hæfde : & mærzeue hire bi-tahte. þa he hine an hire hafde ifcend : he hire ȝef Londen & Kent. þe king hafde þreo funen : þe weoren fwiðe hende gumē. þe ældeste hehte Vortimer : Pascent & Katiger. Garengan wes an eorl : þe Kent ohte longe. & hif fader biuoren him : and feoððen he þurh hif cun. [f. 83. c. 1.] þa he bezft wende : to halden his lond. þa hafde Hengeft : hit an hif hond. sellic þuhte þan cnihte : whæt þe king þohte.	þar þe king þat maide nom. þat were ftaleworþe gomes. þe eldeste hehte Vortimer : Pascent and Catiger. Garangan was an eorl : þat Kent hadde longe. þo he beste wende : to holde his cunde. þo hadde hit þe cwene : and Hengeft imene. seollich þohte þe cniht : wat þe king þohte.
--	---	---

took the maid, 'nor priest, nor any bishop, nor *was* Gods book ever handled, but in *the* heathen fashion' he wedded 'her [the maid], and 'brought [took] her to his bed ! 'Maiden he had her, and ample gift bestowed on her ; when he had disgraced himself on her, he gave her London and Kent.' The king had three sons, who were men 'exceeding fair [valiant] ; the eldest hight Vortimer,—Pascent, and Catiger. Garengan was an earl, who 'possessed [had] Kent long, 'and his father before him, and he afterwards through his kin (by inheritance) ; when he best weened to hold his land, then had it [the queen, and] Hengest 'in his hand [in common] ; strange *it* seemed to the knight, what the king thought. 'The king loved the heathens and

¹ R. nom? inom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe king luuede þa hæðene :

& hunde¹ þa cristine.

þe hæðene hæfden al þis lond :

to walden under heore hond.

& þes kinges þreo funen :

ofte þoleden forȝen & kare.

Heore moder wes þa dæd :

þer uore heo hafden þe laffe ræd. þar vore hii hadde þe laffe read.

here moder wes fwiðe god wif :

& ladde swiðe cristin lif. 10

& heore steopmoder hæðene :

Hengestes dohter.

Nes hit noh² longe :

buten ane ftūde.

þ þe king makede :

ueorme fwiðe store.

þe hæðene he laðede þar to :

he wende fwiðe wel to don.

þider comen þæines :

cnihtes and sweines. 20

And alle þe cuðe a boken :

þa feorme for-foken.

for þa hæðene men :

weoren hæhft an hireden.

þe heapene hadde al þis lond :

to hire owe hond.

and þeos kinges þreo fones.

ofte fori were.

hire moder was dead :

Nas his³ noht longe :

bote one ftunde :

þat þe king makede feste :

on mid þe meste.

þe heapene he laþede þar to :

he wende fwiþe wel to do.

Ac al þat coupe of boke :

þe feste for-foke.

harmed the christians'; the heathens had all this land 'to rule under their [in their own] hand, and the kings three sons oft 'suffered sorrow and care [were sorry]. Their mother was 'then' dead, therefore they had the less counsel,—'their mother was *a* woman most good, and led *a* life very christian, and their stepmother *was* heathen, Hengests daughter.' It was not long, but a while, that the king made *a* feast, 'exceeding great [one with the most]; the heathens he brought thereto; he weened most well to do; 'thither came thanes, knights and swains.' And all that knew of book (the christians) forsook the feast, 'for the heathen men were highest

¹ henede *man. sec.*² noht?³ *R. hit.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þæt cristine hired ⁊

for hæne wes ihalden.

þa hæðene weoren bliðe ⁊

for þe king heom luuedē swiðe.

Hengeft hine bi-þohte ⁊

what he don mahte.

he com to þā kinge ⁊

mid are hailige.

& dronc to þan kinge¹ ⁊

þa spæc þus Hængeft ⁊

cnihtene alre hændefst.

þ of hæðene lazen ⁊

leouede a þan dæzen ⁊

Hærcne me lauerd king ⁊

þu ært me leof þurh alle þing.

þu hæuest mine dohter ⁊

þæ me is swiðe deore.

& ich æm þe an folke ⁊

swa ich þi fader weore.

hærcne mine lare ⁊

heo sculleð þe wurðen leofue.

for ich wulle hæhliche ⁊

to helpen þe ræden.

þin hired þe hateð for me ⁊

þe heapene were blipe ⁊

for þe king ȝam lofuede swiþe.

Hengeft hine bi-þohte ⁊

wat he don mihte.

he com to þan kinge ⁊

and þeos word faide.

[c. 2.]

Hercne me nou louerd king ⁊

ich þe louie þorh alle þing. [c. 2.]

þou hauest mine dohter ⁊

þat me his swiþe deore.

and ich ham þe on folke ⁊

alfe ich þi fader were.

20

in *the* court, and the christian folk was held for base'; the heathens were blithe, for the king loved them greatly. Hengest bethought him what he might do; he came to the king, 'with a hailing (salutation),' and 'drank to the king. Then' 'thus spake Hengest [said these words], 'fairest of all knights who lived of heathen law in those days': "Hearken to me [now], lord king, 'thou art to me dear [I love thee] through all things; thou hast my daughter, who is to me very dear, and I am to thee among folk as *if* I were thy father. 'Hearken to my instruction, it shall be to thee lief, for I will (wish) chiefly to help counsel thee.' Thy 'court [men] hate thee

¹ A line is here apparently deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ich æm iuæid for þe.
 & þe hatieð kinges :
 eorles & ðringes.
 heo uareð in þine londe :
 mid hære fwiðe fstronge.
 ȝif þu wult þe awraken :
 mid wurðſcipe muchen.
 & don þine vniwinen wa :
 send after mine ſune Octa.
 & æfter enne oðer :
 Ebiffa his wed-broðer.
 þis beoð þa hæhfte men :
 þe æueſ hired lædden.
 & i þan norð ende :
 ȝif heom of þine londe.
 Heo beoð of muchele mæhte :
 & fstronge i fæhte.
 heo wulleð biwiten þi lond :
 wel mid þan bezſten.
 þenne mihte þu mid winne :
 þi lif al uor-werien.
 mid haueken & mid hunden :
 hired-plæie luuien.
 ne þræt þu nauere habben kare :
 of uncuðe leoden.

and ich ham ifeiþed for þe.
 ȝef þou wolt þe awreke :
 mid worſipe mochele.
 and don þin onwines wo :
 fend after mine ſone Octa.
 10 and after þan oþer :
 Ebiffa his wed-broþer.
 þis beoþ þe ardiefte men :
 þat euere bere wepne.
 and in þan norþende :
 ȝef ham of þine lond.
 Hii beoþ of mochele mihte :
 and fstrong in eche fihte.
 hii wollep witie þi lond :
 wel mid þan beſte.
 20 þan miht þou in wele :
 þi lif al for-werie.

for me (on my account), and I am detested for thee, 'and thee hate kings, earls and thanes; they fare in thy land with a host exceeding strong.' If thou wilt avenge thee with much worship, and do woe to thy enemies, send after my son Octa, and after 'another [the other], Ebissa, his wed-brother. These are the 'noblest [hardiest] men that ever 'led army [bare weapon]; and give them of thy land in the north end. They are of mickle might, and strong in [each] fight; they will defend thy land well with the best; then mightest thou in 'joy [weal] thy life all spend, 'with hawks and with hounds court-play love; needest thou never have care of foreign people."

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa answarede Vortiger : [f.83^b.c.1.] þo faide þe king :
of ælchen uuele he wes war.

Send þine fonde : fende after ȝam for alle þing.
in to Sex-londe.

after þine fone Octa :

& after þine freonden ma.

do him wel to iwitē :

þ he fende his writen.

æfter al þan cnihten :

þe gode beoð to fihten. 10

ȝeond alle Sæx-þeoden :

þat heo cumen to mire neoden.

& þeh he bringen ten þufend gu-

alle heo beoð me welicumen. [men :

þis ihærde Hengeft :

cnihten alre henddest.

þa wes he swa bliðe :

swa he nes næuere an his liue.

Hengeft fende his fōde :

in to Sax-londe. 20

hehte cumen Octa :

and his wed-broder Ebiffa.

& al of heore cūme¹ :

Hengeft fende his fonde :

into Saxlonde.

hehte come Octa :

and his wedbroþer Ebiffa.

and alle of hire cunne :

Then 'answered Vortiger [said the king],—'of each evil he was ware,'—
"Send 'thy messengers into Saxland,' after 'thy son Octa, and after thy
friends more [them, for all things]. 'Cause him to know well, that he send
his writs after all the knights that are good in fight, over all Saxland,
that they come to my need; and though he bring ten thousand men, all
they shall be welcome to me.'" Hengest heard this, fairest of all knights;
then was he so blithe as he was never in his life.' Hengest sent his
messengers into Saxland, and bade Octa come, and his wed-brother
Ebissa, and all of their kindred that they might gain, and all the knights

¹ cūne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat heo mihten iwinne.

þat hii mihte a-winne.

& alle þa cnihtes :

and alle þe cnihtes :

þæ heo biȝiten mihten.

þat hii bi-ȝeten mihte.

Octa fende fende¹ fonde :

ȝeōd þreom kine-londe.

& bad ælchene ohte gume :

hiȝenliche hī to cume.

þe wolden biȝitē lond :

oðer feoluer oðer gold.

Heo comen to hirede :

10

alfe hazel þe ualleð.

þ̅ was to iwitene :

Hii come fone to iwite :

mid þreo hundred ſcipene.

mid foue hundred fipes.

Forð wenden mid Octa :

þritti þuſend & æc ma.

ohte men & kene :

& Ebiffa hiſ iuere.

[c. 2.]

æfter com liðen :

mid unimete leoden.

& he ladde to iwiten :

20

oðer half hundred ſcipen.

þer æfter comen liðe :

þar after fone :

fiue & fiue.

þar come wel ilome.

bi fixe bi feoue :

bi fixe bi fouene :

that they might get. 'Octa sent messengers over three kingdoms, and bade each brave man speedily to come to him, who would obtain land, or silver or gold.' They came [soon] 'to *the* army, as hail that falleth, that was' to wit, with 'three [seven] hundred ships. 'Forth went with Octa thirty thousand and eke more, brave men and keen; and Ebissa, his companion, afterwards arrived with numberless folk, and he led to wit *an* hundred and fifty ships'; thereafter 'arrived five and five, [soon there came *ships* well often] by six, by seven, by ten, 'and' by eleven; and thus '*the* heathen

¹ Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bi tene & bi ælleuene.	bi ten bi enlouene.
& þuſ heo comen liðen :'	and þuſ hii come fie :'
toward þiſſen londe.	in to þiſſe londe.
hæðene hære-gumē :'	
to hirede þiſ kinges.	
þ̅ þiſ lond wes ſwa vul :	þat þiſ lond was ſo ful :
of uncuðe leoden.	of heapene hundes.
þat nes nan ſwa wiſ mon :	þat naſ non ſo wiſ man.
no ſwa ȝer witele.	ne ſo war wittȝ.
þat mihte to-dæle :	10 þat mihte to-dele :'
þa criſtine & þa hæðene.	[f. 68 ^b . c. 1.] þe heapene and þe criſtine :
for þa hæðene weoren ſwa riue :	
& auere heo comen bililiue ¹ .	
þa iſeȝen B ^u ttes :	þo iſehȝe Bruttes :
þat balu wes an londe.	þat þuſ hit verde in londe.
þer uore heo weoren ſæri :	þar vore hii weren fori :
& an heorte druri.	and in hire heor ² dreri.
& ferden to þan kinge :	and wende to þan kinge :
þe hæhſte of þiſſen londe.	he heheſte of þiſſe [londe].
& þuſ him tō ſæiden :	20 and þuſ to him ſaide :
mid forhſule ſteuene.	mid forþſulle heorte.
Luſt uſ nu lauerd king :	Hercne vs louerd king :
of ure leod-runen ³ .	of oure deorne rouning.
pu ært þurh uſ bald king :	þou hart þorh vs bold king :

warriors they arrived 'toward [into] this land, 'to *the* court of this king,' so that this land was so full of 'foreign people [heathen hounds], that *there* was no man so wise, nor so quick-witted, that might separate the christians and the heathens, 'for the heathens were so rife; and ever they speedily came!' When *the* Britons saw that 'sorrow was [thus it fared] in *the* land, therefore they were sorry, and in [their] heart dreary, and proceeded to the king, the highest of this land, and thus to him said with sorrowful 'voice [heart]: "'Listen [Hearken] to us, lord king, of our 'discourse [secret communing]; thou art through us (by our means) bold king in this 'Britain,

¹ *R.* biliue.² *R.* heorte.³ leoð-runen *sec. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

inne þiffē B ^u tene.	in þiffere londe.
& þu hafueſt þe biwūnen :	ac þou haueſt þe bi-wonne :
hærm & muchele ſunnen.	harm and mochel ſunne.
ibroht hæðene folc :	i-broh ¹ heaþene folk :
ȝet hit þe ihærmeð.	ȝet hit mai þe ruwe.
& þu leteſt godeſ laȝen :	and þo ² for-ſakeſt godes lawe :
uor uncude ³ leoden.	for heaþene folke :
& nult ne ihæren ure drihtē :	
for þiffen hædene ⁴ cnihten.	
& we þe wulleð bidden :	Ac we þe wollep bidde :
for alle godes fibbē :	11 for alle god fibbe.
þat þu heom bilæuen :	þat þou heom bi-lefue :
& of þine lōde driuen.	and of þine londe driue.
ȝif þu alleſ ne maht :	ȝef þou elles ne miht :
we wulleð makien muchel fæht.	we wollep makie gret fiht.
& driuen heom of londe :	and driuen heom vt of londe :
oðer heom adun fallen.	oþer to grunde falle.
oðer we uf ſeoluen :	oþer we vs ſeolue :
of-flaȝen wulleð liggen.	to-hewe wollep ligge.
& leten hæðene uolc :	20 and leten heaþene folk :
hælden þas riche.	habbe þeos riche.
bruken hit mid winne :	
ȝif heo hit maȝen iwinnen.	
& ȝif heo alle beoð hæðene :	And ȝef hii alle beoþ heaþene :

and [land, but] thou hast procured to thee harm and much sin; brought heathen folk,—yet it may thee 'harm [rue];—and thou forsakest Gods law, for 'foreign [heathen] folk, 'and wilt not worship our Lord, for these heathen knights.' 'And [But] we would pray thee, for all Gods peace, that thou leave them, and drive from thy land. If thou else (otherwise) mightest not, we will make 'mickle [great] fight, and drive them 'from [out of] land, or fell 'them' 'down [to ground], or we ourselves will lie 'slain [cut in pieces], and let *the* heathen folk 'hold [have] this realm, 'possess it with joy, if they may it win. And if they all are heathen, and

¹ ibroht?² þou?³ uncude?⁴ hæðene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þu ane cristine.	and þou one cristene.
nulleð heo nauere longe :	nolleþ hii neuere :
habben þe to kinge.	holde þe for kinge.
buten þu a þine dazen :	
afo hæðene lazen.	
& bilæue þe hahȝe godd :	
& luuie heore mahimet.	
þenne ſcalt þu for-wurþen :	
a þiſſerere ¹ woruld-riche.	
& þi wracche faule :	10
fiȝen to helle.	
þenne haueſt þu aboht :	
þe luue of þire brude ² .	
þa anſwærede Vortiger :	þo anſwerede Vortiger :
of ælc an uuele he weſ wær.	of ech vuele he was war.
Nulle ich heom bilauen :	Nelle ich ȝam bi-leue :
bi mine quike liue.	bi mine cwike lifue.
for Hengeſt iſ hider icumen :	for Hengeſt hiſ hider icome :
he iſ mi fader & ich hiſ ſune.	he hiſ min fader and ich hiſ ſone.
& ich habbe to leof-monne :	20 and ich habbe to leſman :
hiſ dohter Rouwenne.	hiſ dohter Rowenne.
& ich heo habbe biwedded :	
& ihaued a mine bedde.	
& ſeoððen ich ſende after Octa :	and ſuppe ich ſende after Octa :

thou alone christian, they will never 'long' 'have [hold] thee for king, 'except thou in thy days receive *the* heathen law, and desert the high God, and praise their idols. Then shalt thou perish in this worlds realm, and thy wretched soul sink to hell; then hast thou *dearly* bought the love of thy bride!' " Then answered Vortiger,—of each evil he was ware :—" I will not leave them, by my quick life! For Hengest is hither come, he is my father, and I his son; and I have for mistress his daughter Rouwenne, 'and I have wedded her, and had in my bed,' and afterwards I sent after

¹ þiſſere?² Written at first Brutede, but te struck out by the rubricator.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& after hif iueren ma.	and after hire cunne mo.
hu mihte ich for fcome :	hou mihte ich for fame :
feunien heom fwa fone.	[c.2.] fo fone ȝam for-fake.
driuē of londe :	
mine wiues ¹ deore.	
þa andfwarede Bruttes :	þo anfwerede Bruttus :
mid forȝen ibunden.	mid forewe ibunde.
Nulle we nauere mare :	And nolle we neuere more :
þine iboden here.	þine bodes ihiere.
ne to þine hirede cūmen :	ne to þine hefte come :
ne þe uor king halden.	ne þe for kinge holde.
ah hatien we wulleð :	
mid hæȝere ftrēȝde.	
alle þine hæðene wines :	ac þe and þine hundes :
& ² hæreme igreten.	we wollep mid harme grete.
bidden us to fultume :	be vs nou to foltome :
þ̅ is crift godes fune.	þat his crift godes fone.
Forð iwenden eorlef :	
forð iwenden beornes.	
forð iwenden biſcopes :	20
& þa boc-ilæred m̅.	
forð iwenden þæines :	
forð iwēden fweines.	

Octa, and after more of 'his companions [their kin];—how might I for shame 'shun [forsake] them so soon, 'and drive from land my dear friends?' " Then answered *the* Britons, with sorrow bound : "[And] we will never-more obey thy commands, nor come to thy 'court [command], nor hold thee for king, 'but we will hate *thee* with great strength,' 'and all thine heathen friends [thee and thine hounds] with harm greet. Be Christ now, that is Gods son, our help !" Forth went '*the* earls, forth went *the* lords, forth went *the* bishops, and the book-learned men, forth went *the* thanes, forth went *the* swains,' 'all the Britons, until they came to London [they all to London

¹ wines?² mid?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle Brutleoden :'	Forþ hii wende alle :'
þ heo comen to Lūdene.	to Londene his toune.
þer wes moni hæh Brut :	þar was mani heh Brut.
at þan huſtinge.	at þan ilke ſpeche.
& þeos king þreo ſunes :	and þeos kinges þreo ſones :
alle heo weoren þider icumen.	alle hii were þider icome.
þer wes Uortimer :	
Pascent & Katiger.	
& ſwiðe monie oðere :	and ſwiþe manie oþere :
þat comē mid þan broðere.	10 þat come mid þan broþeres.
al þ folc þider com :	al þat folk þider com :
þat luueden þene criſttendom.	þat lofuede þane criſttendom.
Alle þa riche :	And alle þe riche :
nomē heom to ræde.	nemen heom to reade.
& nomen þes kinges ældeſte ſune :	
þe to þan huſtinge wes icumen.	
& mid muchele loſt-ſonge :	
heuen hiuen ¹ to kinge.	
<i>Vortim[er]</i> . þa wes Vortimer :	þat hii wolde Vortimer :
criſtine kīg þer.	20 makie criſtene king þer.
& Uortig ² his fader :	and lete Vortigerne his fader :
fulede þan hæðenen.	folwi þe heaðene.
	Al þus hit bi-com :

his town]. There was many a noble Briton at 'the husting [that conference], and the kings three sons they all were come thither; 'there was Vortimer, Pascent, and Catiger,' and very many others, that came with the brothers; all the folk came thither, that loved the Christendom. [And] all the rich *men* betook them to counsel; 'and took the kings eldest son, who was come to the husting, and with mickle song of praise elevated him to *be* king.' 'Then was [that they would make] Vortimer christian king there, and [let] Vortiger, his father, 'followed [follow] the heathens. [All thus it happened, as the counsel was done. And] Vortimer, the young

¹ hine?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Vortim ⁹ þe ȝunge kīg :'	[f.84 ^b .c.1.]	alfe þe read was idon.
wes swiðe kene þurh alle þing.		and Vortimer þe ȝonge king :
he fende Hengeft word :		was kene þorh alle þing.
& Horfe his broðer.		he het Hengeft hiȝenliche :
buten heo hiȝenliche :		
uerden of þif riche.		faren vt of his riche.
he heom walde ufel don :		oþer þou and þine veres :
baðe ablenden and anhon.		folle ligge here to-ȝere. [f.69.c.1.]
& his aȝene fader :	10	
he for-uaren walde.		
& alle þa hæðene :		
mid hæȝere ftrengðe.		
þa andfwærede Hengeft :		þo anfwereðe Hengeft :
cnihtene alre hendeft.		cniht alre hendeft.
Her we wulleð wunien :		Her we wollep wonie :
wintres & fumeres.		wintres and fumeres.
riden & ærnen :		riden and erne :
mid þan kinge Vortigerne.		mid þan king Vortigerne.
& alle þa mid Vortimere uareð :		and al þat mid Vortimer vareþ :
heo ſculleð habben forȝen & kare.		hii folle habbe forewe and care.
þat iherde Vortimer :	22	þat ihorde Vortimer :
he wes wis & fwiðe iwar.		he was wis and fwiþe war.
& lette beoden uerde :		he lette beden ferde :
ȝeond allen þiffen ærde.		oueral þeof eorþe.

king, was 'most' keen through all things; he 'sent' [ordered] Hengest 'and Hors his brother, unless' speedily 'they departed from this [to depart out of his] realm, 'he would evil do to them, both blind and hang; ["or thou and thy comrades shall presently lie here."]' 'and his own father he would destroy, and all the heathens, with great strength.' Then answered Hengest, fairest of all knights: "Here we will dwell winter and summer, ride and run with the king Vortiger; and all that with Vortimer go, they shall have sorrow and care!" Vortimer heard that,—he was wise and most wary,—and [he] caused a host to be assembled over all this land, that all

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat al þ̅ cristine folc :'	þat al þat cristene folk :'
come to hirede.	come to hire kinge.
Vortimer þe ȝunge king :	
i Lundene heold his husting.	
þe king hehte ælcne mon :	þe king hehte echne mon :
þe luuede þene cristīdom.	þat louede þane cristendom.
þat heo þa hæðene :	þat hii alle þe heaþene :
hatien scolden.	hatie folde.
& þa hæfden bringen.	and þe hefdes bringe :
to Vortimer þan kinge.	to Vortimer þan king.
& twalf panewes habben to mede :	and twelf panewes to mede :
for his wel dede.	habbe for his god dede.
Vortimer þe ȝunge :	Vortimer þe ȝonge :
verde ut of Lundene.	verde vt of Londene.
& Pascent his broðer :	and Pascent his broþer :
& Katig ⁹ þe oðer.	and Catiger þe oþer.
·heom wes icumē word :	him was icome word :
þ̅ Hengeft læi at Epiford.	þat Hengeft lay at Epiford.
uppen þan watere :	vppe þare watere :
þe men nemneð Darewente. [c. 2.]	þat Darwent his ihote.
þer comen to-fomme :	þar comen to-gadere :
fixti þusend monnen.	fixti þusend māne.
an are halue wes Vortimer :	in on half was Vortimer :
Pascent & Categer.	Pascent and Catiger.
& al þat leodliche folc :	and al þat cristene folk :

the christian folk should come to 'his court [their king]. 'Vortimer, the young king, in London held his husting'; the king ordered each man that loved the Christendom, that they [all] should hate the heathens, and bring the heads of *them* to Vortimer the king, and have twelve pennies for reward, for his good deed. Vortimer the young marched out of London, and Pascent, his brother, and Catiger, the other; to 'them [him] was come word, that Hengest lay at Epiford, upon the water that 'men name [is named] Darwent. There came together sixty thousand men; on one half was Vortimer, Pascent, and Catiger, and all the [christian] folk that loved our Lord; on

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat luueden ure drihten.	þat louede vre drihte.
an oðere halue weorē drēches :	in þe oþer half were :
mid Vortigerne þan kīge.	mid Vortiger þan king.
Hengeſt and his broðer :	Hengeſt and his broþer [c. 2.]
& moni þuſend oðer :	and mani þuſend oþer.
To-ſomne heo comen :	To-gadere hii come :
& mid mæine on-ſlozen.	and mainliche on-flowe.
þer uellen to þan grūde :	þar fulle to þan grunde :
twa & þritti hundred.	two and þritti hundred.
of Hængeſteſt ¹ monnen :	of Hengeſtes men :
& Hors wes for-wounded.	and his broþer fore iwondede.
Catiger þer com :	Catiger þar com :
& mid his ſpere hine þurh-nom.	and mid his ſpere him þorh-nom.
& Horſ forð riht þer :	and he forþ riht þer :
for-wundede Catiger.	for-wundede Catiger.
& Heng̃ gon to flonnen :	And Hengeſt gan to flende :
mid al his driht-monnen.	mid heaþene folke.
& Vortigerne þe king :	and Vortiger þe king :
flæh forð alſe þe wīd.	fleþ forþ aſe þe wind.
heo flozen forð in to Kent :	hii floze forþ into Kent :
& Vortimer heom after went.	and Vortimer heom after wend.
uppen þere ſæ brimme :	vppe þare ſée rime :
þer Hēgeſt þolede pine.	þar Hengeſt þolede pine.

the other half were 'chiefs' with Vortiger the king, Hengest and his brother, and many thousand others. Together they came (encountered), and combated 'with might [mightily]; there fell to the ground two and thirty hundred of Hengests men; and 'Hors was [his brother *was* sore] wounded. Catiger came there, and with his spear ran him through, and 'Hors [he] forth-right there wounded Catiger. And Hengest gan to flee with 'all his followers [*the* heathen folk], and Vortiger the king fled forth as the wind; they flew forth into Kent, and Vortimer went after them; there upon the sea-shore Hengest suffered pain; there they gan to halt, and fought very

¹ R. Hængeſtes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer heo gūnen at-ftonden :'	þar hii gonne aſtonde :'
& fuhten ſwiðe longe.	and fohte ſwiþe longe.
fiſ þuſende þer weorē iſlæzen :'	fiſ þouſēd þar were iſlaȝe :'
& idon of liſ-dæzen.	and idon of liſdaiȝe.
of Vortigernes ¹ monnen :'	of Hengeſtes-men :'
of þan hæðene cunnen.	of þan heaðene cunne.
Hengeſt hine biðohte :'	Hengeſt hine bi-þohte :'
whæt he don mahte.	wat he don mihte.
iſeh he þer bi-halues :'	hi-ſeh he þer in flode :'
ane hæuene ſwiðe mære.	10 one heuene ſwiðe mære.
moni ſcipē gode :'	mani ſipes gode.
þer ſtoden i ſæ flode.	
Heo iſezen an heore riht hond :'	Hii ſehe on hire riht hond :'
a ſwiþe fæier æit-lond. [f. 85. c. 1.]	a ſwiþe fair ŷllond.
hit iſ ihaten Tænate :'	þat his i-hote Tanate :'
þiderward heo weoren whæte.	þiderward iwere ² wate.
þer þa Sæxiſce men :'	þar þe Saxeſſe men :'
þæ sæ iſohten.	þare ſéé ſohte.
& anan gunnen wendē :'	and a-non wende :'
in to þan æit-londe.	20 to þan ŷllonde.
& Bruttes heom after :'	and Bruttes heom after :'
mid feole cunne craſten.	mid fale cunne craſtes.
& heom to-heolden :'	and heom to-heolde :'
in æchere hælu.	in euerече fide.

Tanate.

long; five thousand there were slain, and deprived of life-day, of 'Vortigers [Hengests] men, of the heathen race. Hengest bethought him what he might do; he saw there 'beside a haven very large,' many good ships 'there stood' in *the* 'sea'-flood. They saw on their right hand an island exceeding fair, 'it [that] is called Thanet; thitherward they were brisk; there the Saxish men sought the sea, and anon 'gan pass [passed] 'in' to the island. And *the* Britons *followed* after them, with many kind of crafts, and surrounded them on 'each [every] side; 'with ships and with boats they gan

¹ Hengeſtes?² hii were?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid ſcipē & mid baten :
 heo gunnen ſmiten & ſceoten.
 Ofte wes Hængeſt wæ¹ : Ofte waſ Hengeſt wo : [f. 69^b. c. 1.]
 & nauere wurf þane þa. ac neuere worfe þane þo.
 buten he dude oðerne ræd : bote he dude oþerne read :
 þer he ſculden wurðen dæd. þar he moſte beo dead.
 he nō ænne ſpere-ſcæft : he nam one ſpere-ſaft :
 þe wes long & ſwiþe ſtærc. þat waſ ſwiþe lang and ſtarc.
 & dude a þene ænde : and dude o þan ende :
 ænne mantel hende. 10 one mantel hende.
 & cleopede to þan Brutten : and ſpac to þan Bruttes :
 & bed heom abiden. wordes and ſaide þuſ.
 he wold ſpæckē heom wið : Alle we ȝerneþ griþ :
 & ȝirnen þeoſ kinges grið. and to ſpeke þe kinge wiþ.
 & mid griðe fēde : and mid loue fende :
 Uortigerne to londe. his fader to londe.
 to makien hiſ forward : wiþ þan þat we mote vare :
 þat he faren moſte. md² þiſ lure and þeoſ care.
 wið uten mare ſconde : and wiþ houte more ſconde :
 in to Sæx-londe. 20 in to Saxlonde.
 Bruttes wende to londe : ¶ Bruttes wende to londe :
 to Vortimere heore kinge. to Vortim³ hire kinge.
 and Hengeſt ſpæc wið Vortigerne : and Hengeſt ſpac wið Vortigene³ :

to smite and shoot.' Oft was Hengest woe, 'and [but] never worse than then; unless he did other counsel he should there be dead. He took a spear-shaft, that was long and 'very' tough, and put on the end a fair mantle, and 'called [spake words] to the Britons, and 'bade them abide [said thus]; he would speak with them, and yearn the kings grace ["We all yearn grace, and to speak with the king], and send 'Vortiger [his father] with 'peace [love] to *the* land, 'to make this agreement [on condition] that 'he might [we may] depart [with this loss and this care, and] without more shame into Saxland. *The* Britons went to *the* land, to Vortimer their king, and

¹ wæi *pr. m.*, but i erased.² *R.* mid.³ *R.* Vortigerne.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

of rune fwiðe derne.	roune fwiþe deorne.
Vortigerne wende a þat lond :	Vortiger wende a lond :
& ber anne ȝerd an hiſ hond.	and bar an ȝeord on his hond.
þa while þa heo of griðe ſpeken :	þe wile hii of griþe ſpeke :
Saxes i ſcipe leopen.	Saxeffe in ſipe leope.
& droȝen up to coppe :	and droȝen vp to toppe :
hæȝe heore feiles.	hehe hire feyles.
& wenden mid wedere :	and wende mid wedere :
i þere ſæ wilde.	in þare ſée wilde.
& letten i þiſſen londe : [c.2.] 10	and bi-leſde in þiſſe londe :
wiues & heore children.	wifueſ and hire children.
& Vortigerne king :	and Vortigerne þane king :
þe heom luuede þurh alle þing.	þat heō louede þorh alle þing.
Mid muchele mod-kære :	Mid mochele mod-care :
Hengeſt gon awæi uarē.	Hengeſt gan awei vare.
ſwa longe heo ferden :	ſo longe hii wenden :
þat ine Saxlonde heo weoren.	þat ine Saxlonde hii weren.
þa weorē inn Bruttene :	þo were here :
Bruttes fwiðe balde.	Brutteſ fwiþe bolde.
heo droȝen on heom muchel mod :	
& duden al þat heom þuhte god.	
& Vortimer þe ȝunge : 22	and Vortimer þe ȝonge king :
wes duhti mon þurh alle þig.	was dohti man þorh alle þing. [c.2.]
& Vortigerne hiſ fader :	And Vortiger hiſ fader :
ferde ȝeond þaſ Bruttene.	

Hengest spake with Vortiger, in most secret converse. Vortiger went on 'the' land, and bare a wand in his hand. The while 'that' they spake of peace *the* Saxons leapt into *their* ships, and drew up high their sails to *the* top, and proceeded with weather in the wild sea, and left in this land *their* wives and their children, and Vortiger the king, who loved them through all things. With much grief of mind Vortiger gan away fare; so long they proceeded, that in Saxland they were (arrived). Then were 'in Britain [here] *the* Britons most bold; 'they assumed to them mickle mood, and did all that seemed good to them'; and Vortimer, the young king, was doughty man through all things. And Vortiger, his father, 'proceeded

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ah nes hit nan fwa wac mon :

þ̃ him ne hokerede on.

& fwa he gon wondrien :

fulle fif wintren.

& his fune Vortimer :

riche kīg wuneden her.

& al þis leodisce folc :

luueden hine fwiðe.

he wes milde ælche cnafe :

& tahte þan folke godes læȝe. 10

þan ȝungen & þan ælden :

hu heo cristindom sculdē halden.

Writen he fende to Rome :

to þan pape wel idone.

þe wes ihaten sceint Romæin :

al cristindom he make fain.

Biscopes he nom twæin :

hali men heo weoren bæien.

Germain & Leoīs :

of Ceore & of Træis. 20

heo uerden ut of Rome :

fwa þat heo hider comen.

þa wef fwa bliðe Vortimer¹ :

alle men hēnde.

and so gan he wondri :

folle fif ȝere.

And his sone Vortimer :

riche king was her.

and al þis leodisse folk :

lofuede hine fwiþe.

þe king fende to Rome :

to þan pope wel idone.

þat was ihote seint Romaȝn :

he wetede þane cristendom.

Bissopes he nam tweiene :

holi men hit were beiene.

Germaȝn and Lous :

of Geroȝne and of Troȝes.

hii verde vt of Rome :

so þat hii hider come.

þo was so bliþe Vortimer :

over this Britain,' 'but it was no man so poor, that did not revile him [all men reproached], and so he gan to wander full five years. And his son Vortimer 'dwelt [was] here powerful king, and all this nation loved him greatly. 'He was mild to each man, and taught the folk Gods law, the young and the old, how they should hold Christendom.' 'He [The king] sent 'letters' to Rome, to the excellent Pope, who was named Saint Romain,—'all Christendom he made glad [he had charge of the Christendom]. —He took two bishops, holy men 'they [it] were both, Germain and Louis, of 'Auxerre [Geroyne] and of Troyes; they proceeded out of Rome, so that they hither came. Then was Vortimer so blithe as he was never ere 'here' ;

¹ Vortime *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

swa he nes næuere ær her¹.

he & alle his cnihtes :

iwenden uoð² rihtes. [f.85^b.c.1.]

an here bare uoten :

to-ȝeines þan biscopopen.

& mid michelere murhðe :

muðes þer cuften.

Nu þu miht iheren :

of þā kinge Vortimere.

heu he spac wið feint Germain :

for heore kume he wes fæin. 11

Lufteð me lauerd-dinges :

ich æm þiffere leodene king.

ich hatte Vortimer :

mi broðer hatte Catimer³.Vortig⁹ ne hehte ure fader :

him uulieð unrædes.

He hafð ibroh⁴ i þif lond :

hæðene leoden.

ah we heom habbeoð iflemed : 20

al fwa⁵ ure uulle iuan.

& mid wepnē ifelled :

fo he nas neuere her.

he and alle his cnihtes :

wende forþrihtes.

on hire barefote :

to-ȝenef þif biſſopes gode.

and mid mochele murthe :

muþes þar cuſte.

Nou þou miht ihere :

of þan kinge Vortimere.

hou he spac wiþ feint Germain :

of hire come he was fain.

Luſteþ louerdlinges :

ich ham þis leod king.

ich hote Vortimer :

and Vortigerne mi fader.

He haueþ ibroht in þiſſe londe :

heaþene leode.

ac we ȝam habbeþ iflemid :

aſe vre folle fon.

and mid wepne ifalled :

he and all his knights went forth-right on their bare feet towards 'the [these good] bishops, and with much mirth mouths there kissed. Now mayest thou hear of the king Vortimer, how he spake with Saint Germain, —'for [of] their coming he was glad. "Listen 'to me,' lordings, I am king of this people; I hight Vortimer, 'my brother hight Catiger;' [and] Vortiger 'hight our [my] father,—' miscounsel followeth him!' He hath brought into this land heathen people; but we have put them to flight, as our full foes, and felled with weapon many thousands 'of them,' and sent

¹ *Redundant?*³ *R. Catiger.*⁵ *Written at first al fwa alſe, but alſe expuncted by the ſame hand.*² *R. uorð.*⁴ *ibroht?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

of heom ueole þufen ¹ .	fale þoufendes. [[f.70.c.1.]
& ifend heom ouer fæ ftran ² :	and ifend heom ouer féé strem :
þ heo nauere fel ne cumen aȝan.	þat hii neuere ne come a-ȝen.
& we fcullen an londe :	And we folle here :
luuiæn ure drihten.	lofuie vre drihte.
godef folc uroæfrien :	
& freondliche hit halden.	
wurðen milf ³ liðe :	
wið þa lond-tilien.	
churichen we fcullen hæhȝen :	cherches we folle hehȝi :
& hæðene-fcipe hatien.	and heaþenfipe hatie.
Habbe alc god mon :	
hif rihte ȝif godd hit an.	
& ælc þrel & ælc wælh :	
wurðe iuroeid.	
& heŕ ich bi-teche eou an hond :	
al freo ælc chiric-lond.	
& ich for-ȝiue ælchere widewe :	And ich for-ȝeue ech widewe :
hire lauertes quide.	here louertes cwide.
	20 and ech loue to hoþer :
	aſe þoh were broþers.
& þus we fcullen an ure daȝen :	[c.2.] and ſo we folle a-neoþeri :
aniðeri Hēgeſtes laȝen.	Hengeſtes lawes.

them over sea-stream, so that they never shall come again. And we shall 'in land [here] worship our Lord, 'comfort Gods folk, and friendly it maintain, and be mild to the land-tillers'; churches we shall honor, and heathendom hate. 'Each good man shall have his right, if God it will grant, and each thral and each slave be set free. And here I give to you in hand each church-land all free;' and I forgive to each widow her lords testament. [and each shall love other as though *they* were brothers.] And 'thus [so] we shall 'in our day' put down Hengests laws, 'and him

¹ þufen?² fstrand? The true reading is strem, which in the MS. ftran much resembles.³ milf pr. m., but e erased.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& hine & his hæðene-scipe :

þæ he hider brohte.

& minne fader biſwak :

þurh ſwike his craftes.

þurh his dohter Rouwenne :

mine uader he uor-radde.

& mi uader ſwa uuele agon :

ſcunede þene criſtindom.

& þa hæðene laȝē :

luuede to ſwiðe. 10

þa we ſculleð ſceonien :

þa while þa we luuien.

þa anſware ſeint Germain :

for ſwulche wōrden he wes fain.

Ich þonkie mine drihte :

þe ſcop þes dāzes lihte.

þet he ſwulche mildce :

ſent to moncunne.

þas biſcopes ferden ȝeond þis lond :

& ſetten hit al a godes hond. 20

& þene criſtindom heo rihten :

& þat volc þer to dihten.

& ſeoððen þer æfter ſone :

heo iwenden to Rome.

þat mine fader bi-ſwoc :

mid his luþer craftes.

þorh his dohter Rowenne :

mine fader he for-radde.

And mi fader ſo vuele agon :

þat he ſonede þanc criſtendō.

and þe heapene lawes :

lofuede to ſwiþe.

þat we ſolle hatie :

wile þat we libbeþ.

þo anſwerede Germain :

for þane wordes he was fain.

Ich þonkie mine drihte :

þat ſop þeſ dāzes lihte.

þat he ſoche milfe :

ſent to mankunde.

þeos biſſops verde oueral þat lond :

and ſette hit a godes hond.

and þane criſtendom hii rihte :

and þat folk hii dihte.

and ſupþe þar after ſone :

he¹ wende to Rome :

and his heathendom that he hither brought, 'and [who] deceived my father 'through [with] his 'treacherous [wicked] crafts; through his daughter Rowenne he betrayed my father. And my father so evilly began, [that he] shunned the Christendom, and loved the heathen laws too much, which we shall 'avoid [hate] 'the' while that we live." Then answered 'Saint' Germain,—for 'such [the] words he was glad :—" I thank my Lord, who shaped the day-light, that he such mercy sent to mankind !" These bishops proceeded over 'this [all the] land, and set it 'all' in Gods hand, and the Christendom they righted, and the folk 'thereto [they] instructed; and then

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fæiden þan papen :
 þe Roumain wef ihaten.
 hu he¹ hafden her idon :
 iriht þene cristindom.
 & þuſ hit ane ſtūde :
 ſtod a þan ilkē.

Vo we ȝet a Uortigerne :
 alre kinge ſi he ærmeſt.
 he luuede Rouwen :
 of þan hæðenne cūne.
 Hengeſtes dohter :
 heo þuhten him wel ſofte.

Rouwenne heo bi-þohte :
 whæt heo dōn mahte. [[f. 86. c. 1.]
 hu heo mahte hire fader wreken :
 & hire freondene deað.
 Ofte heo fende ſonde :
 to Uortimere þon kinge.
 heo him fende maðmes :
 moniare cunne.

of ſeoluer & of golde :
 þe beſte of æie londe.
 heo ȝirnede hiſ ære :
 þ̅ heo moſte wonien here.

and ſeide þan pope :
 þat Romain was i-hote.
 ou hii here hadde i-don :
 a-riht þane criſtendom.

Go we ȝet to Vortigerne :
 alre king beo him harmes.
 he louede Rowēne :
 of þan heaþene cunne.

Rowenne hire bi-þohte :
 wat ȝeo dōn mihte.
 ou ȝeo miht hire fader wreke :
 and hire louerd his teone.
 Ofte ȝeo fende ſonde :
 to Vortimer þan kinge.

þat ȝeo moſte wonie here :

soon thereafter they departed to Rome, and said to the Pope, who was named Romain, how they had done here, restored the Christendom. 'And thus it stood a time in the same *wise*.' Go we yet (again) to Vortiger,—of all kings be he most wretched!—he loved Rowenne, of the heathen race, 'Hengests daughter, she seemed to him well soft.' Rowenne bethought her what she might do, how she might avenge her father and her friends death [lord his grief]. Oft she sent messengers to Vortimer the king; 'she sent him treasures of many a kind, of silver and of gold, the best of any land; she asked his favor,' that she might here dwell with Vortiger his father,

¹ heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid Uortig⁹ ne his fader :

& foluen his rædes.

þe king uor his fader bone :

ȝette hire hir bone¹.

butē þat heo ſculde wel don :

luuien þene criſtindom.

al ꝥ þe king ȝirned :

al heo hit ȝette.

Ah wale þat Uortimer :

of hire þonke næf wær.

wale þat þe gode king :

of hire þonke nuſte na þing.

þ he nuſte þene ſwikedom :

þe þohte þa luðere wimman.

Hit ilomp an are tide :

heo nom hire to ræde².

alle hire neode.

and to wlche time heo mihte wel and woche time ȝeo miht wel don :

vnderuongen þene criſtindom.

Forð heo gon riden :

mid his fader Vortigere.

and ȝeo wolde wel don :

ād onderfange criſtendom.

þe king hire grantede :

þorh bidding of his fader.

Ac wolawo þat Vortimer :

of hire þong nas war.

wolawo þat þe gode king :

of hire þohte nuſte noþūg.

of þan ilke ſwikedom :

þat þohte þe luþere wifmā.

Hit bi-ful in one time :

ȝeo nam hire to reade.

þat ȝeo wolde fare :

to þan kinge Vortimere.

and don bi his reade :

20 [don : al hire neode.

onderfange þane criſtendom.

Forð ȝeo gan wende :

‘and follow his counsels.’ The king for his fathers request granted to her her prayer, ‘except that she should [and she would] do well, [and] ‘love the [receive] Christendom; ‘all that the king yearned, all she it granted [the king granted *it* to her, through *the* prayer of his father]. But alas! that Vortimer was not aware of her thought; alas! that the good king of her thought knew nothing; ‘that he knew not the [of that] treachery that the wicked woman thought! It befell on a time she betook her to counsel, [that she would go to the king Vortimer, and do by his counsel] all her need, and ‘at’ what time she might do well, *and* receive the Christendom.

¹ Or bene; *the MS. is dubious.*² *There is evidently an omission here.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiiii.

to Uortimer þan kinge.	to Vortimer þan kinge.
þa heo hine imette :	þo 3eo hine imette :
uæire heo hine igrette.	faire 3eo hine grette.
Hal wrð þu lauerd king :	Hayl worþ þou louerd king :
Bruttene deorling.	Bruttene deorling.
Ich æm þe icomen to :	Ich ham þe icome to :
cristindom ich wulle auon.	cristendom to vnderfon.
an þan ilke dæie :	in þan ilke daie :
þe þu feolf demest.	þat þou þi feolf demest.
þa wæs Uortimer þe king :	þo was Vortimer þe king :
bliþe þurh alle þing.	bliþe þorh alle þing.
he wende þat hit weore foð :	he wende þat hit were soþ :
þat þeo scaðe fæide.	þat þe scape feide.
Bemen þer bleowen :	
blisse wes on hirede.	
forð mon brohte þat water :	Forþ me brohte þat water :
bi-foren þan wun ¹ kinge.	to waffe hire hondes.
heo feten to borde :	þo feten hii to borde :
mid muchelure blisse.	mid mochelere blisse.
þa þe king hafde iæten :	þo þe king hadde i3eote :
þa eoden þeines-men to mete.	þo 3eode fweines to mete.
in halle heo drunken :	in halle hii dronken :
harpen þer dremden.	[c. 2.] harpeþ þar dremden.

Forth she gan 'ride [proceed] to Vortimer the king; when she him met, fair she greeted him: "Hail be thou, lord king, Britains darling! I am come to thee; Christendom 'I will [to] receive, on the same day that thou [thy]self deemest *fit*." Then was Vortimer the king blithe through all things; he weened that it were sooth what the wretch said. 'Trumpets there blew, bliss was in *the* court'; forth men brought the water 'before the king [to wash their hands]; they sate [then] at *the* board with much bliss. When the king had eaten, then went *the* 'thanes-men [swains] to meat; in hall they drank; harps there resounded. 'The treacherous

¹ Query, if not superfluous? A plummet mark in the margin of the MS. indicates some error.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa fwiçfulle Rouuene :
 eode to are tunne.
 þer wes idon in :
 þes kinges deoreſte win.
 nom heo an honde :
 ane bolle of ræde golde.
 & heo gon ſcencen :
 on þas kinges benche.
 þa heo iſæh hire time :
 heo fulde hir ſcale of wine. 10
 & at-foren al þan dringe :
 heo eode to þan kinge.
 & þuſ hailede him on :
 þe fwiçfulle wimman.
 Lauerd king wæſhail :
 uor þe ich am fwiðe uæin.
 Hercne nu muchel ſwikedom :
 of þere luðere wimmon.
 hu heo gon ſwiken þer :
 þene king Uortimer. 20
 þe king heo uære under-uæng :
 to hiſ fæie-ſiðe.
 Fortimer ſpæc Bruttifc :
 & Rouuene Saxiſc.

þo a-ros Rowenne :
 and eode to hire hinne.
 3eo eode war in :
 was þe kinges beſte win.
 nam 3eo an honde :
 one bolle of reade golde.
 and 3eo gan to ſenche :
 vp on þe kýngeſ benche.
 þo 3eo i-feh hire tyme :
 3eo fulden¹ hire fulle² of wine.
 and a-mong al þan þringe :
 3eo eode to þan kinge.
 and þuſ hailede him on :
 þe fwiçfolle wifman.
 Louerd king waffail :
 for þe ich ham fwiþe fain.
 þe king here onderfeng :
 to hiſ feiſiþe.
 Vortimer ſpac Bruttuſ :
 and Rowenne Saxiſſe.

[Then arose] Rowenne, [and] went to 'a tun [her inn], 'wherein was placed [she went wherein was] the kings 'dearest [best] wine. She took in hand a bowl of red gold, and she gan to pour out [up] on the kings bench. When she saw her time, she filled her 'vessel [bowl] with wine, and 'before [among] all the company she went to the king, and thus the treacherous woman hailed him (drank his health): "Lord king, wassail, for thee I am most joyful!" 'Hearken now *the* great treachery of the wicked woman, how she gan there betray the king Vortimer!' The king received her fair, to his *own* destruction. Vortimer spake British, and Rowenne Saxish; to

¹ fulde?² bolle?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þan king þuhte gomen inoh :'	þane king hit þohte game inoh :'
f ^r or hire fpæche he loh.	for hire fpeche he fmere loh.
Hærcne hu heo toc on :'	Hercne ou 3eo tock an :'
þuſ ¹ fwicfulle wimman.	þes wickede wifman.
In hire bofme heo bar :'	In hire bofome 3eo bar :'
bi-neoðen hire titten.	bi-neoþe hire týttes.
ane guldene ampulle :'	one ampulle :'
of attere i-fulled.	of hatter ifulled.
& þa luðere Rouuene :'	and þe luþere Rowenne :'
dronc þene bolle.	10 drang þane bolle.
þat heo hafde half don :'	þat 3eo half hadde idon :'
after þes kinges dom.	after þe kinges dom.
þa while þe þa king loh :	þe wile þat þe king loþ :
þa ampulle heo ut droh.	þe ampulle 3eo vt droh.
þene bolle heo fette to hire chin :	þe bolle 3eo fette to hire chin :
þat atter heo halde in þat win.	þat hatter 3eo heolde þar in.
& feoðen heo þa cuppe :'	and supþe 3eo þe bolle :'
bitahte þan kinge.	bi-tahte þan kinge.
þe kīg dronc al þat win :	þe king drong al þat win :
& þat atter þer in.	20 and þat hatter þar in.
þe dai forð eode :	
bliffe wes on hirede.	
for Uortimer þe gode kīg :	He þat was fo god king :
of þan fwikedom nuſte na þig.	of þeos fwikedome nuſte noþing.

the king [it] seemed game enow, for her speech he laughed. Hearken how she took on, this deceitful woman ! In her bosom she bare, beneath her teats, a 'golden' phial filled with poison ; and the wicked Rowenne drank (*or* drenched) the bowl, until she had half done, after the kings will. The while that the king laughed, she drew out the phial ; the bowl she set to her chin, the poison she poured 'in the wine [therein], and afterwards she delivered the 'cup [bowl] to the king ; the king drank all the wine, and the poison therein. 'The day forth passed, bliss was in *the* court,' 'for Vortimer the [He that was so] good king of 'the [this]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

for he ifah Rouuenne :'	[f. 86 ^b . c.1.]	for he i-feh Rowenne :'
halden þene bolle.		holde þane bolle.
& drinken half þat ilke win :'		ād drong alf þat ilke win :'
þat heo heuede idon þer in.		þat was idon þar in.
þa hit com to þare nihte :'		þat him ¹ com to þā nihte :'
þa to-dælleden hired-cnihtes.		þo dealde hire cnihtes ² .
& þa ufele Rouwenne :'		and þe vuele Rowenne :'
wende to hire inne.		wende to hire ine.
& alle hire cnihtes :		and alle hire cnihtes :
mid hire uorð rihtes.	10	mid hire forþ rihtes.
þa heihte heo hire fweines :		þo hehte ȝeo alle :
& ec þaie þeines.		
þat heo an hizinge :		
heore hors sculden fadelien.		hire horfen fadelī.
& heo fwiþe ftille :		and deorneliche :
ftelen ut of buruwe.		and ³ ftelen vt of borewe.
& wenden al bi nihte :		and al bi nihte ride :
to þwōcchestre uorð rihte.		into þwangchestre.
& þer fwiðe vafte :		and þare fwiþe fafte :
bi-clufen heom in ane caſtle.	20	bi-cluſe ȝam in þan caſtle.
& luȝē Uortigerne :		and ſeg to Vortigerne :
þat his ſune hine wolde biliggen.		þat his ſone hine wolde bi-ligge.
& Vortig ⁹ ne þe ſwikele king.		And Vortiger þe ſole king :
ilæfde þare læſing.		ilefuede hire leſing.

treachery knew nothing, for he saw Rowenne hold the bowl, and drink half of the same wine that 'she had [was] put therein. When it came to the night, then separated the courtiers; and the evil Rowenne went to her inn, and all her knights with her forth-right. Then ordered she 'her swains, and eke the thanes [all], 'that they in haste' their horses 'should saddle [to saddle]; and 'they most still [secretly] to steal out of *the* burgh, and 'proceed [ride] all by night 'to [into] 'Thwongchester 'forth-right,' and there most fast (securely) to inclose them in 'a [the] castle, and 'lie [say] to Vortiger, that his son would besiege him. And Vortiger the 'false [foolish]

¹ þa hit?² hired-cnihtes?³ Redundant?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Nu vnder-ȝat Uortimer hif fune :'	Nou wifte Vortimer his fone :
þ he hefde atter inomen.	þat he [hadde] hatter inome.
ne mihte na lechecraft :	ne mihte non lechecraft :
helpen him næ wiht.	him heolpe nowiht.
He nom feole fonden :	He fende his fondes :
& fende ȝeond his londe.	a-mong alle his londes.
& hehte alle his cnihtes :	and hehte alle his cnihtes :' ^[f.71.c.1.]
to him comē forð rihtes.	comen fwiþe forþ rihtes.
þa þ folc waf icumē :	þo hii were alle icode :
þa waf þe king fwiðe untrumed.	þo was þe king fwiþe ontromed.
þa ȝirnde þe king heore grið :' ¹¹	þo þe king mid god griþ :
& þuſ he ſpac hem alle wið.	to ¹ alle his cnihtes he ſpac þuſ wiþ.
Alre cnihtē wrð eow beſt :	Alre cnihtes worþ ou beſt :
þe heren æie kīge.	þat farueþ eny king.
þer niſ nan oðer red :	þar niſ of me non oþer read :
buten hiȝēdliche ich beo dæd.	bote hiȝenliche ich worþe dead.
hir ich bitæche eow mi lond :	here ich bi-take ȝou an hond :
al mi feoluer & al mi gold.	al to-gadere mi kinelond.
& alle mine maðmes :	
eowre mōſcipe iſ þa mare.	
& ȝe forð rihtes :	And ȝeo forþrihtes :
fenden after cnihtes.	fendeþ after cnihtes.

king believed 'the [her] leasing. Now 'understood [knew] Vortimer, his son, that he had taken poison ; might no leechcraft help him any whit. He 'took many [sent his] messengers, 'and sent over [among all] his 'land [lands], and bade all his knights to come 'to him [quickly] forth-right. When 'the folk was [they were all] arrived, then was the king exceeding ill ; then 'asked' the king 'their [with good] peace, 'and' thus he spake with 'them all [all his knights]: "Of all knights are ye best that serve any king ; there is [of me] no other hap, but *that* speedily I be dead. Here I deliver you 'my land, all my silver and all my gold [in hand my kingdom all together], 'and all my treasures,—your worship is the greater.' And ye forth-right send after knights, 'and give them silver and gold, and hold ye

¹ *Redundant.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ȝeuen heom foluer & gold :'	[c. 2.]
& hældeð ȝe feolf eowre lond.	
& wrekeð eow ȝif ȝe cunnen :	and werieþ ou ȝef ȝe conne :
of Sexifce monnen.	wiþ Saxiffe manne.
uor weonne so ich beo uorð faren :	for wane ich ham forþ fare :
Hengeft eow wul makien kare.	Hengeft ȝou wole makie care.
& nimeð mine likamæ :	And nimeþ mine licame :
& leggeð an chæften.	and leggeþ on chefte.
& ledeð me to þare fæ strōde :	and ledeþ me to þare féé strōd :
þer Saxifce men wulleð cumen a	þare Saxiffe men wollep comen a
anan fwa heo me þerwiten :	[lond : anon so hii me þare witeþ :
awæi heo wulleð wenden.	12 a-wei hii wollep wende.
nouðer quic ne dead :	noþer cwik noþer dead :
ne durren heo me abiden.	ne dorren hii me a-bide.
Imong þiffen dome :	Amang al þif motýng :
dæð ¹ iwarð þe gode king.	dead iwarþ þe gode king.
þer wes wop þer wes rop :	
& reuliche iberen.	
Heo nomen þes kinges licame :	Hii neme þis kinges licame :
& laddē to Lundene.	20 and ladde to Londene.
& bifides Bælȝes-ȝate :	and bifides Bellinges-ȝate :
fæire hine bi-burȝeden.	faire hine leide.
& nawiht hine ne ladden :	and noht him ne ladde :
alse þe king heihte.	afe him feolf hehte.

yourselves your land,' and 'avenge [defend] you, if ye can, 'of [against] Saxish men; for when 'as' I 'be [am] departed, Hengest will make care to you. And take ye my body, and lay in a chest, and carry me to the sea strand, where Saxish men will come on land; anon as they know me there, away they will go; neither alive nor dead dare they abide me!" Among [all] this discourse the good king died; 'there was weeping, there was lament, and piteous cries!' They took the kings body, and carried to London, and beside Belyns-gate 'buried [laid] him fair; and carried him 'no whit [not] as 'the king [he himself] ordered. Thus 'lived [it was of] Vor-

¹ dead?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þuſ liuede Uortimer :'	þuſ hit was of Uortimer :'
& þuſ he endede þar.	and þuſ he hendede her.
þa ineolen Bruttes :	þo nuſte Brutteſ :
a balufulle ræde.	none gode readef. [c. 2.]
heo nomen Uortigerne anan :	hii nemen Vortiger a-non :
& bi-tahten heom ¹ þefne kenedom.	and bi-tock him al þiſ lond.
welle reoulich wes þer a þing :	wola ² roulich was þare a þing :
nu waſ Vortigerne æft king.	nou was Vortiger heft king.
Uortigerne nom hiſ fonde :	Vortiger nam hiſ fonde :
& fende to Sexlonde. 10	and fende to Saxlonde.
& grette wel Hengeſt :	and grette wel Hengeſt :
cnihten alre væireſt. [3inge ⁵ :	cniht ³ alre faireſt.
& grette hine ⁴ & bad hine hi-	and bad him an hiȝenge :
comen to þiſſe londe.	come to þan kinge.
& mid him brouhte here :	and mid him brohte here :
an hundred ridærē.	an hundred rideres.
For þat wite þu þuru alle þing :	For þat wite þou þorh alle þing :
þat dead iſ Vortimer þe king.	þat dead hiſ Vortimer þe king.
& fiker þu miht hider comen :	
for dæd iſ Fortimer mi fune. 20	
Niſ þe non need to bringen :	Niſ hit no need to bringe :
mid þe muchel genge. [[f. 87. c. 1.]	wiþ þe mochel genge.
leſte ure Bruttes :	leſte vre Brutteſ :

timer, and thus he ended 'there [here]. Then *the* Britons 'fell into evil [knew no good] counsel; they took Vortiger anon, and delivered him [all] this 'kingdom [land]; there was a well rueful thing, now was eft Vortiger king! Vortiger took his messengers, and sent to Saxland, and greeted well Hengest, fairest of all knights, and bade him in haste to come to 'this land [the king], and with him should bring here a hundred riders. "—For that know thou through all things, that dead is Vortimer the king, 'and sure (safe) thou mayest hither come, for dead is Vortimer my son.' [It] is no need 'for thee' to bring with thee much folk, least our Britons

¹ him?² wel?³ cniht?⁴ These three words are, apparently, superfluous.⁵ an hiȝenge?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

æft ¹ beon abolȝen.	heft beo abolwe.
þ̅ eow æft feorwen :	
fiȝen bitweonen.	
Hengeft fomnede uærde :	Hengeft fomnede ferde :
of feole cunne ærde.	of fale cun erþe.
þat he hefde to iwiten :	þat he hadde to iwite :
feouen hundred ſcipen.	foue hudred fipes.
& ælc ſcip ² he dihte :	and [ech] fip he dihte :
mid þreo hundred cniten.	mid þreo hundred cnihtes.
i þere Temefe at Lundene :	in þare Temefe at Londene :
Hengeft com to londe.	10 Hengeft com to londe.
þat word com ful ſone :	þat word com ful ſone :
to Uortigerne þan kinge.	to Vortiger þan kinge.
þ̅ Hengeft waſ in hauene :	
mid feouen hundred ſcipene.	
ofte waſ Uortig ³ ne wa :	ofte waſ Vortiger wo :
neuer wrfe þan þæ.	ac neuere worfe þane þo.
& Bruttes weoren fari :	and Bruttes weren fori :
& feorhful an heorte.	and forhfulle on heorte.
nuften heo an world-riche :	
ræd þat heom weore ilike.	20
Hengeft waſ of ufele war :	Hengeft waſ of vue ³ war :
þat he wel cudde þær.	þat he wel cudde þar.

eft be angry, 'so that sorrow eft come between you.' " Hengest assembled a host of many kind of land, so that he had to wit seven hundred ships, and each ship he filled with three hundred knights; in the Thames at London Hengest came to land. The tidings came full soon to Vortiger the king, 'that Hengest was in haven with seven hundred ships.' Oft was Vortiger woe, [but] never worse than then, and the Britons were sorry, and sorrowful in heart; 'they knew not in the worlds realm counsel that were to them pleasing.' Hengest was of evil ware,—that he well shewed

¹ There has been some attempt to alter this word, and the reading is doubtful.

² This word is sup. ras.

³ R. vuele.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he nom fone his fonde :
 & fende to þan kinge.
 & grette Uortigerne king :
 mid fwiðe uære worden.
 & feide þat he was icumen :
 fwa fader ſculde to his fune.
 mid fibbe & mid faihte :
 he wolde on fele wunien.
 grið he wolde luuien :
 unriht he wolde ſcunien.
 grið he wolde habben :
 grið he wolde holden.
 & al þiſ leodiſce folc :
 luuien he wolde.
 & Uortig⁹ne þene king :
 luuien þurh alle þing.

10

Ah he hefde ibroht i þiſ lond :
 ut of Sexleoden.
 ſeouen hundred ſcipene :
 of hæðene folke.
 þ̅ beoþ þe alre wihteſte men :
 þ̅ wunieð under funnen.
 & ich wulle quað Hengeſt :
 leden heo¹ to þan kinge.

20

he nom fone his fonde :
 and fende to þan kinge.
 and faide þat he was icome :
 fo fader folde to his fone.
 mid fibbe and mid ſeahte :
 he wolde here libbe. [f.71^b. c.1.]

[geſt :

And ich habbe i-broþt cwaþ Hen-

mani cnihtes gode.

[c.2.]

and ich hā wolle leade :
 alle to þan kinge.

there,—he took soon his messengers, and sent to the king, ‘and greeted Vortiger *the* king with words most fair,’ and said that he was come as a father should to his son; with peace and with friendship he would ‘dwell in amity [here live]; ‘peace he would love, *and* wrong he would shun; peace he would have, peace he would hold; and all this nation he would love, and love Vortiger the king through all things.’ ‘But he had brought [“And I have brought,” quoth Hengest], ‘in this land, out of Saxland,’ ‘seven hundred ships of heathen folk, “who are the bravest of all men that dwell under *the* sun [many good knights], and I will, ‘quoth Hengest,’

¹ heom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to an i-fette dæie :
 at-foren al his duȝeðe.
 & þe king ſcal ariſen :
 and of þan cnihten cheoſen.
 twa hundred cnihten :
 to leden to hiſ fihten.
 þe ſculen biwiten þene king :
 durewurðliche þurh alle þing.
 & feoððen ſcullen þa oðere :
 uaren to heore ærde.
 mid fibbe & mid sæle :
 aȝen to Sæxlonde.
 & ich wulle bi-læuen :
 mid monnen alre ſeleſt.
 þ̅ is Uortig⁹ ne þe king :
 þe ich luuie þurh alle þing.
 þ̅ word com to Brutten :
 hu Hengeſt bihæhte heom.
 þa weoren heo uæine :
 uor uæiren hiſ worden.
 & ſetten grið & ſetten frið :
 to whulchen ane uirſte.
 þe king an ane dæie :
 wolde iſeon þaſ duȝeðe.
 þat iherde Hengeſt :

10

20

to one ifette daiȝe :
 bi-vore alle hiſ cnihtes.
 And þe king ſal a-riſe :
 and of þan folk cheoſe.
 two hundred cnihtes :
 to leade to hiſ fihte.
 þat ſolle bi-witie þane king :
 deorworliche þorh alle þing.
 and ſupþen ſolle þe oþer :
 fare to hire riche.

And ich wolle bi-léue :
 mid manne alre leueſt.
 þat hiſ Vortiger þe king :
 wan ich louie þorh alle þing.
 þat word com to Brutteſ :
 ou Hengeſt heom bi-hehte.

þo ſetten hii griþ :
 for alle ſþeken him wiþ.

þat hi-horde Hengeſt :

lead them [all] to the king, at a set (appointed) day, before all his 'people [knights]. And the king shall arise, and choose of the 'knights [folk] two hundred knights, to lead to his fight, who shall guard the king preciously through all things. And afterwards the others shall depart to their 'land [realm], 'with peace and with amity, again to Saxland'; and I will remain with *the* 'best [dearest] of all men, that is Vortiger the king, whom I love through all things.' The tidings came to *the* Britons how Hengest them promised; then 'were they fain for his fair words, and' set [they] peace 'and set amity' 'to such a time *that* the king on a day would see this folk [for all to speak with him]. Hengest heard that, fairest of all knights;

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

cnihten alre uæireft.	cniht alre faireft.
þa wes he fwa bliðe :	þo was he fo bliþe :
fwa he nes neuer ær an liue.	fo he nas neuere her on lifue.
for he þohte fwike :	for he þohte fwike :
þene king an hiſ riche.	þane king on hiſ riche.
Her iwrað Hengeſt :	
cnihtē uor-cuðeſt.	
ſwa bið æuerælc mon :	
þe bi-fwikeð þe him wel on.	
Wha wolde wenen :	10 Wo wolde wene :
a piſſere weorlð-riche.	in piſſe worle-riche riche ¹ .
þat Hengeſt fwikē þohte :	þat Hengeſt fwike þohte :
þene king þat hæfde hiſ dohter.	þane king þat hadde hiſ dohter.
for niſ nauer nan mon :	[f.87 ^b .c.1.] ac þar niſ no man fo wiſ :
þat men emai mid fwikedome ouer-þat me ne mai bi-fwike.	
Heonomen ænne iſetnedæi :	[gan.þe dai waſ iſet :
þat ſcolden þaſ duzeðen.	ac feue ferde þe bet.
cumen heom to-ſoinne :	
mid ſæhte & mid fibbe.	
an ane uælde þe wæſ muri :	20 in on ſtude ſwiþe murý :
an uaſt Ambreſburi.	bi-ſide Ambureſburi.
þe ſtude weſ Ælenge :	þe ſtude þo waſ Elinge :
nu hatte hit Stan-henge.	þat nou hatte Stonhenge.

[Ambre]ſ-
buri.[Stanh-en]-
ges.

then was he so blithe as he was never ere in life, for he thought to deceive the king in his realm. 'Here became Hengest wickedest of knights; so is every man that deceiveth *one*, who benefits him.' Who would ween, in this worlds realm, that Hengest thought to deceive the king who had his daughter! 'For [But] *there* is 'never any man [no man so wise], that men may not 'over-reach with treachery [deceive]. 'They took an appointed day, [The day was set, but few fared the better!] 'that these people should come them together with concord and with peace,' in a 'plain that was [spot most] pleasant beside Ambresbury; the place was 'Ælenge; [then Elinge, that] now hight 'it' Stonehenge. There Hengest the traitor either

¹ Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer Hengeſt þe ſwike :	þar Hengeſt þe ſwike :	[c. 2.]
æiðer bi worde & bi write.	aiþer mid worde and mid write.	
cuðde þan kinge :	cudde þan kinge :	
þat he cumen wolde.	þat he come wolde.	
mid hiſ mō-uerde :		
to wurðſcipe þes kinges.		
ah he nalde bringen on drihte :	ac he nolde bringe :	
buten þreo hundred cnihten.	bote þreo hundred cnihtes.	
þa alre wiſeſte men :	þe alre wiſeſte men :	
þe he mihte uinden.	þat he mihte finde.	10
& þe kīg brohte al ſwa ueole :	and þe king folde alſe vale :	
baldere þeinen.	bringe in hiſ halue.	
and þeo weoren þa alre witereſte :		
þe wuneden on B ^u ttene.		
mid goden heore iweden :	mid gode hire wedes :	
al buten wepnen.	al wiþ oute wepne.	
þat heom no to-wurðen :		
þurh þriſt of þan wepnen.		
þuſ heo hit ſpeken :	þuſ i ¹ þo ſpeke :	
& æft heo hit to-brekē.	and eft hit to-breke.	20
for Hængeſt þe leod-ſwike :	for Hengeſt þe wickede :	
þuſ he hiſ gon learen.	þuſ hiſ gan leore.	
þ ælc nome a long ſax :	þat ech neme a long ſex :	
& læiden bi hiſ ſconke.	and leide bi hiſ ſoncke.	

'by [with] word and 'by [with] writ made known to the king, that he would come 'with his forces, in honor of the king'; but he would not bring 'in retinue' but three hundred knights, the wisest men of all that he might find. And the king should bring as many [on his side] 'bold thanes, and who should be the wisest of all that dwelt in Britain,' with their good vestments, all without weapons, 'that no *evil* should happen to them, through confidence of the weapons.' Thus they 'it [then] spake, and eft 'they' it brake; for Hengest the 'traitor [wicked] thus gan 'he' teach his *comrades*, that each should take a long sæx (knife), and lay by his shank, within his hose, where

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wið inne hiſ hofe :	wiþ ine his hofe :
þer hit hit habben ¹ hæle.	þar he hit habbe mihte.
þēne heo comen to-ſomne :	and wanne hii come to-gadere :
Sæxes & Bruttes.	Saxiffe and Bruttiffe.
þenne queð Hēgeſt :	þanne leggeþ heom on :
cnihten alre swikeleſt.	non þat ȝe ne ſparie.
Hail ſeo þu lauerd king :	þo ſaide Hengeſt to þan king :
ælc þe is þin vnderlīg. [c.2.]	þat was heheſt ouer him.
ȝif æuere æi of þine gume :	ȝef here his enȝ cniht :
gære haueð biſiden. 10	þat wepne bere bi his fide.
send hit mid freondſcipe :	sende hine mid fronſipe :
feor from uſ ſeoluen.	for fram vs ſeolue.
& beon we on ſele :	
and motegen of ſahte.	
nu ² we maȝen mid fibbē :	and ſpeke we of ſibbe :
ure liſ libben.	ou we mawe libbe.
þuſ þe balde-fulle ³ mō :	þuſ [þe] ſwicfolle man :
bi-ſprac ⁴ þer þa Bruttes.	bi-ſwoc þare þe Bruttes.
þa andſwarede Uortiger :	þo anſwerede Vortiger :
her he weſ to vnwar. 20	to onwiſ he was þar.
ȝif here iſ æi cniht ſwa wod :	ȝef here his enȝ cniht ſo wod :

he it might 'hide [have ; and] When they 'came [should come] together, *the* Saxons and Britons, ["then lay on them, so that ye spare none!"] then 'quoth [said] Hengest, 'most deceitful of all knights': "'Hail be thou, lord king, each is to thee thy subject! [to the king, who was highest over him] If 'ever any of thy men hath [here is any knight, who beareth] weapon by [his] side, send 'it [him] with friendship far from ourselves, 'and be we in amity,' and speak [we] of 'concord [peace]; ~~how~~ we may 'with peace our lives live.'" Thus the 'wicked [treacherous] man 'spake there to [deceived there] the Britons. Then answered Vortiger,—'here [there] he was too 'unwary [unwise],—"If here is any knight so wild, that hath weapon by *his*

¹ he hit mihte? *A plummet mark in the margin indicates that there is some error committed here by the scribe.*

² ~~he~~?

³ balefulle?

⁴ biſwac?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat wepnen habbe bi fiden.	þat wepne habbe bi fide.
he ſcal leofen þa hōd :'	he ſal leofe þe hond :'
þurh hiſ aȝene brand.	þorh hiſ owene brond.
buten he hit ſone :'	
heonene iſende.	
Heore wepnen heo awæi fendē :	Hire wepne hii a-wei ſende :
þa nefden heo noht an honden.	þo nadden hii noh ¹ an honde.
cnihtes eoden upward :	cnihtes eoden vpward :'
cnihtes eoden adonward.	cnihtes eoden dunward.
ælc ſpac wið oðer :'	10 ech ſpac wiþ oþer :
ſwulc he weore hiſ broðer.	aſe hit were broþers.
þa weoren Bruttes :	þo weren Bruttus :
imænged wið þan Saxef.	imeng wiþ þe Saxiſſe.
þa cleopede Hengeſt :	þo ſaide Hengeſt :
cnihtene ſwikelæſt.	cniht ² alre ſwikeleſt.
Nimeð eoure ſexes :	Nemeþ oure ſeaxes :
ſele mine bernas.	
& ohtliche eou ſturieð :	and hahtliche ȝou ſtorieþ.
& nænne ne ſparieð.	
Bruttes þer weoren riche :	20 Bruttus þar weren riche :
ah ne cuðe heo noht þa ſpeche.	ac hii ne couþe noht of þe ſpeche.
whæt þa Saxiſce men :	wat Saxiſſe men :
feiden heom bi-tweonen.	feide heom bi-twine.
Heo breoden ut þa ſæxes :	Hii breiden vt þe ſaxes :

side, he shall lose the hand through his own brand, 'unless he soon send it hence.' " Their weapons they sent away, then had they nought in hand ;—knights went upward, knights went downward, each spake with other as if 'he [it] were 'his brother [brothers]. When *the* Britons were mingled with the Saxons, then 'called [said] Hengest, of [all] knights most treacherous, "Take your sæxes, 'my good warriors,' and bravely bestir you, 'and spare *ye* none '! " Noble Britons were there, but they knew not [of] the speech, what 'the' Saxish men said them between. They drew out the

¹ noht?² cniht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle bihalues.	alle bi-halues.
heo fmitē an riht half :	hii fmiten in eche halue :
heo fmiten an lift half.	
biuoren & bihindē :	bi-vore and bi-hinde.
heo leiden heom to grunde. [f. 88.]	
alle heo floȝen :	alle hii floȝen :
þat heo neh comen.	þat hii neh comen.
of þes kinges mōnen :	of þis kinges folke :
[fone] þer feollen.	fone þar fulle.
feouwer hundred & fife :	four hundred and fifue :
wa wef þan kinge on liue.	wo was þan king a-lifue.
þa Hengeſt hine igrap :	Hengeſt grop þan king :
mid grimmē hiſ gripen.	and breide hine to him.
& bi þan mantle hine ibræid :	bi þane mantel :
þat breken þa ſtrenges.	þat þe ſtrenges breke.
& Sæxes him fette to :	And Saxiſſe fote to :
& woldē þene king fordon.	and wolde þane king for-do.
& Hengeſt hine gon werien :	ac Hengeſt hine gan werie :
& nalde hit noht iþeuen.	and nolde hit noht þolie.
ah he heold hine ful faſte :	ac he heold hine wel faſte :
þe while þat feht ilaſte.	þe wile þat fiht ilaſte.
þer wes moni riche Brut :	þar was mani riche Brut :
biræfued þan liue.	bi-reiued of þan lifue.
ſumme heo fluȝen ſwiðe :	
ofer þene feld brade.	

sæxes, all aside; they smote on *the* right [each] side, 'they smote on *the* left side'; before and behind 'they laid them to *the* ground'; all they slew that they came nigh; of 'the [this] kings 'men [folk] there fell [soon] four hundred and five,—woe was the king alive! 'Then' Hengeſt grasped 'him [the king] 'with his grim gripe,' and drew him [to him] by the mantle, so that the strings brake. And *the* Saxons set on him, and would the king kill, 'and [but] Hengeſt gan him defend, and would not suffer it; but he held him 'full [well] fast, the while the fight lasted. There was many noble Briton bereaved of the life! Some 'they fled quickly over the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& wereden heom mid ſtanen :
for wepnen næfden heo nane.

þer wes swiðe hard fiht :

þer feol moni god cniht.

þer wes of Salesburi :

an oht bonde icumen.

æenne muchelne mæin clubbe :

he bar an his rugge.

þa wes þer an aðele eorl :

Aldolf.

Aldulf ihatē.

cniht mid þan beſte :

he æhte Glochæſt^e.

he to þan cheorle leop :

swulc hit a liun weoren.

& binom him þe clubbe :

þa he bar an rugge.

æūre wulcne ſwa he ſwat¹ :

þer forð rihtes he iwat.

bi-foren & bi-hīden :

he laide heom to grunde.

þreo & fifti he þer floh :

& ſeoððe to ane ſte² droh.

he leop uppen ſtede :

somme werede heom mid ſtones :
for wepne nadden hii none.

þar was a bond of Salusburi :

þat bar on his honde.

ane mochele club :

for to breke ſtones.

þeos iſeh a ſtrong eorl :

10 Aldolf ihote.

cniht mid þan beſte : [c.2.]

þat hahte Glouceſtre.

he to þan cheorle leop :

alſe hit a lȝon were.

and bi-nam him þane club :

þat he bar on his rugge.

wan he þar mid ſmot :

þar riht he a-bod.

bi-vore and bi-hinde :

20 he leide ȝam to grunde.

þreo and fifti he þar of-ſloþ :

and ſupþe to his ſtede droh.

he leop vppe þan ſtede :

broad plain, and' defended them with stones, for weapons had they none. 'There was fight exceeding hard; there fell many a good knight!' There was a 'bold' churl of Salisbury 'come'; 'he [who] bare 'on [in] his 'back [hand] a great 'strong' club [for to break stones]. 'Then was there a noble earl [A strong earl saw this], named Aldolf, knight with the best; 'he [who] possessed Gloucester; he leapt to the churl, as *if* it were a lion, and took from him the club, that he bare on [his] back; whom'soever' he smote [therewith], there 'forth'-right he died; before and behind he laid them to *the* ground. Three and fifty there he slew, and afterwards drew

¹ ſmat?² ſtede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& swiðe gon him ridē.	and·fwiþe gan ride.
he ærde ¹ to Glochæstre: [c.2.]	in to Gloucestre:
& þe ȝatef læc ful feſte.	and þe ȝeates lok faſte.
& anan forð rihteſ:	And a-non forþ rihteſ:
lette ærmi hiſ cnihteſ.	lette harmi hiſ cnihteſ.
ȝeond alle þan londe:	and wende ouer al þat lond:
& nomen þat heo funden.	and nemen wat hii funde.
heo nomen orf heo nomen ² orn:	
& al þat heo quic funden.	
& brohten to burhȝe:	10 and brohte to borewe:
vnnimete bliſſe.	onimete bliſſe.
þa ȝæten heo tūden uafte:	þe ȝates hii tunde faſte:
& wel heom biwuſten.	and wel ȝam bi-wuſte.
Lete we hit þuſ ſtondē:	Lete we þiſ ſtonde:
& ſpeken of þan kinge.	and ſpeke we of þan kinge.
Sexes him leoppe to:	Saxiſſe him leope to:
& wolde þene king for-do ² .	and wolde þane king for-do.
Hēgeſt cleopede uorð rihteſ:	ac Hengeſt ſaide forþrihteſ:
Aſwikeð mine cnihteſ.	Bleueþ mine cnihteſ.
ne ſculle ȝe hine noht for-faren:	ne ſolle ȝe hine noht for-fare:
for uſ he haueð ihaueð mucle care.	for uſ he haueþ ihaueð care.
& he haueð to quene:	22
mine dohter þa iſ ſcone.	

towards 'a [his] steed; he leapt upon [the] steed, and quickly gan 'him' ride; 'he rode to [into] Gloucester, and the gates locked 'full' fast. And anon forth-right caused his knights to arm, [and marched] over all the land, and took what they found; 'they took cattle, they took corn, and all that they found alive,' and brought to *the* burgh with great bliss; the gates they closed fast, and well them guarded. Let we 'it thus [this] stand, and speak [we] of the king. The Saxons leapt towards him, and would kill the king, [but] Hengest 'called [said] forth-right, "Stop, my knights, ye shall him not destroy; for us he hath had 'much' care,

¹ ærnde?² for is interlined by a second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ah alle hiȝ burhȝes :	ac alle his borewes :
he ſcal uȝ bitæchen.	he ſal vs bi-take.
ȝiȝ he wule hiȝ lif broken :	ȝeȝ he wolle libbe :
oðer ælleȝ him iȝ balu ȝiueðe.	and his limes habbe.
þa weȝ Uortig ⁹ ne :	þo waȝ Vortigerne :
væȝte ibunden.	faȝte i-bunde.
giueȝ ſwiðe grete :	gyues ſwiȝe grete :
heo duden an hiȝ foten.	idon ¹ a-boute his feote.
ne moȝte he nauere biten mete :	ne moȝte he neuere bite mete :
ne wið nenne freond ſpeken.	10 no wiȝ none freonde ſpeke.
ær he heom hæȝden iȝworen :	her he ȝam hadde iȝwore :
uppē halidom þat weȝ icoren.	vppe halidomes þat were icore.
þat he al þiȝ kine-lond :	þat he al þiȝ kinelōd :
wolde bitæchen heom an heond.	wolde bi-take ȝam an hond. [f.72 ^b .c.1.]
burhȝes & caȝtles :	
& al hiȝ coine-lond ² .	
& al ſwa he idode :	and al ſo he dude :
alȝe hiȝ idemed waȝ.	alȝe hii hiȝ wolde.
& Hengeȝt nom an hiȝ hond :	And Hengeȝt nam on hiȝ hond :
al þiȝ riȝe kine-lond.	20 al þiȝ riȝe kenelond.
& deȝde hiȝ leodē :	
muchel of þiȝȝe londe.	
he ȝæȝ æne eorle al Kent :	[f.88 ^b .c.1.] he ȝeof an cniht al Kent :

‘and he hath for queen my daughter who is fair.’ But all his burghs he shall deliver to us, if he will ‘enjoy his life, or else is sorrow given to him [live, and have his limbs].’ Then was Vortiger fast bound; gyves exceeding great they put ‘on [about] his feet; he might not ever bite meat, nor speak with any friend, ere he had to them sworn upon ‘relic [relics] that ‘was [were] choice, that he would deliver them all this kingdom in hand, ‘burghs and castles, and all his kingdom.’ And all so he did, as ‘it was deemed [they it would]. And Hengeȝt took in his hand all this rich kingdom, ‘and divided among his people much of this land.’ He gave ‘an

¹ hii don?² kinelond? *A second hand has erased the d, and altered lo into la.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

afe hit bi Lundene went.
 he ȝæf hiſ ſtiwarde Æſt-fex¹ :
 & hiſ burðeine :
 Middel-fax bitahte.
 þa cnihtes hit at-fengen :
 and ane while heo heolden.
 þa while Uortig⁹ ne :
 ȝeond þiſ lond ferde.
 & bitahte Hengeſt :
 hæȝen hiſ burhȝes. 10
 & Hengeſt forð rihtes :
 dude þer in hiſ cnihtes.
 þa while muchel ſmal folc :
 læi inne Suð-fæxe.
 & inne Middel-fæxe :
 muchel of þan kuñe.
 & inne Æſt-fæxe :
 heore aðeleſte ȝuȝeðe.
 Mete heo ferden :
 al þat heo funden. 20
 heo for-læiȝen þa wiſ :
 & godes laȝen breken.
 heo duden i þan londe :

afe hit bi Londene wēt.
 and manie oþer cnihtes :
 he makede riche þeines.
 ſo þat on torf of lond :
 ne ſtod Vortiger an hond.

earl [a knight] all Kent, as it went (lay) by London; 'he gave his steward Essex, and on his chamberlain *he* bestowed Middlesex [and many other knights he made rich thanes, so that a turf of land did not remain to Vortiger in hand]. 'The knights received it, and a while they held *it*, the while Vortiger proceeded over this land, and delivered to Hengest his noble burghs. And Hengest forth-right placed his knights therein; the while much of *the* baser people lay in Sussex, and in Middlesex much of the race, and in Essex their noblest folk. *The* meat (provisions) they carried off, all that they found; they violated the women, and Gods law brake; they did in the land all that they would.' *The* Britons saw 'that

¹ *A line, or part of one, seems here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

al þ̅ heo wolden.

þ̅ ifeȝen Bruttes :

þat balu wes on londe.

& hu Sæxifce men :

ifiȝen weoren to heom.

Brutt¹ fcupten þan londe nome :

for Sæxifce monnen fcome.

& for þan fwike-dome :

þat heo idon hæfdē.

for þan þe heo mid cnifen :

biræueden heom at liue.

þa cleopeden heo þat lond al :

[Æst-f]ex. Æst-fæx & West-fæx.

[West]-fex. & þat þridde : Middel-Sæx².[Midde]l-fæx. Vortig² ne þe king :

bi-tæhte heom al þis lond.

þ̅ ne bilæfde him an heonde :

a turf of londe.

& him feolf Vortig² ne :

flæh ouer Sæuærne.

feor in to Wellifce lond :

& þer he gon at-ftonde.

& his hired mid him :

þif ifehȝe Bruttus :

ou rixlede þes Saxiffe.

Bruttus fippte þat lond name :

for Saxiffe menne fame.

and for þan þat hii mid fexes :

bi-refde ȝam of lifues.

þo cleopeden hii þat lond :

Eftfex : and Westfex.

and þat [þridde] Middelfex².

And Vortiger gan wende :

20 ouer Séévarne.

for into Walfe londe :

and þar he gan at-ftonde.

[this], 'that mischief was in *the* land, and' how '*the* Saxish men were come to them [these Saxons governed]. *The* Britons shaped to the land a name for *the* shame of Saxish men, 'and for the treachery that they had done;' [and] for that *cause* that they with 'knives [sæxes] bereaved them of life, then called they 'all' the land East-Sex and West-Sex, and the third Middle-Sex. 'Vortiger the king gave them all this land, so that a turf of land did not remain to him in hand.' And Vortiger 'himself' 'fled [gan wend] over Severn, far into Welsh-land, and there he gan tarry, 'and his retinue with him, that poor was become.' And 'he [Vortiger] had in hoard treasure

¹ Brut *pr. man.*² Perhaps a line is here missing.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe hæne wes iwurðen.
 & he hæfde an horde :
 gerfume fwide¹ ftronge.
 he lette his men riden : [c. 2.]
 widen & fiden.

and lette him to bonnen :
 of ælchef cunnes monnen.
 þe æuere wolden hiſ feoh :
 mid freondſcipe ȝirnen.
 þ̅ iherden Bruttes :
 þ̅ iherden Scottes.
 to him heo comen :
 þer after ful fone.

an ælchere fide :
 þider heo gūnē riden.
 monies hæȝes monnes sūe :
 for golde & for gærſume.
 þa hæfde he to-fomne :
 ſixti þuſend monen.
 þa ſummede he þa richen :
 þa wel cuðen ræden.

Gode men ræðed³ me ræd :
 uor me iſ fwiðe muchel neod.
 whar ich mihte on wilderne :

And Vortiger hadde in horde :
 garifom fwiþe riche.

and lette to him banni :
 of eche cunneſ manne.
 þat euere wolde hiſ feo :
 mid māſipe ȝeorne.
 þat ihorde Bruttus :
 þat hi-horde Sottes².
 to him hii come ride :

in euer eche fide.

mani heh manneſ fone :
 for gold and for gareſome.
 þo hadde he to-gadere :
 fixti þuſend manne.
 to ȝam ſaide þo þer :
 þe pore king Vortiger.

Gode men redeþ me read :
 for nou ich habbe moche
 war ich mihte in wilderne : [neod.

most 'large [rich]; 'he caused his men to ride wide and far,' and caused to be summoned to him men of each kind, whoſo ever would yearn hiſ fee with frienſhip. That heard *the* Britons, that heard *the* Scots; they came to him [riding] 'thereafter full ſoon'; on 'each [every] ſide 'thither they gan ride, many *a* noble manſ ſon, for gold and for treaſure. When he had together ſixty thouſand men, then 'aſſembled he the nobles that well could adviſe [ſaid there to them the poor king Vortiger]: "Good men, ſay me counſel, for 'to me iſ [now I have] great need, where I might (may)

¹ fwiðe?² Scottes?³ rædeð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wurchen ænne caſtel.
 þer ic mihte an inne :
 lubbe¹ mid mine monnen.
 & halden hine wið Hēgeſt :
 mid hæzere ſtrengðe.
 a þat ich mihte bæſt :
 burhzen iwīnē.
 wræken me a mine feondē :
 þa mine wines feolden.
 & habbeð al mi kine-lond :
 awræht ut of mire hond.
 & þuſ me iſlæmed :
 mine fulle ifan.
 þa andſwarede a wiſ mon :
 þe wel cudðe ræden.
 Luſt me nu lauerd king :
 ich þe cuðe god þing.
 uppen þan munte of Reir :
 ich wullen ræden.
 þat þu caſte² wurchen :
 mid ſtronge ſtan walle.
 for þer þu miht wunien :

werchen one caſtel.
 þat ich mihte holde : [c. 2.]
 wiþ Hengeſt þan ſtronge.
 forte þat ich mihte bet :
 borewes a-winne.
 vp ȝam þat habbeþ al mi lond :
 a-wreþt vt of mine hond.
 þo anſwerede a wiſman :
 þat coupe wel reade.
 Luſt nou mi louerd king :
 and ich þe wolle cuþe god þing.
 vppe þan munte of Kaier :
 ich þe wolle reade.
 þat þou reare caſtel³.

in wilderness work a castle, 'wherein I might live with my men, 'and hold it [that I might hold] against Hengest 'with great strength [the strong], until that I might *the* better win *my* burghs, 'and avenge me of my enemies who felled my friends, and [from them who] have all my 'kingdom [land] wrested out of my hand, 'and thus driven me *out*, my full foes?' " Then answered a wise man, who well could counsel : " Listen now 'to me, [my] lord king, [and] I will shew to thee *a* good thing ; upon the mount of 'Reir [Kaier] I will [thee] advise, that thou 'work [rear] *a* castle 'with strong stone wall, for there thou mightest dwell, and live with joy ; and yet thou

¹ libbe?² R. caſtel.³ A line appears to be wanting here.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& libben mid winne.

& ȝet þu haueſt a þire hond ⁊

muchel feoluer & gold.

to halden þine hired ⁊

þa þe helpen ſcal.

& ſwa þu miht on liue ⁊ [f.89.c.1.]

libben alræ ſæleſt.

þa andſwere þe king ⁊

Let hit cuðen an hiȝing.

ȝeond muchele mire ferde ⁊ 10

þat ich faren wulle.

to þan munte of Reir ⁊

& ræren þer caſtel.

Forð ferde þe kīg ⁊

& þa ferde mid him.

þa heo þider comen ⁊

dic heo bigunnen ſone.

hornes þer bleouwen ⁊

machūnes heowen.

lim heo gunnen bæren ⁊ 20

ȝeond þat lond ærnen.

& al wæſt Walſce² lond ⁊

ſettē a Uortigernes hond.

al heo hit nomen ⁊

þo anſwerede þe king ⁊

Let hit cuþe an hiȝeng.

ouer al þan folke ⁊

þat ich wende wolle.

to þan munte of Kaȝr ⁊

a-rere þar caſtel.

Forþ ferde þe king ⁊

and þe ferde mid him.

þo hii þider come ⁊

dich i¹ dolue ſone.

hast in thy hand much silver and gold, to maintain thy people who shall thee help; and so thou mightest in life live best of all.' ” Then answered the king: “ Let it be made known in haste, over ‘my numerous host [all the folk], that I will go to the mount of ‘Reir [Kayr], ‘and’ rear there a castle.” Forth went the king, and the host with him; when they thither came, a dyke they ‘began [dug] soon; ‘horns there blew, machines hewed; lime they gan to burn, and over the land to run; and all west Welsh-land set in Vortigers hand; all they it took, that they nigh came.’ When ‘the

¹ hii?² The last two letters of wæſt and Walſce are by second hand, sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat heo neh comen.

þa þe dic wes idoluen :

& allunge ideoped.

þa bi-gunnen heo wal :

a þere dic ouer al.

& heo lim & ftan :

leiden to-fomne.

of machunes þer wes wunder :

fif and twenti hūdred.

A dæi heo leiden þene wal : 10

a niht he feol ouer al.

a marwe heo hine arædden :

a niht he gon to-reofen.

fulle feouen nihte :

fwa heom dihte.

ælche dæi heo hine aredden :

& ælche niht he gon reofen.

þa wes fari þe king :

& forhful þurh alle þing.

fwa wes al þa uerde : 20

ladliche of-færed.

for æuere heo lokede :

whænne Hengeft come an uenan. wane Hengeft come liþe.

þo he was hi-dolue :

alfe he beo folde.

þo leideine¹ wal :

a þan dich oueral.

of machuns þar was wonder :

fif and twenti hundred.

A dai hii leide þane wal :

a niht feol oueral.

a morewe hii hine arerde :

a niht he gan to-refe.

folle fouenihte :

þos² þis worck ham dihte.

þo waf fori þe king

and forþfolle þorh alle þing.

for heuere he lokede :

dyke [it] was dug, 'and thoroughly deepened [as it should be], then 'began [laid] they a wall on the dyke over all, 'and they laid together lime and stone'; of machines there was plenty,—five and twenty hundred! In *the* day they laid the wall, in *the* night 'it' fell over all; in *the* morrow they reared it, in *the* night it gan to tumble! Full a se'nnight 'so *it* [thus this work] them served; 'each day they raised it, and each night it gan fall!' Then was the king sorry, and sorrowful through all things; 'so was all the host terribly afraid'; for ever 'they [he] looked when Hengeft should 'come upon *them* [arrive]. The king was 'full [well] sorry, and sent after sages,

¹ leiden hii?² þus?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe king wes ful særi :
 & fende after witien.
 æfter world-wiſe monne :
 þa wiſdom cuðen.

& bad heom leoten weorpen :
 & fondien leod-runen.

fondien þat foðe :
 mid heore fiȝe-craften.

whær on hit weore ilōg :

þat þe wal þe wes swa ſtrong.

ne moſte moſte¹ niht longes :

nauere iſtonden.

þas weorlde-wiſe men :

þer a twa wendē.

fūme heo wenden to þan wude :

fūme to weien-læten.

heo gunnen loten weorpen :

mid heore leod-runen.

fulle þreo nihten :

heore craftes heo dihten.

ne mihtē heo nauere finden :

þurh nauere nane þinge.

whær on hit weore ilong :

þat þe wal þat wes swa ſtrong.

þe king was wel fori :

and fende after wittie.

and bad heom lotef werpe :

and fondie þat foþe :

war on hit were ilong :

þat þe wal þat was ſo ſtrang. [f.73. c.1.]

ne mihte nih² longe :

neuere one ſtonde.

þes worle-wiſemen :

þar a two wende.

somme wende to þan wode :

somme to weynleates.

folle þreo nihtes :

hire craftes þar hii dihte.

ne mihten hii neuere finde :

þorh none cunneſ þinge.

war on hit were ilong :

þat þe wal þat was ſo ſtrong.

‘after world-wise men, who knew wisdom,’ and bade them cast lots, and ‘try incantations,’ try the truth ‘with their powerful craft,’ on what account it were, that the wall that was so strong might not ever stand *a* night long. These world-wise men there went in two *parties*; some ‘they’ went to the wood, some to *the* cross-ways; ‘they gan to cast lots with their incantations’; full three nights their crafts [there] they practised; they might never find, through ‘never any [no kind of] thing, on what account it were, that the wall that was so strong every night fell down, and the king lost his labor.

¹ *Sic MS.*² niht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

Jora[m].

æuere ælche nihte to-raſ:ʒ

& þe king hiſ fwīc læs.

Buten witie þer wes an:ʒ

he wes ihaten Joram.

he ſeide þat he hit afunde:ʒ

ah hit þuhte læſinge.

he ſeide ȝif mon funde:ʒ

in auer æi londe.

æuer æi cniht bærn:ʒ

þe næuere fæder no ibæd.

& openede hiſ breoſte:ʒ

& nomen of hiſ blode.

& mengde wið þan lime:ʒ

& þæne wal læide.

þenne mihte he ſtonde:ʒ

to þere worlde longe.

þat word com to þan kige:ʒ

of þere læſinge.

& he hit ileſde:ʒ

þah hit læs weore.

Sone he nom hiſ fonde:ʒ

& ſende ȝeōd þan londe.

swa feor ſwa he¹ for dæðes kare:

durſten æies weieſ faren.

euereche niht reef:ʒ

and þe king hiſ fwīc les.

Bote witti þar was on:ʒ

he was ihote Joram.

he ſaide þat he hit funde:ʒ

ac hit þoht leſinge.

he ſaide þat ȝef man funde:ʒ

in eni kinelonde.

enȝ cnaue child:ʒ

þat neuere fader nadde.

and hopenede hiſ breoſte:ʒ

and neme of hiſ blode.

and meinde wiþ þan lime:ʒ

and in þan wal leide.

þanne mihte he ſtonde:ʒ

to þan worle longe.

þe king ſende hiſ fonde:ʒ

oueral þan londe.

so for ſo he² dorſte for deþeſ care:ʒ

in eni wei fare.

But there was one sage, he was named Joram, he said that he it found,—but it seemed (was) leasing,—he said that if men found in ‘ever’ any ‘land [kingdom], ‘ever’ any male-child, that never had father, and opened his breast, and took of his blood, and mingled with the lime, and laid [in] the wall, *that* then might it stand to the worlds end. ‘The word came to the king, of the leasing, and he it believed, though it were false.’ ‘Soon he took [The king sent] his messengers, ‘and sent’ over [all] the land, so far as they for care (fear) of death durst ‘anyways [in any way] fare, and in each

¹ heo?² hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& in ælche tune :		and in eche toune :	
hercneden þa runen.		hercnede rounne.	
whær heo mihtē ifinden :	[f. 89 ^b .c.1.]	war hii mihten finden :	
speken of fwulche childe.		speken of foche childe.	
þas cnihtes forð ferdan :		þeos cnihtes forþ verde :	
widen ȝeond þan ærde.		in to mani erþe.	
tweien uerden ænne wæi :		tweie verden anne way :	
þe west riht him læi.		þat west rihtes him lay.	
þe læi forð rihtes in :		þat lay nou ¹ rihtes in :	
þer nu is Kaer-merðin.	10	þar nou his Kermerþin.	[c.2.]
Bifides þere burh :		Bifides þare borewe :	
in ane weie brade.		in one way brode.	
hefden ænne muchelne plæȝe :		adde alle ² borh-cnaues :	
alle þa burh-cnauen.		hii-gadered ³ heom to-gadere.	
þas cnihtes weoren weri :		þeos cnihtes weren weri :	
& an heorte fwiðe færi.		and on heorte fori.	
& feten adun bi þan plæȝe :		and fete adun bi þeos cnaues :	
& bi-heolden þas cnauen.		bi-heolde ou hii pleoyde.	
Vmbē ane ftunde :		Bi one lutele ftunde :	
heo bigunnen ftriuinge.	20	hii bi-gonne to ftriuende.	
al fe hit wes auer laȝe :		al so hit was euere lawe :	
imong childrene plæȝe.		a-mang stildrene ⁴ plawe.	
þe an þe oderne ⁵ smat :		þe on þan oþer smot :	

town hearkened 'the' rumors, where they might find speak of such a child. These knights forth proceeded 'wide over the [into many a] land; two of the number went a way that lay right west, that lay forth-right in where now Caermarthen is. Beside the burgh, in a broad way, all 'the' burgh-lads had 'a great play [gathered them together]. These knights were weary, and in heart 'exceeding' sorry, and sate down by 'the play [these lads], 'and' beheld 'these lads [how they played]. After a [little] time they began striving,—as it was ever custom among childrens play;—the one smote the other, and he 'these blows [his blow] suffered. Then

¹ forþ?² alle þe?³ R. i-gadered.⁴ childrene?⁵ oðerne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Merlyn.

& he þeos dūdes ¹ abad.	and he his dunt a-bod.
þa wes swiðe grim :	þo was fwiþe grim :
Dinabuz touward Mærlin.	Dunabuz to Merlȳn.
& þus quað Dinabꝰ :	and þus faide Dunabuz :
þe þene dūt hefde.	þat þane dunt hadde.
Mærling ² vnwærste ³ man :	Merlȳn onwreste man :
whu hæueft þu me þus idon.	wi hæueft þou þus idon.
þu hæueft idon me muchel fcome :	
þer fore þu fcalt habben grome.	
Ich æm anes kinges fune : 10	Ich ham one kingef fone :
& þu ært of noht icumen.	and þou hart of noht icome.
þu nahtes i nane ftude :	
habben freo-monnes ibude.	
for swa wes al þa uore :	for fo was al þe vore :
þi moder wes an hore.	þi moder was an hore.
for n ^o te heo næuere þene mon :	for nuſte ȝeo wat was þe man :
þ þe ftreonde hire on.	þat þe ftreone hire an.
no þu on moncunne :	ne þou in mancunne :
nefdeft fader nēne.	haddeft fader nadde ⁴ .
& þu in ure londe : 20	and þou in houre londe :
makeft uf to fconde.	dofst vs fo mochel fconde.
þu ært uf imong icumē :	
& nært nænes mōnes ⁵ fune.	

was exceeding wrath Dinabuz to 'ward' Merlin, and thus 'quoth [said] Dinabuz, who had the blow : "Merlin, wicked man, why hast thou thus done 'to me? Thou hast done me much shame, therefore thou shalt have grief.' I am a kings son, and thou art born of nought; 'thou oughtest not in any spot to have free mans abode'; for so was all the adventure, thy mother was a whore, for she knew not 'ever [what was] the man that begat thee on her, nor haddest thou any father among mankind. And thou in our land 'makest us to be shamed [dost us so much shame]; 'thou art among us come, and art son of no man'; thou shalt therefore in this day

¹ duntēs?² *R. Merlin here and elsewhere.*³ vnwræste?⁴ nanne?⁵ *This word is interlined by the second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þu ſcalt i þiſſen dæie :'	[c.2.] þou falt in þiſſe daie :
þer uore dæd ¹ þolien.	þar vore deap þolie.
þis iherden þa cnihtes :	þis ihorde þe cnihtes :
þer heo weoren bi-halueſ.	þare hii weren bi-halues.
heo ariſen up & eoden neor :	hii a-riſe and eoden ner :
& neodeliche ȝerden ² .	and ȝornliche luſte.
of þiſſere uncuðe talen :	of þes vncoupe tale :
þe heo iherden of þan cnauen.	þat hii ihorde of þes cnaue.
þa wes inne Kair-Merðin :	þo was in Kermerþin :
a reue þe hehte Eli.	10 a reue þat hehte Ely.
þa cnihtes bliue :	þes cnihtes bliue :
comen to þan reue.	comen to þan reue. [f.72 ^b .c.1.]
& þus him to ſæiden :	and to him þus ſayde :
fone mid muðe.	fone mid mupe.
We buð her rihtes :	We beoþ here rihtes :
Uortig ³ nes cnihtes.	Vortigerne his cnihtes.
& habbeoð her ifunde :	and habbeþ here ifunde :
enne cnaue ȝunge.	one cnaue ȝonge.
he if ihatē Merlin :	
ne icnawe we na wiðt his cunne.	
Nim hine & hiȝinde ³ :	21 fenden hine to þan kinge :
& fende hine to þan kinge.	alfe þou wolt libbe.
al fe þu wolt libben :	
& þine limen habben.	

Merlin.

suffer death." The knights heard this, where they were aside; they arose up, and went near, and earnestly 'asked of [listened to] this strange tale, that they heard of 'the [this] lad. Then was in Caermarthen a reve that hight Eli; 'the [these] knights quickly came to the reve, and thus to him said soon with mouth: "We are here-right 'Vortigers [Vortiger his] knights, and have found here a young lad; 'he is named Merlin; we know no whit his kin. Take him in haste, and' send him to the king, as thou wilt live, 'and thy limbs have,' and his mother with him, who bore him to *be* man.

¹ dæð?² ȝernden?³ an hiȝinge?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& his moder mid him :	and his moder mid him :
þe hine bar to monnen.	þat hine bar to manne.
ȝif þu þis wult don :	ȝef þou þis nelt noht don :
þe king heom wule under-fon.	þe king þe wole a-hon.
& ȝif þu hit noht ne ȝemeft :	
þer fore þu biſt flæme.	
& þas burh al for-bard ¹ :	and þeos borh al for-berne :
þas leodē al fordemed.	and þat folk fleme.
þa anſwarede Eli :	þo anſweredē Ely :
þe reue of Kæir-Merðin.	þe reaue of Kermerþin.
Wel ic wat þat al þis lond :	Wel ich wot þat al þis lond :
ſtunt a Vortig ⁹ nes hond.	ſtond in Vortigernes hond.
& we beoð alle hiſ men :	
his monſcipe is þe mare.	
& we ſcullen þis don fain :	þar vore ich wole þis don :
& driȝen hiſ wille.	and dreȝen hiſ wille.
Forð wende þe reue :	Forþ wende þe reue :
& burhmen hiſ iuere.	and borhmen hiſ iverere.
& ifunden Mærlin :	and ifunde Merlȝn :
& hiſ plaȝe-iueren mid him.	and hiſ pleiueres mid him.
Mærlin heo nomen :	Merlȝn hii nemen :
and hiſ iuæren loȝen.	and hiſ iveres lowen.
þa þa Mærlig wes ilad :	þo þat Merlȝn was ilad :

If thou this 'wilt do, the king will receive them, and if thou carest it not, therefore thou wilt be driven *out* [wilt not do, the king will hang thee], and this burgh all 'consumed, [consume, and] 'this [the] folk all 'destroyed [drive *out*]." Then answered Eli, the reve of Caermarthen: "Well I wot, that all this land stands in Vortigers hand, 'and we are all his men,—his *honor* is the more!'—'and we shall [therefore I will] do this 'gladly,' and perform his will." Forth went the reve, and *the* burghers his associates, and found Merlin, and his playfellows with him. Merlin they took, and his companions laughed; when that Merlin was led *away*, then was

¹ for-barnd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa wes Dinabus ful glad. [c.1.]	þo was Dunabuz fol glad.
e ¹ wende þat he ilad weore :	he wende þat hit were :
limen for to leofē.	for þane pley þare.
ah al an oðer fet þe dom :	ac al an oþer was þe dom :
ær hit weoren al idon.	are hit were al idon.
Nu wes Mærlinges moder :	Nou was Merlȳn his moder :
wundermere i-wurðen.	wonderliche iworþe.
in ane hæze munstre :	in one nonneric :
muchene ² ihaded.	munechene ihoded.
þider iwende Eli :	þider wende Elȳ :
þe reue of Kaer-Merðin.	þe reue of Kermerþin.
& nom him þa lafdie :	and nam þe gode leafdi :
þer heo læi on munstre.	þar ȝeo was in munestre.
& uorð him gō ærne :	and forþ him gan erne :
to þan kinge Uortigerne.	to þan king Vortigerne. [c.2.]
& muchel folc mid him :	and mochel folk mid him :
& ladden þa nunne & Merlin.	þat ladde þe nonne and Merlȳn.
Sone wes þat word cuð :	Sone was þat word couþ :
to Vortigernes kinges muð.	to Vortiger þe kinges muþ.
þat icumen wes Eli :	þat icome was Elȳ :
& brohte þa lauedi.	and hadde ibroht þe lafdi.
& Marling heore fone :	and Merlȳn hire fone :
wes mid hire þer icumen.	was mid hire þar icome.

Dinabuz full glad; he weened that 'he were led *away* for to lose *his* limbs [it were for the play there], but all another *way* 'set [was] the doom, ere it were all done. Now was 'Merlins [Merlyn his] mother strangely become in a 'noble minster [nunnery] a hooded nun. Thither went Eli, the reve of Caermarthen, and took 'him' the [good] lady, where she 'lay [was] in *the* minster, and forth gan him run to the king Vortiger, and much folk with him, 'and [that] led the nun and Merlin. The word (tidings) was soon made known to [the] king Vortigers mouth, that Eli was come, and [had] brought the lady, and *that* Merlin her son was with her there come.

¹ R. he.² munchene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa wes an liue ⁊

Vortigerne blide¹.

& þa læuedi aueng ⁊

mid fwiðe uæire læten.

& Mærlin he bitwahte² ⁊

goden twælf cnihten.

þa weoren þā kinge holde ⁊

& hine witen scolden.

þa fæiden þe king Vortig²³ ⁊

wið þa nunne he spilede þer. 10

Gode læuedi fæi me ⁊

sæl þe scal iwurðe.

whar weoren þu iborē ⁊

wha streonede þe to bearne.

þæ andfwarede þa nunne ⁊

& hire fader nemnede.

þriddendale þis lond ⁊

stod a mines fader hond.

of þan londe he wes king ⁊

cuð hit wes wide. 20

he wes ihatē Conaan ⁊

cnihtene lauerd.

þa anfwarede þe king ⁊

[c. 2.]

þe king þe leafdi vnder-feng ⁊

and mansipe bi-hehte.

and Merlȝn he bi-tahte ⁊

twelf gode cnihtes.

þat weren þan kīge holde ⁊

and hine witie folde.

þo þe king Vortiger ⁊

wiþ þe nonne spac þer.

Gode leafdi fai me ⁊

wo streonede þe.

þo anfwereðe þe nonne ⁊

and hire fader nemnede.

þat þriden deal of al þis lond ⁊

stod in mine fader hond.

of þan londe he was king ⁊

couþ hit waf wide.

he was ihote Conan ⁊

cnihtene louerd.

þo spac Vortigerne ⁊

Then was Vortiger blithe in life, and [The king] received the lady, with looks most fair [and honor promised], and Merlin he delivered to twelve good knights, who were faithful to the king, and him should guard. Then 'said' the king Vortiger, with the nun 'he' spake there: "Good lady, say to me,—'well it shall be to thee,—where wert thou born,' who begat thee 'to be child'?" Then answered the nun, and named her father:—" [The] third part of [all] this land stood in my fathers hand; of the land he was king, known it was wide; he was named Conaan, lord of knights." Then 'an-

¹ bliðe?² bitahte?³ Written at first Vortig²ne, but the last two letters expuncted.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fwulc heo hif cun weore.

afe he his cun were.

Lauedi fæie þu hit me :

Leafdi fei þou nou me :

fæl þe fcal iwurðen.

leof þou hart me fwiþe.

her if Mærlin þi fune :

her his Merlȝn þi fone :

wha ftreonede hine.

wo ftreonede hine.

who wes him a folke :

for fader iholden.

þa heng heo hire hæfued :

& heolde touward bræften.

bi þan kinge heo fæt ful softe : 10

& ane lute while þohte.

vmbe while heo fpac :

& fpiledede wið þan kinge.

King ich þe wulle tellē :

King ich þe wolle telle :

for feolcuðe fpellen.

felcouþe fpelles.

Mi fader Conaan þe king :

Mi fader Conan þe king :

luuede me þurh alle þing.

lofuede me þorh alle þing.

þa iwarð ich on veftme :

wunder ane fæir.

þa ich wes an uore : 20

fiftene ȝere.

þa wunede ich on bure :

and feodde me in boure :

on wunfele mine.

maidene mid me :

mid mine maȝdenes deore.

wūd⁹e ane uæire.

swered the king [spake Vortiger], as *if* she [he] were of his kin : “ Lady, say thou ‘it [now] to me,—‘well *it* shall be to thee [thou art to me very dear],—here is Merlin thy son, who begat him ? ‘ Who was held for father to him among *the* folk ? ” Then hung she her head, and bent toward *her* breast ; by the king she sate full softly, and thought a little while ; after *a* while she spake, and said to the king : “ King, I will tell thee marvellous stories. My father Conaan the king loved me through all things ; ‘ then became I in stature wondrously fair. When I was fifteen years of age,’ ‘ then dwelt I [and fed me] in bower, ‘ in my mansion’ ; ‘ my maidens with me, [with my maidens dear] ‘ wondrously fair’. [And] when I was in bed ‘ in slumber,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þenne ich wæs on bedde ifwaued : And þo ich was abedde :	
mid soft mine flepen.	mildeliche on flepe.
þē com biuoren :	þar com me bi-vore : [f. 74. c. 1.]
þa fæirest þing þat wes iboren.	þat fayrest þinge þat was ibore.
fwulc hit weore a muchel cniht :	alfe hit were a mochel cniht :
al of golde idiht.	al of golde idiht.
þis ich ifæh on fweuene :	þis þing com me bi-vore :
alche niht on flepe.	eche niht on fleape.
þis þing glad me biuoren :	
and glitene on golde.	10
ofte hit me custe :	ofte hit me custe :
ofte hit me clupte.	and ofte hit me cluppte.
ofte hit me to-bæh :	ofte þis þing ich ifeh :
& eode me swiðe neh.	and ofte hit ȝeode me neh.
þa ich an ænde me biſæh :	
ſelcuð me þuhte þas.	
mi mæte me wes læd ¹ :	
mine limes uncuðe.	
ſelcuð me þuhte :	ſelcuþ me þohte :
what hit beon mihte. [f. 90 ^b . c. 1.]	wat þis beon mihte.
þa anȝæt ich on ænde :	21 þo anȝete ich at þan ende :
þat ich was mid childe.	þat ich was mid childe.
þa mi time com :	þo þat þe time com :
þisne cnaue ich hæfuede.	þisne cnaue ich hadde.

with my soft sleep, then [mildly asleep, there] came before [me] the fairest thing that *ever* was born, as *if* it were a tall knight, arrayed all of gold. This 'I saw in dream [thing came before me] each night in sleep. 'This thing glided before me, and glistened of gold;' oft it me kissed, [and] oft it me embraced; oft 'it approached me [this thing I saw], and [oft it] came to me 'very' nigh; 'when I at length looked to myself,—strange this seemed to me,—my meat to me was loathsome, my limbs unusual'; strange *it* seemed to me, what 'it [this] might be! Then perceived I at [the] end that I was with child; when 'my [that the] time came, this boy I had. I know not

¹ læð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Nat ic on folde :
 wnat hif fader weoren.
 ne wha hine biȝate :
 inne weorlde-riche.
 no whaȝer hit weore unwiht :
 þe on godes halue idiht.
 La swa ich ibedde are :
 nat ich na mare.
 to fuggen þe of mine fune :
 hu he to worulde is icume. 10
 þe nunne beh hire hæfde adun :
 & hire huȝe dihte.

þe king hine bi-þohte :
 whæt he don mihte.
 & droh him to ræde :
 redȝiuen gode.
 & heo him raddē :
 ræd mid þan bezfte.
 þat he of-fende Magan :
 þ̅ wes a felcuȝ mon. 20
 He wes a wis clære :
 & cuȝe of feole c̅æften.
 he cuȝe wel ræden :

not ich in þis worle :
 wo his fader were.

þe king hine bi-þohte :
 wat he don mihte.
 and nam him to reade :
 redȝeues gode.
 and hii him radde :
 read mid þan beſte.
 þat he of-fende Madan¹ :
 þat was a fwiȝe wiſman.

in [this] world 'what [who] his father were, 'nor who begat him in *this* worlds-realm, nor whether it were evil-thing, or on Gods behalf dight. Alas! as I pray for mercy, I know not any more to say to thee of my son, how he is come to *the* world." The nun bowed her head down, and covered her features.' The king bethought him what he might do, and 'drew [took] to him good counsellors to counsel; and they said him counsel with the best, that he should send for Magan, who was a 'marvellous [very wise] man.— 'He was a wise clerk, and knew of many crafts; he would advise well, he could far direct'; he knew of the craft that dwelleth in the sky (astronomy),

¹ R. Magan.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

[Ma]gan.

he cuðe feor læden.
 he cuðe of þā crafte :
 þe wuneð i þan lufte.
 he cuðe tellen :
 of ælche leod-spelle.
 Magan com to hirede :
 þar þe king wunede.
 & þene king grætte :
 mid godfulle worde.
 Hail feo þu & fund :
 Vortigerne þe king.
 ich æm icumē to þe :
 cuð me þine iwille.
 þa ādswærede þe king :
 & talde al þan clærke.
 hu þa nunne hafde ifæid :
 & axede hine þer of ræd.
 ord fram þan ende :
 al he him talde. [c. 2.]
 þa fæide Magan :
 Ich con ful wel her on.
 þer wunieð in þan lufte :
 feole cunne wihte.
 þa þer fcullen bilæfuen :
 þat domes-dæi cume liðen.
 sūme heo beoð aðele :

10

20

he couþe of þan crafte :
 þat wonieþ in þan lufte.
 he couþe telle :
 of eche leod-spelles.
 Magā com to þe ftude :
 þar þe king wonede.
 and þane king grette :
 mid his milde wordes.
 Ich ham icode to þe :
 cuþ me þine wille.
 þo answerede þe king :
 and tolde þan clearke.
 ou þe nonne hadde ifeid :
 and axede þar of read.
 þo faide Magan :
 Ich con ful wel þar an.
 þar wonieþ in þan lufte :
 fale cunne wiþtes.
 þat þar mote wonie :
 forte domes-dai come.
 somme hii beoþ gode : [c. 2.]

he could tell of each history (*or* language). Magan came to 'court [the place] where the king dwelt, and greeted the king with 'goodly [his mild] words : " 'Hail be thou and sound, Vortiger the king !' I am come to thee, shew me thy will." Then answered the king, and told the clerk 'all,' how the nun had said, and asked 'him' thereof counsel ; 'from *the* beginning to the end, all he him told.' Then said Magan : " I know full well 'hereon [thereon]. There dwell in the sky many kind of beings, that there shall remain [must dwell] until domesday 'arrive [come]; some they are

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fumme heo uuel wurcheð.

somme wircheþ vuele.

þer on if fwiðe muchel cun :

þa cumeð imōg monnen.

heo beoð ihaten ful iwis :

hii beoþ i-hote foliwis :

incubii demones.

incubi demones.

ne doð heo noht muchel scaðe :

ne doþ hii noht moche scape :

bute hokerieð þan folke.

monine mō on¹ fweuene :

bote fwinkeþ men on fleape.

ofte heo fwencheð².& monienne hende wimmon :¹⁰ and mani on hénde wifman :þurh heore cræfte kenneð³ anan. þorh hire craft kenneþ a-non.

& monies godes monnes child :

heo bicharreð þurh wigelīg.

& þus wes Marlin biȝeten :

And þus waf Merlȝn bi-ȝete :

& iboren of his moder.

and ibore of his moder.

& þus hit if al igan :

quað þe clærc Magā.

þa fæide Marling :

þo faide Merlȝn :

to feolue þā kinge.

[men : to þan feolue kinge.

King þine men me habbeoð inu-

King þine men me habbeþ inome :

& ich æm to þe icumen.

²¹ and ich ham to þe icome.

& ich iwiten wulle :

and ich iwite wolle :

what beon þi wille.

wat beo þin wille.

good, 'and' some 'they' work evil. 'Therein is *a* race very numerous, that cometh among men'; they are named full truly Incubi Dæmones; they do not much harm, but 'deceive the folk; many *a* man in dream oft they delude [delude men in sleep], and many *a* fair woman through their craft childeth anon, 'and many *a* good mans child they beguile through magic.' And thus was Merlin begat, and born of his mother, 'and thus it is all transacted,' quoth the clerk Magan.' Then said Merlin to the king *himself*: "King, thy men have taken me, and I am to thee come, and I would learn

¹ *Altered by a second hand to of.*² *The last four letters of this word are on an erasure by second hand.*³ *kenne pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& for wulche þinge :

ich æm ibroht to kinge.

þa spilede þe king :

mid fwikere¹ speche.

Mærlin þu ært hider icumen :

þu nært nanes monnes fune.

swiðe þe longeð :

after laðe spelle.

iwhiten þu wult þa uore :

nu þu hit scalt ihere.

¶ Ich habbe bigunnen a weorc :

mid grūdliche ftregðe³.

þe haueð mine gærfume : [f.91.c.1.]

wel fwiðe binume.

fif þufend men :

wurcheð þer on.

Ich habbe lim & ftan :

on leode nis betere nan.

na in nare leode :

weorcmen al fwa gode.

al þ̅ heo leggeð a dæi :

to foðe ich hit fugge mæi.

ær dæi amarwen :

al hit bið dune.

þo faide þe king :

mid cwickere speche.

Swiþe þe langeþ :

after loþ speche.

hii² þou wolt ware vore :

nou þou falt hit ihere.

¶ Ch habbe bi-gonne a worc :

mid grundeliche ftrengþe.

al hit haueþ min garefome :

of me clene bi-nome.

fif þufend men :

wercheþ eche dai þar on.

And ich habbe lȝm and fton :

in þe worle niȝ betere non.

al þat hii leggeþ adai :

to foþe ich þe fegge mai.

her dai a morwe :

al hit his a-doune.

what is thy will, 'and for what thing I am brought to *the* king?' Then said the king with quick speech : "'Merlin, thou art hither come; thou art son of no man!' Much thou longest after loath speech; learn thou wilt 'the adventure [wherefore],—now thou shalt hear it. I have begun a work with great strength, 'that [it] hath [all] my treasure 'well much [from me clean] taken away; five thousand men work [each day] thereon. [And] I have lime and stone, in [the] world is none better, 'nor in any land workmen so good.' All that they lay in *the* day,—in sooth I may say 'it [to thee],—ere day in *the* morrow all it is down; 'each stone from *the* other

¹ cwickere?² i-wite?³ ftrengðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ælc ſtan from oðer :
 iualled to þan grunde.
 Nu fuggeð mine wife :
 and mine witie men.
 þat ȝif ich nime þi¹ blod :
 ut of þire breoſte.
 & minne wal wurche :
 & do to mine lime.
 þenne mai he ſtonde :
 to þere worlde longe. 10
 Nu þu hit woſt al :
 hu þe iworðe ſcal.
 þis ihærde Mærlin :
 & bælh on hiſ mode.
 & þas word ſæide :
 wrað þeh he weore.
 Nulle hit nauere god ſeolf :
 þe gumenene is lauerd.
 þ þi caſtel ſtonde :
 for mine heorte blode. 20
 ne nauere þi ſtan wal :
 ſtille ne ligge.
 For alle þine witien :
 beoð ſwiðe ſwikele.
 ifæid² læffinge :

Nou ſeggeþ mine wife :
 and mine wittie men.
 þat ȝef ich neme þi blod :
 vt of þine breoſte.
 and do to mine lyme :
 and mine wal wurche.
 þanne mihte he ſtonde :
 to þiſſe worle longe.
 Nou þou iwoſt al :
 ou þe iworþe ſal.
 þis ihorde Merlȝn : [f. 74^b. c. 1.]
 a-bolwe on hiſ mode.
 and þeos word ſaide :
 þoh he wroþ were.
 Nolle hit neuere god ſeolf :
 þat hiſ māne louerd.
 þat þin caſtel ſtode :
 for mine heorte blode.
 Ac alle þine wittie :
 beoþ ſwiþe ſwikele.
 hii ſeggeþ leſinge :

felled to the ground !' Now say my wise and my sage men, that if I take thy blood, out of thy breast, and work my wall, and put to my lime, then 'may [might] it stand to 'the [this] worlds end. Now thou knowest 'it' all, how *it* shall be to thee." Merlin heard this, 'and' angered in his mood, and said these words, though he were wrath : " God *himself*, who is lord of men, will it never, that the castle should stand for my hearts blood, 'nor ever thy stone wall lie still.' 'For [But] all thy sages are exceeding de-

¹ The last letter of þi is on an erasure of two letters.² heo fæið ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bi-foren þæ¹ feolue.

þ þu scalt afindē :

a þisses dæief ferste.

for þis fæde Joram :

þe if mi fulle ifa.

þa tiðende me þuncheð game :

ich wes ifcæpen him to bone.

Let cumen biuoren² :Joram þine³ witie.

& alle his iuere :

forð rihtes here.

þa þeos lefinge :

talden þan kinge.

& ȝif ich þe fugge :

soðe mine worde.

of þie walle :

[c.2.]

& whi he⁴ adun falleð.

and mid soðe hit bitelle :

þat heore talen finde⁵ lese.

ȝef me heore hæfden :

20

ȝif ich þi wærc hæle.

þa andswarede þe king :

mid quickere ſteuene.

bi-vore þi fulue.

þat þou falt a-finde :

in þisse daies furste.

for þis ſayde Joram :

þat his min folle fon.

þe tydinge me þencheþ game :

ich was ifape him to bane.

Let com bi-vore þe :

Joram þane wittye.

and al his iveref :

forþrith here.

and ȝef ich þe ſegge ſoþ :

and þine worc heale.

ȝef me hire hefdes :

for hire lefinges.

þo answerede þe king :

mid cwickere ſtemne.

ceitful; they say leasings before thyself,—that thou shalt find in this days space. For Joram said this, who is my full foe; the tidings seem to me sport; I was shapen to his bane! Let Joram `thy [the] sage come before thee, and all his companions, forth-right here, ‘who told these leasings to the king;’ and if I say thee `my sooth words of thy wall, and why it down falleth, and with sooth it prove, that their tales are leasing [sooth, and thy work heal], give me their heads, ‘if I thy work heal [for their leasings].” Then answered the king with quick voice: “So help me my hand,

¹ þi?² biuoren þe?³ & þine *pr. m.*, but & expuncted.⁴ *Interlined by a second hand.*⁵ finde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Swa me help mī hond : þif forwærde ich þe halde. To þan kinge was ibroht : Joram þe witie. & feofue of his iueren : alle heo weoren uæie. Marline gromede : & he grimliche spæc. Sæie me Joram leod-fwike : lað me on heorten. whi falleð þes wal : uolden to grunde. sæie me wæh hit vælleð : þat þe wal reofeð. what mai man uinden : at þere dic grunde. Joram wes stille : ne cuðe he noht tellen. þa feide Merlin þas word : King hald me forward. let deluen þas dich : feouen uoten deopere. heo scullen uinden æenne stan : wunder ane ueire. he if ueir & brad :	So me helpe min hond : þeos forewarde ich þe holde. To þan kinge was ibroht : Joram þe wittý. and his soue veres : alle hii weren feýe. Merlȝn gramede : and wroþliche spac. Saie me Joram : loþ me on heorte. sai waren hit his lang : þat þe wal falleþ. wat mai me finde : at þare dich his grunde. Joram was stille : ne couþe he noht telle. þo faide Merlȝn : Let delue þane dich anon. soue fet deoppere : þane he his nouþe. and þoufalt finde þare anon : [c.2.] ane swiþe brode fton.
--	---

this covenant I hold thee!" To the king was brought Joram the sage, and 'seven of his [his seven] companions,—all they were fated to die! Merlin angered, and 'he' spake wrathly:—"Say me Joram, 'traitor,'—loathsome to me in heart,—'why falleth this wall to the ground;' say 'me' 'why it happeneth [what is *the* cause] that the wall falleth, what men may find at the 'dykes [dyke his] bottom?'" Joram was still; he coul^d not tell. Then said Merlin 'these words: "King, hold to me covenant!' Cause 'this [the] dyke to be dug [anon] seven feet deeper [than it is now]; 'they shall [and thou shalt] find 'a stone wondrously

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

volke to bi-halden.

þa dich wes idoluē :

seoue vet depre.

þa uundē¹ heo anan :

þer rihtes þene fstan.

þa fæide Mærlin þas word :

King hald me forward.

sæie me Joram :

mōne me ladeft².

& fæie þisse kinge :

wulches cunnes þinges.

vnder þissen ftane :

ftaðel habbeoð inumen.

Joram wes ftille :

ne cuðe he noht telle.

þa fæide Mærlin wunder :

A water her if under.

doh a-wai þisne fstan : [l. 91^b.c.1.]

þat water 3e findeð anan.

Heo duden a-wai þene fstan : 20 Hii dude away þane fton :

at-foren þan kinge anon.

þ̅ water heo funden :

þa fæide Merlin.

þis was sone idon :

and hii founde þane fton.

þo faide Merlȳn :

towardes Joram.

Wat cunnes þingef :

vnder þis fton wonieþ.

Joram was ftille :

ne couþe he noht telle.

þo faide Merlȳn wonder :

A water þar his hunder.

þat water hii fūde anon.

þo faide Merlȳn :

fair [there anon a very broad stone]; 'it is fair and broad, for folk to behold.' " 'The dyke was dug seven feet deeper; then [This was soon done, and] they found 'anon there-right' the stone. Then said Merlin 'these words [towards Joram]: " 'King, hold to me covenant!' Say to me, Joram, man to me most hateful, and say to this king 'what kind of thing 'hath taken station [dwelleth] under this stone?' " Joram was still; he could not tell. Then said Merlin a wonder: "A water 'here [there] is under; 'do away this stone, the water ye shall find anon.' " They did away the stone 'before the king anon'; the water they found [anon]. Then said

¹ This word has been subsequently altered to ivunden.² laðeft?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Æxe me Joram :'	and spac toward Joram.
þe is mi fulle ifa.	
umben ane stunde :	
fuggen þe of þan grunde.	
what wuneð i þan watere :	Wat wonieþ in þan grunde :
wintres & summeres.	bi-halues þan watere.
þe king axede Joram :	þo faide Joram :
ah ne cuðe he nowiht þer on.	Ne can ich noht þar an.
þa ȝet fæide Mærlin þas word :	Nou faide Merlȝn þis word :
King hald me foreward.	10 King holde me foreward.
Let alæten þif wæter :	Leteþ lade þat water :
& wei weorpen.	and awey werpe.
þer wunieð i þan grunde :	þar wonieþ in þan grunde :
tweien draken stronge.	tweie drakes stronge.
þe an is a norð half :	þe on his a norþ half :
þe oðer a fuð half.	þe oþer a sup half.
þe oder ¹ if milc-whit :	þe on his milc-wit :
ælche deore unnilich.	eche deor onilich.
þe oðer ræd alfe blod :	þe oþer so read so blod :
wurmen alre baldest.	20 worm alre boldest.
Ælche middernihte :	Eche midnihte :
heo bigunneð to fihten.	hii bi-ginneþ to fihte.
²	and þorh hire fihte :

Merlin : "Ask me [and spake toward] Joram, 'who is my full foe, after a while, to say thee of the bottom,' what dwelleth 'in the water, winter and summer [at the bottom, beside the water].'" The king asked [Then said] Joram, 'but he knew ["I know] nought thereof. The yet [Now] said Merlin these words : "King, hold to me covenant ! Cause 'this [the] water to be carried off, and away cast ; there dwell at the bottom two strong dragons ; the one is on *the* north side, the other on *the* south side ; the one is milk-white, to each beast unlike, the other [as] red as blood, boldest of all worms ! Each midnight they begin to fight, [and through their fight] thy

¹ oðer ?² A line is here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

feollen þine wurckes.

þe eorðe gon to-rufien :

& þi wal to-reofen.

þurh fwulche wundre :

þi wal if afallen.

þa iwrað i þiffen flode :

& noht for mine blode.

þis wæter wes al ilæde :

þes kinges men weoren glæde.

muchel wes þa blisfe :

biuoren þan leod-kinge.

& sone þer after :

fari heo weorē.

ær þe dæi come to ende :

heo iherden tiðinde.

þa þa water wes al ilædden :

& þe put wes ilær.

[[c. 2.]

þa comen ut þas tweiē draken :

& muchel dunen makeden.

& fuhten grimliche :

dun i þere dich.

ne ifæh nauere na cniht :

nan ladluker fiht.

fluȝen of heore muðe :

folle þine workef.

þe eorþe gan to-cwakie :

and þin wal to-refe.

and þorh foche wondre :

þine walles fulle.

þis water was a-way idon :

after Merlȝn his dom.

þo comen vt þe twei drakes :

and mochel dune makede.

and fuþten feondeliche : [f. 75. c. 1.]

dun in þare dich.

ne feh neuere non cniht :

non loþliche fiht.

floȝen of hire mouþe :

works fell, the earth began to 'sink [quake], and thy wall to tumble; [and] through such wonder thy 'wall is fallen [walls fell], 'that happened in this flood, and not for (on account of) my blood.' " This water was 'all carried off [done away, after Merlin his sentence]; 'the kings men were glad, great was the bliss before the monarch, and soon thereafter they were sorry; ere the day came to *an* end, *strange* tidings they heard. When the water was all carried off, and the pit was empty,' then came out 'these [the] two dragons, and made great din, and fought fiercely down in the dyke. Never saw any man any loathlier fight; 'flames of fire [fiery sparks] flew from their mouth! The 'monarch [king] saw this [fight], 'their

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fures leomē.	furie gledes.
þis ifah þe leodking :	þis fiht ifah þe king :
grimme heore lates.	
þa wes he awundred :	and awondrede him.
on þiffere wurlde-riche.	
what weore þif tacninge :	
þa he ifah þer on grunde.	
& hu Mærlin hit wufte :	hou Merlȳn hit wufte :
þat nan oðer mon nufte.	þat non noþer nufte.
Ærest wes þe white buuen :	10 Erest waf þe wite boue :
& feoððen he wes bi-neoðen.	and fupþe he was bi-neoþe.
& þe drake ræde :	and þe drake reade :
for-wundede hine to dæðe.	for-wondede him to deaþe.
and æiðer wende to his hole :	and aiþer wende to his hole :
ne ifæh heom feoððe na mon i-	ne feah ham fupþe no man ibore.
þus ferden þeof þīg :	[boren. þus ferde þis þing :
þat ifah Vortig ⁹ ne þe king.	þat i-fah Vortiger þe king.
Ad alle þe weoren mid him :	And alle his iveren :
luueden fwiðe Mærlin.	and ¹ lofuede fwiþe Merlȳn.
& þe king hatede Joram :	20 and þe king hatede Joram :
& his hæfed hī binam.	and his hefued him bi-nom.
& his feouene iuerē :	and alle his iveres :
þe mid him weoren þære.	þat mid him þare were.

grim gestures'; 'then was he astonished [and wondered him] 'in this worlds-realm, what this tokening were, that he saw there at *the* bottom, and' how Merlin knew it, that no other 'man' knew. First was the white above, and afterwards he was beneath, and the red dragon wounded him to death; and either went to his hole,—no man born saw them afterwards! Thus fared this thing that Vortiger the king saw. And all 'that were with him [his companions] loved Merlin greatly; and the king hated Joram, and deprived him of his head, and [all] his 'seven' comrades that with him were there. The king went to *his* house, and led Merlin with

¹ Redundant?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

To telde eode þe king :
 & mid him lædde Mærlin.
 & seide him mid mucle luue :
 Mærling þu ært wilcume.
 & ich þe ȝiuē wulle :
 al þ þu ȝirneft.
 of mine londe :

of feoluere & of golde.

He wende þurh Mærlin :

þ lond al iwinne.

ah al oðer hit wende :

ær comen þes daies ende.

þus fræinede þe king :

his leofe freond M⁹lin.

Sæie me nu M⁹lin :

monnen me leofueft.

what bitacnieð þa draken : ^[f. 92. c. 1.]

þe þene dune makeden.

þe fstan & þat water :

& þat wundreliche¹ fæht.

fæie me ȝif þi wil is :

whæt bitacneð al þis.

& feoððen þu moft me ræden :

To telde eode þe kinge :

and ladde mid him Merlȳn.

ant tahte him moche lofue :

Merlȳn þou hart wilcome.

He wende þorh Merlȳn :

al þat lond awinne.

ac al oþer hit iwarþ :

fone þar hafter.

þo faide þe king :

Leoue freond Merlȳn.

wat bi-tocneþ þaie drakef :

þat þane dune makede.

and þe fton : and þat water :

and þaie fstronge fihtes.

sai me of þin willes :

wat bi-tokcneþ al þis.

And supþe þou moft me reade :

him, and 'said to [bestowed on] him 'with' much love : "Merlin, thou art welcome, 'and I will give thee all that thou desirest, of my land, of silver and of gold.'" He weened through Merlin to win all the land, but it happened 'all otherwise' ere the days end came [soon thereafter]. The king 'thus asked his [then said :] dear friend Merlin, " 'Say me now, Merlin, man to me dearest,' what betoken the dragons that made the din, [and] the stone, and the water, and the 'wondrous fight [strong combats] ? Say me, 'if thy will is [of thy will], what betokeneth all this ? And afterwards thou must counsel me how I shall guide me, and how I may win my

¹ wundeliche *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hu ich ſcal me læden.
 & hu ich mai biwinne ⁊
 kinedō minne.
 of Hengeſt mineſ wiues fader ⁊
 þe ſwiðe me hæfð ihærmed.
 þa andſwarede Merlin ⁊
 þane kinge þe ſpac wið him.
 King þu ært unwiſ ⁊
 & vnwiter a ræde.
 þu fræineſt of þan draken ⁊ 10
 þe þene dune makeden.
 & whæt tacned heore fiht ⁊
 & heore feondliche gripē.
 Heo tacneð kinges ⁊
 þa funde to cumene.
 & heore fiht & heore uare ⁊
 & heore uæi uolc.
 Ah ȝif þu weore ſwa wiſ mō ⁊
 & ſwa witter a þoncke.
 þat þu fræinedeſt me ⁊ 20
 of feole þine forȝen.
 of þire mucle kare ⁊
 þa þe iſ to cumene.
 ich þe wolde fuggen ⁊
 of forȝe þine.

ou ich ſal me leade.
 and hou ich may bi-winne ⁊ [c. 2.]
 kinedom minne.
 of Hengeſt mine wifueſ fader ⁊
 þat ſwiþe me haueþ hi-harmed.
 þo anſwerede Merlȝn ⁊
 to þan king þat ſpac wiþ him.
 King þou hart onwiſ ⁊
 and onwytti of reade.
 þou axeſt of þan drakes ⁊
 þat þane dune makede.
 and wat bi-tokneþ hire fiht ⁊
 and hire grim reſes.
 Hii bi-tokneþ kinges ⁊
 þat ȝet beoþ to comene.

Ac ȝef þou were ſo wiſ man ⁊
 ſo ich wende þat þou were.
 þanne þou woſt axi ⁊
 of þine mochele care.
 and of þine wowe ⁊
 þat þe hiſ to comene.

kingdom from Hengest, my wives father, who hath harmed me greatly." Then answered Merlin to the king that spake with him: "King, thou art unwise, and foolish in counsel; thou askest of the dragons that made the din, and what 'betokened [betokeneth] their fight, and their fierce assaults? They betoken kings that [yet] are to come, 'and their fight, and their adventure, and their fated folk!' But if thou wert so wise a man, 'and so prudent in thought, that thou haddest inquired of me [as I weened that thou wert, then thou wouldest ask] of thy 'many sorrows, [great care, and] of thy 'great care [woe], that is to come to thee, 'I would say to thee of thy sorrow.' " Then 'quoth [said] Vortiger the king: "Dear friend Merlin,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

*Vortiger.*þa quað Vortig⁹ þe king :

Leofue freond Merling.

fæie me of þan þinge :

þe me to cumen fonden.

Bluðeliche quad¹ Mærlin :

baldere stefne.

ich þe wulle fuggen :

ah æuere hit wule þe³ reouwen.

king king bi-fiȝ þe :

forȝen þe bið ȝeueðe.

of Coſtantineſ cunne :

hiſ beſ þu aqualdeſt.

[c. 2.]

þu letteſt flæn Coſtanz :

þe weſ king a þiſ lond.

þu letteſt þine Peohteſ :

hine ladliche biſwiken.

þer uore þu ibideſt :

alre baluwene mæſt.

Seoððen þu tuȝen uuenon þe :

uncuðe leoden.

20

Sax[es.]

Saxeſ to lōde :

þer uore þu wurðeſt to ſcōde.

Nu beoð of Brutaine :

þo faide Vortiger þe king :

Leoue freōd Merlȝn.

ſai me of þan þinge :

þat me beoþ to comende.

Blopetliche cwaþ Merlȝn² :

ich þe wolle ſegge :

ac euere hit wole þe reuwe.

king king bi-feh þe :

forwe þe hiſ ȝefue.

of Coſtantineſ cunne :

hiſ ſone þou acweldeſt.

þou letteſt flea Coſtance :

þe king of þiſſe londe.

þar vore þou ibideſt :

alre care meſt.

Suþþe þou drohe to þe :

vncouþe leode.

Saxeſ to londe :

þar þou bideſt ſcōde.

Nou beoþ of Brutteſ :

say me of the things that are to come to me." "Blithely," quoth Merlin, 'with bold voice,' "I will say to thee; but ever it will thee rue. King, king, be-see thee (see to thyself), sorrow is to thee given of Constantines kin!—his son thou killedest; thou causedest Constance to be slain, 'who was [the] king 'in [of] this land; 'thou causedst thy Peohtes to betray (or destroy) him basely'; therefore thou shalt suffer 'sorrows [care] most of all! Afterwards thou drewest 'upon [to] thee foreign people, *the Saxons to this land*; therefore thou shalt 'be destroyed [suffer destruction]! Now are *the*

¹ quað?² A line seems here wanting.³ Interlined, man. sec.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

beornes ariued.	cnihtef ariued.	
hit his Aurilien & Vther :	þat his Aurelie and Vther :	<i>Auril[ie.]</i>
nu þu ært þær of war.	nou þou hart þar of iwar.	<i>Vthe[r.]</i>
heo cumeð to-mærzen fuliwis :	hii comeþ to-morwe foliwis :	[f. 75 ^b .c.1.]
i þif lond at Tottenæs.	at Dertemuþ in Totenas.	
ich do þe wel to witene :	ich do þe wel to iwite :	
mid feouen hundred ſcipene.	mid ſceoue hundred fipes.	
& nu heo inne fæ :		
fælieð biliue.		[idon :
þu haueſt heom muchel uuel idon :	þou haueſt heom mochel harm	
and nu þu moſt þat lað on-fon. 11	and nou þou moſt þat onder-fon.	
þu haueſt a ba halue :		
bone þe þe þencheð.		
þine ifan þe biuoren :	for nou þine fon þe beoþ bi-vore :	
& þine ifeond bæften.	and eke bi-hinde.	
Ah flih flih þinne wæi :		
& burh þine life.		
& fleo þider þe þu fleo :	fleo woder þat þou fleo :	
heo þe wulleð after teon.	hii þeo wollep after teo.	
Ambroſie Aurilien :	20 And þe eldre broþer :	
he hæued ¹ æreſt þifne kinedon ² .	worþ king bi-vore þan oþer.	
ah he þurh atterne drench :	ac he þorh hatterne drench :	
dæð ſcal iþolien.	deap fal þolie.	

'barons [knights] of 'Britain [Britons] arrived; 'it [that] is, Aurelie and Uther,—now thou art thereof aware;—they shall come tomorrow, full truly, 'in this land at [at Dartmouth in] Totnes, I do thee well to wit, with seven hundred ships; 'and now they sail speedily in *the* sea.' Thou hast much 'evil [harm] done to them, and now thou must 'the harm [that] receive; 'thou hast on both sides bane that to thee shall seem'; [for now] thy foes [are] before thee, and 'thy enemies [eke] behind. 'But flee, flee thy way, and save thy life,—and' flee whither that thou fleest, they will pursue after thee! 'Ambrosie Aurelie he shall have first this kingdom [And the elder brother

¹ hæueð?

R. kinedom

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& feoððen ſcal Vther Pendragō ⁊ and ſuppe ſal Vther Pendragun ⁊	
habben þeſne kinedom.	habbe þiſne kinedom.
ah þi cun hine ſcal ⁊	ac þi cun hine ſal ⁊
mid attere aqllē.	mid hatter acwelle.
ah ær he dæd ¹ þolie ⁊	ac her he deþ þolie ⁊
he ſcæl dune makien.	he ſal dune makie.
Vther ſcal habben ænne fune ⁊	Vther ſal habbe one ſone ⁊
of Cornwaille he ſcal cumen.	þat ſal vt of Cornwale come.
þat beoð a wilde bar ⁊ [f.92 ^b .c.1.]	alſe hit were a wilde bor ⁊
iburſtled mid ſtele.	10 ibruſtled mid ſtele.
þe bar ſcal for-bærnen ⁊	þe bor ſal for-bearne ⁊
hæh3e þa burh3es.	ſwiþe he3e borewes.
he ſcal alle þa ſwiken ⁊	
ſwenien mid ei3e.	
he ſcal al þi riche cun ⁊	
mid witen aquellen.	
he bið ſwiðe oht mon ⁊	
& aðele an þonke.	
heonenæ into Rome ⁊	hinene to Rome ⁊
rixleð þeos ilke.	20 folle rixlȝ his domes.
ſcal he alle his feond ⁊	he ſal alle his fon ⁊
fallen to grunde.	falle to þan grunde.
Soð ich habbe þe ifæid ⁊	Soþ ich habbe þe iſeid ⁊
ah nis þe na þe ſoftre.	ac nis þe noht þe ſoftere ² .

shall be king before the other]; but he through draught of poison shall suffer death. And afterwards shall Uther Pendragon have this kingdom; but thy kin shall kill him with poison; but ere he suffer death, he shall din (contest) make. Uther shall have a son, [out] of Cornwall 'he [that] shall come, 'that shall be [as it were] a wild boar, bristled with steel; the boar shall consume 'the [most] noble burghs; 'he shall destroy (*or* devour) all the traitors with authority; he shall kill with death all thy rich kindred; he shall be man most brave, and noble in thought'; hence 'in' to Rome 'this same [his authority] shall rule; all his foes he shall fell to [the] ground. Sooth I have said

¹ deað?² ſoftere?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ah flih mid þine verde :

for wēde woder þou wende :

þine iuon þe cumeð to herede¹. þine dazes beoþ at þe ende.

þa aswac worden :

Merlin þe wife.

& þe king lette blawen :

þreottene bemen.

& forð mid his ferde :

þe king mid his ferde :

feodliche² swiðe.

forþ wende fwiþe.

Nes þer uorð rihtes :

Nas þar soþ riht :

bute uirft of ane nihte. 10

bote forst of on niht.

þat comen þa broðere :

þat comen þe broþers :

beien to-fome³.

beine to-gadere.

to fæ strōde ful iwis :

to féé stronde foliwis :

at Dertenemuðe i Totenas.

at Dertemuþe in Totenas. [c. 2.] [To]ttenas.

þis iherden Bruttes :

þis i-horde Bruttes :

& weoren bliðe ful iwis.

and weren bliþe foliwis.

heo drozen ut of þan wuden :

hii drozen vt of þe wodes :

& of þan wulderne.

and of þe wilderne.

bi fixti & bi fixti :

bi fixti bi hundredes :

& bi feouen hundred. 20

bi þrit⁴ & bi þritti :

and bi mani þufendef.

& bi feole þufend.

þa heo comen to-fomne :

to thee, but *it* is not to thee the softer ;—‘but flee with thine host, thy foes come to thee to *thy* court [for go whither thou goest, thy days are at the end]!’ ‘Then Merlin the wise ceased *his* words, and’ the king ‘caused thirteen trumpets to be blown, and’ marched forth with his army ‘exceeding’ quickly. There was not ‘forth-right [right sooth] but space of one night, that the brothers came, both together, to *the* sea-strand full truly, at Dartmouth in Totnes. *The* Britons heard this, and were full surely blithe ; they drew *themselves* out of the woods, and *out* of the wilderness, by sixty, ‘and by sixty, and’ by ‘seven hundred [hundreds], ‘by thirty, and

¹ *At first written* hirede.² feondliche ?³ to-fomne ?⁴ þritti ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ful fel hit heo þuhte.

þa broðerē to þiffen ærde :'

brohten vnimete verde.

& her comen heom bi-uoren :

balde þas Bruttes.

vnimete uolc :

al hit wræc þa wolde.

þæ ær weoren ȝeond wudes :

wunderliche to-dreued.

þurh þene muchelne æie :'

[c. 2.]

and þurh þe muclen ærmðe. 11

& þurh þene mucle hærm :

þa Hengeſt heom wrohte.

& hafde alle heore hæfd-men :

mid cniuen amurðerd.

mid fæxen to-ſnæððe² :

ſnelle þe þeines.

Bruttes heolden huſtīg :

mid heȝe wiſdome.

heo nomen Aurilien :

20

þene ældre broder anan.

inne hæȝe huſtinge :

And¹ broþers to þiſ erþe :

brohte moche ferde :

and her com heom bi-vore :

mani bolde Bruttes.

þat hadde ȝam lang ihudde :

for Hēgeſtes eye.

And þo hii heolde ſpeche :

mid mochele wiſdome.

and nemen Aurelien :

þan eldre broþer anon.

and to-fore alle þing :

by thirty,' and by many thousands,—'when they came together, full good it seemed to them!' [And] the brothers brought to this land a 'numerous [great] host; and here came before them 'these [many] bold Britons, a numerous folk, 'who would it all avenge,' that 'ere were over *the* woods wondrously scattered [had long hid themselves], 'through the mickle dread, and through the great misery, and through the mickle harm that Hengest wrought them [for dread of Hengest], 'and *who* had murdered all their chief men with knives, with sæxes cut in pieces the good thanes!' 'The Britons [And then they] held 'husting [conference] with great wisdom; 'they [and] took anon Aurelie, the elder brother, 'in *the* noble husting, and raised [before all things made] him to *be* king. Then

¹ And þe?² to-ſnæððe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and heouen hine to kinge.

þa weoren Bruttes :

mid bliffe auulled.

bliðe an mode :

þæ ær weoren murne.

Comen þas tiðende :

to Vortigerne þan kinge.

þat Aurilien wes icoren :

ād to kinge iheouen.

þa wes Vortig⁹ wa :

& æft him wes wurfe.

Vortiger uerde :

ver to ane caſtle.

Genoire hæhte :

hæh an ane munte.

Cloard hæhte þe munt :

and Hærgin hahte þat lond.

on væft Wæie :

þe is a water hende.

Vortigernes men nomen :

al þat heo neh comen.

heo nomen wepnen & mete :

a moni are wiſe.

to þan caſtle heo brohtē :

ſwa muchel ſwa heo rohten.

þat heo inoh hafden :

makede hine to kinge.

þo weren Bruttes :

ſwiþe bliþe foliwiſ.

Come þes tidinge :

to Vortiger þan kinge.

þat Aurelie was ichoſe :

and to kinge ihoue.

þo was him wel wo :

and eft him was worfe.

Vortiger wende :

for to one caſtle.

Genoyre he hehte :

heh vpon an hulle.

Gloarþ hehte þe hul :

and þat lond Hergyn.

Vortigeres men nemen :

al þat hii neh comen.

hii nemen wepne and mete :

mani ane wiſe.

to þan caſtle hit brohte :

Genoire.

Hargin.

were *the* Britons 'filled with bliss, blithe in mood who ere were mournful [most blithe full truly]. These tidings came to Vortiger the king, that Aurelie was chosen and raised to *be* king. Then was 'Vortiger [he well] woe, and eft to him was worse! Vortiger proceeded far to a castle, 'named [it hight] Genoure, [up]on a high 'mount [hill]; Cloard hight the 'mount [hill], and Hergin 'hight' the land, 'near *the* Wye, that is a fair water (stream).' Vortigers men took all that they came nigh; they took weapons and meat, 'on' many a wise; to the castle 'they [it] brought 'as much as they cared for, so that they had enow', though it little helped *them*. Aurelie

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þeh hit lutel hulpe.

þeh hit lute holpe.

Aurilien & Vther :

Aurelie and Vther :

weoren of Vortigerne war.

weren of Vortiger war.

whær he wes uppen Cloward :

þat he was in Gloarþ :

biclufed in castlen.

bi-tuned in an castel.

Heo letten blawē bemen :

bonnien heore uerde. [f. 93. c. 1.]

volc unimete :

of mōi ane londe.

ferden to Genoie :

10 hii to Genoyre wende :

þær læi Vortigerne.

war Vortiger alende. [f. 76. c. 1.]

King wes wið utē :

King was wiþ ine :

king wes wið innē.

king was wiþ houte.

cnihtes þer fuhten :

cnihtes þar fohte :

mid feōdliche ræfen.

mid feondeliche refes.

æuerælc god mō :

gurede hine feolfuen.

þa heo ifezen :

þat heo fiȝen næfdē.

þa to wude wenden :

20 And cnihtes a þan ende :

wunder mucche uerde.

to þan wode wende.

heo uelden þæne wude adun :

hii fulde þane wode adun :

& droȝen to þan castle.

and ladde to þan castle.

& fulden al þæ dic :

and fulde al þan dich :

þe wes wunder ane deop.

anon to þe toppe.

and Uther were aware of Vortiger, 'where [that] he was 'upon [in] 'Cloard, inclosed in [a] castle. They 'caused trumpets to be blown, their host to be assembled,—a numerous folk of many a land,—*they*' marched to Genoure, where Vortiger lay. A king was within, a king was without; knights there fought with fierce encounters; 'every good man made himself ready. When they saw, that they had not *the* victory,' 'then a wondrous great force [And *the* knights at the end] went to [the] wood; they felled the wood down, and drew to the castle, and filled all the dyke, 'that was wondrously deep [anon to the top. And] fire 'they' sent in, on every side, and called to

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Feor¹ heo in fende :
 on æuerælche ende.
 & cleopeden to Vortiger :
 Nu þu scalt þe warmen þer.
 for þu floȝe Coſtanz :
 þe wes king of þiſ lond.
 & ſeoððe Coſtantin hiſ ſune :
 nu iſ Aurilie icumen.
 & Vther hiſ broðer :
 þa þe balu fendeð. 10
 þe wind wæht þat fur :
 þ̃ hit wunderliche born.
 þe caſtel gon to bernē :
 bures þer flælden².
 feollen þa hallen :
 floȝen³ to grunde.
 Ne mihten þer na cniht :
 aȝeines þe fure makien fiht.
 þat fur eode ouer al :
 & barnde huſ & barnde wal. 20
 & þe king Vortig⁹ ne :
 þer inne he gon to berne.
 al hit for-fwælde :
 þat þer inne wonede.

And fur in fende :
 in euereche ende.
 and cleopede to Vortiger :
 Nou þou ſal þe wormie þer.
 þe wind wehte þat fur :
 þat hit wel barnde.
 Ne mihte þar non cniht :
 aȝen þan fure makie fiht.
 þat fur wende oueral :
 and barnde cniht and barnd hal.
 and þe king Vortigerne :
 þar in gan to bearne.
 al hit for-swelde :
 þat þar ine wonede.

Vortiger : "Now thou shalt warm thee there, 'for thou slewest Constance, who was king of this land, and afterwards Constantine his son. Now is Aurelie come, and Uther his brother, who send thee bale!'" The wind wafted the fire, so that it burnt 'wonderfully [well]; 'the castle gan to burn, *the* chambers there were consumed; the halls fell to *the* ground.' Might no man there against the fire make fight (resist); the fire went over all, and burnt 'house [man], and burnt 'wall [hall]; and the king Vortiger therein 'he' gan to burn; all it was consumed that therein dwelt!

¹ Fur?² fwælden?³ folden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid¹ al his mon-uerde.

ȝif me on-fohte him ?

fleon in to Scotte.

ȝat he mihte mid wiȝele ?

ȝanene atwinden.

ȝif he ne mihte i ȝan londe ?

uor Aurilie at-ftode².

Aurilie ferde uorð :

& droh his folc riht norð.

mid alle his imihte :

fulle feouen nihte.

Bruttes weoren balde :

& rehten ouer walde.

ȝa hafde Aurilien :

vnimete uerde.

he funde weſt lond :

leoden of-flæȝene.

chiriches fur-bārde³ :

Bruttes for-fwæled.

ȝa ſæide Aurilie ȝe king :

Bruttene deorlīg.

ȝif ich mot ibiden :

ȝ ich aȝæ ride.

10 mid al his mihte : [c.2.]

folle fouenihte.

Bruttes weren bolde :

and rehten ouer wolde.

ȝo hafde Aurelie :

onimete verde.

he funde in weſt.lond :

ȝe chnihtes iflawe.

and ȝe chirches alle :

icaſt to ȝan grunde.

20 ȝo ſaide Aurelie ȝe king :

Bruttene deorlīg.

would, with all his army, if men pursued him, flee into Scotland, so that he might thence with guile escape, if he might not for Aurelie remain in the land. Aurelie marched forth, and led his host right north,' with all his might, full a se'nnight. *The* Britons were bold, and proceeded over *the* weald. Then had Aurelie a numerous force; he found [in] ravaged land, [the] people slain, [and all the] churches 'burnt [cast to the ground], 'and the Britons consumed.' Then said Aurelie the king, Britains darling: "If I might 'abide, that I should back ride; and *if the* Lord it will, who shaped

¹ The last letter of mid is by second hand, sup. ras.² at-ftonde?³ for-barnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& hit wulle drihte :

þe scop þes dazes lihte.

þat ich mote mid ifunde :

biȝite mine ikunde.

chirchen ich wulle arære :

& god ich wulle hærē.

ich wulle alche cnihte :¹ [f.93^b.c.1.]

ȝeuē his irihte.

& auer ælche beorne :

þan ælden & þan ȝungē. 10

ich wulle milden wurðen¹ :

ȝif godd me wule ivnnæ :

min æðel to biwinnen.

To Hengefte comen tidende :

of Aurilie þan kinge.

þa spac Hengeft :

cnihtē alre fwikeleſt.

Hærcneð nu mi men : 20

monſcipe eou is ȝiueðe.

her cumeð Aurilie :

& Vther his broðer eke.

heo bringeð swiðe muchel folc :

ȝef ich mote mid ifunde :

bi-ȝete mine cunde.

cherchef ich wolle a-rere :

and god ich wolle herie.

ich wolle eche cnihte :

ȝeuen his rihte.

To Hengeft com tydinge :

of Aurelie þan kinge.

þat he brohte ferde :

of onimete folke.

þo spac Hengeft :

and leorede his cnihtes.

Hercneþ nou mine men :

wat ich ou wolle cuþe.

her comeþ Aurelie and Vther :

the day-light, that I might ' in safety obtain my right (*or* country), churches I will arear, and God I will worship. I will give to each man his right, ' and to every person, the old and the young, I will be gracious, if God will grant to me my land to win ! ' Tidings came to Hengest of Aurelie the king, [that he brought *an* army of innumerable folk]. Then spake Hengest, 'most treacherous of all knights, [and instructed his knights]: "Hearken now, my men,—'honor to you is given [what I will make known to you],—here cometh Aurelie, and Uther ' eke, his brother ; they bring very much

¹ *A line seems here wanting, and an attempt seems to have been made to insert i before wurðen.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ah alle heo beoð fæie.	and beie hii beoþ feaȝe.
For vnwis if þe king :	For onwis his þe king :
fwa beoð his cnihtes.	
& a cnaue is his broðer :	fo his his broþer :
þe an alfe þe oðer.	
þer fore mazen Bruttes :	þar fore mazen Bruttes :
beon muchele þe vnbaldur.	beo þe onbaldere.
þenne þat hæfd is unwræst :	wan þat heued his onwrest :
þe hælp ¹ is þæ wurfe.	þe heop his þe worfe.
& wel ȝe hit mazen imunen :	10
þat ich wulle mæinen.	
betere beoð ure fifti :	and betere beoþ vre fifti :
þænne heore fif ² hundred.	þane hire fif hūdred.
þat heo feole fiðen :	þat hii fale fiþe :
ifonded habbeoð.	habbeþ i-funde.
seoððen heo an londe :	
fōdeden leoden.	
For cuð hit if wide :	
of ure wiðer-deden.	
þ̅ we beoð kempen :	20
icud mid þan bezften.	
We scullen aȝen heom ftonden :	We folle aȝen heom-ftonde :
& driuen heom of londen.	and driuen of londe.
and walden þas riche :	and welde þeos riche :

folk,' 'but all [and both] they are fated ! For the king is unwise, 'so are his knights, and' 'a knave [so] is his brother, 'the one as the other'; therefore may Britons be 'much' the un-bolder; when the head (leader) is bad, the heap (multitude) is the worse. And 'well ye may it remember, what I will say'; better are fifty of us, than of them five hundred,—that they many times have found, 'since they in land sought *the* people. For known it is wide, of our bold feats, that we are chosen warriors with the best !' We shall against them stand, and drive them from land, and possess this realm

¹ hæp ?² *Sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

after ure iwille.	after oure wille.
þuſ bæle Hængeſt :'	þuſ þe fwikele Hengeſt :'
cnihten alre hændeſt.	
balde hiſ ferde :'	baldede hiſ cnihtes.
þer heo weſ an felde.	
ah oðer weies hire ¹ waſ idiht :'	[c. 2.] ac oþer weyef hit waſ idiht :'
ær com̄ ſeouen niht.	here come þe dai a foueniht. [f. 7
Forð comen þa tiðide :'	Com þe tidinge :'
	c. 1.
Aurilie. to Aurilie þan kinge.	to Aurelie þan kinge.
whær Hengeſt wunede :'	10 war Hengeſt a-bod :'
buuen are munede.	vpon ane munede.
Aurilien haſde to iuerē :'	And Aurelie mid hiſ ferde :'
þritti þuſend rideren.	to him wende ſwiþe.
balðere ² Brutten :'	
þe heore beot makeden.	
& æc he haſde Walifce :'	
wunder ane monie.	
þa lette he hiſ cnihtes :'	
dæies & nihtes.	
æuere beon iwepned :'	20
alfe heo to wiþe ſcolden.	
for auere he care haſde :'	
of heðene uolke.	
þa iherde Hengeſt :'	An þat ihorde Hengeſt :'

after our will." Thus 'hold [the traitorous] Hengest, 'fairest of all knights,' emboldened his 'host [knights], 'where he was in field,' but otherwise it was disposed ere came [the day a] se'nnight. 'Forth' came the tidings to Aurelie the king, where Hengest abode upon a mount. 'Aurelie had for companions thirty thousand riders, bold Britons, who made their threat; and eke he had Welsh, wondrously many. Then caused he his knights to be ever weaponed, day and night, as *if* they should *go* to battle; for ever he had care of *the* heathen folk. [And Aurelie with his host marched quickly towards

¹ hit?² baldere?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat Aurilien wes on uaft.

nom he hiſ ferde :

& fuſde him to-ȝaines.

þa wes Aurilie wær :

þat Hengeſt wolde cumē þær.

he uærde in ane velde :

wel iwepned under ſcelde.

nom he forð rihtes :

ten þuſend cnihtes.

þa weoren beſt iboren :

& of hiſ ferde coren.

& fetten heom a þan felde :

auoten under ſcelde.

Ten þuſend Walifce :

he to wude fende.

ten þuſend Scottes :

he fende bi-halues.

þe hæðene to imete :

bi ſtizen & by ſtraten.

him ſeolf he nom hiſ eorles :

& hiſ aðele kempes.

& hiſ holdeſte men :

þa he hæfde an londe.

& makede hiſ ſceld-trame :

ſwulc hit weoren an hæſ wude.

þat Aurelie was aneweſt.

nam he hiſ ferde :

and wende him to-ȝenes.

þo was Aurelie war :

þat Hengeſt wolde come þar.

he wende in one felde :

wel iwepnid onder ſealde.

Ten þuſend Walſe :

he to wode fende.

ten þuſend Scottes :

he fende bi-halues.

þe heapeſe to mete :

bi weieſ and bi ſtrede.

him ſeolf he nam hiſ eorles :

and hiſ ſtronge cnihtes.

and makede one ſoltrome :

aſe hit were a wilde wode.

him.] 'When [And] Hengeſt heard [that,] that Aurelie was near, he took his army, and marched againſt him. When Aurelie was aware that Hengeſt would come there, he went into a field, well weaponed under ſhield; 'he took forth-right ten thouſand knights, that were *the* beſt born and choſen of hiſ force, and ſet them in the field, on foot under ſhield.' Ten thouſand Welſh he ſent to *the* wood; ten thouſand Scots he ſent aſide, to meet the heathens by ways and by ſtreets; himſelf he took hiſ earls and hiſ 'good warriors [ſtrong knights], 'and hiſ faithfulleſt men, that he had in land,' and made 'hiſ [a] ſhield-troop, as it were a wild wood; five thouſand there

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Aldolf.

fiſ þuſend þer riden :

þa ſculden al þiſ folc biwiten.

þa cleopede¹ Aldolf :

eorl of Glouceſtre.

ȝiſ hit me on drihte :

þe alle domes waldeð.

þat ich mote ibide :

þat Hængeſt cume riden.

þa iſ a þiſſen londe :

ſwa longe atſtōde.

& biſwac mine leofe freondes :

mid longe hiſ ſæxes.

biſidē Ambereſburi :

mid ærmliche witē.

Ah ȝiſ ich mihte of þan eorlē :

þ̃ aðel me bi-winnen.

þenne mihte ich fuggen :

soð quides mine.

þ̃ me haſde godd ſeolf :

godes iunnen.

ȝiſ ich mine iſan :

fallen to grunde anan.

& wræken mi deore cun :

fiſ þouſend þar ride :

þat ſolde þiſ folk wel bi-wite.

þo ſaide Aldolf :

eorl of Glouceſtre.

ȝiſ hit wole drihte :

þat al domes weldeþ.

þat ich mai enȝ fiht :

of Hengeſt habbe.

he ſolde bitere a-bugge :

al hiſ ſtronge gile.

[f. 94. c. 1.]

10

20

rode, who should 'all' this folk [well] defend. Then 'called [said] Aldolf, earl of Gloucester, "If *the* Lord, that ruleth all dooms, 'grant it *to* me [will it], that I 'might abide, that Hengest should come riding, [may have any fight with Hengest, he should *the* better buy (atone for) all his strong guile!"] 'who has in this land so long remained, and betrayed (*or* destroyed) my dear friends with his long sæxes beside Ambresbury, with miserable death! But if I might of the earl win to me the country; then might I say my sooth words, that God *himself* had granted good to me, if I might fell my foes to ground anon, and avenge my dear kindred, whom they have laid adown!"'

¹ The last syllable *de* is interlined, but by the original hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat heo habbeoð ilæid adū.

Vn-neæðe wes þis spel :

ifæid to þā ende.

þa ifezen heo Hængeft :

haldē ouer dune.

Mid vnimete ferdē :

feondliche heo fufden.

to-fomne heo comen :

& feondliche heo flozen.

þer þa ræze men :

10

to-gæderen heom ræfden.

helmes gunnen gullen :

cnihtes þer feollen.

stel eode wið þā ban :

balu þer wes riue.

urnen inne ftrete :

ftremes of blode.

fazedē þa feldes :

& þ̅ graf falewede.

þa ifeh Hængeft :

20

þ̅ his help trukede.

þa hald he fram fæhte :

& bi-halues flæh.

& his folc after :

fufde bi-liue.

Onneþe waf þat word :

ifaid to þan ende.

þat hine hii ifehze :

holde ouer dune.

mid onimete ferde :

feondliche he fufde.

To-gadere fone hii come :

and fasteliche hii floze.

healmes þar gonne zelle : [c. 2.]

cnihtes þar fulle.

vrne in þan wayef :

ftremes of blode.

þo ifeh Hengeft :

þat his healp trokede.

þo fleah he fwiþe :

and his folk after.

Scarcely was 'this speech [the word] said to the end, that they saw 'Hengest [him] approach over *the* down. With *a* numerous host 'they [he] fiercely marched; together [soon] they came, and terribly they slew; 'there the stern men together rushed themselves,' helms [there] gan resound, knights there fell; 'steel went against the bones, mischief there was rife'; streams of blood flowed in [the] ways; 'the fields were dyed, and the grass changed color!' When Hengest saw that his help failed *him*, then 'withdrew [fled] he 'from *the* fight [quickly], 'and fled aside, and his folk after 'speedily moved. The christians pursued after, and laid on them, and called Christ,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa cⁱstine liðen after :

& heom on læidē.

& cleopeden crist godes sone :

beō heom a fultume.

& þe heðene leoden :

æc lude cleopeden.

Teruagant. Ure godd T⁹uagāt :

whi trukest þu us an hond.

þa Hēgest ifæh :

þa hæðene ibuzene.

10

& þa cristine men :

cumen heom an ufene. [c. 2.]

þa fleh Hengef¹ þurh & þurh :

þat he com to Kunigges-burh.

i þare burh he wende :

burh to brukene².

& þe king Aurilien :

and Aurelie him fiwede forþ :

aft⁹ wende anan.

& clepede to his leoden :

ludere stæuene.

20

Ærneð æuere vorð & vorð :

Hengeft if ifaren norð.

& heo him after buzen :

þat heo to burhze comen.

forte hii come to Conines-borh.

Gods son, to be to them in aid; and the heathen people also called loud, "Our God Tervagant, why failest thou us now?" When Hengest saw the heathens recede, and the christian men come upon them, then fled Hengest through and through, until he came to Coningsburgh; in the burgh he went, safety to obtain.' And 'the king' Aurelie 'went after *him* anon [followed him forth], 'and called to his people with loud voice: "Run ever forth and forth! Hengest is gone northwards!" And they pursued after him' until they came to 'the burgh [Coningsburgh]. When Hengest and his son saw

¹ *R.* Hengeft.² *breokene man pr.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa ifæh Hēgeft & his fune :
 al þa uerde heom after cumen.
 þa fæide Hengeft :
 cnihten alre wraðeft.
 Nulle ich na mare fleon :
 ah nu ich wulle fihten.
 & mi fune Octa :
 & hif wed-broðer Ebiffa.
 & al mi mon-uerde :
 fturieð eouwer wepnen.
 & fare we heom to-3ænes :
 & makien feond flæhtes.
 & 3if we hom ne falleð :
 þænne beon we fæie.
 ilæid on felde :
 & freōde bidælde.

Hengeft bah a þene wald :
 & bilæfde al hif teld.
 & makede his fceld-trume :
 al of his hæðene gumen.
 þa com Aurilie þe king :
 & moni þufend mid him.
 and bigūnen þer oðer fæht :
 þe wes feondliche ftærc.
 þer wes moni græt dunt :

þo ifeh Hengeft and his fone :
 þe ferde after 3eom come.
 þo faide Hengeft :
 cniht alre wroþeft.
 Nelle ich na more fleon :
 ac nou ich wolle fihte.
 and min fone Octa :
 and his wedbroþer Ebyffa.
 And alle mine cnihtes :
 ftorieþ 3oure wepne.
 and wende we heom to-3eanes :
 and make we ftonge fleahfes.
 Hii wende in to þan felde :
 and lete ftonde hire teldef.
 and makede hire fultrome :
 of his heapene gomes.
 þar com Aurelie þe king :
 and mani þoufend mid him.
 and bi-gonne þare to fihte :
 mid folle 3ornefte.

'all' the host come after them, then said Hengest, of all knights wrathest,
 "Will I no more flee, but now I will fight, and my son Octa, and his wed-
 brother Ebissa! And all my 'army [knights], stir *ye* your weapons, and
 march we against them, and make [we] strong slaughter! 'And if we
 fell them not, then be we dead, laid on *the* field, and deprived of friends!'"
 'Hengest [They] marched 'on [into] the 'weald [field], and 'left all his [let
 stand their] tents; and made 'his [their] shield-troop 'all' of his heathen
 men. Then came Aurelie the king, and many thousands with him, and be-
 gan there 'another [to] fight, 'that was exceeding strong [in full earnest];

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

idæld i þan compe.

þer weoren þa cristine :

wel neh ouer-cumene.

þa comen þer uaren :

fif þuſēd rideren.

þa Aurilie hafde :

an horſe to fihten.

heo ſmiten a þan hæðene :

þ̅ heo adun helden.

þer wes feht ſwiðe ſtor :

eorneſt ful ſturne.

I þan fæhte com the eorl :

Aldolf of Gloucecre¹. [f.94^b.c.1.]

& ifunde Hengeſt :

cnihten for-cuððeſt.

whar he feōdliche faht :

& þa cristine feolde.

Aldolf his gode ſweord adroh :

& uppen Hengeſt floh. [uoren :

& Hengeſt warp þene ſceld bi-

& ælles weoren hiſ lif for-loren.

& Aldolf ſmat i þene ſceld :

þat he atwa to-ſcænde.

þare weren þe cristene :

wel neh ouer-come.

þo com þar to helpe :

fif þuſend ridares.

and ſmite amāg þan heaþene :

þat hii to grūde folle.

In þan fihte com þe eorl :

Aldolf ihote.

and ifunde Hengeſt :

cnihte forcoupeſt.

war he ȝeorne faht :

and þe cristene fulde. [f.77.c.1.]

Aldolf his ſweord droh :

and toward Hengeſt he ſmot. [vore :

and Hengeſt warp þane ſceald bi-

and helles he hadde be for-lore.

and Aldolf ſmot in þane ſceald :

þat he atwo to-feolde.

‘there was many great stroke dealt in the combat!’ There were the christians well nigh overcome. Then ‘approached there [came there to help] five thousand riders, ‘that Aurelie had on horse to fight’; ‘they [and] smote ‘on [among] the heathens, so that they ‘down [to ground] fell; ‘there was fight most strong, combat full stern!’ In the fight came the earl Aldolf ‘of Gloucester [named], and found Hengest, wickedest of knights, where he fought fiercely, and felled the christians. Aldolf drew his ‘good’ sword, and ‘upon [toward] Hengest [he] smote; and Hengest cast the shield before *him*, and else ‘were his life [had he been] destroyed; and Aldolf smote on the shield, so that it was shivered in two. And

¹ R. Gloucestre.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& Hengeft hī leop to :
 swulc hit a liun weore.
 & fmat an Aldolfes helm :
 ꝥ he atwa to-feol.
 ꝥa heowen heo mid fweorde :
 ꝥa fwipen weorē grimme.
 fur flæh of ftele :
 ofte & wel ilome.
 Vnder are ftunde :
 ꝥa leop Aldolf to [grunde]. 10
 & ifæh him Gorlois :
 ꝥat wæs a kene gūe ful iwis.
 of Cornwale he wes eorl :
 he wes widene cuð.
 ꝥa wes ꝥæ beorn Aldolf :
 muclele ꝥe balder.
 & hæf hæhȝe his sweord :
 & lette hit adun fwippen.
 & fmat Hengeft a ꝥan hond :
 ꝥ he forlette his brond. 20
 &¹ hiȝinge hine igrap :
 mid grimme his læchen.
 bi ꝥere burne hode :

and Hengeft him leop to :
 afe hit a lȝon were.
 and fmot vp Aldolf his helm :
 ꝥat he atwo to-fcende.
 Vnder one ftūde :
 ꝥo leop Aldolf to grunde.
 and ifeh bi him Gorloȝs :
 ꝥat was a kene cniht foliwis.
 eorl of Cornwale :
 wel wide icnowe.
 ꝥo was Aldolf :
 moche ꝥe boldere.
 and heȝe hefde his fweorde :
 and hit adū swipte.
 and fmot Hengeft a ꝥan hond :
 ꝥat he for-let his gode bronde.
 and an hiȝenge hine i-grop :
 bi ꝥan brunie hode :

Hengest leapt to him, as *if* it were a lion, and smote [up]on 'Aldolfs [Aldolf his] helm, so that it parted in two. 'Then hewed they with swords,—the strokes were grim,—fire flew from *the* steel, oft and well frequent!' After a time, then leapt Aldolf to *the* ground, and saw [by] him Gorlois, who was a keen 'man [knight] full truly; of Cornwall 'he was' earl, 'he was [well] widely known. Then was 'the baron' Aldolf much the bolder, and heaved high his sword, and 'let it down swing [swung it down], and smote Hengest on the hand, so that he let go his [good] brand; and in haste grasped him, 'with his grim looks,' by the cuirasses hood 'that was

¹ And an?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa wes an hif hafde.

& mid muchelere strengðe :

hine adun fwipte.

and seoððe he hine up bræid :

swulc he hine to-breken wolde.

& mid ærmen hine biſprædde :

& forð hine lædde.

Nu wes Hengeſt inumen :

þurh Aldolf þene æhte gume.

þæ cleope Aldolf :

þene eorl of Glouceſtre. [c. 2.]

Hengeſt n^o þe noht ſwa murie :

ſwa þe wes bi Ambrefburie.

þer þu þa ſæxef droȝen :

and Bruttes of-floȝen.

mid mid² muchele ſwike-dome :

þu mi cun floȝe.

Nu þu ſcalt læn leofen :

& loſie þine freonden.

mid reoliche witen :

an worlde forwurðen.

Hengeſt eode ſtille :

ne iſæh he help nenne.

and mid mochele ſtrengþe :

hine adun fwipte.

and ſupþe hine vp bræid :

aſe he hine breke wolde.

and his harmes ſpradde :

and forþ mid him ladde.

Nou was Hengeſt inome :

þorh Hengeſt¹ þan hohte gome.

þo ſaide Aldolf :

eorl of Glouceſtre.

Hengeſt niſ þe noht ſo muri :

aſe þe was wile bi Amberefbury.

þar þou þe ſæxef droȝe : [c. 2.]

and min cun of-floȝe.

Hengeſt eode ſtille :

ne likede noht his wille.

on his head,' and with great strength struck him down; and then 'he' him up drew, as *if* he would crush him, and 'with [his] arms' embraced him [spread], and forth [with] him led. Now was Hengest taken, through Aldolf, the brave man! Then 'called [said] Aldolf, 'the' earl of Gloucester: "Hengest, *it* is not so merry for thee *now* as *it* was [whilom] by Ambresbury, where thou drewest the sæxes, and slew *the* Britons [my kindred], 'with much treachery thou slewest my kindred! Now thou shalt pay retribution, and lose thy friends; with cruel death perish in *the* world!' " Hengest proceeded still (without speaking); 'he saw no help; [his will

¹ *R.* Aldolf.² *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Aldolf hine ladde :'	and Aldolf hine ladde :'
to his leod-kinge.	to his leod-kinge.
& grætte þene leod-kīg :'	an faide to þan kinge :'
mid leofliche worden.	þeof ilke wordes.
Hail feo þu Aurilien :'	
aðeles cunnes.	
her ich bringe þe biuoren :'	Her ich þe bringe :'
þe wes þines cunnes bone.	þine cunnes bane.
Hengeft þene heðene :'	Hengeft þane heapene :'
þe hærm uf hafueð iuræinned.	þat houre cun acwelde.
godd hit me iuðe :'	
þat ich hine igripen habben.	
Nu ich hine ȝiue þe :'	Nou ich hine ȝeue þe :'
uor monne leofueft ært þu me.	for manne leoueft art þou me.
& þet ¹ þine hired-childeren :'	and let þine hiredmen :'
pleien mid þiffē hunde.	pleoye mid þā hunde.
scotien mid heore flā :'	
& his cun fcenden anan.	
þa andfwarede þe king :'	þo anfwereðe þe king :'
quicliche fteuene.	20 cwickere ftemne.
Edi feo þu Aldolf :'	Wel worþe þe Aldolf :'
eorlene aðeleft.	eorl alre kenneft.
þu ært me leof al fwa mi lif :'	þou art me leof fo mi lif.

liked *it* not, and] Aldolf led him to his sovereign, and 'greeted the sovereign with loving [said to the king these same] words: "'Hail be thou, Aurelie, of noble race!' Here I bring 'before' thee Hengest, the heathen, 'who was' thy kindreds bane, who 'hath sought to us harm [killed our kin]; 'God granted it to me, that I have him grasped!' Now I give him to thee, for dearest of men art thou to me; and let thy attendants play with 'this [the] hound; 'shoot with their arrows, and his race anon destroy!' " Then answered the king with quick voice: "'Blessed be thou [Well worth thee], Aldolf, 'noblest [keenest] of [all] earls! Thou art to

¹ let?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

leoden þu scalt beon alder.

leode þou falt beon louerd.

þer me nom Hengeft :

þar me nam Hengeft :

and þer me bond Hengeft.

þar me bond Hēgeft.

þer wef þa Hengeft :

cnihten alre ȝeomereft.

þis feht wes ouer-cumē :

þis fiht was ouer-come :

& þa hæðene fluzen.

and þe heapene floȝe.

þa ifeh Octa :

þo ifeh Octa :

þat hiſ fader wes ful wa.

þat hiſ fader was wel wo.

& Ebiffa hiſ wed-broðer : [f.95.c.1.]

and Ebyſſa hiſ wedbroþer :

buȝezen heom to-gadere.

11 bouwed heom to-gadere.

& fluzen in to Eouuerwic :

and floȝen into Euerwich :

mid ærmðen inoȝe.

and bi-tunde ȝam faſte.

& greiðeden walles :

to-halden þa halles.

Summe þa hæðene :

Somme þe heapene :

to þan wude iwenden.

to þan wode wende.

þær þ̅ ganninde folc :

þar þat going folk :

læiden heom to grunde.

laide heom to grunde.

þa wes Aurilian þe king :

20 þo was Aurelie þe king :

iquemed wel þurh alle þing.

icwemid þorh alle þing.

he wende in to Cunīges-burh :

he wende to Conines-borh :

mid hiſ driht folke.

mid alle hiſ folke.

& þankede drihten :

me dear as my life, thou shalt be 'chief [lord] of people !' There men took Hengest, 'and' there men bound Hengest ; 'there was then Hengest of all knights most wretched !' This fight was overcome, and the heathens fled. Then saw Octa, that his father was 'full [well] woe ; and *with* Ebissa, his wed-brother, joined them together, and fled into York, 'with harm enow [and inclosed them fast], 'and made ready *the* walls, *and* pulled down the halls.' Some of the heathens went to the wood, where the folk on foot laid them to ground. Then was Aurelie the king pleased 'well' through all things ; he proceeded 'in' to Coningsburgh, with [all] his folk, 'and thanked *the* Lord for such might.' Three days and three nights the king 'dwelt

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

swulchere mihten.

þreo dæies & þreo niht :

þe king wunede þar riht.

to lechinien þa wunden :

of leofenen his cnihtē.

& baðien on burȝe :

heore wærie ban.

þa þe þridde dæi com :

& þat folc hafde imaked non.

þa lette þe king blawen :

& beonnede his eorles.

þa heo comen to huftinge :

to Aurilie þan kinge.

þa heo to-gadere comen :

þe king heom axede fone.

whæt heo him radde :

þ his richemen weoren.

a wulchere witen :

Hengeft scolde for-wurðen.

& hu he mihte bezft wreokē :

his leofuefte freondes.

þe an feft Amberes-buri :

leien bi-buride.

¶ þa stod up Ældad :

þreo dazes and þreo niht :

þe king was þare forþ riht.

to lechnie þe wūdef :

of leoue mine cnihtes. [f. 77^b. c.1.]

þo þe þridde dai com :

and þat folk hadde imaked non.

10 þo lette þe king cleopie :

alle his heorles.

forte wite in woche¹ wife :

Hengeft folde deie.

þo stod vp Aldodus :

Aldadus.

[was] there [forth]-right, to heal the wounds of 'his [my] dear knights, 'and rest in *the* burgh their weary bones.' When the third day came, and the folk had made noon (?), then caused the king '*the trumpets* to blow, and summoned [to be called all] his earls, 'that they should come to husting, to Aurelie the king. When they came together, the king asked them soon, what they would counsel him, who were his rich men,' 'by what death [for to know in what wise] Hengest should die, 'and how he might best avenge his dearest friends, who lay buried near Ambresbury.'

¹ Written at first on woche on woche in woche, but the superfluous words expuncted.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& wið þene king he spac þus.

to-wardef gode he was god :

he wes an hali biscop.

þat was an holy biffop.

Aldolf eorles broðer :

nefde he nenne oðer.

Lauerd king lust nu me :

and feide king hercne me :

what ic wullen tellen þe. [c. 2.]

wat ich wolle telle þe.

ich wulle makiē þene dom :

ich wolle ȝefue þane dom :

hu he ſcal beō fordō.

ou he ſal beo for-don.

For he if on leode :

10

monnen us laðeft.

& haued ure kun of-flæȝen :

& idon of lif-dæȝen.

and he if an hæðene hund :

helle he ſcal iſechen.

þer he ſcal finke :

for hiſ fwikedome.

Lauerd kīg hærcne me :

wat ich þe wulle tællen.

A king wes in Jeruſalē :

20

A king was in Jeruſalem :

Saul.

Saul wes ihaten.

Saul was i-hote.

þe wes in hæðeneſſe :

and in heaþenniffe :

king of muchele mæhte.

was a king of mochele mihte.

Agag.

Agag wes ihaten :

Agag was i-hote :

Then stood up Ældadus, 'and with the king he spake thus;—towards God he was good,' 'he [who] was a holy bishop, 'Aldolf *the* earls brother, he had no other,'—[and said :] 'Lord ' king, 'listen now [hearken] to me, what I will thee tell. I will 'make [give] the sentence, how he shall be put to death. 'For he is most hateful of men to us in *the* world, and hath slain our kindred, and deprived of life-day; and he is a heathen hound—hell he shall seek; there he shall sink for his treachery! Lord king, hearken to me, what I thee will tell.' A king was in Jerusalem, *who* was named Saul; and in heathendom was [a] king of mickle might, *who* was named Agag,—Jerusalem he hated,—he was king of the Amalech,—the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Jerlm he hatede. Jerufalem he hatede.
 he wes king of þe Amalæh :
 þe wurfe him wes ful nieh.
 auere he hatede Jerufalem :
 mid hærmen þan meften.
 nolde he neouere heom ȝiuen grið : nolde he neuere ȝef ham griþ :
 ah auere he heom ftod wið. ac euere he faht heom wiþ.
 he heom bārde he heom floh :
 he dude heom forȝen¹ inoh.
 Hit ilomp in ane time : 10
 þat þe funne gon to fcine.
 þa sat Agag þe king :
 inne hiſ hæh ſættele.
 meinde hiſ fæie blod :
 & muneȝede hine to fuſen.
 He cleopede hiſ cnihtes :
 anan uorð rihtes.
 Swiðe to couwer ſteden :
 & forð we ſcullē riden.
 we ſculleð bænnen & flæn : 20
 al ibuten Jerlm.
 Forð wende þe king :
 & mucche ferde mid him.
 þ̅ lond heo gunne þurh-ærnen :
 & þa tunes fur-bernen².

Worse was full nigh to him ! Ever he hated Jerusalem with harm the most ; never would he give them peace, but ever he 'withstood [fought with] them ; 'he burnt them, he slew them, he did them sorrow enow ! It fell on a time that the sun gan to shine ; then sate Agag the king on his high chair ; his fated blood was troubled, and urged him to march. He called his knights anon forth-right : " Quick to your steeds ! and forth we shall ride ; we shall burn and slay all about Jerusalem ! " Forth went the king, and a great host with him ; the land they gan through-run, and the

¹ foȝen *pr. m.*² for-bernen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ̅ ife3ē þa men :
 þe wuneden inne Jerufalem.
 & heo heom to-3eines : [f.95^b.c.1.]
 cnihtes & fweines.
 & fuhten wið þene king :
 & mid fæhte hine ouer-comen.
 & al hif folc flo3en :
 & Agag heo king nomē.
 & fwa heo mid him comē :
 to Saul þan kinge. 10
 þa wes Saul þe king :
 bliðe þurh alle þing.
 þe king axeden ræd :
 at hif riche a-nan.
 whæðer he mihte hime¹ bet don :
 oðer flæn oðer an-hon.
 þa leop up Samuel :
 a wit3e of Ifrael.
 he wes swiðe hali mon :
 hæh touward drihtē. 20
 nuſte na mon i þan dæ3en :
 fwa heh mon an godes la3en.

[Sam]uel.

þis ifeh3e þe men :
 þat wonede in Jerufalem.
 and hii him to-3enes :
 cnihtef and fweines.
 and þane king nemen :
 and hif folk flo3en.
 þo was Saul þe king :
 blipe þorh alle þing.
 þe [king] axede read :
 of riche hif cnihtes.
 woche manere þeos king :
 mihte for-worþi.
 þo leop Samuel :
 a witty of Isrl.
 nuſte me in þan dæ3e :
 non foch of godeſ lawe.

towns to consume.' The men saw 'that [this] who dwelt in Jerusalem; and they *advanced* against 'them [him], knights and swains, 'and fought with the king, and with fight him overcame,' and slew 'all' his folk, and 'Agag' [the] king 'they' took; 'and so they with him came to Saul the king.' Then was Saul the king blithe through all things! The king asked counsel 'at [of] his rich [knights] 'anon,' 'which he might *the* better do to him, either slay or up hang [in what manner this king might perish]. Then leapt up Samuel, a prophet of Israel;—'he was *a* man exceeding holy, high toward *the* Lord'; 'no man knew [men knew not] in those days 'man so high in [none such of] Gods law. Samuel took Agag the king,

¹ him?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Samuel nom Agag þene king :	Samuel nam Agag þane king :
& lædde hine a þan cheping.	and ladde hine in þan chipinge.
& lette hine fwiðe fterke :	and lette hine fafte :
to ane ftake binde.	to one ftocke býnde.
& nom mid hif riht hond :	and nam mid his riht hond : [c. 2.]
æenne dure-wurðe brond.	one ftelene brond.
& þuſ cleopede him on :	and þuſ faide him ton ¹ :
Samuel þe godeſ ² mon.	Samuel þe gode mon.
þu hattes Agag þe king :	
nu þu æert an ærmīg.	10 Nou þou falt abugge :
nu þu ſcalt fon þat læn :	þine luper deades.
þ þu for-ferdeſt Jeruſalem.	
þat þu haueſt þaſ hæȝe burh :	
fwa fwiðe for-worht.	
& monienne godne mon iflæȝen :	
& idon of lif-dæȝen.	
fwa ich ibide are :	
ne ſcalt þu nauer maȝ.	
Samuel þ þweord an-hof :	þat ſwerd he vp heof :
& hærdeliche adun floh.	20 and þat heued of-swipte.
& al to-fwadde þene king :	and al to-ſcende þane king :
in Jeruſalem ⁹ chepping.	in Jeruſalem his cheping.
& þa ſtucchen tarueden :	and þe ſticches toruede :

and led him in the market-place, and caused him 'most' fast to a stake to be bound; and took with his right hand a 'precious [steel] brand; and thus 'called [said] to him Samuel, the good man: " 'Thou hightest Agag the king, now thou art in sorrow!' Now thou shalt 'receive the retribution *for* that thou destroyedest Jerusalem, *for* that thou hast this noble burgh so greatly injured, and many a good man slain, and deprived of life-day [buy *dear* (pay *or* suffer for) thy wicked deeds]! 'As I hope for mercy, shalt thou *do so* no more.'" 'Samuel [He] heaved up the sword, and 'strongly down struck [the head off smote], and cut the king all in pieces in 'Jerusalems [Jerusalem his] market, and threw the

¹ to ?² gode ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wide ȝeond þa fstraten.	[c.2.] oueral þan ftrede.
þuſ tok Samuel on :	þuſ toc Samuel an :
and swa þu aȝeft Hengeſt don.	and fo þou ſalt Hengeſt don.
þiſ iherde Aldolf :	þiſ hi-horde Aldolf :
þe eorl of Glocet ⁹ e.	þe biſſop hiſ broþer.
touward Hengeſt he leap :	and toward Hengeſt leap :
swulc hit a liun weore.	aſe hit a lȝon were.
and igrap hine bi þan toppe :	and grop hine bi þan toppe :
& hine æfter him halede.	and after him hine halede.
& landde ¹ hine þurh & þurh :	10 and droh hine þorh and þorh :
& þurh ut Cunīges-burh.	al Conineſ-borh.
& wið uten þere burhȝe :	and wiþ houte þe borh :
he hine lette binden.	he hine lette bȝnde.
Aldolf hiſ ſwored adroh :	Aldolf hiſ sweord droh :
& Hengeſtes haſd of-floh.	and Hengeſtes heued of-floþ.
& þe king hine nom forð rihtes :	and þe king forþriht :
for he wes ſwa oht cniht.	for he was ſo god cniht.
& læide hine in eorðe :	leide hine in eorþe :
after heðene laȝen.	after heaþene lawe.
& bad for þere ſæule :	20
þ̃ hiſ neuere ſæl neore.	
& nu Aurilie þe king :	And to ² Aurelie þe king :
lette beode huſtig.	wende forþ an hiȝenge.

pieces 'wide over [over all] the streets. Thus Samuel took-on (acted), and so 'oughtest [shalt] thou do to Hengest." Aldolf heard this, the 'earl of Gloucester; [bishop his brother, and] toward Hengest 'he' leapt, as if it were a lion, and grasped him by the head, and after him hauled him, and drew him through and through, 'and throughout [all] Coningsburgh; and without the burgh he caused him to be bound. Aldolf drew his sword, and smote off Hengests head; and the king 'took him' forth-right, because he was so 'brave [good] a knight, 'and' laid him in earth, after *the* heathen law, 'and prayed for the soul, that it never were happy.' And now Aurelie the king 'caused a husting to be summoned [went forth in haste], 'and

¹ ladde?² þo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& lætte blawen bemen :'		
& bonnien hif ferde.		
folc þer wes fellic :'		þar was folk fellich :'
& ferden riht to Euerwic.		and wende forþ to Euerwich.
& biclufdē þer wið innen :'		and bi-clufede þare ine :'
Octa mid hif mōnen.		Octa wiþ his manne.
þe king lette deluen ænne dich :'		þe king lette dealue one dich :'
al abuten Eouerwic.		al a-boute Euerwich.
þat ne mihte þer na man :'		þat ne mihte þar no man :'
neoðer ute no igan ¹ .	10	noþer vt ne in gon.
þæt ifæh Octa :'		þat ifeh Octa :'
þer fore him wes wa.		þar vore him was fol wo.
& hif hæðene folc :'		
þe he hafde an burȝe.		
heo nomen heom to ræde :'		
what heo don mæhten.		
& þuſ ſpac Octa :'		and ſeide to his i-veres :'
wið his iuere Ebiffa.		þat þar ine mid him were.
No ² ich habben me biþoht :'		Ich habbe me nou bi-þoht :'
wht ³ ich don wulle.	20	wat ich don wolle.
Ich and mine cnihtes :'		
ſcullen forð rihtes.		
in ure bare brechē :'		gon we folle alle :'

caused trumpets to be blown, and his army to assemble,'—there was wondrous (numerous) folk,—and marched 'right [forth] to York, and in-closed Octa with his men 'there' within. The king caused a dyke to be dug, all about York, that no man might there either go out or in. Octa saw that ; therefore he was [full] woe. 'And his heathen folk, that he had in *the* burgh, they betook them to counsel, what they might do.' And 'thus spake Octa with his companion Ebissa [said to his companions that were therein with him] : "I have now bethought me, what I will do. 'I and my knights shall forth-right' 'in our bare-breech go out of *the* burgh,

¹ in gan ?² Nou ?³ whæt ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

gan ut of burȝen.

on vre bare fot.

ræmen a mine swoȝ¹ : [f.96.c.1.]

and honge a-bute oure fweres :

æne rake-teȝe.

grete raketeies.

& cumen to þan kinge :

and come to þan kinge :

hiȝ mildce biddinde.

his milce biddinge.

ælles we beoð alle dæde :

buten we fulien þiȝfen ræde.

Alle heo duden swa :

And alle hii dude fo :

fwa heom radde Octa.

alfe heom radde Octa.

duden of claðes :

10

kare-fulle cnihtes.

& eoden ut of burhȝe :

blaðe þeines.

tweiene & tweiene :

twenti hūðred.

þiȝ bi-heold Aurilien :

þiȝ bi-heold Aurelie :

alðeleȝt² kingen.

seolcuð him þuhte :

and wondrede fwiȝe :

of þan nakede cnihten.

To-fomne comen þa ferde : 20

þat læi ȝeond þan ærde.

Octa.

ifeȝen Octa cumen :

þo he ifeh nakede come :

þat wes Hengeȝt fūne.

Octa Hengeȝt hiȝ fone.

[Go we shall all on our bare-feet, and] hang 'on my neck a chain [about our necks great chains], and come to the king, praying his mercy. 'We all shall else be dead, except we follow this counsel.' " [And] they all did so, as Octa them advised; 'put off *their* clothes *the* careful (sorrowful) knights, and proceeded out of *the* burgh, miserable thanes, twain and twain, twenty hundred!' Aurelie beheld this, 'noblest of kings,' 'strange *it* seemed to him [and wondered greatly,] 'of the naked knights. Together came the host that lay over the land'; 'they [when he] saw Octa [naked] come, 'that was' 'Hengests [Hengest his] son. 'He [and] bare in his hand

¹ *Sup. ras.*² *R. aðeleȝt.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

He bar an hif honde :
 æenne rake-teȝe longe.
 he com to þan kīge :
 & bi-uoren hif hære-dringe.
 he feol uppen uolde :
 þaȝ kinges fæt iſohte.
 & þaȝ word ſeide þa :
 Hengeſtef ſune Octa.
 Imilze mi lauerd king :
 þurh þene milde godd. 10
 for luue of god almihtē :
 haue milce of mine cnihten.
 for alle ure heðene-ſcipe :
 hæne if iwurðen.
 laȝen & ure leoden :
 for laðe we beoð drihten.
 for uȝ if itruked an hond :
 Appollin & Teruagant.
 Woden & Mercuriuȝ :
 Jubit⁹ & Sa⁹nus. 20
 Venus & Didō :
 Frea & Mamilon.
 & alle ure laue :
 nu uȝ funde laðe.

and bar on his honde :
 one raketeȝe ſtronge :
 and nuel feol to grunde :
 bi-vore þis kinges fote.
 and þeȝ word ſaide þo :
 Hengeſtef ſone Octa.
 For þe loue of god al-mihti :
 milce me and mine chnihtes.
 for vs his itroked and¹ hond :
 Appolin and Teruegand. *Appolin.*
 and alle houre bi-lefue :
 nou vs beoþ loȝe.

a 'long' [strong] chain; 'he came to the king,' and before 'his warriors he [this kings feet] fell 'upon [prone to] *the* ground, 'and the kings feet sought'; and these words then said Hengests son Octa: "'Mercy, my lord king, through God the mild'; for [the] love of God Almighty 'have mercy of [pardon me and] my knights! 'For all our heathendom is become base, *our* laws and our people, for loathsome we are to *the* Lord.' For us has failed in hand Appolin, and Tervagant, 'Woden, and Mercurius, Jupiter, and Saturnus, Venus, and Didon, Frea, and Mamilon,' and all our beliefs are

¹ *R.* an.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ah we wulleð ileuen :

ac we wollep ilefue :

in leofē þine drihten.

on gode þine drihte.

for al hit trukeð uf an hond : [c.2.]

þ̅ we to temden.

We ȝeorned¹ þine are :

nu and auere mare.

ȝif þu me wult griðens² :& þu me wult fruðien³.

we þe wulleð to teon :

& þine holde men beon. 10

luuien þine leoden :

& þine laȝen halden.

ȝif þu þet wulle⁴ :

do þine iwille.

whaðer swa þu wult don :

þa uf-flan þa us an-hon.

& þe kīg wes mild-heorte :

& heold hine ftille.

he bi-heold a riht hond :

he bi-heold a lift hond. 20

wulc of wiifen :

ærest spæken wolden.

Alle heo weoren ftille :

& fwiȝedē mid ftæuen.

now to us odious ; but we will believe on thy 'dear [good] Lord, ' for all it faileth us now in hand, that we worshiped. We yearn thy favor, now and evermore ; if thou wilt me grant peace, and *if* thou wilt me grant amity, we will draw to thee, and be thy faithful men ; love thy people, and hold thy laws ; if thou wilt *not* that, do thy will, whetherso (whatsoever) thou wilt do, or slay us or up hang us." And the king was mild-hearted, and held him still ; he beheld on *the* right hand, he beheld on *the* left hand, which of *his* wise *men* first would speak. They all were still, and kept silence

¹ ȝeorneð ?² griðien ?³ friðien ?⁴ nulle ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

nes þer nan fwa hæh mon :

þat durste word feiren.

& æuere læie Octa :

æt þes kinges foten fwa.

alle his cnihtes :

leien him biæften.

þa spac Aldadus :

þe gode biscop & feide þus.

Æuere hit wæf : & a hit bið :

& ȝet hit uf bi-houeð.

þene we milze ȝeorneð :

þ̅ we milze habben.

wurðe he if milze :

þe wurðeliche heo biddeð.

& þu feolf læuerd king :

leoden þu ært ælder.

imilze þu Octa :

& his iueren al fwa.

ȝif heo wulleð cristindom :

mid gode lefuē vnder-fon.

for ȝet hit mai ilimpen :

i summere leoden.

þ̅ heo mazen drihten :

duȝeðliche hærien.

Nu stont al þis kinelond :

þo spac Aldadus :

þe gode biffop and feide þus.

Euere hit was : and ȝet hit his :

10 alfe vs wel bi-houeþ.

þat wo milce biddeþ :

þat he hit mazen hadde.

þar vore louerd king :

milce þou alle heom.

ȝef hii wollep cristindom :

20 mid gode bi-leaue onderfon.

Aldadus.

with voice ; was there no man so high, that durst *a* word utter ; and ever lay Octa at the kings feet so ; all his knights lay behind him.' Then spake Aldadus, the good bishop, and said thus : " Ever it was, and 'ever it shall be, and yet it [yet it is, as *it* well] behoveth us, 'when we yearn mercy, that we should have mercy [that whoso prayeth for mercy, that he it may have] ; 'worthy is he of mercy, who worthily prayeth for it.' 'And thou *thyself*, [Therefore,] lord king, 'thou art chief of *the* people,' pardon thou 'Octa, and also his companions [all of them], if they will receive Christendom with good belief ; 'for yet it may befall, in some country that they may fitly worship *the* Lord. Now stands all this kingdom in

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

a þire aȝeŕ hond. [f.96^b.c.1.]
 bitec heom enne ſtude :'
 þer þe bið iqueme.
 & nim of heom ȝifles :'
 ſwulche þu wult ȝirnen.
 & let heom wel halden :'
 in irene benden.
 finden þan ȝiflen mete & clað :'
 finden al þat heom bið leof.
 & þenne miht þu wel halden :'
 þiſ mon-cun i þine londe.
 & let heom tilien þ lond :'
 & libben bi heore tilæhðe.
 ȝif hit ſeoððen ilimppeð :'
 ſone þer after.
 þ heo trukieð an hond :'
 treoðe¹ to halden.
 & wakieð mid wærke :'
 & þe wiðer haldeð.
 nu ich² þe demen þene dom :'
 whæt þu miht ſeoððen don.
 Let riden heō to :'
 ræhliliche³ fwiðe.

An ȝef hit bi-falleþ :'

þat hii wakie. [c. 2.]

her ich ȝefue þane dom :'

ou þou falt bi heom don.

thine own hand; give them a place, where *it* shall be agreeable to thee, and take of them hostages, such *as* thou wilt require; and let them be well held (secured) in iron bonds; the hostages be found meat and clothes, be found all that to them shall be lief; and then mightest thou well hold (retain) this people in thy land, and let them till the land, and live by their tith." [And] if it 'subsequently' shall befall, 'soon thereafter, that they fail in hand to hold troth, and' weaken 'in work, and withstand thee,' 'now [here] I 'decree to thee [give] the doom, 'what thou mayest then [how thou shalt by them] do. 'Cause *men* to ride to them exceeding

¹ Above the letter o is written u, as if to take its place.² ic pr. m.³ ræhliliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& let heom alle for-don :'	let nime ȝam alle fwiȝe :'
ſpillen & æc an-hō.	and do ȝam of lifue.
þiſ ich þe deme :'	þiſ ich ȝam deme :'
drihten hit ihere.	drihte hit ihere.
þa andſwarede þe king :'	þo anſwerede þe king :'
q ⁱ ckere ſtefne.	
Al ſwa ich wulle don :'	don ich wolle al þiſ þing.
ſwa þu haueſt idemed.	
þuſ ſpac þe king ¹ þa :'	
Ariſ up Octa.	10 Ariſ nou Octa :'
þu ſcalt ſwiðe wel don :'	and þine cnihtes alle.
vnder-uoh criſtindom.	
þer weſ iuulȝed Octa :'	
& hiſ iueren al ſwa.	
and alle hiſ cnihtes :'	Alle þeſ cnihtes :'
i þan ſtude uorð rihtes.	
Heo nomen heore ȝiſleſ :	him bi-toke ȝiſleſ :
& ȝeuen þan kinge.	þreo and fifti children.
þreo & fifti children :'	hii him bi-tahte :'
heo bitæhten þan kinge.	20
& þe king heom fende :'	
bi-fiden Scotlonde.	
aðeſ heo ſworen :'	and oþeſ hii ſwore :'
ſwiken þat heo nalden.	ſwike þat hii nolde.

quickly, and ' cause them all to be 'destroyed, slain and eke up hung [taken quickly, and deprive them of life]. This I decree to 'thee [them]; *the* Lord *it* hear!" Then answered the king, 'with quick voice': "All I will 'so' do [this thing] 'as thou hast deemed.'" Thus spake the king then': "Arise 'up [now], Octa; 'thou shalt quickly do well, receive Christendom [and thy knights all]." 'There was Octa baptized, and his companions also; and 'all 'his [these] knights 'on the spot forth-right.' 'They took their [gave to him] hostages, 'and gave to the king,' three and fifty children they delivered to 'the king [him]. And 'the king sent them beside Scotland'; oaths they swore,

¹ kin *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe king bi-tahte hond¹ :

sixti hidene lond.

þer on heo wuneden : [c.2.]

wel feole wītren.

þe king² wes inne Eouerwic :

aðele him þuhte.

he nom hif fonden :

& fende ȝeond hif londe.

hæhte hif biſcopes :

hif boc-ilærede men. 10

eorles & þeines :

cumen him to-ȝeines.

to Aurilie þā kīge :

to muchele huſtinge.

Hit iwærð fone :

þat heo gadere comē.

þe king hif folc grætte :

mid fæire hif worden.

he wilcumed eorles :

he wilcumed beornes. 20

& þa biſcopes :

& þa boc-ilærede men.

Ich eou wulle fuggen :

þe king bi-tahte heom an hond :

fixti hidene lond.

þar on hii wonede :

wel fale wintres.

þe king was in Euerwich :

and murie him þohte.

he fende his fonde :

oueral his londe.

and hehte eorles and knihtes :

biſſopes and cleorekes.

come an hiȝenge.

riht to him ſeolue :

And hii fwiȝe fone :

to him alle come.

þe king welcomede alle :

hiȝenliche fwiȝe.

Ich ou wolle ſegge :

that they would not deceive *him*. The king gave them in hand sixty hides of land; thereon they dwelt well many winters. The king was in York, 'good [and merry] *it* seemed to him; he 'took [sent] his messengers, 'and sent' over [all] his land; [and] ordered 'his' 'bishops, his book-learned men, earls and thanes [earls and knights, bishops and clerks], to come 'towards him, to Aurelie the king, [in haste, right to himself.] 'to a great husting. 'It soon came to pass, that they came together [And they very soon all came to him]. The king 'greeted his folk with his fair words [welcomed all very speedily], 'he welcomed earls, he welcomed barons, and the bishops, and the book-learned men.'—"I will say to you with [my]

¹ heom an hond?² kin, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid soðe wordē.
 whi ich eou æfter fende :
 & for wulche þingen.
 Her ich aȝeuen ælche cnihten :
 icunden¹ & hiſ rihten.
 & æuerælche eorle :
 & æuerælche beorne.
 þat he mæi biwinnen :
 brukē hit mid wunnen.
 & ælche monnen bi hiſ life : 10
 ich hate grið luuien.
 Ich hæten eou wurchen :
 & buldē þa chirchen.
 bellen leten ringen :
 godes lof fingen.
 heren mid ure mihtē :
 leofe ure drihten.
 ælche mon bi hiſ mæhte :
 halden fibbe & sæhten.
 læten tilien þ lond : 20
 nu hit iſ al a mire hond.

þa þuſ dō wes iſæid :
 alle heo leofden þiſne ræd.
 þe king heom ȝef leoue :

mid soþe mine worde.
 wi ich ou after fende :
 and for woche þinge.
 Here ich take ech cniht :
 his cūde and his riht.
 and ech eorl and barun :

þat he mai a-winne :
 And ich ou hote alle :
 a-rere chirches þat beoþ a-valle.

and ech be his mihte :
 lofuie vre drihte.

þo þes dom was al iſeid :
 alle hii louede þane read.
 þe king ȝam [ȝef] leue : [f.78^b.c.1.]

sooth words, why I sent after you, and for what thing. Here I give to each knight his land and his right, and to 'every [each] earl and 'every' baron, what he may win, 'to possess it with joy; and each man I order to love peace, on his life'. [And] I bid you [all] to 'work and build the [arear] churches [that are fallen], 'to let *the* bells ring, to sing Gods praise,' [and each] 'with our [by his] might to 'worship [love] our 'dear' Lord; 'each man by his might to hold peace and amity, *and* cause the land to be tilled, now it is all in my hand.' " When this doom was [all] said, they all praised 'this [the] counsel. The king gave them leave to depart thence; each fared

¹ if cunden *man. sec.*, for his cunden.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þenne to liðe.	þane to liþe.
ælc uærde heomward :'	ech verde hamward :'
swa heom bezft þuhte.	þar him beft þohte.
Seouen niht fulle :'	Souenihte folle :'
þe king læi þer stille.	þe king lai þare stille.
& feoððen he gon liðe :'	and supþe he gan wende :'
in to Lūdenne. [f. 97. c. 1.]	in to Londone.
to gladien þat burh-folc :	
þat ofte weoren bifie.	
He letten fstronge walles :'	10 and lette fstrongi walles :'
he lette bulden halles.	and arere halles.
& rihte al þa workes :	
þe ær weore to-brofene ¹ .	
& aȝef heom alle þa laȝen :	
þe ftoden bi heore ælderne dæȝen.	
he makede þer reuen :	and he makede þare reues :
þan uolke to reden.	þan folke to dihte.
& þenenen he gon wendē :	þanene he wende :
riht to Winchæstre.	riht to Wýncheftre.
þer he lette wurcchen :	20 and lette þare wereche :
²	halles and chirches.
þer him þuhte fwiðe muri :	þare him þohte fwiþe muri :
feoððen he uerde to Ambres-buri.	and supþe he wende to Ambrefburi.

homeward, 'as [where] to 'them [him] *it* best seemed. Full seven nights the king lay there still, and then he gan proceed into London, 'to gladden the burgh-folk, who oft were busy.' 'He [and] caused walls to be strengthened, 'he caused [and] halls to be 'built [areared], 'and all the works to be righted (repaired) that ere were broken; and gave them all the laws that stood in their elders days'; [and] he made there reves, to rule the folk. 'And' thence he 'gan proceed [proceeded] right to Winchester; [and] there 'he' caused to be worked [halls and churches];—there *it* seemed to him most pleasant;—[and] afterwards he went to Ambresbury, 'to the

¹ *This word is doubtful, and seems to have been written at first to-rofene.*

² *A line is here evidently deficient.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to þan leerstowe :

of leofuen his freonden.

þa Hengeſt mid cniuen :

þer aquald hæfuede.

He lette axien anan :

men þat cuðen hæuwen ſtan.

& æc gode wurhten :

þe mid æxe cuðe wurchen.

he þohte wurche þer a wer :

wūder ane ueire. 10

þ a ſculde ilaſten :

þa while men luueden.

þa weſ inne Kaerlium :

a biſcop þe hahte Tremoriun.

he weſ ſwiðe wiſ mon :

inne weorlð-riehen.

mid þā kinge he weſ :

ouenan þæ walde.

& þuſ Tremorien godes dring :

ſpæc þer wið þene king. 20

Luſt nu me Aurilien :

what ich þe wulle cuðen.

& ich þe wullen fuggen :

ſæleſt alre ræden.

ʒiſ þu hine wult luuien :

ware Hengeſt mid his cniueſ :

adde idon his cun of lifue.

He lette axi anon :

men þat coupe ewe ſton.

and eke after wrohtes :

þat mid axe coupen weorche.

he þohte makien an worc :

þat euere folde leſte :

þo was in Kairlyon :

an biſſop þat hehte Tremorion.

Tremorion.

burial-place of his dear friends,' 'whom [where] Hengest with [his] knives had 'murdered there [deprived his kindred of life]. He caused men anon to be inquired for, who could hew stone, and eke 'good [after] wrights, who could work with axe; he thought to 'work there [make] a work 'wondrously fair,' that ever should last, 'the while men lived!' Then was in (of) Caerleon a bishop, that hight Tremoriun; 'he was *a* man exceeding wise in *the* worlds-realm; with the king he was, over the weald. And thus 'Tremoriun, Gods servant, spake there with [he said to] the king, [of a good thing]: " 'Listen now to me, Aurelie, what I will make known to thee, and I will say to thee *the* best of all counsel; if thou wilt it approve,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

æft he þe likeð.

We habbeoð ænne witeȝe :

Mærlin if ihaten.

ȝif æi mō hine mihte ifinden :

uppe þiffere wælden. [c. 2.]

& to þe ibringen :

þurh æief cunnef þinge.

& þu hiſ iwille :

driȝen woldeſt.

he þe wolde runen :

feleſt ræden.

hu þu mihteſt þiſ weorc :

makien ſtrong & ſterk.

þet a mihte ilæſten :

þa while men leoueden.

þa andſwarede þe king :

þaſ wordes him weoren iqueme.

Leoue freond T^emorium :

al þiſ ich wulle don.

þe king ſende hiſ ſonde :

ȝeond al hiſ kinelonde.

and bad æuerælcne mon :

axien after Mærlin.

& ȝif me hine mihten ifinden :

bringen hine to þan kīge.

We habbeþ one wýtti :

Merlȝn hiſ ihote.

ȝef me hine mihte finde :

and to þe hine bringe.

10 he þe wolde ſegge :

feleſt alre reade.

hou þou mihteſt þiſ worc :

makie ſtrōg and ſtark.

þat hit mihte leſte :

þe wile þat men lefuede.

20 þe king an hiȝenge :

wide hiſ men ſende.

for to hine finde : [c. 2.]

and bringe to þan kinge.

eft it will like to thee.' We have a prophet, *who* is Merlin named ; if 'any man [men] might him find, 'upon this weald,' and bring [him] to thee, 'through any kind of thing, and *if* thou his will wouldest perform,' he would say to thee best [of all] counsel, how thou mightest this work make strong and stark, that 'ever [it] might last, the while [that] men lived. 'Then answered the king,—these words were to him agreeable :—"Dear friend Tremorium, all this I will do." 'The king [in haste] sent his 'messengers over all his kingdom [men wide], 'and bade every man to ask after Merlin'; 'and if men might him find, to bring him [for to find him,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he him wolde ȝifuen lond :

boðe feoluer & gold.

& a weorl-richen :

driȝen hiȝ iwille.

ȝa fondē gunnen riden :

widen & fiden.

summe heo uerden riht norð :

& ſumme heo uerden ſuð forð.

sūme heo uerden riht æft :

& summe heo uerden riht weſt. 10

summe heo uerden a-nan :

ȝat heo comen to Alæban.

ȝat iȝ a wælle :

inne Wælfce londe.

ȝe wælle he lufoðe :

& ofte hine ȝer inne baðede.

ȝa cnihteȝ hine funde :

ȝer he ſat bi ȝan ſtrondē.

Sone ſwa hine inettē² :

fæire heo hine igrætten. 20

& ȝuȝ him to forð rihtes :

ſæiden ȝa tweiȝen cnihtes.

Hail ſeo ȝu Mærlin :

monnene wiȝeſt.

Somme wēde a-non :

ȝat hii come to Alaban.

ȝat hiȝ fair welle :

ine Walſe londe.

ȝe welle he moche lofoede :

and lome ȝare baðede.

ȝe cnihteȝ hine funde :

ȝar h¹ ſat bi brimme.

and ȝuȝ anon rihtes :

ſaide ȝe cnihtes.

Ala[ban].

and bring] to the king; 'he would give him land, both silver and gold, and in *the* worlds realm perform his will. The messengers gan to ride wide and far; some they went right north, and some they went forth south; some they went right east, and some they went right west'; some 'they' went anon, *so* that they came to Alaban, that is 'a' [fair] well (spring) in Welsh land. The well he (Merlin) [much] loved, and oft 'therein' [there] bathed 'him'; the knights him found where he sate by 'the strand' [brim]. 'So soon as *they* him met, they greeted him fair'; and thus said the 'two' knights 'to him' 'forth' [anon] right: " 'Hail be thou, Merlin, wisest of

¹ R. he.² imetten?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bi uf þe gon grætē :¹ [f.97^b.c.1.]

þ̅ if a god-ful king.

Aurilian ihaten :

aðeſt¹ alre kingē.

stont al þiſ muchele lond :

ī Aurilies kingeſ hond.

faire he þe biſecheð :

þ̅ þu him to buȝe.

& he þe wule ȝiue lond :

boðe ſeluer & gold.

ȝif þu an riche :

ræde wulle þā kinge.

Mærlin andſwerede þa :

þæt cnihten² wes ful wa.

Ne recche ich noht hiſ londes :

hiſ ſeoluer no hiſ goldes.

no hiſ claðes no hiſ hors :

mi ſeolf ich habbe inowe.

þa fat he ſtille :

longe ane ſtunde.

þaſ cnihtes weoren aſæred :

þat he fleon³ wolde.

Bi vs þe gan grete :

þe king of þiſſe londe.

and faire þe bi-ſecheþ :

þat þou to him come.

hand he þe wole ȝeue lond :

10 and ſeoluer and golde.

Merlȝn anſwerede þo :

þat þe cnihtes weren wo.

Ne rech ich of hiſ londes :

ne of hiſ oþer ȝeſtes.

þo fæt he ſtille :

20 one lange ſtunde.

men!’ By us ‘*he* who is a goodly king [the king of this land], ‘named Aurelie, noblest of all kings,’ greets thee, [and] ‘*he*’ beseecheth thee courteously, that thou come to him; and he will give land to thee, ‘both [and] silver and gold, ‘if thou in *the* realm wilt counsel the king.’” Then answered Merlin, ‘what to *the* knights was full [that the knights were] woe : “I reckon not of his land, ‘his silver, nor ‘his gold [nor of his other gifts], ‘nor his clothes, nor his horses; myself I have enow.’” Then sate he still a long time. ‘These knights were afraid, that (least) he would flee.’ When

¹ aðeleſt?² þa has been added before cnihten by a second hand, and afterwards erased.³ feon, *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa hit alles up brac :
 hit wes god þat he spæc.
 3it¹ beoð tweiene cnihtes :
 icumen her rihtes.
 3urstendæi ær none :
 ich wufte þat 3e comen.
 & 3if ich fwa walde :
 ne mihte 3e me finden.
 3e bringeð me gretinge :
 from Aurilie þan kinge.
 Ich cneou his cnihtes² :
 ær he come to londe.
 & ich icneou þene oðer :
 Vther his broðer.
 ic icneou beien :
 ær heo iboren weoren. [c. 2.]
 þæh ich nauer nouper :
 mid e3en ne ife3e.
 Ah walawa walawa :
 þat hit if idiht fwa.
 þ þe leodene-king :
 leng ne mot luuien.
 Ah nu ich wulle fufen :
 & beon eouwer ifere.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þo hit halles vp brac :
 hit waf god þat he spæc.
 3e beoþ tweie cnihtes :
 icome fram þan kinge.
 3orftendai here non :
 ich wufte þat 3e come.
 and 3ef ich hit wolde :
 ne folde 3e me finde.
 3e bringeþ me gretýnge :
 10 fram Aurelie þan kinge.
 Ich i-cnew his cuftes :
 are he to londe come.
 and eke þan oþer :
 Vther his broþer.
 ich icnew beýene :
 are hii ibore were.
 þeh ich neuere ne feh3e :
 noþer mid eh3e.
 Ac wolawo wolawo : [f. 79. c. 1.]
 20 þat hit his idiht fo.
 þat þe gode king :
 lang ne mot libbe.
 Nou ich wolle wende :
 mid 3ou to þā kinge.

it all brake forth, it was good that he spake : " Ye are two knights come
 'right here [from the king] ; yesterday ere noon I knew that ye should
 come, and if I 'so [it] would, ye 'might [should] not find (have found) me.
 Ye bring me greeting from Aurelie the king. I knew his qualities ere he
 came to land, and 'I knew [eke] the other, Uther his brother ; I knew both
 ere they were born, though I never saw either with eye. But alas ! alas !
 that it is so ordered, that the 'monarch [good king] may not live long !
 ' But ' now will I go, ' and be your companion ; ' to the king 'I will proceed

¹ *Written at first 3eit, but e expuncted.*² *coftes ?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to þan kinge ich faren wulle :'

& driȝen hiȝ iwille.

Forð ferde Mærlin :

& þa cnihtes wið him.

swa longe ꝥ heo comen :

to þā leod-kinge.

Komen to þan kinge :

wil-tidende.

næuer ær an hiȝ liue :

nes ꝥe king swa bliðe. ¹⁰

for næuere nanef mōnes cume :

þe him to come.

þe kīg to hiȝ stede :

& ut him gon ride.

& alle hiȝ cnihtes mid hī :

to wulcumen Mærlin.

þe kīg hine imette :

& fære hine igratte.

he hine iclupte :

he hine cuȝte.

he hine cuðlæhte¹ :

Muchel wes þe murhȝe :

i þan mō-uere.

al for Marlines cume :

Forþ wende Merlȝn :

and ꝥe cnihtes mid him.

so lange þat hii come :

þar ꝥe king wonede.

þe king hine clupte :

²⁰ þe king hine cuȝte.

[with you], 'and perform his will.' " Forth went Merlin, and the knights with him, so long that they came 'to the sovereign [where the king dwelt]. 'The good tidings came to the king; never ere in his life was the king so blithe, for ever any kind of man that came to him! The king *went* to his steed, and out gan him ride, and all his knights with him, to welcome Merlin.' The king 'him met, and greeted him fair; he' embraced him, 'he[the king] kissed him, 'he made him *his* familiar. Great was the mirth among the people, all for Merlin's arrival, who was son of no man. Alas!

¹ A line here seems deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe nes nanes monnef fune.

Wale þat an worlde :

næs nan witie.

þat auere wufte here :

whes fune he weore.

buten drihtē ane :

þe wlæt al clane.

þe king lælde¹ to bure :

Mærlin þe wes deore. [f.98. c.1.]

he hine fræinien gon :

mid fæire hif worden anan.

þat he dude him to vnder-ſtonde :

of þan weorldeſ ȝeōgen.

& of al þan ȝeren :

þat to cumen weoren.

for hit weoren him fwiðe iwil :

þ he þerof wufte.

Mærlin andſwerede þa :

& to þan kinge feide fwa.

O Aurilie þe king :

þu fræineſt me a fellic þing.

loke þat þu na mare :

ſwulc þing ne iſcire.

and ladde hine to boure :

for he was him deore.

and he axede him anon :

mid fære his wordeſ.

þat he him dude to vnderſtōde :

of þis worle lōnge.

Merlȝn anſwerede þo :

þat þan kinge was wo.

20 O Aurilie þe king :

þou axeſt a wonder þing.

loke þat þou na more :

foch þing ne ſcire.

that in *the* world was no wise man that ever knew here whose son he were, but *the* Lord alone, who surveys (*or* explores) all clean !' 'The king led [and led him] to chamber 'Merlin who was [for he was to him] dear ; [and] he 'gan ask [asked] him anon with his fair words, that he should cause him to understand of 'the [this] worlds course, 'and of all the years that were to come ; for it were to him greatly in will, that he thereof knew.' Merlin then answered, 'and to the king said thus [what to the king was woe] : " O Aurelie, the king, thou askest, 'me' a strange thing ; look that thou no more such thing inquire. 'For my spirit truly is wrathful, that

¹ lædde ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

For mi gæft if bæl iwis¹ :
 þa a mire breofte if.
 and ȝef ich among monnen :
 ȝelp wolde makien.
 mid glad-ſcipe mid gomene :
 mid god-fulle worden.
 mi gaft hine iwarðeð² :
 & wirð ftille.
 & binimeð me mī iwit :
 & mine wiſe word for-dut. 10
 þenne weore ich dūbe :
 of æuer ælche dome.
 Ah bilef fwulche þinges :
 quæð³ Mærlin to þan kingen.
 for whan fwa cumeð neode :
 to auer æi þeode.
 & mon me mid milde-ſcipe :
 wulle me biſechen.
 & ich mid mine iwille :
 mote wuniē ftille. 20
 þenne mæi ich fuggen :
 hu hit ſeoððen ſcal iwurðen. [c.2.]
 Ah ich þe⁴ wulle ræden :
 of nexte þire neoden.

Ac bi-lef al ſoche þinges :
 cwaþ Merlȳn to þan kinge.

Ac ich þe wolle reade :
 to þine nexfte neode.

is in my breast ; and if I among men would make boast, with gladness, with game, with goodly words, my spirit would wrath himself, and become still, and deprive me of my sense, and my wise words fore-close ; then were I dumb of every sentence.' But leave [all] such things," quoth Merlin to the king, " ' for whensoever need shall come to ever any people, and man will beseech me with mildness, and I may with my will dwell still, then may I say, how it afterwards shall happen.' But I will counsel thee of thy

¹ bæli wis, MS.² iwraðeð ?³ quæð ?⁴ þe is omitted by the first hand, which has also written ic.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fugen þe her riht :'	and segge þe her riht :'
what þu hauest an heorten.	wat þou hauest on heorte.
A ueld if bi Amberes-buri :	On feold his bi Ambref-buri :
þe is brad & fwiðe muri.	þat his brod and fwiþe muri.
þer wes mid cniue :	þar was mid cniue :
þi cun idon of liuen.	þin cun idon of lifue.
þer wef moni bald Brut :	
bifwiken to þan deðe.	
& þencheft þene stude :	þar vore þou þencheft þane stude :
mid wurðcipe igraten.	10 mid worþipe grete.
mid sælcuðe wærcken :	mid felcoupe workef :
wurðien þa dæde.	herie þe deade.
þat þer scal ftonden :	þat folde euere ftonde :
to þere worlde longe.	to þare worle longe.
Ah naueft þu neuere nenne mon :	Ac naueft þou neuer one man :'[c. 2.]
þe cunne awiht þe ¹ on.	þat oht conne þar on.
þe cunne wærc makien :	for to worch makie :
þe nauere nulle trukien.	þat neuere nolle trokie.
Ah ic þe wulle ræden :	Ac ich þe wolle reade :
to fwulchere neode.	20 to folchere neode.
for ich what a wærc :	for ich wot a worc :
mid wundere bi-ftonde.	
for þat weorc ftondeð :	
inne Irlonde.	for in Ýrlond.

nearest need, and say to thee right here what thou hast in heart. A plain is by Ambresbury, that is broad, and exceeding pleasant; there was thy kindred deprived of life with knives, 'there was many bold Briton betrayed to the death;' 'and [therefore thou] thinkest to greet the place with worship, *and* with surprising works to honor the dead, that 'there' shall [ever] stand, to the worlds end. But thou hast never 'any [one] man, that knows aught thereon, 'who can [for to] make *a* work that never will fail. But I will counsel thee at such need, for I know a work 'with wonder encompassed; far 'the work standeth' in Ireland. It is a most surprising

¹ þer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Corea [gi]-
gant[um].Hit if a fwiðe fellic þing¹ :

Hit his a fwiþe fellich þing :

þat weorc if of ftane :

þat work his of ftone :

fwulc ne beoð oðer nane.

foch oþer not ich none.

fwa wid fwa if weorlde-riche :

so wid fo his þe worle-riche :

nif nan weorc hif iliche.

nif no work him iliche.

þa ftanes beoð² muchele :

þe ftones beoþ mochele :

& mahten heo habbeoð.

and mihte hii habbeþ.

þa men þe beoð un-hal :

þe men þat beoþ on-hole :

heo fareð to þan ftane.

10

wendeþ to þan ftones.

& heo wafceð þene ftan :

and wafseþ þane ftan :

& þer mide baðieð heore ban.

umbe lute ftude³ : [f.98^b.c.1.]

heo wurðeð al ifūde.

and habbeþ hire hele anon.

Ah þe ftanes beoð muchele :

Ac þe ftones beoþ mochele :

& uninete⁴ græte.

and onimete grete.

for nif nauere na mon iboren :

for nas neuere þe man ibore :

i⁵ nauere nare burhze.

in neuere none borewe.

þe mihte mid ftrēgðe :

þat mihte mid ftrengþe :

þa ftanes þenne bringe.

20

þe ftones þanne bringe.

þa andfwarede þe king :

þo faide þe king :

Mærlin þu fæift fællic þing.

Merlȝn þou faift wonder þing.

thing, [it is named the Giants Ring]; the work is of stone, such *an* other 'there is [I know] none, so wide as is the worlds realm is no work 'its [to it] like. The stones are great, and virtue they have; the men who are sick 'they' go to the stones, and 'they' wash the stones, 'and therewith bathe their bones'; 'after *a* little while they become all sound [and have their health anon]! But the stones are mickle, and immensely great; for was never 'any [the] man born, in ever any burgh, who might with strength bring the stones thence.'" Then 'answered [said] the king: "Merlin, thou sayest strange thing; 'that [if] never any man born 'may bring them thence,

¹ *A line is here wanting, supplied by the other text.*² beoð?³ ftunde?⁴ *R.* unimete.⁵ *Added by second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þe nauere nan iboren mon :
 ne maie heom bringgen þenne.
 no mid nare strengðe :
 of þan ftude lade.
 hu mihte ich heom þenne :
 heom bringen þeonne.
 þa andswerede Mærlin :
 þan kinge þat spac wið him.
 3use 3use lauerd kīg :
 hit wes 3are iqueðen. 10
 þat betere if liste :
 þene ufel strenðe¹.
 for mid liste me mai ihalden :
 þat strengðe ne mai iwalden².
 Ah fomne þine uerde :
 & far to þan ærde.
 & þu mid þe lede :
 gode monne-uerde.
 & ich wulle mid þe :
 þi monscipe bið þe mære. 20
 Ær þu a3æn wende :
 þine iwille þu scalt habbē.
 & þat weorc þu scalt bringen :

wane neuere no man ibore :
 mid none cunnes strengþe.
 ne mai 3am þanene :
 mid none þing bringe.
 wat folde ich þanne :
 after heom fende.
 þo anwerede Merlȳn :
 þan kinge þat spac wiþ him.
 3use 3use louerd :
 hit was ifaid wile.
 þat betere his sleahþe :
 þane vuele strengþe.
 for mid flehþe me mai holde : [f.79^b.c.1.]
 þat strengþe ne mai awilde.
 Ac fend þider ferde :

and ich wolle mid ham wende.

nor with any strength carry from the place, how might [with any kind of strength, may thence with any thing (contrivance) bring them, wherefore should] I then 'bring them thence [after them send]?' Then answered Merlin to the king who spake with him : " Yes, yes, lord 'king', it was 'of yore [whilom] said, that better is art, than evil strength ; for with art men may hold what strength may not obtain. But 'assemble thine [send thither *an*] army, 'and go to the land, and lead thou with thee *a* good host'; and I will [go] with 'thee, [them]—'thy worship will be the more ! Ere thou back come, thy will thou shalt have, and the work thou shalt bring with thee to

¹ strengðe?² *A part of this word is by second hand, sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid þe to þiffen londe.
 & fwa þu hit scalt leden :'
 to þere lich-rafte.
 & wurðien þene ftude :'
 þer þine wines liggeð.
 & þu feolf scalt þer in :'
 þine ban reftē.
 þenne þi lif endeð :'
 þer þu scalt resten.
 þuſ feiden Mærlin :'
 & ſeoððen he ſæt ſtille.
 alſe þeh he wolde :'
 of worlden iwiten. [c. 2.]
 þe king hine lette bringen :'
 into ane fære bure.
 & wunien þer inne :'
 æft⁹ his iwille¹.
 Aurilie þe king :'
 lette beoden huſting.
 of alle þan londe :'
 þa ſtod an hiſ honde.
 he bad him ræde :'
 to ſwulchere neode.
 and heo him wel rædden :'
 riche hiſ beornes.
 ꝥ he dude þene ræd :'

10

20

this land, and so thou shalt carry it to the burial-place, and honor the spot where thy friends lie. And thou *thyself* shalt therein thy bones rest; when thy life endeth, there shalt thou rest." Thus said Merlin, and afterwards he sate still, as though he would from *the* world depart. The king caused him to be brought into a fair chamber, and dwell therein, after his will. Aurelie the king caused *a* husting to be summoned from all the lands that stood in his hand; he bade *them* counsel him at such need. And his noble barons

¹ *Sup. ras. à sec. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat Mærlin him hauede ifað¹.

Ah heo nælden leden þene king :

ut of þis londe.

ah heo curen heom to ældre :

Vther þene gode.

& fiftene þusend cnihten :

fæire iwepned.

baldere Brutten :

þa þider sculde buzen.

þa þas ferde wes al ȝaru : 10

þa bigunnen heo to faren.

mid alle þan bezste scippen :

þæ bi þære fæ stoden.

& ferdē swa longe :

þat heo comen to Irlōde.

& þa hauene nomen :

þæ cnihtes wel idone.

heo eoden uppen fæ strōd :

& biheolden Irlonde.

þa spæc Mærlin : 20

& spilede mid wordē.

Iseo ȝe nu ohte men :

þene muchelne hul.

And he forþrihtes :

fende fiftene þusend cnihtes.

and Merlȝn and Vther :

þat was his oȝe broþer.

hii verde so longe :

þat hii come to Ȝrlonde.

they well advised him, that he should do the counsel that Merlin had said to him.' 'But they would not lead the king out of this land, but they chose them for chief Uther the good, and fifteen thousand knights, weaponed fair, of bold Britons, who thither should go [And he forth-right sent fifteen thousand knights, and Merlin, and Uther, who was his own brother]. 'When this army was all ready, then began they to fare with all the best ships that by the sea stood,' and [they] voyaged so long that they came to Ireland. 'And the brave knights took the haven; they went upon the sea strand, and beheld Ireland. Then spake Merlin, and discoursed with words: "See ye now, brave men, the great hill, the hill so exceeding high,

¹ ifæd

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe hul fwa fwiðe hæh :
 þere weolcne he if ful neh.
 þat if þat feolliche þing :
 hit hatte þere Eotinde Ring.
 elches weorkes unniliche :
 hit com of Aufrike.
 Slæð eower teldest¹ :
 ȝeond al þaƿ feldes.
 her we scullen ræften :
 to þreom dæȝen uirften. 10
 i þan feorðe dæiȝe :
 we scullen heonne fufen.
 touward þā hulle : [f.99. c.1.]
 þer if ure iwille.
 Ah we scullē uf ær baðien :
 & bonnien ure beornes.
 græiðien ure wepnen :
 fer² wel heo uf bi-houeð.
 þus hit bi-læfde :
 & þer læie þa ferde. 20
 þeo³ ahte Irlond :
 a king þat wes swiðe fstrong.
 he hæhte Gillomaurus :
 gomenen he wef lauerd.
 him comen þa tiðende :

and floȝen hire teldes :
 oueral þe feldes.

þis ihorde Gillomaur :
 king of þan londe.

Gillomau-
 rus.

that to the welkin it is full nigh? That is the marvellous thing, it is named the Giants Ring, to each work unlike,—it came from Africa.' 'Pitch your [and pitched their] tents over all 'these [the] fields; 'here we shall rest for *the* space of three days; on the fourth day we shall march hence toward the hill, where our will is. But we shall ere (previously) refresh us, and assemble our warriors; make ready our weapons, for well they behove us (we shall need them). Thus it remained, and there lay the army. 'Then possessed Ireland a king that was most strong; he hight Gillomaur, he

¹ teldef?² R. for.³ po?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ̅ Brutes weorē an londe.

he lette beoden ferde :

ȝeond alle Irlondes ærde.

& he gon þ̅retien fwiðe :

þ̅at al he wolde heō to-driue.

þ̅a þ̅ word him com to :

þ̅ Brutes wolden þ̅er don.

& comē to þ̅an anes :

to fæchen þ̅a ſtanef.

þ̅a þ̅e kīg Gillomar :

makede mucchel hoker & ſcarn. and makede mochel ſcornes :

& feide þ̅ heo weoren :

sotten iueren.

þ̅ ouer fæ brade :

þ̅ider weoren iliðene.

to fechen þ̅er ſtanes :

aſe in heore londe neorē nane.

and ſwor a fēit Brændan :

Ne ſcullen heo lædē ænne ſtan. þ̅at hii ne folde habbe on.

ahforþ̅an ſtanen heo ſcullen ibiden : ac for loue of þ̅an ſtones :

alre baluwenen mæſt. 21 hii fol¹ habbe harm meſt.

heore blod ȝeoten :

was lord of *the* people ; the tidings came to him that the Britons were in *the* land ; [This heard Gillomaur, king of the land,] ‘he caused forces to be summoned over all Irelands territory,’ and ‘he gan to threaten [threatened] greatly, that he would ‘all’ drive them out. ‘When the word came to him, what *the* Britons would do there, and *that they* came for that only, to fetch the stones, then the king Gillomar’ [and] made mickle ‘derision and’ scorn, ‘and said that they were foolish fellows, who over *the* broad sea were thither arrived,’ ‘to seek [that they should seek] there stones, as [if] none ‘were in their land [might be found in all Britain]; ‘and [He] swore by saint Brandan :—“They shall not carry *away* one stone [that they should not have one], but for [love of] the stones they

¹ folle ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ut of heore buken.
 & fwa me fcal heō tachen ⁊
 ftanes to fæchen.
 & feoððen ich wulle buzen ⁊
 in to Brutlonde.
 & fuggen þan king Aurilie ⁊
 ꝥ mine ftanes ich wullen werien.
 & buten þe king beon ftille ⁊
 & don mine iwille.
 ich wulle in hif londe ⁊ 10
 mid fæhte at-den¹.
 maken him wefte paðes ⁊
 & wildernes monie. [c.2.]
 widewen i-noȝe ⁊
 heore weres fcullen deȝe.
 þuſ þe vnwife king ⁊
 plazede mid worden.
 ah al an oðer hit iwærð ⁊
 oðer he iwende.
 ȝaru wes hes³ ferde ⁊ 20
 & forð heo gon fufen.
 swa longe þat heo comen ⁊
 þer læien Brutes on.

þus wife king² ⁊
 pleoyde mid wordes.
 ac al an oþer hit iwarþ ⁊
 oþer þane he wende.
 ȝaru was his ferde ⁊
 and he gan forþ wende.
 so long þat he com ⁊
 þar þeos Bruttes were.

'shall abide *the* most of all mischiefs; [should have most of harm.] 'spill
 their blood out of their bellies,—and so men shall teach them (they shall
 be taught) to seek stones! And afterwards I will go into Britain, and
 say to the king Aurelie, that my stones I will defend; and unless the king
 be still, and do my will, I will in his land with fight withstand; make him
 waste paths, and wildernesses many; widows enow,—their husbands shall
 die!" Thus the unwise king played with words, but it all happened an-
 other *wise*, other [than] he weened. His army was ready, and forth 'they [he]
 gan march, so long that 'they [he] came 'whereon the [where these] Britons

¹ at-ftonden?² A part of this line seems omitted.³ his?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

To-gaderē heo comen :

& hærdliche on-floȝen.

& fuhten feondliche :

feollen þa fæie.

þa Irifce weoren bare :

& Bruttes iburnede.

þa Irifce fullen :

& wriȝen al þa feldef.

& þe king Gillomar :

gon him to fleonne þar.

& flæh forð rihtes :

mid twenti of hiȝ cnihtes.

in to ænne muchele wude :

wurðscipen biræiued¹.

wes hiȝ Irifce uolc :

mid ſtele iualled.

þuȝ wes þe kīȝ iſcænd :

& þ^o he endede hiȝ ȝelp.& þ^o to wude ferde :

& lette hiȝ folc fællen.

þa Bruttes biheolden :

þa dede ȝeond þan vælden.

seouen þuȝend þer leien :

liues biðæled.

Bruttes ȝeond þan uælden :

To-gadere hii come :

and hahliche floȝe.

Ac Ȝreffe weren bare :

and Bruttus i-burned.

þe Ȝrifce folle :

and wreȝe þe feldes.

and þe king Gillomaur :

gan to fleonde þar.

in to one mochele wode :

worſipe bi-deled.

þuȝ was þe king iſend :

and þuȝ eandede² hiȝ ȝealp.

Bruttes in þan felde :

'lay [were]. Together they came, and 'hardily [fiercely] encountered, 'and fought fiercely,—the fated fell!' [But] 'the' Irish were bare, and *the* Britons in armour; the Irish fell, and covered 'all' the fields. And the king Gillomar gan 'him' to flee there, 'and fled forth-right, with twenty of his knights,' into a great wood,—of worship bereaved,—'his Irish folk was felled with steel.' Thus was the king shamed, and thus 'he' ended his boast, 'and thus went to *the* wood, and let his folk fall! The Britons beheld the dead over the fields; seven thousand there lay deprived of life.'

¹ biræiueð *pr. m.*² he endede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ferdē to heore telden.

wende to hire teldes. [c. 2.]

& heore gode wepnen :

wurðliche bihoȝeden.

& þer heo gunnen ræften :

and þar hii gonne to reſte :

aſe Merlin heom radde.

aſe Merlȝn heom hehte.

I þan feorðe dæie :

In þan feorþe daie :

þa gūnen heo fuſen.

þo gonnen hii wende.

& ferden to þan hulle :

and ferde to þan hulle :

iwæpned wel alle.

iwepnid wel alle.

þer ſtod þ̅ ſeolkuð werc :

10

war ſtod þat wonder worc :

muchel & ſwiðe ſt⁹c.

mochel and ſwiþe ſtark.

Cnihtes eoden upward :

Cnihtes eoden vpward :

cnihtes eodē dunward.

cnihtes eoden dunward.

cnihtes eoden abuten :

hii eoden al aboute :

& ȝeorne biheolden.

and ȝeorne bi-heolde.

ifeȝen¹ þer on londe : [f. 99^b. c. 1.]

hii ſehȝen þar on londe :

ſellic werc ſtonden.

wonder work ſtonde.

þer weoren a þuſend cnihtes :

mid wepnen wel idihten.

and alle þa ðer² to iwiten : 20

biwuſten wel heore ſcipen.

þa ſpæc M⁹lin :

þo ſpac Merlȝn :

& ſpileden mid þan cnihten.

and ſaide to þe cnihtes.

Cnihtes ȝe beoð ſtronge :

þis ſtō beoþ longe :

The Britons went 'over [on] the fields to their tents, 'and worthily looked to (or took care of) their good weapons,' and there they gan to rest, as Merlin 'counselled [bade] them. On the fourth day then gan they to march, and proceeded to the hill, all well weaponed, where the marvellous work stood, great and most strong! Knights went upward, knights went downward, 'knights [they] went [all] about, and earnestly beheld it; they saw there on the land the marvellous work stand. 'There were a thousand knights with weapons well furnished, and all the others to wit guarded well their ships.' Then spake Merlin, and 'discoursed with [said to] the knights :

¹ heo feȝen?² oðer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þaſ ſtanes beoð græte & longe.	and ȝe beoþ men ſtronge.
ȝe mote neh gon :	
& neodliche heom fon on.	
ȝe mote uafte heom wriðen :	
mid ſtrongen fæil-rapen.	
ſcuuen & hebben :	ſuueþ and hebbeþ :
mid hæȝere ſtrenðe ¹ .	mid al ȝoure ſtrengþe.
treon græte & longe :	
þ̅ beon ſwiðe ſtronge.	
& gað to ane ſtane :	10 and goþ to one ſtone :
ȝe alle glæue ² .	ȝe alle cleane.
and cumeð mid ſtregðe ¹ :	
ȝif ȝe hine maȝen ſturien.	
Wel wufte Merlin :	Ac wel wifte Merlȝn :
hu hit ſculde iwurðen.	hou hit wolde iworþe.
þa cnihtes to-ſtepen :	þis cnihtef to-ſtapte :
mid muchelere ſtrengðe.	mid mochelere ſtrēgþe.
heo ſwunken ful ſwiðe :	hii ſwonke wel ſwiþe :
ah næfden heo fȝȝe.	þeh hit lute holpe.
þat heo auer æine ſtan :	20 ne mihten hii alle :
ſturien mahten.	anne ſton welde.
M ⁹ lin biheold Vther :	Merlȝn bi-heold Vther :

“ ‘Knights, ye are strong; these stones are great and long [These stones are long, and ye are strong men]; ‘ye must go nigh, and forcibly take hold of them; ye must wreathe them fast with strong sail-ropes’; shove and heave with ‘utmost [all your] strength ‘trees great and long, that are exceeding strong’; and go *ye* to one stone, all clean, ‘and come *again* with strength, if ye may it stir.’ ” [But] Merlin wist well how it ‘should [would] happen. ‘The [These] knights advanced with mickle strength; they labored full greatly, ‘but they had not power, *so* that they ever any stone might stir [though it helped *but* little; they all might not gain one stone]! Merlin beheld Uther, who was ‘the [this] kings brother, and ‘Merlin the pro-

¹ ſtrengðe?² clæne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe was þe kinges broðer.

þat was þis kinges broþer.

& þas word sæide :

M^olin þe witeȝe.

Vther tih þe aȝan :

& bonne þine cnihtes.

and bad him and his cnihtes :

& ftondeð al abutē :

ftonde bi-halues.

& ȝeorne bi-haldeð.

& beoð alle ftille :

þ na man þer ne fturie.

ær ich fugge eou nu anan :

forte ich fegge ȝou anon :

hu we fcullen fon on.

10 nimeþ ech ane fton.

Vther droh hine abac :

& bonnede hif cnihtes.

þ ne bilafden þer nane :

aneowefte þan ftane.

al fwa feor fwa a mon :

mihte werpen ænne ftan. [c.2.]

& Mærlin eode abutē :

Merlȝn eode aboute :

& ȝeornen gon bihalden.

þrie he eode abuten :

wið innen & wið uten.

20 wiþ ine and wiþ houte.

& fturedede hif tunge :

and ftorede his tonke¹ :

alfe he bede funge,

afe he his bedes fonge.

þus M^olin dude þer :

þus Merlȝn dude þer :

phet said these words : “ Uther, draw thee back, and assemble thy knights, and stand *ye* all about [bade him and his knights stand aside], ‘and diligently behold, and be *ye* all still, so that no man there stir’ ‘ere [until] I say to you ‘now’ anon how we shall commence [“take *ye* each a stone”].” ‘Uther drew him back, and assembled his knights, so that none there remained near the stones, as far as a man might cast a stone. And’ Merlin went about, ‘and diligently gan behold; thrice he went about,’ within and without, and moved his tongue as *if* he sung [his] beads. Thus did Merlin

¹ tonge?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ ¹ cleopede he Vðær.	þo cleopede he Vther.
Vther com fwiðe :	Vther com to me :
& alle þine cnihtes mid þe.	and alle þine cnihtes mid þe. [f. 80. c. 1.]
& winneð þas stanes alle :	and nimeþ þeos stanes alle :
ne scullen 3e læuen nænne.	ne folle 3eo bi-leaue nanne.
for nu 3e mazen heom habben ² :	for nou 3e mawe heom hebbe :
swulche veðerene balles.	afe feþerbeddes.
& fwa 3e sculleð heom mid ræde :	and so 3e folle mid reade :
to ure scipen lede.	to 3oure fipes leade.
þeos stanes heo ladden :	þe stanes hii ladde :
swa Merlin heom radde.	afe Merlȝ ³ heom radde.
& duden heō in heore scipen :	
& feileden uorð to iwiten.	
& swa heo gunnē wenden :	and wende forþ so long :
into þiffen londe.	þat hii come to þiffe londe.
& ladden heom in ann velde :	hii bere 3am alle bolde :
þe if wunder ane brad.	and leide 3am vp on wolde.
he if brad & swiðe muri :	þat was a stude wel [muri] :
on uæst Ambref-burie.	ihote Ambres-buri.
þer Hengeft biſwæc :	
Bruttes mid sæxen.	
Mærlin heom gon rærē :	Merlȝn hem gan reare :

Ambrefburi.

there ; 'then called he Uther : " Uther, come 'quickly [to me], and all thy knights' with thee, and take *ye* these stones all ; ye shall not leave one ; for now ye may heave them as (like) feather 'balls [beds] ; and so ye shall with counsel carry 'them' to 'our [your] ships." 'These [The] stones they carried *away*, as Merlin counselled them, 'and placed them in their ships, and sailed forth to wit,' and 'so they gan proceed into [proceeded forth so long, that they came to] this land, 'and brought them on a plain that is wondrously broad ; broad it is and most pleasant, near [they bore them all bold, and laid them upon *a* weald that was a place well pleasant, named] Ambresbury, 'where Hengest betrayed (*or* destroyed) *the* Britons with sæxes.'

¹ þa?² hebben?³ R. Merlȝn.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alfe heo stoden ærer.

swa næu⁹ nan oder² mon :

þene craft ne cuðe don.

ne næuer ær þer biferē :

nef na mon fwa wif iboren.

þat cuðe þet weorc rihten :

& þa stanes dihten.

þat tidende com to þan kinge :

i þan norð ende.

of Merlines fore :

& of Vthæres his broðer.

þat heo weoren mid ifunde :

icumen to þissen londe.

& þ þat worc wef al idiht :

& ifet up riht.

þe king wes an breofte : [f.100.c.1.]

wūder ane bliðe.

& lette beode huftige :

fwa wid fwa wef al his lond.

þat al his folc fwa swiðe muri : 20

come to Amberes-buri.

al his drihtliche uolc :

to White-funedæie.

alfe hii sto¹ ere.

so neuere non oþer man :

þane craft ne couþe don.

þe tȳdinge com to þan kinge :

of þan worc to his hinne.

and of Merlȳn his vore :

and Vther his boþer³.

þat hii weren mid ifunde :

icome to þisse londe.

and þat worc was al idiht :

and ifet vp riht.

þe king was on lifue :

wonderliche bliþe.

and lette beade al his folk muri :

þat hii come to Ambref-buri.

wiþ houte delaie :

in þan Witefonedaiȝe.

Merlin gan rear them, as they ere stood, so never any other man could do the craft, 'nor ever ere there-before was any man so wise born, that could the work raise, and the stones dispose.' The tidings came to the king 'in the north end, [to his inn, of the work, and] of 'Merlins [Merlin his] proceeding, and 'of' Uther, his brother, that they were with safety come to this land, and that the work was all disposed, and set up right. The king was in 'breast [life] wondrously blithe; and caused 'a husting [all his merry folk] to be summoned, 'so wide as was all his land,' that 'all his merry folk [they] 'so very joyous' should come to Ambresbury, 'all his

¹ ftode?² oðer?³ R. broþer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ƿider com com¹ Aurilie ƿe king : and ƿe king wolde ƿare beo :
& al his folc mid him. and ƿane ftude worƿi.

a Whiten-funēdæie :

he ƿer wærf makede.

al fe ich ƿe wulle telle :

a ƿiffe boc-fpelle.

Weoren a ƿan walde :

ƿar were in ƿan wolde :

teldes itælded.

in ƿan brade uelde :

nize ƿufend teldes.

10 nize ƿufend teldes.

al ƿan Whitenfunendæi :

o ƿan Witefonneday :

ƿe king a ƿan uelde læi.

ƿe king in ƿan felde lay. [c. 2.]

he bar ƿare his croune :

heze vppe on his heued.

hæt halzien ƿe ftude :

and lette halzi ƿane ftude :

ƿe hæhte Stanhenge.

ƿat hatte Stonhenge.

ƿreo dæies fulle :

ƿreo dazes folle :

wunede ƿe king ftille.

ƿar lay ƿe king ftille.

i ƿan ƿridde dæie :

heze wurðede his duzeðe.

20

he makede tweie biſcopes :

he makede twei biſſopes :

wunder ane gode.

holi mē and gode.

Seint Dubriz to Kaerliun :

Seint Dubriz to Cayrlion :

Dubriz.

people, at [without delay, on the] Whitsunday, [and the king would be there, and honour the place]. 'Thither came Aurelie the king, and all his folk with him; on Whitsunday he there made a feast, as I will thee tell in this book-story. [There] were on the weald 'tents raised, on the broad plain,' nine thousand tents. 'All [On] the Whitsunday the king on the plain lay; [he bare there his crown, high upon his head]; 'ordered [and caused] the place to be hallowed, that hight Stonehenge. Full three days the king 'dwelt [lay there] still; 'on the third day, his people *he* highly honoured [*or* rewarded];' he made two bishops, 'wondrously [holy men

¹ *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Samfon.

to Eouuerwic feint Samfon.

beien heo iwurðen hali :

& mid gode hāze.

I þan feorðe dæie :

duzeðen to-dælden.

and fwa ane ftunde :

hit stod a þan ilkē.

¶ þa ȝet þer wes a luðer gume :

Paffent.

Paffent Vortigernes fune.

wes þe ilke Paffent :

in to Walisc londe iwēt.

and þer a þen ilke dāzen :

wes bicumen ut-laȝe.

Ah ne durste he noht longe wunien
for Aurilie & for Vther.

ah he biȝet fciþen gode :

& ferde bi fæ flode.

in to Alemaine he uerde :

mid fif hundred monnen.

& þer he biwon muchel uolc :

& makeden fciþ-ferde.

& for fwa longe :

þat he com to þisse londe.

to Euerwich feint Samfon.

beine hii were holy :

and þorh god mihti.

In þan feorþe daie :

þat folk him to-dealde.

and so hit one ftunde :

stod in þan ilke.

þe ȝet þar was on luþer gome :

Pascent Vortigerne his fone.

was þes ilke Pascent :

in to Walse lond iwend.

and þare in þan ilke dāȝe :

[þer : was bi-come vtlāȝe.

[þær :

Ac ne dorste he noht longe wonie
for Aurelie and for Vther.

ac bi-ȝeat fipes gode :

and wende bi fée flode.

in to Alemaȝne he com :

mid fif hundred manne.

in¹ þar bi-wan moche :

and torn eft to þis londe.

and] good, Saint Dubriz at Kaerleon, *and* Saint Samson at York; both they 'became [were] holy, and 'with [through] God 'high [mighty]. On the fourth day 'people [the folk it] separated, and so a time it stood in the same *wise*. The yet there was a wicked man, Pascent, 'Vortigers [Vortiger his] son; was 'the [this] same Pascent gone into Welsh land, and there in the same days was become outlaw. But he durst not long dwell there, for Aurelie and for Uther; but 'he' procured good ships, and went by *the* sea-flood; into Germany he 'proceeded [came], with five hundred men, and there 'he' won much 'folk, and made *a* fleet,' and 'voyaged so long that he came [turned eft] to this land, into 'the Humber

¹ and?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ī to þere Humbre :'	in to Norþhūbre :
þer he hærmes worhte.	þare he harmes wrohte.
Ah ne durfte he noht longe :	Ac ne dorste he noht longe :
i þan ænde at-ftonde.	in þan eande astone.
þe kin ¹ ferde þider ward :	þe king verde þiderward :
& Paſſent fleh aweiward.	and Paſcent fleoþ a-weiward.
æft ⁹ fæ ſwa longe :	
þat he com to Irlonde.	into Ýrlonde :
Sone he þer funde :	
þene king of þan londe. 10	
his heorte wes ſwiðe fæc :	
he grette þene king Gillomar.	to king Gelomaur þe ſtronge. [ſ.80 ^b .c.1.]
Hail feo þu Gillomar :	and grette þan kinge :
gumene ælder.	mid godes gretige.
ich æm to þe icume :	Ich ham to þe icome :
ich wes Vortig ⁹ nes fune.	ich was Vortigeres fone.
mi fader wes Brutlondes king :	mi fader was Brutlondes king :
he luuede þe þurh alle þing.	and louede þe þorh alle þing.
& 3if þu woldeſt to-3ere :	and 3ef þou woldeſt to-3ere :
beon þider min iuare. 20	beo mine vere.
ſwa wit ſculden iſpæcken :	
& minne fader wel wreken.	to wreken mine fader deap :
& wel wreken þi folc :	and þin owe folkes.

[Northumberland], where he harm wrought. But he durst not long remain in the territory. The king marched thitherward, and Pascent fled awayward, 'by sea so long that he came' 'to [into] Ireland. 'Soon he found there the king of the land; [to king Gillomar the strong; and] 'his heart was very sore, he' greeted the king 'Gillomar' [with Gods greeting]: "'Hail be thou, Gillomar, chief of men!' I am to thee come; I was Vortigers son; my father was Britains king, 'he [and] loved thee through all things. And if thou wouldest now be my companion, 'as we shall agree,' 'and my father well avenge, and well avenge thy folk [to avenge my fathers

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ Vther her qualde.

þat Vther here fulde :

& þi felcuðe wærc :

þo he þe stonef fette.

þat heo¹ heonne droȝe.

halfendel þat kinelond :

ich wolde fet þe an hond.

& æc ich iherde fuggen :

þer ic ferde inne fæ.

þat þe king Aurilien :

seoc if iwurðen.

& lið inne Winchæstre : [f.100^b. c.1.]

a bedde ful faste.

11

þu miht ileue me inoh :

for þis if witerliche soð.

Paſſēt & Gillomar :

þus Paſcent and Gillomar :

makeden heore forward þar.

makede foreward þar.

aðes heo ſworē :

oþeſ i² ſworen :

monie & unifohȝe.

manȝe and inowe.

þ heo woldē al þis lond :

þat hii wolde al þis lond :

ſætten on hæore tweire hond.

fette in hire tweire hond.

þe aðes weoren iſworene : 20

ah æft heo weoren for-lorene.

þe king gadere ferde :

þe king gadere ferde :

wide ȝeond hiſ ærde.

ouer al þan erþe.

death, and thine own folks] that Uther here 'killed, and thy marvellous work, that he hence drew [felled, when he fetched *away* the stones, *the* half-part of the kingdom I would set to thee in hand."] 'And eke I heard say, where I voyaged in *the* sea, that the king Aurelie is become sick, and lieth in Winchester, in bed full fast. Thou mayest believe me enow, for this is verily sooth.'" [Thus] Pascent and Gillomar made 'their' compact there; oaths they swore, many and 'innumerable [enow], that they would set all this land in their two (joint) hands; 'the oaths were sworn, but eft they were broken!' The king gathered *a* host 'wide over his [over all the] land;

¹ he?² hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to þere sæ beoð iwende :

Gillomar & Paffen¹.

in to þan ſcipen eoden :

& forð heom letten gliden.

Forð heo wenden biliue :

þat heo comen to Meniue.

þ̅ wes a þan time :

tun fwiðe hende.

þ̅ mō nu iwitterli :

clepeð feint Deouwi.

þer heo nomen hauene :

mid hezere bliffe.

ſcipen eodē a þat ſtrond :

cnihtes eoden a þat lond.

þa fæide Paſſent :

touward Gillomar he went.

Seie me king Gillomar :

nu we beoð icumen her.

Nu ich ſette þe an hond :

halfenuēdæl² þif kinelon³.

for iſ of Wīchaſtre icume :

to me anes cnihtes ſune.

& fæið me ſwulne ræd :

to þare féé hii beoþ iwend :

Gillomar and Paſcent.

Forþ hii eode blifue :

þat hii come to Menue.

þat was in þan time :

toun fwiþe hende.

þat me nou weterly :

cleopeþ feint Dauī.

þo Paſcent :

toward Gillomar went.

Ich ſette þe nou an hond :

haluendel þif kinelond.

for þar hiſ of Wincheſtre icome :

to me one cnihtes ſone.

and faiþ me ſochne read :

[Men]eue.

to the sea [they] are gone, Gillomar and Pascent; 'into the ships *they* went, and forth let them glide'. Forth they proceeded quickly, so that they came to Meneve, that was in that time a town exceeding fair, that men now truly call Saint Davids. 'There they took haven with great bliss; *the* ships went on the strand, *the* knights went on the land.' Then 'said' Pascent,—toward Gillomar 'he' went,—“ ‘Say me, king Gillomar, now we are come here'; now I set to thee in hand half-part this kingdom; for [there] is from Winchester come to me a knights son, and saith to me such advice,

¹ R. Passent here and below.² halfendæl? haluendæl? One syllable is redundant.³ kinelond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ Aurilie wule beon dæd.	þat Aurelie wole beo dead. [c.2.]
þat ufel if under his ribben :	
þat ne mæi he noh ¹ libben.	
her wit scullen wel wreken :	her we folle oure cun wel wreke :
unker wine-mæies.	
biwinnen his wunfeles :	[c.2.] and þis lond a-winne.
fwa us bið alre selest.	
To þan kinge com þat word :	To þan kinge cō þat word :
in to Winchæstre.	In to Wýnchestre.
þat Passent & Gillomar :	þat Pascent and Gillomar :
weoren mid ferde icumen hæ.	were mid ferde icome her.
þe king cleopede Vther :	þe king cleopede Vther :
þe wes his leoue broðer.	þat was his owe broþer.
Vther beð ² uerde :	Vther bead ferde :
ʒeond al þissen ærde.	oueral þeos eorþe.
& far to ure feonden :	and wend to oure onfreondes :
& drif heom of ærde.	and drif heom of londe.
oðer þu heom fufen :	
oðer þu heō feolle.	
Ich wolde faren æc :	20 and ich wolde eke :
ʒif ich neore fwa feoc.	ʒef ich nere so feke.
ah ʒif ich mai beon feore :	ac al so sone so ich may :
ich þe cumen after sone.	ich wolle þe after wende.

that Aurelie will be dead (die); 'the sickness is under his ribs, so that he may not live.' Here we shall well avenge our kindred, [and] win 'his territories [this land], 'as to us shall be best of all.' To the king came the word, into Winchester, that Pascent and Gillomar were come here with *an* army. The king called Uther, who was his 'dear [own] brother:—"Uther, summon forces over all this land, and march to our enemies, and drive them from land; 'either thou them disperse, either thou them fell.' [And] I would eke 'fare,' if I were not so sick; but 'if I may be sound (convalescent), I will come after thee soon [as soon as I may, I will after thee march]." Uther did

¹ noht?² bed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Al dude Uðer :
 swa þe king him fæide þer.
 & Passen at fēit Deowi :
 sorzen iworhte þer bi.
 and þe king Gillomar :
 muchel forȝe he dude þær.
 Brutlond heo þurh-arnden :
 hærȝede & barden¹.
 & Vther i þiffen ærde :
 sumnede hif ferde. 10
 & hit wes longe uirft :
 ær he mihte fufen a-riht.

& Passent West Walisc lond :
 fet an hif azere hond.
 Hit wes an ane dæie :
 his duȝeðe weorē bliðe.
 þer com faren Appas :
 feōdes hine vælden².
 to Passent he quað þuf :
 Cum hidere to uf. 20
 ich þe wulle telle :
 of ane wil-spalle³.
 Ich waf at Winchæstre :
 at þine wiðer-iwinnē.

Al dude Vther :
 alfe þe king hī faide þar.
 And Pascent at feint Dauī :
 mochel forewe dude þar bi.
 Brutlond hii þorh-hearnde :
 and flowen and barnde.

and al West Walfe lond :
 fette in hire owe hond.
 Hit was in on tyme :
 þat þe folk was bliþe.
 þar com faren Appas :
 to Pascent and faide þuf.
 Ich was in Wýnchestre :
 mid þan seake kinge.

Appas.

all as the king said to him there. And Pascent at Saint Davids 'wrought [made] thereby [much] sorrow; 'and to the king Gillomar much sorrow he did there'; Britain they through-ran, 'harried [and slew] and burnt. 'And Uther in this land assembled his host, and it was long time ere he might march aright.' And 'Pascent' set in 'his [their] own hand [all] West Welsh land. It was on a 'day [time], 'his people were [that the folk 'was blithe, there arrived Appas,—*the* fiends him conveyed! To Pascent 'he quoth [and said] thus: "'Come hither to us. I will thee tell of a joyful tiding.' I was 'at [in] Winchester, with 'thine adversaries [the sick king],

¹ barnden?² vereden? Cf. l. 17787. *et alib.*³ wil-spelle?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer lið þe king feoc :
 & forh-ful an heorten.
 what ſcal beon mi mede :
 3if ic þider ride.

& ich þe ſwa iqueme :

þat ich hine aquele¹. [f.101.c.1.]

þa andſwarede Paſſen :

and toward Appaſe went.

Ich bi-hate þe todæi :

an hūdrad pund for ic mæi. 10

3if þu me iquemest :

þat þu hine aq̃lle.

Treoðe he² plihtē :

þeſne ſwikedom to dihten.

Appas eode to bũr :

& þeſne balu mæinde.

he wes an hæðene gume :

ut of Saxlonde icume.

Muneckes claðes he nom an :

he ſcar hiſ crune uſeen. 20

he nom him tweien iueren :

& forð he gon fuſen.

& wende anan rihte :

þar he liþ in bedde :

and 3et wole libbe.

ac wat ſal beon mi mede :

3ef ich hine acwelle.

þo anſwerede Paſcent :

and toward Appas he went.

Ich bi-hote þe to day : [f.81.c.1.]

an hundred pund an wel ich may.

3ef þou ine cwaleſt.

Treouþe hii plihtē :

þiſne ſwikedom to dihte.

Appas eode to boure :

and þane balu meýnde.

he was an heaþene gome :

vt of Saxlonde icome.

Monekene cloþes he nom :

and far him croune ouenon.

and wende a-non riht :

where 'the king [he] lieth 'sick, and sorrowful in heart [in bed, and yet would live. But] what shall be my meed, if I 'thither ride, and I so gratify thee, that I 'kill him?' Then answered Pascent, and toward Appas he went: "I promise thee to-day a hundred pounds, 'for [and well] I may, if thou 'me so gratifiest, that thou 'kill [killest] him. Troth they plight this treachery to contrive. Appas went to *his* chamber, and 'this [the] mischief meditated; he was a heathen man, out of Saxland come. Monks clothes he took 'on,' 'he [and] shaved 'his crown upon [him upon *the* crown]; 'he took to him two companions, and forth he gan proceed,' and went anon

¹ The letters le are written above the line.

² heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in to Winchæstre.	in to Wýnchestre.
fwulc hit weore an hali mon :	alse hit were an holi mā :
þe hæðene deouel.	þe heapene deauel.
He wende to þan burhgate :	He wende to þa borhgate :
þer þe king on bure lai.	
& gratte þene dureward :	and þare doreward grette.
godes grætinge.	
& band ¹ hine an hiȝige :	and bad hine an hiȝenge :
gan in to þan kinge.	go to þan kinge.
& fuggen him to soðe :	10 and seggen him to soþe :
þ Vther his broðer.	þat Vther his broþer.
hæfde him þider i-fend :	hadde him þider i-fend :
feolne læche.	þane king to hele.
þene bezfte læche :	
þe wunede an æi londe.	
þe auer ælcne fucne mon :	
of ufele bringē con.	
þuſ læh þe laðe mon :	þus he leh þe loþe man :
leodene-kinge.	loh him worþe drihte.
for Uther weſ ifarē :	20 for Vther was forþ ifare :
forð mid his ferde.	mid mochelere ferde.
no nauer Vther hine ne ifæh :	ne neuere Vther hine ne feh :
ne þider hine i-fende.	ne þider ne fende.

right into Winchester, as *if* it were a holy man,—the heathen devil! He went to the burgh-gate, ‘where the king lay in chamber,’ and greeted the door-keeper ‘*with* Gods greeting;’ and bade him in haste go ‘in’ to the king, and say to him in sooth, that Uther his brother had sent him thither ‘a good leech [the king to heal]; ‘the best leech that dwelt in any land, that ever any sick man *out* of sickness can bring.’ Thus [he] lied, the odious man, ‘to the monarch,—[may *the* Lord be to him loath!],—for Uther was gone forth with ‘his [great] army, nor ever him saw (had seen) Uther, nor thither ‘him’ sent! ‘And [But] the king weened ‘that’ it were sooth, and

¹ bad?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þe king wende þat hit weore foð: ac þe king wende hit were forð:
& ilefde hī inoh. and ilefde him inoh.

Wha wolde wene:!

Wo wolde wene:!

þat he swike weore.

þat he swike were.

for an hif bare liche:!

for nexft his liche:!

he weorede ane burne.

he werede þe eare.

þer ufenen he hæfde: [c. 2.]

þar ouenan he hadde:!

ane ladliche here.

one blake couele.

& feoðden¹ ane cule:!

of ane blake claðe. 10

iblæcched he hæfede hif licame:!

fwulc ifmitte of cole.

He cneolede to þan kingge:!

He cneolede to þan kinge:!

hif fpæche wes ful milde.

his fpeche was wel milde.

X Hail feo þu Aurilien:!

Hayl beo þou Aurelie þe king: [c. 2.]

aðeleft alre kīgē.

Bruttene deorling.

hider me fende Vther:!

hider me fende Vther:!

þe if þin aȝen broðer.

þat his þin owe broþer.

& ich al for godes luue:!

and ich al for godes loue:!

æm to þe her icume.

20 ham to þe hider icome.

for ich þe wulle helen:!

for ich wolle for criftes loue:!

& al hal makien.

al hol þe makie.

for criftef leofe godef fune:!

ne ræche ich nane garfūe.

believed him enow. Who would ween that he were traitor!—for 'on his bare [next his] body he wore 'a cuirass [the hair-cloth], thereupon he had a 'loathly hair-cloth [black cowl], 'and then a cowl of a black cloth; he had blackened his body, as *if* smutted with coal! He kneeled to the king, his speech was 'full [well] mild: "Hail be thou, Aurelie, 'noblest of all kings [the king, Britains darling]! Hither me sent Uther, that is thine own brother; and I all for Gods love am 'here [hither] to thee come. For I will 'heal, and' all whole thee make, for Christs love, 'Gods son; I

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

no mede of londe :
 ne of feoluere no of golde.
 ah ælche feocken ich hit do :
 for luue of mine drihtene.

þis iherde þe king :
 hit wes him fwiðe iq̃me.
 ah whar if æuere æi mon :
 a þisse middel-ærde.

þe þis wolde wenen :
 ꝥ he fwiken weore.

He nō his glæf-fat anan :
 & þe king mæh þer on.

anne while after þan :
 þat glæf-fat an honden nom.

& fceoweden hit forð rihtes :
 biforen þas kinges cnihtes.

& þ² fæide anan :
 Appas þe haðene mon.

3if 3e me wulleð ileuē :
 ær to marwen eue.

þes king scal beon al hal :
 ihaled an his willē.

þa weoren bliðe :
 alle þa weoren i bure.

Appas eoden in æenne bur :

þis ihorde þe king :
 hit was him fwiþe icweme.

for ware his euere þe man :
 in þisse worle-riche.

10 þat wolde hit iwene :
 þat he soch were.

He nam his vrinal anon :
 an þe king meh þar on.

one wile after þan :
 þe vrinal an honde he nā.

and sewede forþ rihtes :
 bi-vore alle his cnihtes.

and þus faide anon :
 Appas þe luþer man.

20 Are to morewe heue.
 al hol þou falt iworþe.

þo weren bliþe :
 alle þat weren in boure.

Appas wende to boure :

reck not any treasure, nor meed of land, nor of silver nor of gold, but to each sick *person* I do it for love of my Lord.' ” The king heard this, it was to him most agreeable ;—‘but [for] where is ever ‘any [the] man in this ‘middle-earth [worlds realm], that would ‘this [it] ween, that he were ‘traitor [such] ! He took his ‘glass vessel [urinal] anon, and the king urined therein ; a while after that, the ‘glass-vessel [urinal] in hand [he] took, and viewed ‘it’ forth-right before ‘the kings [all his] knights ; and thus said anon Appas, the ‘heathen [wicked] man : “ ‘If ye will me believe’ ere to-morrow eve ‘this king shall be [thou shalt become] all whole, ‘healed at his will’.” Then were blithe all that were in chamber. Appas went in a [to] cham-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þat balu mæinde.
 & dude þer to atter :'
 þa scamoiene¹ hatte.
 & com ut forð rihtef :'
 imōg þa burh-cnihtes. [f.101^b.c.1.]
 & þan kinge² he gon dæle :'
 muchel canele.
 & gingiuere & licoriz :'
 he hom lefliche ȝef. 10
 alle heo nomen þ̅ lac :'
 & he heom alle bi-fwac.
 þeos swike feol a cneowe :'
 at-foren þan leod-kinge.
 & þ̅³ faide³ him to :'
 Lauerd nu þu scalt a-fon.
 of þiffen drinchen ane dæle :'
 þat scal beon þin hale.
 & þe king up drong :'
 & þer þ̅ atter he dronc. 20
 Anan fwa he hafde idrunke :'
 þe leche hine adun læide.
 þus feide Appas :'

and þane balu meingde.
 and dude þar to hatter :'
 þat scamoine hatte.
 and com vt forþrihtes :'
 amōg alle his cnihtes.
 and to ȝam he gan deale :'
 mochel canele.
 alle hii nemen þat lock :'
 and he alle bi-fwoc.
 þes swike ful a-cnowe :'
 bi-vore þan kinge.
 and þus faide him to :'
 Louerd þou salt þis vnder-fo.
 of þis drench on deal :'
 and þat fal beon þin heal. [f.81^b.c.1.]
 And þe king hit drong :'
 to his feȝe-fiȝe.

ber, and the mischief meditated, and put thereto poison, that hight scamony, and came out forth-right among 'the chamber-knights [all his knights], and to 'the knights [them] he gan to distribute much canel, 'and ginger and liquorice he gave them lovingly.' They all took the gift, and he deceived 'them' all. This traitor fell on *his* knees before the 'monarch [king], and thus said to him: "Lord, 'now' thou shalt receive [this,] of this drink a part, [and] that shall be thy cure." And the king 'up drank, and there the poison he drank [drank it to his *own* destruction]. 'Anon as he had drank, the leech laid him down. Thus said Appas to the chamber-

¹ The last two letters of this word are added by a second hand.

² cnihtes?

³ faide sæide *man. pr.*, but the second word struck out *man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to þan bur-cnihtes.
 Wreoð nu wel þene king :
 ꝥ he ligge a fwæting.
 for ich fugge eou þurh alle þing :
 al hal beoð aure¹ king.
 & ich wulle to mine inne :
 and speken wið mine monnen.
 & to þere mid-nihte :
 ich cūm forð rihtes.
 mid oðer lache-c²afte :
 þa sculleð beon him liðe.
 Forð wende þe fwike :
 þe king læi on sweuete.
 Appaf to hif inne :
 & spec wið his monnē.
 mid ftilleliche rune :
 biſtal of þan tune.

10

To þere mid-nihte :
 þa fende þa burh-cnihtes.
 sixe of heore monne :
 to Appafes inne.

20

and þe leche ftille :
 bi-ftal vt of þan halle.
 and awei him wēt :
 toward Gillomar and Paſcent.

knight: "Wrap now the king well, that he lie in sweating; for I say to you through all things, all whole shall your king be. And I will go to my inn, and speak with my men, and at the midnight I will come again forth-right, with other leechcraft, that shall be to him healing." Forth went the traitor,—the king lay in slumber,—Appas to his inn, and spake with his men; 'with stilly counsel stole from the town. [And the leech stilly stole out of the hall (palace), and away went he toward Gillomar and Pascent.] 'At the midnight then sent the chamber-knights six of their men to Appases inn; they weened to find him, and bring him to the king. Then was he

¹ eoure?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo wenden hine to finden :
 and longi hine to þan kinge.
 þa wes he iflozen :
 & feondes hine uæreden.
 þa men aȝein comē :
 þer þe king wunede. [c.2.]
 & cuddē¹ i þan bure :
 of Appases fore.
 þa mihte me ifeon :
 forȝen inoȝe beon. 10
 cnihtes feollen a-dun :
 & ȝirnden heore dæðes.
 þer wes muchel wanīg :
 heortne granīg.
 þer wes moni reolic spel :
 þer wes gumene iȝel.
 Heo leopen to þan bedde :
 & þene king hedden.
 þa ȝet he lai on fweouete :
 & on muchele fwate. 20
 þæ cnihtes mid weope :
 þene king awehten.
 & heo him to-cleopeden :
 mid mildere fteuene.

And ȝit þe king :

al to-fwate an hiȝenge.

and cleopede his cnihtes :

to him anon rihtes.

flown, and *the* fiends him carried! The men came back where the king dwelt, and made known in the chamber of Appases departure. Then might men see sorrow enow be! Knights fell down, and yearned their deaths; there was mickle lamentation *and* heart-groaning, there was many a piteous speech, there was yell of men! They leapt to the bed, and beheld the king; 'the yet he lay in slumber, and in great sweat. [And yet the king all over sweated speedily; and called his knights to him anon right.] 'The knights with weeping awakened the king, and they called to him with

¹ cudden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Lauerd hu mid þe :
 hu beoð þine beouste¹.
 for nu if ure læche :
 ifaren buten laue.
 iliðen ut of hirede :
 for hæne uf bilæued.
 þe king heom ȝif andfware :
 Al ic æm to-fwollen.
 & þer nis nan oder² ræd :
 nu nan ich wurðe dæd.
 & ich bidde forð rihtes :
 ȝe beoð mine cnihtes.
 þat ȝe græten Vther :
 þe if min aȝe broðer.
 & biddeð hine halden :
 mi lond an on-walde.
 Godd feolf þurh alle þing :
 lete hine beon god king.
 & hateð hine beon kene :
 & æiwær riht deme.
 wærcche³ uolke for fæder :
 hænen to frouere.

10

and feide ȝam an strongne read :
 þat he moſte beo dead.
 And ȝeo cnihtes hende :

20

mild voice : "Lord, how *is it* with thee? how is thy harm? For now is our leech departed without leave, gone out of court, *and* left us as wretches.' The king gave them answer : "I am all over swollen, and there is no other hap, now anon I shall be dead. And I bid forth-right, ye *who* are my knights [and said to them an evil hap, that he must die. "And ye, fair knights], 'that ye greet Uther, who is my own brother, and bid him hold my land in *his* sway. God *himself* through all things let him be a good king! And bid him be keen, and always deem right, as *a* father to *the* poor folk, to *the* destitute for comfort;—then may he hold *the* land in

¹ Perhaps an error for beorste? A plummet-mark in the margin indicates some mistake.

² oðer?

³ wræcche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þenne maie he halde :

lond an on-walde.

& nu to dai þenne ich beo dæd :

nimeð alle anne ræd.

& leteð me ilenge :¹ [f. 102.c.1:]

riht to Stanhenge:

bringeþ me at Stōhenge.

þer lið muchel of mine cunne :

þurh Sæxen a-qualde.

& of-fended¹ biscopes :

& boc-ilarede men. 10

mi gold and mi feoluer :

deled² for mire faule.

& leggeð me an æft ænde :

and leggeþ me þar in :

inne Stan-henge.

ware liþ mochel of mine cun.

Næs þer nan oðer ræd :

þer iward³ þe king dæd.

& al swa hiſ men duden :

And al þus hit was iwroht :

swa þe king demde.

alfe þe king hit hadde idiht.

Inne Wæles⁴ wes Vther :

And Vther was in Walis :

& her of næs naðing war. 20

neuere þurh nare liſte :

her of naþing nuſte.

and noht her of nuſte.

power. And now today, when I be dead, take *ye* all one counsel, and 'cause me to be brought right [bring me] to Stonehenge, 'where lie much of my kindred, by *the* Saxons killed. And send for bishops, and book-learned men; my gold and my silver distribute for my soul,' and lay me 'at *the* east end, in Stonehenge [therein, where lie much of my kindred]. 'There was no other hap,—there was the king dead!' And all 'so his men did [thus it was wrought] as the king 'directed. [had ordered it. And] Uther was in Wales, and hereof 'was nothing ware, never through any art hereof' 'nothing [nought] wist; nevertheless he had with him the prophet

¹ of-fendeð? ² deleð? ³ iward?⁴ The first hand has only written wæs, which is corrected by the second into Wæles wes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

naðeles he hafede mid him :	napeles he hadde mid him :
þene witeȝe M ^o lin.	þane wittȝ Merlȝn.
aȝeineden ¹ þere uerde :	
þe icumē wef to ærde.	
Vther lai inne Wales :	
in anne wilderne.	
& fundede to uarene :	
wið Paſſent to fehten.	
þa a þan auen time :	In þan euctime :
þe mone gon to ſcine.	þe mone gan to ſcȝne.
wel neh al ſwa brihte :	
ſwa þe fūne-lihte.	
þa iſehȝen heo feorre :	hii iſeȝen a-vorre :
æne ſelcuðe ſterre.	one ſelcouȝe ſtorre.
he wes brad he wes muchel :	
he wes unimete.	
of hī comē leomen :	
igaſtliche ſcinē.	
þe ſteorre if ihate :	þat his ihote :
a latin comete.	a latȝn Comete.
Com of þan ſteore :	Com of þan ſtorre :
a leome ſwiðe ſturne.	a leom ſwiȝe ſturne.
at þeos leomen ende :	at þe leomes ende :
wes a drake hende.	was a drake hende.
of þeſ draken muðe :	of þan drakes mouȝe :
leomen comē inohȝe.	leames come inowe.

Merlin; *he* proceeded towards the army that was come to *the* land. Uther lay in Wales, in a wilderness, and prepared to march, to fight with Pascent. Then' in the eventime, the moon gan to shine, 'well nigh all as bright as the sun-light. Then' they saw afar a marvellous star; 'it was broad, it was large, it was immense! From it came gleams terribly shining'; 'the star [that] is named in Latin, comet. Came from the star a gleam most fierce; at 'this [the] gleams end was a dragon fair; from 'this [the] dragons

¹ aȝenden, *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Ah tweien þer weoren muchele : Ac tweie þar were mochele :
 þere oðere vnimete. þe oþre oniliche.
 þe an droh toward France : þe on droh to F^ance :
 þe oðer toward Irlonde. [c.2.] þe oþer to Ýrlonde.
 þe leome þe toward France droh : þe leame þat toward France droh :
 he wes briht vnifoh. he was him seolf briht inoh. [c.2.]
 to Mut¹ Giu wæs ifezen :
 þa feolcuðe takne.
 þe leome þa strehte west riht : þe leome þat strahte west riht :
 a feouen bæmen wes idiht. 10 a feoue bemes hit was idiht.
 þis isah Vðer : þis i-feh Vther :
 ah nas he noht her of war. ac he nas noht fale war.
 fæh him wes an heorte :
 & feolliche auæred².
 fwa wes al þat muchele folc :
 þat wes in þere uerde.
 Vðer cleopede M⁹lin : Vther cleopede Merlÿn :
 & bad hine cume to him. and bad hine come to him.
 & þus feide him to : and þus faide him to :
 mid fwiðe softe worden. 20 mid mildere speche.
 Mærlin M⁹lī : leoue freond : Merlÿn leoue freond :
 fonde þi feoluen. fonde þi feolue.
 & fæie uf of þan tacne : and sei vs of þan tockne :

mouth came gleams enow! But twain there were mickle, unlike to the others; the one drew (spread) toward [to] France, the other toward [to] Ireland. The gleam that toward France drew, it was [itself] bright enow; 'to Munt-Giu was seen the marvellous token!' The gleam that stretched right west, [it] was disposed in seven beams. Uther saw this,—but he was not 'hereof [much] wary,—'sorrow was to him in heart, and strangely *he* was frightened; so was all the great folk that was in the host.' Uther called Merlin, and bade him come to him, and thus said to him with very soft words [mild speech]: "Merlin, 'Merlin,' dear friend, prove thyself, and say to us of the token that we have seen; for 'I wot not

¹ Munt?² Some alteration has been made in this word.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe we i-fæȝen habbeoð.	þat we ifeihȝe habbeþ.
for nat ich on worlde-riche :	
to whan hit ſcal iwurðen.	
buten þu uf raden :	for bote þou vs reade :
aȝæn we moten riden.	aȝein we mote ride.
Mærlin fæt him ſtille :	Merlȝn fat wel ſtille :
longe ane ſtunde.	one lange ſtunde.
ſwulc he mid ſweuene :	alſe he mid ſweune ¹ :
ſwunke ful ſwiðe.	wel fore ſwonke.
Heo ſeidē þe hit ifeȝen :	10 Hii ſaide þat hit ifehe :
mid heore aȝen æȝen.	mid hire owene heȝe.
þat ofte he hine wende :	þat ofte he hine wende :
ſwulc hit a wurem weore.	alſe hit a worm were.
Late he gō awakien :	Late he gan a-wakie :
þa gon he to quakien.	þo gan he to cwakie.
& þas word ſeide :	and þeos word ſaide :
M ⁹ lin þa witeȝe.	Merlȝn þe wiſe.
Wæilawæi wæilawæi :	Way la way :
a piſſere worlde-riche.	in piſſe worle-riche.
muchel if þa forȝe :	20 moche his þe forewe :
þe ifiȝen if to londe.	þat ifeȝen his to londe.
Whær ært þu Vther :	War hart þou Vther :
fiten me biuoren her.	fete me bi-vore her.
& ich þe wulle ſuggen :	and ich þe wolle ſegge :
of forȝen inoȝen.	of manȝ cunnes forewe.
Dæd if Aurilie :	Dead his Aurelie þi broþer :

in *the* worlds realm to what *end* it shall befall;’ unless thou us counsel, back we must ride.” Merlin sate ‘him [well] still, a long time, as *if* he with dream ‘full greatly [well sorely] labored. They said who saw it with their own eyes, that oft he turned him, as *if* it were a worm! At length he gan to awake, then gan he to quake, and these words said Merlin the ‘prophet [wise]: “Walaway! Walaway! in this worlds realm, much is the sorrow that is come to *the* land! Where art thou, Uther? Set before me here, and I will say to thee of ‘sorrows enow [many kind of sorrow].

¹ ſweuene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xliii.

kingene aðeleft.
 fwa if þe oðer? [f. 102^v.c.1.]
 Coftanz þi broðer. and Conftance þin oþer.
 þe Uortig² ne biſwac? þat Vortiger bi-fwok?
 mid his fwike-dome. mid his fwikedome.
 Nu haueð Vortigernes cun? Nou haueþ Vortigerne his cun?
 Aurilien aquald. Aurelie acwelled.
 nu þu ært al ane? nou hart þou al one?
 of aðele þine cunne. of alle þine kunne. [f. 82.c.1.]
 Ah ne hope þu to ræde? 10 Ac ne hope þou to reade?
 of heom þat liggeð dede. of hā þat liggeþ deade.
 ah þenc of þe feoluen? ac þench ou þou miht þi feolf?
 feolðen þe beoð ȝineþe. þine kinedom werie.
 for felde he afwint? for fealde he afwint?
 þe to him feolue þencheð. þat to him seolue trefteþ.
 þu ſcalt wurðen god king? þou falt worþe god king?
 & gumenene lauerd. and ſteorne þorh alle þing.
 & þu to þere mid-niht? And þou at þare midniht?
 wepne þine cnihtes. wepne þine cnihtes.
 þat we i þan morȝen-liht? 20 þat þou at þan moreliht?
 mæȝen come forð riht. mæȝe be a-redi to þe fiht.
 forn at Meneue?
 þer þu ſcat¹ fihtē.
 ær þu þenne wende?

Dead is Aurelie [thy brother], 'noblest of kings'; 'so is the other, Constance, thy brother [and Constance, thine other], whom Vortiger betrayed with his treachery. Now hath 'Vortigers [Vortiger his] kin killed Aurelie; now art thou alone of 'thy noble [all thy] kindred. But hope not thou for counsel of them that lie dead, but think 'of thyself,—prosperity shall be given to thee [how thou mightest thyself defend thy kingdom];—for seldom he faileth, who to himself 'thinketh [trusteth]. Thou shalt become good king, and 'lord of men [stern through all things]. And thou at the midnight weapon thy knights, that 'we in [thou at] the morning-light may 'come forth-right [be ready for the fight], 'before Meneve,—there thou

¹ R. ſcalt.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ſclæht þu ſcalt makien.	
þu ſcalt beien flæ þer :	for þou ſalt beiene flen þar :
Paſſent and Gillomar.	Paſcent and Gillomar.
& monie þuſend of þan gumen :	and mani þouſend of þan gomes :
þat beoð mid heom hider icumen.	þat beoþ mid ȝam icome.
þat taken of þan ſteorre :	þe tockne of þan ſtorre :
þe we iſaȝen ſwa feorre.	þat we iſehen ſo forre.
soð hit iſ Uðer leof :	soþ hit was Vther leof :
þ̅ tacnede þines broðer dæd.	hit tocknede þine broþer deaþ.
Biuoren þa ſteorre wes þæ drake :	Bi-fore þan ſtor was þe drake :
elcches wurmeſ vnimake.	eche worme onimake.
þ̅ takē wes a ¹ þire half :	þat tockne was in þine half :
þ̅ weore ² þu Uðer þi ſeolf.	þat were Vther þou þi ſeolf.
þu ſcalt habben þis lond :	
& þin æie beon muchel & ſtrong.	
Swulche toknen beoð uncuðe :	þe tocknes oncoupe :
of þaſ draken muðe.	þat come of þe drakes moupe.
eoden tweien leomen :	[c. 2.] þat weren tweie leomes :
wunder ane lihte.	wonderliche lihte.
þe an ſtrehte feor ſoð :	20 þe on ſtrehte for ſuþ :
ut ouer France.	vt ouer France.
þ̅ iſ an æiȝef-ful ſune :	þat hiſ a witfol ſone :
þ̅ of þine licame ſcal cume.	þat of þine licame ſal come.

shalt fight; ere thou thence depart, slaughter thou shalt make'; [for] thou shalt both slay there, Pascent and Gillomar, and many thousands of the men that are with them 'hither' come. The token of the star, that we saw so far, sooth it 'is [was], Uther dear, 'that [it] betokened thy brothers death. Before the star was the dragon, to each worm unlike; the token was on thy half, that was thou, Uther, thyself! 'Thou shalt have this land, and thy authority be great and strong.' 'Such [The] tokens 'are' marvellous [that came] of the dragons mouth; two gleams 'proceeded *forth* [that were] wondrously light. The one stretched far south, out over France,—that is (signifies) a 'powerful [wise] son, that of thy body shall come, who shall

¹ a is interlined.² At first written weoren, but n struck out.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe ſcal moni kine-lōd : þat ſal many cūne lond :
 mid compe biwinne. a-winne to his hond.
 & an ende he ſcal rede :
 moniane þeode.
 þe oðer leome þe ſtrahte weſt : þe oþer þat ſtreahte weſt :
 wunder ane lihte.
 þat bið a dohter : þat ſal beon a dohter :
 þa þe bið ſwiðe deore.
 þe leome gon ſtriden : þe leomes þat þar ſtrehte :
 a ueire ſeoue ſtrengen. in to ſoue ſtrenges. [c. 2.]
 þ̅ beoð¹ ſeouen uæire ſunen : þat beoþ ſoue ſones :
 þe of þine dohter ſculleð cumen. þat ſolleþ of þine dohter come.
 þe ſcullen moni kine-lond :
 biȝiten to heore aȝere hond.
 heo ſculleð beon wel ſtronge : hii ſollen beo wel ſtronge :
 a water & a londe. a water and a londe.
 Nu þu haueſt of me ihærde : Nou þon haueſt of me ihord :
 þe wule halpen. wat þe wolleþ helpe.
 ſwiðe uorð rihtes : ſwiþe forþ riht :
 far to þine fihte. 20 wend to þine fihte.
 & Merlin gon to flume² :
 ſwulc he wolde flæpen.
 Vp araſ Vðer : Vp aros Vther :

win many 'kingdoms with conflict [kind of land to his hand], 'and in *the* end he shall rule many a nation.' The other gleam that stretched west, 'wondrously light,' that shall be a daughter, 'that to thee shall be exceeding dear.' The gleams that 'gan to spread in [there stretched into] seven 'fair' strings, are seven 'fair' sons, who shall come of thy daughter, 'who shall win to their own hand many a kingdom'; they shall be well strong, on water and on land. Now thou hast of me heard what will thee help, quickly forth-right march to thy fight." 'And Merlin gan to slumber, as *if* he would sleep.' Up arose Uther, 'now he [who then] was [both] wise and

¹ beoð ?² *Written at first flumē, for flumen, but the stroke above the m afterwards erased.*³ *Interlined man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

nu he wef ³ wif & war.	þat was þo boþe wis and war.
& hæhte his cnihtes :	and hehte his cnihtes :
to horfe forð rihtes.	to horfe forþ rihtes.
& hæhte heom biliue :	and hehte heō bliuē fare :
faren to Meneue.	toward Menue.
& alle heore fare græiðen :	
alle ¹ heo scullē fehten.	
I þan flokke biforen :	In þan flokke bi-vore :
he hafde cnihtes wel icoren.	weren cnihtes wel icore.
feouen þusend cnihte :	soue þousend cnihtes :
ohte men & wihte.	10 ohte men and wihte.
hafde he amidde :	hadde he a-midde :
cnihtes wel bihedde.	cnihtes wel bi-hedde.
oðer feoue þusend :	oþer soue þousend :
felere þeinen.	boldere cnihtes.
hæ hede ² bæfte :	[f.103.c.1.] and eke he hadde bi-hinde :
ohtere cnihten.	
ahtene þusen ³ :	ehtetene þousend.
ohtere kempen.	
& of ganninde uolke :	and of goinge folk :
fwa feole þusend.	20 so many þousendes.
þ a nane spelle :	þat in none spelle :
ne mihte heom na mon tellen.	ne mihte heom no man telle.
Forð heo wenden biliue :	Forþ hii wende blife :
þ heo comē to Meneue.	þat hii come to Menue.

wary, and ordered his knights forth-right to horse, and ordered them quickly to proceed to [toward] Meneve; 'and all their expedition (or forces) to prepare, as if they should fight.' In the troop before he had [were] knights well chosen; seven thousand knights, brave men and active. He had in the middle knights well beseen, other seven thousand 'good thanes. [bold knights. And eke] he had behind 'brave knights' eighteen thousand, 'brave warriors,' and of folk on foot so many thousands, that in no speech might any man tell them! Forth they marched quickly, until they came

¹ alfe?² he hafede?³ þusend?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer iſah Gillomar :
 Whar him com Vther.
 & hæhde¹ hiſ cnihtes :
 to wepne forð rihtes.
 & heo to-biliue :
 &² gripen heore cniues³.
 & of mid here breches :
 feolcuðe weoren heore lechef.
 & igripen an heore hond⁴ :
 heore ſperen longe. 10
 hengen an heore æxle :
 mucle wi-æxe.
 þa ſæide Gillomar þe king :
 a ſwiðe feollic þing.
 Her cumeð Vðer :
 Aurilies broder.
 he wule bidden mi grið :
 & noht fehten me wið.
 þa formeſte beoð hiſ ſweines :
 farē we heom to-zeines⁵. 20
 ne þurfē ze nauere rehchen :
 þah ze flæn þa wrecchen.
 For ȝif Vther Coſtantineſ ſune :
 And ȝeſ Vther Coſtantineſ ſone :

to Meneve. 'There [Then] ſaw Gillomar where Uther came to him, and commanded his knights to weapon [them] forth-right. And they very ſpeedily 'grasped [took] their knives, 'and off with their breeches—ſtrange were their looks,'—and grasped in their hands their long ſpears, 'and hung on their ſhoulders great battle-axes.' Then ſaid Gillomar the king a thing very ſtrange :—"Here cometh Uther, 'Aurelies [Aurelie hiſ] brother; he will ask my peace, and not fight with me. 'The foremoſt are hiſ ſwains; march we againſt them; ye need never reck, though ye ſlay the wretches!' 'For [And] if Uther, Coſtantineſ ſon, will here become my man, 'and give

¹ hæhte?² Redundant?³ Partly on an erasure, but by original hand.⁴ honde *pr. man.*, but e erased.⁵ zeines *mun. pr.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wulle her mi mon bicume.

wole her mi man bi-come.

& Passente aȝeuen :

his fader richē.

ich hine wullen griȝien :

ich hine wolle griȝie :

& latten hine liuien.

and lete hine libbe.

& inne fæire bēden :

and in faire bendes :

læden hine to mine londe.

him lede to mine londe.

þe king wordede þus :

þe kīg wordede þus :

þa while him a-lomp wurf.

þe wile hit bi-fulle worf.

Weoren Vtheres cnihtes :

Weren Vther his chnihtes :

at þan tune forð rihtes.

in þan toune forþrihtes.

leiden fur a þene tun :

and setten fur oueral :

& fehten biliue. [c. 2.]

in bour and in hal.

mid sweorden heom to rakeden :

and faste to ȝam rakede :

and þa Irisce weoren nakede.

and hii were alle nakede.

þa iȝen Irisce mē :

þo i-ȝeȝe Yrifice men :

þat Brutten wes an eorneft.

feondliche heo fuhten :

and neoȝeles heo feollen.

þat hii þusse fullen.

heo cleopedē on heore king :

hii gradde to hire king :

Whar ært þu niȝing.

War hart þou niȝing.

whi nult þu hider wenden :

wi nelt þou hider wende :

þu lezst us her scenden.

þou leteft vs alle asende.

and Passent þin ifere :

ifih us fallen here.

to Pascent his fathers realm,' I will him grant peace, and let him live, and in fair bonds lead him to my land.' The king spake thus, the while worse 'him [it] befell ! 'Uthers [Uther his] knights were in the town forth-right, [and] 'laid [set] fire 'in the town, and fought sharply ; with swords [over all, in bower and in hall, and fast] rushed towards them ; and 'the Irish [they] were [all] naked. When *the* Irish men saw, that '*the* Britons were in conflict, they fought fiercely, and' 'nevertheless [thus] they fell ; they called 'on [to] their king : " Where art thou, nothing ! why wilt thou not come hither ? thou lettest us 'here [all] be destroyed ;—' and Pascent, thy comrade, saw us fall here ;—come *ye* to us to help, with great strength ! ' "

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

cumeð us to halpe ⁊	
mid hahzere strengðe.	
þif iherde Gillomar ⁊	þis ihorde Gillomar ⁊
þer foren wes his heorte fæ.	þar vore his heort was for.
mid his Irifce cnihten ⁊	mid his Yrefse cnihtes ⁊
he com to þan fihte.	he com to þan fihte.
and Passend vorð mid him ⁊	and Pascent forþ mid him ⁊
beien heo weoren uæie.	beine hii weren veie.
þa ifeh Vðer ⁊	þo ifeh Vther ⁊
þat icumen wes þer Gillomar.	þat icome was Gillomar.
to him he gon riden ⁊	to him he gan ride ⁊
and smat hine i þere fide.	and smot hī in þan fide.
þat þat spere þurh-rade ⁊	þat þe spere þorh-rod ⁊
& þa heorte to-glad.	and þe heorte to-glod.
Hizendliche he hine biwet ¹ ⁊	Hizenliche he hine bi-went ⁊
& of-toc Passent.	of-tock he sone Pascent.
and þas word sæide ⁊	and þeos word saide ⁊
Vther þe fele.	Vther þe fæle.
Passent þu scalt abiden ⁊	Pascent wi nelt abide ⁊
her cumeð Vther riden.	her comeþ Vther ride.
He smat hine uuenen þat hæued ⁊	He smot hine ouenon þat heued ⁊ [c.2.]
þat he adun halde.	þat he ful to þan grunde.
and þat sweord putte in his muð ⁊	and þat sweord put in his muþ ⁊
swulc mete him wes uncuð.	foch mete him was oncouþ.

Gillomar heard this; therefore his heart was sore; with his Irish knights he came to the fight, and Pascent forth with him,—both they were fated! When Uther saw, that Gillomar was ‘there’ come, to him he gan ride, and smote him in the side, so that the spear through pierced, and glided to the heart. Hastily he passed by him, and [he soon] overtook Pascent; and said these words Uther the good: “Pascent, ‘thou shalt [why wilt thou not] abide; here cometh Uther riding!” He smote him [upon the head, so that he fell down [to the ground], and the sword put in his mouth—

called on [to] their king: “Where art thou, niching! why wilt thou not come hither? thou testest us here [all] be destroyed;—and Pascent thy comrade, saw us fall here;—come ye to us to help, with great strength!”

¹ biwent?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat þe ord of þan sworde :

þat þe ord of þe fweord :

wod in þere eorðe.

wond in þan eorþe.

þa fæide Vther :

þo faide Vther :

Paſſent liȝ nu þer.

Paſcent lȝ nou þar.

nu þu haueſt Brutlond : [f. 103^b.c.1.] nou þou haueſt Brutlond :

al bi-tald to þire hond. al awonne to þin hond.

Swa þe iſ nu iræd :

þer on þu ært ded.

wikien ȝe ſcullen here :

wonieþ nou here :

þu and Gillomar þin ifere. 10 þou an Gillomare.

& brukeð wel Brutlōd : and broukeþ wel Brutlond :

for nu ic hit bitæche inc an hond. for nou ȝe hit habbeþ an hond.

þat ȝit mazen to-ȝere :

mid uſ wunien here.

ne þurue ȝe nauere adrede : ne þerh he¹ noht drede :

wha eou ſcullen feden. þat ȝou ſal feode.

þuſ fæide Vder² :

and ſeoððe he arnde þer.

and drof Irifce men :

ȝeond wateres and ȝeond fenes. 20

and floh al þa uerde :

þe mid Paſſent commen to ærde.

Summe to þere sæ iwiten :

such meat to him was strange,—so that the point of the sword went in the earth. Then said Uther : “Pascent, lie now there ; now thou hast Britain all won to thy hand ! ‘So is now hap to thee ; therein thou art dead ;’ dwell ‘ye shall [now] here, thou, and Gillomar ‘thy companion,’ and possess well Britain ! For now ‘I deliver it to you [ye it have] in hand, ‘so that ye may presently dwell with us here’ ; ye need not ‘ever’ dread who you shall feed !” ‘Thus said Uther, and afterwards he there ran, and drove the Irish men over waters and over fens, and slew all the host that with Pascent came to land. Some to the sea fled, and leapt into their ships ;

¹ ȝe ?² R. Vðer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& leoppen in heore scipen.
 mid wederen & mid wateren :
 þær heo forferden.
 þus heo ispædden her :
 Passent and Gillomar.
 Nu wes þis feht idon :
 and Vther aȝē com.
 and forð rihtes wende :
 into Winchæstre.
 in are brade strete :
 he igon mete.
 þreo cnihtes & heore sweines :
 cūmen hī to-ȝeines.
 A-nan swa heo ine¹ imette :
 fæire heo hine igrætten.
 Hail seo þu Vther :
 þeos æðeles beod² þin æȝen.
 ded is Aurilie :
 kingene aðelest.
 he þe haueð ifet an hond :
 al his kinewurðe lond.
 he bad þe beon a fēle :
 & þenchen on his faule. [c. 2.]
 þa weop Vðer :

þus i-sped here :
 Pascent and Gillomare.
N Ou was þas fiht i-don :
 and Vther aȝen com.
 and forþrihtes wēde :
 toward Winchestre.
 in one brode strede :
 he i-gan mete.
 þreo cnihtes & hire sweines :
 comē him to-ȝeynes.
 A-non so hii hine i-mette :
 faire hii hine grette.
 Hayl beo þou Vther :
 dead his þin broþer.
 he þe haueþ ifet an hond :
 al þis ilke kinelond.
 þo wep Vther :

with weather and with water there they perished!’ Thus ‘they’ sped here, Pascent and Gillomar. Now was this fight done (finished); and Uther back came, and forth-right marched ‘into [toward] Winchester. In a broad way he gan meet three knights and their swains, *who* came toward him. Anon as they met him, fair they him greeted : “ Hail be thou, Uther ; ‘these territories are thine own.’ Dead is ‘Aurelie [thy brother], ‘noblest of kings’; he hath set to thee in hand all ‘his regal land [this same kingdom]; ‘he bade thee be in prosperity, and think of his soul.’ ” Then wept

¹ hine ?² beoð ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

wunder ane fwiðe.

Vðer wende forð riht:ʹ

into Winchæstre.

þa weoren him biforen:ʹ

wiðuten þere burȝe.

alle þa burh-men:ʹ

mid reouliche iberen.

Sone fwa heo hine ifeȝen:ʹ

heo hī to fæiden.

Vther þin are:ʹ

nu & æuere mare.

ure king we habbeoð ilore:ʹ

wa if uf þer fore.

þu weore² hif broðer:ʹ

nafde he nænne oðer.

no he nefde³ nenne fune:ʹ

þe mihte king bicumē.

Ah nim þu þene kine-halm:ʹ

he if þe icunde.

& we þe wulleð helpen:ʹ

& halden for lauerd.

mid wapnen & mid æhten:ʹ

and al ure mihte.

þif iherde Vðer:ʹ

wonderliche fwiþe þer.

Vther wende forþ riht:ʹ

toward Winchestre.

þo weren him bi-vore:ʹ

wiþ houte þan boure¹.

alle þe borhmen:ʹ

fore wepīge.

and faide Vther þin ore:ʹ [f.83.c.1.]

nou an euere more.

houe king we habbeoþ for-lore:ʹ

wo his ous þar vore.

þou were his broþer:ʹ

nafep he non oþer.

ne he naueþ nanne fone:ʹ

þat mawe king bi-come.

Ac nim þou þane kinedom:ʹ

for he his þe icunde.

and we þe wollep helpe:ʹ

mid wepne and mid mihte.

þis i-horde Vther:ʹ

Uther wondrously much [there]. Uther proceeded forth-right 'into [to-ward] Winchester; then were before him, without the burgh, all the burghers 'with piteous cries [sore weeping]. 'So soon as they saw him,' 'they [and] said 'to him': "Uther, thy favor, now and evermore! Our king we have lost, woe is to us therefore. Thou wert his brother,—he 'had [hath] no other, nor he 'had [hath] no son, who 'might [may] become king. But take thou the 'crown, [kingdom, for] it is thy right, and we will help thee, 'and hold for lord,' with weapons and with 'goods, and with all our' might." Uther heard this; he was wise and 'he was [very] aware, that there

¹ borh?² weoren *pr. man.*, but n erased.³ nefde *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. 84

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii. 14

he wes wis & he wes war.	he was wis and fwiȝe war.
þat þer næs coſt nan oder ¹ :	þat þar nas read non oþer :
seoððen dæd wes hiſ broðer.	wane dead was hiſ broþer.
He nom þenne kine-helm :	He nā al þiſ kinelond :
þe hī bicom fwiðe wel,	to hiſ owene hond.
and he wurðeliche :	
iwarð him to kinge.	
& heold gode laȝe :	and heold gode lawes :
and hiſ folc luſede.	and hiſ folk loſuede.
Imong þat he king wæf :	10 Amang þiſ motinge :
& hiſ wikenares ² chæs.	
M ^o lin him æt-wende :	Merlȝn at-wende.
nufte he nauere whider.	nufte man in þiſſe riche :
no nauere a worlde-riche :	
to whan he bicom.	to wan he bi-come.
wa wes þā kinge :	wo was þan kinge :
ſwa wes al hiſ duȝeðe. [f.104.c.1.]	fo weren alle hiſ cnihteſ.
and alle hiſ hiſ ³ hird-men :	
þer uore murnende weoren.	
þe king lette riden :	20 þe king lette ride :
widen & fidē.	wide and fide.
he bad gold & geſfume :	and bi-hehte gold and gaſifome :
ælche farinde gume.	to eche varen gome.

was no other 'course [counsel], since his brother was dead. He took 'the crown, that came to him exceeding well [all this kingdom in his own hand]; 'and he worthily became king,' and held good laws, and loved his folk. 'Whilst that he was king, and chose his ministers [Among this transaction] Merlin disappeared; 'he [men] knew not 'ever whither, nor ever' in 'the worlds realm [this realm] to what he became (what became of him). Woe was the king, so 'was [were] all his 'people [knights], 'and all his courtiers were therefore mourning.' The king caused *men* to ride wide and far; 'he offered [and promised] gold and treasure to each travelling man, 'whoso-

¹ oer?² wikemares *pr. man.*³ Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wha fwa mihte finde :'	þat couþe þorh eny ginne :
Merlin an londe.	Merlȳn ifinde.
þer to he læide muchel lof :	ac nas þar non fo witti :
ah ne herde he him nawhit of.	þat hine cuþe finde.
þa biðohte Vther :	
whæt Merlin him sæide ær.	
in þan hire-ȝeonge :	
inne Walisc londe.	
þer heo ifeȝen þene drake :	
ælches wurmes vnimake. 10	
and he þohte of þan tacnen :	
þe M ⁹ lin him tahte.	
þe king wes swiðe færi :	þar fore was þe king :
and sorhful an heorte.	fori on heorte.
for ne lef he næuere leouere mon :	for ne leos he neuere leuere man :
seoððen he wes an liuen.	feopþe he was on lifue. [c. 2.]
neouere nēne oðer :	þe king of ¹ þan drake :
ne Aurelie hiſ broðer.	þat Merlȳn to him ſpac.
þe king lette wurchen tweiē ima-	and makede tweiē ymages :
ken :	þane drake iliche.
tweien guldene draken. 20	al of reade golde.
al for Mærlines liue ² :	for Merlȳnes loue :

ever might [who could through any stratagem] find Merlin 'in *the* land ;' 'thereto he laid (added) mickle praise, but he heard no whit of him [but there was none so witty that could him find]. 'Then bethought Uther, what Merlin said to him ere, in the expedition into Welsh land, where they saw the dragon, to each worm incomparable ; and he thought of the tokens that Merlin taught him.' The king was 'exceeding [therefore] sorry, 'and sorrowful in' heart, for he lost never *a* dearer man, since he was alive, 'never any other, not *even* Aurelie, his brother.' The king 'caused to be worked [*thought* of the dragon, of which Merlin to him spake, and made] two images, 'two golden dragons [all of red gold], 'all' for Merlins love,—'so greatly he

¹ þohte of?² luue?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fwa fwiðe he wilnede hiſ cume.

þa þe draken ȝaru weoren :

þe oðer wes iuere.

whar fwa he an ærde :

ladde hi¹ ferde.

he wes his hire-mærke :

in æuer ælche happe.

þene oðerne he wurðliche ȝaf :

into Winchæſtre.

into þā biſcop-ftole :

þer he ftude haldeð.

þer to he ȝef hiſ gode ſpere : [bere.]

þer mid me ſculde þene drake þat me mihte þane drake biere.

þenne me ſcolde halidom : [c.2.] wane me ſolde halýdomes :

beren to proceſſiun.

þiſ iſeȝen Brutteſ :

þaſ draken þa weoren imaked þ⁹. þeſ draken þat were imaked þuſ.æuer feoððen² heo cleopeden and makede bi Vther :

Vther :

þe to hermærke þene drake bar. one to-name þer.

þene nome heo him laiden on : and cleopede hine anon :

Vther Pen-
dr[agon.]

þet wes Vðer Pendragon.

Pendragun an Brutifc :

21 Vther Pendragon.

Pendragon on Bruttifch :

desired his coming.' When the dragons were ready, the one was [his] companion; 'wheresoever [where that] he in *the* land led his army, 'it was his standard, in every hap'; the other he 'worthily' gave into Winchester, into the bishops see, where he stead holdeth. Thereto he gave his good spear, 'wherewith [that] men 'should [might] bear the dragon, when men should carry relics at processions. *The* Britons saw this, these dragons that were thus made; 'ever since they called Uther, who for *a* standard bare the dragon, the name they laid on him, that was [and made for Uther a sur-name there, and called him anon] Uther Pendragon; Pendragon in

¹ his?² feoððen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Draken-hefd an Englisc.

Drake-heued on Engliffe.

Nu wes Vther god king :

N Ou was Vther god king :

ah of Merlin nefde he na þing.

Nac of Merlȝn ne horde he

þis word iherde Octa :

þis ihorde Octa : [noþing.

þer he norð wunede.

þar he norþ wonede.

& Ebiffa his wend-broðer¹ :

and his wedbroþer Ebȝffa :

and Ofa þe oðer.

and his i-vere Offa.

þa Aurilien fende þider :

& fette heom þer on his griðe.

and bi-tahte heom an honde : 10

fixti hidē of londe.

Octa iherden ful iwif :

al hu hit ifaren wes.

of Aurilief dæðe :

of Aurelies deape :

& of Vtheres kinedome.

and of Vtheres kinedome.

Octa him to-cleopede :

his cun þe wes aneoſte.

nomē heō to ræde :

Hii nemen heom to reade :

of heore alde dede.

of hire holde deades.

þat heo wolden bi heore liue : 20

þat hii wolden bliue :

cristīdom bilaue.

cristendom bi-leue.

Heo heolden huſtig² :Hii heolden hire ſpeche : [f.83^b.c.1.]

& hæðene bicomē.

and heapene bi-come.

British, Dragons-head in English. Now was Uther good king, but of Merlin he 'had [heard] nothing. This 'word (tiding)' heard Octa, where he dwelt northward, and Ebissa his wed-brother, and Ossa 'the other [his companion], 'that Aurelie sent thither, and set them there in his peace, and gave them in hand sixty hides of land. Octa heard full truly all how it was transacted,' of Aurelies death, and of Uthers kingdom. 'Octa called to him his kin that was nearest'; [they] betook them to counsel, of their old deeds, that they would 'by their life [quickly] desert Christendom. They held 'husting [their conference], and became heathens; then came

¹ R. wed-broðer.² husting?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa comen þer to-gadere : of Hengestes cunne. fif & fixti hundred : of heðene monnen. Sone wes þat word cuð : an ȝeond þan londe icud. ꝥ Octa Hengestes fune : wes¹ hæðene bicume. & þaſ ilke gumen alle : þa Aurilien igriðed hæfuede. Octa fende hiſ fonde : in to Walifce londe. after þan Iriſce : þæ Vðer æt-urnen. and after þan Alemainen : þe weoren awei idrazene. þa weoren to wude iwende : þe while men floh Paſſent. and huden heō wel iwhær : þe while men floh Gillomar. þat folc ut of wude teh : & touward Scotlonde beh. Auer þer comen ma & ma :	þar comen þo to-gadere : of Hengeſt hiſ cūne. fifue and fixti hundred : of heaþene manne. Sone waſ þat word couþ : and widene ichnowe. þat Octa Hengeſt hiſ ſone : waſ heaþene bi-come. and þe men alle : þat Aurelie i-greþid hadde. Octa fende hiſ fonde : in to Waſſe londe. after þaie Yreſſe : þat Vther weren of-vrne. and after þe Alemains : þat a-chaped were. þat were to wode a-wend : þe wile me floh Paſcent. þat folk vt of wode teh : and to Scotlonde beoþ. Euere þar comen mo and mo :
--	--

there together, of 'Hengests [Hengest his] kindred, five and sixty hundred of heathen men. Soon was the word reported and 'over the land [wide] known, that Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son, was become heathen, and all 'these same [the] men to whom Aurelie had granted peace. Octa sent his messengers into Welsh land, after the Irish that from Uther [were] fled, and after the Alemains (Germans), that 'away were drawn [were escaped], that were gone to *the* wood, the while men slew Pascent, 'and hid them well everywhere, the while men slew Gillomar; 'the folk out of *the* wood drew, and to 'ward' Scotland proceeded. There came ever

¹ Nes *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and ferden touward Octa.	þat wende to Octa.
þa heo to-fomme ¹ weoren iwende :	þo hii to-gadere were alle hii- come ² :
þa weoren þer þritti þufend.	þo weren þar þritti þufend.
wið uten þa wifmen :	wiþ oute þan wimmen :
of Hengestes cunnen.	of Hengeſt his cunne.
Heo nomen heore uerde :	Hii nemen hire ferde :
& gunnen to farene.	and forþ gonnewende.
& fetten al an heore hōd :	and ſette al in hire hōd :
biȝeonden þere Humbre lond.	bi-ȝeonde Norþhumberlond.
& ³ þat leoden :	10
þer heo gunnē liðen.	
ferde þer wes fellic :	ferde þar was fellich :
and wenden riht to ⁴ Eouerwic.	and wende riht to Euerwich.
and an ælche fide :	and in eche fide :
þa burh gunnē biride.	þane borh gonne bi-ride.
& þa burh bilæien :	and þe þorh bi-leien :
hæðene leoden.	heapene hundes.
and nomen hit al to heore honde :	and nemen al to hire hond :
forð into Scotlonde.	forþ into Scotland.
al þat heo iſezen :	20 al þat hii i-ſezen :
heo talden heore aȝen.	hii tolden hire owene.
Ah Vtheres cnihtes :	Ac Vther hiſ cnihtes :

more and more, and proceeded to 'ward' Octa; when they together were [all] come, then were there thirty thousand, without the women, of 'Hengests [Hengest his] kin. They took their host, and [forth] gan to fare, and set all in their hand beyond 'the Humber [Northumberland], 'and the people, where they gan march;' there was *a* marvellous host! And *they* proceeded right to York, and on each side *the* heathen 'people [hounds] gan ride about the burgh, and the burgh besieged'; and took 'it' all in their hand, forth into Scotland; all that they saw they accounted their own. But 'Uthers [Uther his] knights who were in the

¹ to-fomme?² i-come?³ *A word seems here wanting.*⁴ *Interlined man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa weoren i þan caſtle.	þat weren in þan caſtle.
wereðen þene tun wið innen : ¹ [c. 2.]	wereðe þane toun wiþ ine : ¹
þat ne mihten heo næuere binnen.	þat hii ne mihte hine awinne.
ne iherde mon in nane ſtude :	ne horde no man in no ſtude :
lute men þat ſwa wel duden.	feuwe men þat bet dude.
Swa ſone ſwa Vðer :	So ſone ſo Vther :
of þiſſen þingen iwarð war.	of þis þinge was war.
færde he bad ſtronge :	ferde he bad ſtronge :
ȝeōð al hiſ kinelonde.	of al hiſ kinelonde.
and he ſwiðe hiȝend-liche : ¹ 10	and he ſwiþe hiȝenliche :
ferde touward Eouerwic.	wende toward Euerwich.
ferde uorð riht anan :	ferde forþriht ſo :
þer him læi Octa.	þar him lay Octa.
Octa and hiſ ferde :	Octa and hiſ ferde :
fuſde heom to-ȝeines.	wende him to-ȝeines.
wurueden heom to-gadere ¹ :	þrongen heom to-gadere :
mid grīmere ſtrengðe.	mid grettere ſtrengþe.
heowen hardliche :	hewen hardeliche :
hælmes gullen.	healmef þar ȝolle.
falewede feldes : ¹ 20	falewede þe feldes :
of fæie blode.	of hire blodes.
& þa heðene faulen :	
helle iſohten.	

castle, defended the town within, so that they might 'never *get* within [not it win]; in no place heard [any] one, of few men that did 'so well [better]! So soon as Uther of this thing was aware, he assembled a strong army, 'over [from] all his kingdom, and he very speedily marched toward York; proceeded forth-right 'anon [so], where Octa him lay. Octa and his forces marched against 'them [him]; encountered them together with 'grim [great] strength; hewed hardily; helms [there] resounded; [the] fields were dyed with 'the blood of the slain [their blood], 'and the heathen souls hell sought '! When the days end 'arrived [came], then was

¹ To is interlined man. sec.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa þes dæies ende bicom :'	þo þes daiȝes ende com :'
þa wes hit swa ufel idon.	þo was hit so vuele idon.
þ̃ þat hæðene uolc :'	þat þe heaþene folk :'
þa ufere hond hafeden.	þe ouere hond hadde.
& mid muchelere strengðe :'	and mid mochele strengþe :'
sturmden þa Bruttes.	fweinde þe Bruttus.
and driuen heom to ane munte :'	and driuen heom in on mund :'
þæ wes unimete stor.	þat was onimete stor.
& Vðer mid his monnen :'	And Vther to þan hulle :'
teh to þan munte.	10 wende mid his manne.
and hæuede iloren in fihte :'	and hadde ilore in fihte :'
leofe his cnihtes.	leofue his cnihtes.
fulle feouen hundred :'	folle foue hundred :'
his hælp ¹ wes þa wurfe.	his heap was þe worfe.
þe munt hæhte Dunian :'	þe hulle hatte Dinian :'
þe Vther wes ufenan.	þar Vther laȝ ouenan.
wes þe munt þurh-wexen :'	was þe hul þorh-woxe :'
mid ane wude feiren.	mid one wode faire. [f. 84. c. 1.]
þe king wes þer wið innen : [f. 105. c. 1.]	þe king was þare wiþ ine :'
mid fwiðe feole monnen.	20 mid fwiþe fale manne.
& Octa hine bi-læi :'	and Octa hine bi-laȝ :'
mid hæðene monnen niht and dæi.	mid his folke niht and day.
bilæi hine al abuten :'	
wa wes þan Brutten.	

it so evilly done, that the heathen folk had the upper hand, and with great strength routed the Britons, and drove them 'to [on] a mount that was exceeding strong. And Uther with his men 'drew [went] to the 'mount [hill], and had lost in *the* fight his dear knights, full seven hundred,—his hap was the worse! The 'mount [hill] hight Dunian, 'that [where] Uther 'was [lay] upon; the 'mount [hill] was overgrown with a fair wood. The king was there within with very many men, and Octa besieged him with 'the heathen men [his folk] night and day,—'besieged

[much knowest of] wisdom, all in thy counsel, and 'all

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Wa wes þan kinge Vðer :	Wo was þan kīge Vther :
þat he nef ær wær.	þat he nadde beo ear war.
þat he nefde an londe :	
bet vnder-ftonde.	
Ofte heo eoden to ræde :	ofte hii ȝeode to reade :
of fwucchere neode.	of folchere neode.
hu heo mihten ouer-cumen :	ou hii mihte ouercome :
Octa Hengestes fūne.	Octa Hengeft his fone.
¶ þer wes an eorl Gorloif :	þar was a man Gorloys :
ocht mon ful iwif.	10 on strong eorl foliwis.
cniht he wes wel idon :	
he wef Vðeres mon.	
eorl of Cornwaille :	eorl of Cornwale :
cuð he wes wide.	he waf couþ wide.
he wes fwiðe wif mon :	he was fwiþe wifman :
of alle þinge wel idō.	of alle þinge wel idon.
To him fæide Vther :	To him faide Vther :
færi an heorten,	fori on heorte.
Hail feo þu Gorlois :	
gumenene lauerd.	20
þu ært min aȝe mon :	Gorloys þou hart mi mon.
& fwiðe wel ich þe on.	
þu ært cniht wel idon :	
muchel is þi wiſdom.	and mochel caneft of wiſdom.
alle mine leoden :	alle mine leode :

Gorlois.

him all about, woe was *to* the Britons!’ Woe was the king Uther, that he ‘was not [had not been] ere aware, ‘that he had not in land better understood.’ Oft they went to counsel of such need, how they might overcome Octa, ‘Hengests [Hengest his] son. There was ‘an earl [a man] Gorlois, ‘bold man [a strong earl] full truly,—‘knight he was good, he was Uthers man,’—earl of Cornwall, known he was wide,—he was *a* very wise man, in all things excellent. To him said Uther, sorry in heart: “ ‘Hail be thou, Gorlois, lord of men!’ [Gorloys] thou art ‘mine own [my] man, and ‘very well I thee treat; thou art knight good,’ great is thy [much knowest of] wisdom; all my people I put in thy counsel, and ‘all’

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. 216

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii. 11

ich don in þine ræden.	ich do in þine reade.
& alle we sculle wurchen :'	and we follen weorche :'
after þine iwille.	after þine wille.
þa hing his breowen adun :'	þo heng he his brouwes a-dun :'
þe king Vther Pendragū.	Vther Pendragon.
and stod him ful stille :'	and stod him ful stille :'
& bad Gorlois fuggen hif iwille.	and bad Gorloys segge hif wille.
þa andswarede Gorlois :'	þo answerede Gorloys :'
he wes hende ful iwif.	þat was hende foliwis.
Sæie me Vther Pendragun :'	Sai me Vther Pendragon :'
whi halst þu þin hafed adun. [c.2.]	wi hangest þou þin heued adun.
naft þu þat godd ane :'	noft þou þat god one :'
if betere þene we al clæne.	his betere þane we alle cleane.
he mai wham swa he wule :'	he may wam so he wole :'
wurðcipe bitachen.	worþipe bi-take.
Bihate we him on liue :'	Bi-hote we him on lifue :'
þat we him nulleð lize.	þat we hine loueie wollep.
& leten we uf ræden :'	and lete we vs reade :'
of ure misdeden.	of vre misdede.
ælc mon forð riht :'	ech man forþ riht :'
of alle hif funnen nimen scrift.	of his funne nime scrift.
ælc mon scriuen oðer :'	ech man scriue oþer :'
fwulc hit weoren hif broðer.	ase hit were hif broþer.
& æuer ælc god cniht :'	and euerech god cniht :'

we shall work after thy will. Then hung [he] his brows down, 'the king' Uther Pendragon, and stood him full still, and bade Gorlois say his will. Then answered Gorlois, who was fair (*or* courteous) full truly : " Say me, Uther Pendragon, why 'bowest [hangest] thou thy head down ? Knowest thou not that God alone is better than we all clean ? He may to whomsoever he will give worship. Promise we him in life that we will 'not him deceive [love him] ; and let we counsel us of our misdeeds. Each man forth-right take shrift of 'all' his sins ; each man shrive other, as *if* it were his brother, and every good knight 'take on him much [receive good]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

nime on him muchel scrift.	ondernime god scrift.
& godde we scullen bihatē :	and god we sollen bi-hote :
ure sunnen to betē.	houre sunne to beate.
& to þere midnihte :	And to þare midniht :
ȝarkien uf to fihten.	ȝarke we ous to fiht.
þeos hæðene hundes :	þeos heaþene hundes :
talleð uf al ibunden.	telleþ ous alle ibunde.
Octa Hengestes sunæ :	Octa Hengeſt his ſone :
weneð ꝥ we beon alle inumen.	weneþ ꝥat we beo alle inome.
heo leggeð i þiffen felden :	hii liggeþ in þiſſe feldes :
ihæled in heore telden.	iheled in hire teldes.
heo beoð ſwiðe werie :	hii beoþ ſwiþe weri :
iboren heore wepnen.	ibore hire wepne.
nu nan heo ſculleð flumen :	nou non hii ſolle heueȝi :
& feoððen flæpen.	and ſuþþe hii ſolle fleape.
of uf nabbeoð heo nane kare :	of vs nabbeþ hii nanne care :
ꝥ we aȝen heom wulleð faren.	þat we wolleþ aȝein heom vare.
To þere midnihte :	To þare midnihte :
we ſculleð forð rihtes.	we sollen forþriht.
ſwiðelicche ſtille :	ſwiþeliche ſtille :
adun of þiffen hulle.	adun of þiſſe hulle.
na worðe cniht ſwa wod :	ne worþe non cniht ſo wod :
þat he ſcire æi word.	þat ſpeke eni word.
ne nauer nan hæleð :	ne neuere non man :

shrift, and God we shall promise to amend our sins. And at the midnight prepare [we] us to fight; these heathen hounds account us all *here* bound. Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son, weeneth that we are all taken; they lie in these fields covered in their tents, they are very weary of carrying their weapons; now anon they shall 'slumber [*grow* heavy], and afterwards [they shall] sleep; of us they have no care, that we will march against them. At the midnight we shall forth-right *go* exceeding still, down from this hill; be no knight so mad, that 'he ask [speak] any word, nor ever any man *be so mad*, that he blow horn. But we shall step to

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat he ¹ horn blawe.	þat he horn blowe.
Ac we scullen steppen heom to :	Ac we follen ftap heom to :
fwa we ftelen wolden. [f.105 ^b .c.1.]	alfe we ftele wolde.
ær heo wurðen iware :	her hii beon ware :
we scullen heōm amarre.	we folle heom a-morre.
we scullen heom to teō :	we follen heom to teon :
& tidende tellen.	and tȳdinge telle.
And æuerælc oht mon :	And euerech oht man :
fterkliche heom legge on.	ftarliche heom legge an.
and fwa we scullen of londe :	and fo we folle of londe :
driuen vnicunde.	driuen onicunde.
and mid mihte of ure drihten :	and mid mihte of houre drihte :
bitellen ure irihten.	bi-tellen oure rihte. [f.84 ^b .c.1.]
Al þas ferde idude :	Al hii dude :
swa Gorlois heom hauede ibede.	afe Gorloys hit hadde ibode.
ælc mon forð rihte :	
dude hine vnder scrifte.	
bi-hehten god ² to donne :	
and þat afel to forgonne.	
To þeṛ mid-nihte :	20 To þare midnihte :
wepnede heom cnihtes.	wepnede heom cnihtes.
and aueremefste uerde adun :	and fomeft ver ³ adun :
Vðer Pendragun.	Vther Pendragon.
and his cnihtes alle :	and his cnihtes alle :

them as *if* we would steal; ere they are aware, we shall destroy them; we shall approach to them, and tell *them* tidings. And *let* every brave man strongly lay on them; and so we shall drive *the* foreigners from *the* land, and with *the* might of our Lord, win our rights." 'All this host [They all] did as Gorlois had bid them; 'each man forth-right put him under shrift; promised to do good, and to forsake the evil.' At the midnight *the* knights weaponed them; and Uther Pendragon foremost went down, and all his knights, exceeding still; and smote in the 'wealds,

¹ *Interlined man. sec.*² *godd man. pr., but d erased.*³ *formest verde?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

swiðeliche stille.	fwipeliche stille.
and fmiten i þa waldes :	and fmiten in þan teldes :
imong alle þa teldes.	þar hii were in þe feldes.
and floȝen þa hæðene :	and fwo hii gonne þe heaþene :
mid hæȝere ftrenðe ¹ .	legge to grunde.
fluȝen ȝeōd þan feldes :	
falewe lockef.	
uolken hit wes ærmeft :	
heo droȝen heore þermes.	
mid muchele vnifunde :	10
heo feollen to þan grunde.	
þer wes forð riht inume :	And þar was forþriht inome :
Octa Hengeftes fune.	Octa Hengeft his fone.
& hif wedbroðer : Ebiffa :	and his wed-broþer Ebýffa :
& hif iuere Offa.	and his i-vere Offa.
þe king heom lette binden : [c. 2.]	þe king heom lette binde :
mid irene bænde.	mid ýrene bendes.
and bi-tahte heom fixti cnihten :	and bi-tahte heō fixti cnihtes :
þe gode weoren to fihten.	þat goden were to fihte.
ufennen þan walden : 20	ouenan þan wollde :
uaſte to halden.	faſte to holde.
& he feolf draf him forð :	And him ſeolf drof heom forþ :
and muchel dune makede.	and moche dune makede.

among all the tents [tents, where they were in the fields], and 'slew the heathens with great strength [so they gan to lay the heathens to ground]; "slew over the fields *the* yellow locks; of folk it was most wretched, they drew *along* their bowels; with much destruction they fell to the ground!' [And] there was forth-right captured Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son, and his wed-brother Ebissa, and his comrade Ossa. [The king caused them to be bound with iron bonds, and delivered them to sixty knights, who were good in fight, fast to hold (guard) over the weald. And 'he *himself* [*he* himself] drove 'him [them] forth, and made much din; and

¹ strengðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& Gorlois þe hende :'	and Gorloys þan hende :'
uorð an oðer ende.	forþ an oþer eande.
& alle heore cnihtes :'	and alle hire cnihtes :'
æuere forð rihtes.	euere forþrihtes.
adū rihtes floȝen :'	adun riht flowen :'
al þat heo neh comen.	al þat hii neh comen.
Summe heo crupē to þan wude :'	Somme hii crope to þan wode :'
an heore bare cneowen.	on hire bare cnowes.
heo weoren amærȝe :'	and þaie were amorwe :'
volken alre ærmeft.	10 alle idon to deape.
Octa wes ibunden :'	Octa was ibūde :'
& ilad to Lunde.	and ilad to Londene.
and Ebiffa & Offa :'	and Ebýffa and Offa :'
nes heom nauere al fwa wa.	nerere heō neuere fo wo.
þis feh ¹ wes idon :'	þis fiht was al idon :'
& þe king wende forð.	and þe king forþ com.
in to Norð-humbre :	into Norþhumbre :'
mid hæȝere bliffe.	mid heȝere bliffe.
& feoððe to Scotlonde :	and fupþe to Scotlond :'
& fette hit al an his aȝere hond.	and fette hit al in his hond.
He fette grið he fette frið :'	21 He fette fwiþe god griþ :'
þ ælc mon mihte faren wið.	þat ech man mihte faren wiþ.
from londe to londe :'	fram londe to londe :'

Gorlois the fair, forth on *the* other side ; and all their knights, ever forth-right slew downright all that they came nigh. Some they crept to the wood on their bare knees, [and] they were on *the* morrow 'most miserable of all folk [all put to death]. Octa was bound, and led to London, and Ebissa, and Ossa,—'was never to them such [were they never so] woe ! This fight was [all] done, and the king forth 'marched [came] into Northumberland with great bliss ; and afterwards to Scotland, and set it all in his 'own' hand. He established peace [most good], 'he established quiet,' that each man might journey with from land to land, though he bare gold in *his* hand ; of

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þeh he bere gold an hode.	þeh ¹ bere gold an honde.
of grið he dude fwulc þīg :	of griþe he dude soch þing :
þat ne mihte næuer ær na king.	þat ne mihte her no king.
from þan ilke time :	fram þan ilke time :
þ Bruttes comen her liðen.	þat Brut ² her com liþe.
Andseoððenymbestunde: [f. 106. c. 1.]	And supþe bi one stunde :
he ferde to Lunden.	he verde to Lundene.
he wes þere an æst ² :	he was þar on easter :
mid aleðele ² hif uolke.	and alle his folke.
bliðe wes þe Lundenes tun :	10 bliþe was Londene his toune :
for Vthere Pendragun.	for Vther Pendragon.
He fende hif sonde :	He fende his fonde :
geond al hif kinelonde.	oueral his kinelonde.
he bæd þa eorles :	he bad eorles and cnihtes :
he bæd þa cheorles.	and alle oþer þeines.
he bæd þa biscopes :	
þa boc-ilærede men.	
þ heo comen to Lunden :	þat hii come to Londene :
to Vðer þan kingen.	to Vther þan kinge.
in to Lundenes tun :	20
to Vðer Pendragun.	
Riche men fone :	Riche men fone :
to Lundene comen.	to Londene come.

peace he did such things, that no king might 'ever' ere, from that time that *the* Britons here arrived. And then, after *a* time, he proceeded to London ; he was there at Easter, 'with [and all] his 'good' folk ; blithe was 'the Londons [London his] town, for Uther Pendragon. He sent his messengers over all his kingdom ; he bade 'the' earls, 'he bade the churls, he bade the bishops, *and* the book-learned men [and knights, and all *the* other thanes], that they should come to London, to Uther the king, 'into Londons town, to Uther Pendragon.' Rich men soon to London came ; they brought

¹ þeh he ?² *R.* aðele.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo brohten wif heo brohten child :	hii brohten wif hii brohten child :
fwa hehte Vther þe king.	afe hii were ihote.
Mid muchele godnæffe :	Mid mochele godniffe :
þe king iherde mæffe.	þe king ihorde his masse.
& Gorlois þe eorl of Cornwale :	and Gorlois eorl of Cornwale :
& mid him cnihtes uale.	and mid him cnihtes fale.
muche blisse wes i þan tun :	moche blisse was in þan toun :
mid Vðer kinge Pendragon.	mid Vther Pendragon.
þa þe mæffe wes ifungē :	þo þe masse was ifonge :
to halle heo þrunge.	to halle hii þronge.
bemē heo bleowen :	and bordes hii leidē :
bordes heo brædden.	and adun feten.
al þat folc æt & dronc :	hii eotē hii drongen :
& blisse heom wes imong.	biliffe ¹ waf a-mang heom.
þer sæt Vðer þe king :	þar sat Vther þe king :
an his hæh fetle.	in his heze fetle.
forn aȝan him Gorlois :	aforneȝen him Gorlois :
hēde cniht ful iwif.	þat was hende foliwis.
þe eorl of Cornwale :	
mid aðele his wife.	
þa heo weoren alle ifeten :	þo hii were alle ifete :
eorles to heore mete.	eorles to þare mete.
þe king fende his fonde :	þe king fende his fonde :

wife, they brought child, as 'Uther the king [they were] commanded. With much goodness the king heard [his] mass, and Gorlois, 'the' earl of Cornwall, and many knights with him; much bliss was in the town, with 'king' Uther Pendragon. When the mass was sung, to *the* hall they crowded; 'trumpets they blew, boards (tables) they spread; all the folk [and boards they laid, and down sate; they] ate 'and [they] drank, 'and' bliss was among them. There sate Uther the king in his high chair; opposite to him Gorlois, 'fair knight [who was fair] full truly, 'the earl of Cornwall, with his noble wife.' When they were all seated, *the* earls to their meat, the king sent his messengers to Ygærne the fair, 'Gorlois *the*

¹ blisse?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Igær[ne].

to Igærne þere hende.

to Igerne þan hende.

Gorloif eorles wif :

wifmone alre hendest.

Ofte he hire lokede on :

Ofte he hire lokede on :

& leitede mid eȝene.

and leitede mid eȝene.

ofte he his birles fende :

ofte he his borles fende :

fron to¹ hire borde.

to hire borde.

ofte he hire loh to :

ofte he hire loh to :

& makede hire letes.

and makede hire letes.

and [heo] hine leofliche biheold :

and ȝeo hine lofueliche bi-heold :

ah inæt² whær heo hine luuede.I not² ware ȝeo hine lofuede.

Næs þe king noht swa wif :

Nas þe king noht so wis :

ne fwa ȝære witele.

ne so war witele.

þ̅ imong his duȝeþe :

þat couþe his þoht hude :

his þoht cuðe dennen.

a-mang his doȝeþe.

Swa long þe king þif him droh :

So lange þe king þis game drof :

þat Gorloif iwærð him wrað.

þat Gorloys iwarþ wroþ.

& him gromede fwiðe :

and him gramede fwiþe :

wið þene king for his wif.

to þe king for his wifue.

þe eorl & his cnihtes :

þe eorl and his cnihtes :

arifen forð rihtes.

a-rifen forþ rihtes.

& forð mid þan wif :

and forþ mid þan wifue :

cnihtes fwiðe whraðe.

cnihtes fwiþe wroþe.

earls wife, woman fairest of all.' Oft he looked on her, and glanced with *his* eyes; oft he sent his cup-bearers 'forth' to her table; oft he laughed at her,' and made glances to her; and she him lovingly beheld,—'but' I know not whether she loved him. The king was not so wise, nor so far prudent, that among his folk *he* could his thoughts hide. So long the king this 'practised [game drove], that Gorlois became 'him' wrath, and angered him greatly with the king, for (on account of) his wife. The earl and his knights arose forth-right, and *went* forth with the woman, knights most wrath. King Uther saw this, and 'herefore' was 'sorry [wrath full truly],

¹ forn to? Cf. l. 19019.² ich næt? ich not?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Vther king þis ifah :	King Vther ifah þis :
& here fore særi wes.	an was wroþ foliwis.
& nom him forð rihtes :	and nam a-non rihtes :
twælf wife cnihtes.	twalf wife cnihtes.
& fende aft ⁹ Gorloif :	and fende after Gorloys :
gumenene ældere.	eorl of Cornwale.
and beden hine an hizinge :	and bad hine an hizenge :
cumē to þan kinge.	come to þan kinge.
& don þan kinge god riht :	and don þan kinge god riht : [c.2.]
& beon icnowen of his pliht. 10	and beon icnowe of his pliht.
þ he hafde ¹ þene king ifcend :	þat he hadde þane king ifend :
& from his borde wes iwende.	þat he was fram his borde iwend.
he and his cnihtes :	he and his cnihtes :
mid muchele vn-rihte. [[f.106 ^b .c.1.]	mid mochele onrihtes.
for the king him wæs glad wið :	for þe king him louede afe his lif :
& for he hailede in his wif.	and haylede to his wif.
& ȝif he nalde aȝein cumen :	And ȝef he nolde þis owe :
& his gult beon icnawen.	and of his gult beo cnowe.
þe king him wolde aft ⁹ :	þe king him wolde after :
and don al his mahten. 20	and don al his mihte.
binimen him al his lond :	bi-nimen al his lond :
and his feoluer & his gold.	þat he hadde an hond.
þis iherde Gorlois :	þis ihorde Gorloys :
gumenene lauer ² .	eorl of Cornwale.

and took 'him forth-right [anon right] twelve wise knights, and sent after Gorlois, 'chieftain of men [earl of Cornwall], and bade him come in haste to the king, and do the king good right, and acknowledge his fault, that he had disgraced the king, 'and [that] from his board [he] had departed; he, and his knights, with mickle wrong, for (because) the king 'was cheerful with him [loved him as his life], and 'for he' hailed (drank health?) to his wife. And if he would not 'back come [this own], and acknowledge his guilt, the king would *follow* after him, and do all his might; take from him all his land, 'and his silver, and his gold [that he had in hand]. Gorlois heard this, 'lord

¹ R. hafde.² lauerd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& he andfware ȝaf :
 eorlene wraðeft.
 Næi fwa me helpe drihte :
 þa ifcop þaſ daȝef lihte.
 nulle ich nauere aȝæn cumen :
 no hiſ grið ȝirnen.
 ne ſcal he neuere on liue :
 me ſcende of mine wife.
 & fuggeð Vðer kinge :
 at Tintaieol he mai me finden.
 ȝif he þuder wule ride :
 þer ich him wulle abiden.
 and þer he ſcal habbe hærd gome :
 & mucle weorldes ſcome.

Forð wende þe eorl :
 ire on his mode.
 he wes wærð¹ wið þene king :
 wunder ane ſwiðe.
 and þretede Vther þene king :
 and alle hiſ þeines mid him. 20
 ah he nuſte whæt com ſeoððe :
 ſone þer æfter.
 þe eorl anan wende :

and he anſwerede :
 wroþliche ſwiþe.
 Nay ſo me helpe drihte :
 þat ſceop þeſ daiȝes lihte.
 nelle ich neuere aȝein come :
 ne hiſ griþ ȝerne.
 ne ſal he neuere on lifue :
 me ſcende of mine wifue.
 Ac ſeggeþ Vther þan king :
 at Tyntagel he may me finde.
 ȝef he þider wole ride :
 þar ich him wole abide.

FOrþ wende þe eorl :
 yr on hiſ mode.
 he waſ wroþ wiþ þan king :
 wonderliche ſwiþe.
 and wreþþede² Vther þane kīg :
 and alle hiſ cnihteſ mid him.
 ac he nuſte wat com ſupþe :
 ſone þar after.
 þe eorl a-non wende : [f.85^b.c.1.]

of men [earl of Cornwall], and he 'answer gave, wrathest of earls [answered exceeding wrathly]: "Nay, so help me *the* Lord, that formed the day-light, will I never back come, nor yearn his peace; nor shall he ever in life disgrace me of my wife! 'And [But] say *ye* to Uther [the] king, at 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel] he may find me; if he thither will ride, there will I abide him, 'and there he shall have hard game, and mickle worlds shame.'" Forth proceeded the earl, angry in his mood; he was wrath with the king wondrously much, and threatened Uther the king, and all his 'thanes [knights] with him. But he knew not what should come subsequently, soon thereafter. The earl proceeded anon into Cornwall; he had there two castles

¹ wrað?² þretede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in to Cornwaille.
 he hafde þer tweie castles :
 biclufed fwiðe uafte.
 þæ castles aðele¹ weore :
 of his eoldrene iftreon.
 To Tintaieol he fende :
 his leofmon þa wes hende.
 Ygerne ihatē :
 wifene aðelest. [c.2.]
 and heo biclufde uæste :
 inne þan castle.
 Ygerne wef særi :
 & forhful an heorte.
 þat fwa moni mon for hire :
 sculden habbē þer lure.
 þe eorl fende fonde :
 3eōd al Brutlonde.
 and bæd alcne ohte gome :
 þat he him sculde to cume.
 for gold and for feolure :
 & for oðere 3iuen gode.
 þat heo ful sone :
 to Tintaieole comen.
 & his his³ a3ene cnihtes :

into Cornwale.
 he hadde þare tweie castles :
 bi-walled fwiþe fafte.
 þe castles gode were :
 of his hilderne streone.
 To Tyntagel he fende :
 his wif þat was so hende.
 Igerne i-hote :
 treouwest alre wifue.
 and he bi-clufdere² fafte :
 ine þane castle.
 Igerne was fori :
 and forhfolle an heorte.
 þat so mani man for hure :
 folde habbe þare lure.
 þe eorl fende fonde :
 oueral Brutlond.
 and bad echene ohte gome :
 þat he folde to him come.
 for feoluer and for golde :
 and for oþer 3eftes gode.
 þat he wel sone :
 to Tyntagel come.
 and his owene cnihtes :

'inclosed [be-walled] most fast; the castles were good, of (*and* belonged to) *the* race of his ancestors. To 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel] he sent his 'mistress [wife] who was [so] fair, named Ygærne, 'best [truest of all] women; and [he] inclosed her fast in the castle. Ygærne was sorry, and sorrowful in heart, that so many men for her should there have destruction. The earl sent messengers over all Britain, and bade each brave man, that he should come to him, for gold and for silver, and for other good gifts, that 'they [he] full soon should come to 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel]; and *bade* his own

¹ *Written at first alðele, but l expuncted.* ² *bi-clufde hire?* ³ *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

comen forð rihtes.

comen forþrihtes.

þa heo to-gædere weoren :

þo hii to-gadere weren :

fele þeines.

alle hi-fomed.

þa hafde he fulle :

þo hadde¹ fulle :

fiftene þufend.

fiftene þufend.

& heo Tintaieol :

and he Tyntagel :

faſte bitunden.

faſte bi-tunde.

Uppen þere ſæ ſtronde :

Vppe þare ſtronde :

Tintaieol ſtondeð.

Tyntagel ſtondeþ.

he is mid ſæ cliuen :

10

he his mid ſée cluues :

faſte bicluſed.

faſte bi-tuned.

þat ne bið he biwunne :

þat ne worþ he bi-wonne :

þurh nanes cunnes monnen.

þorh neuere none manne.

bute ȝif hunger :

bote of ſtrang hunger :

cumen þer an vnder.

come þar honder.

þe eorl uerde þenne :

þe eorl wende þanne :

mid ſeouē þufend monnen.

mid ſcouē þouſend manne.

& wende to ane oðere caſtle :

and wende to an oþer caſtel : [c.2.]

and bihiſde hi² ful uæſte.

and bi-tunde him wel faſte.

Tintaieol.

and bilefde hiſ wif in Tintaieol :

bilefde his wif in Tyntagel :

mid ten þufend monnen.

21

mid hehte þouſen³ manne.

For ne þurue þa cnihtes :

For ne þeorte þe cnihtes :

dæies na nihtes.

daizes no nihtes.

knights to come forth-right. When they were together, *the* good thanes [all assembled], then had he full fifteen thousand, and *they* [he] fast inclosed *Tintaieol* [Tyntagel]. Upon the 'sea' strand *Tintaieol* [Tyntagel] standeth; it is with *the* sea cliffs fast inclosed, so that it may not be won, by 'no kind of [ever any] man, but if (except) [strong] hunger come there 'in' under. The earl marched thence with seven thousand men, and proceeded to another castle, and inclosed it 'full [well] fast, 'and' left his wife in *Tintaieol* [Tyntagel], with 'ten [eight] thousand men. For *it* needed the knights, day or night, only to guard [well] the castle gate,

¹ hadde he?² bicluſde hine?³ þouſend?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

buten buten ¹ biwiten þat castelȝat: bote witie wel þan castel ȝeate: & careles liggen flæpen.		and careles ligge fleape.	
and þe eorl wufte þene oþer: & mid hī hif a ² broðer.		and þe eorl wufte þan oþer: mid him his owe broþer.	
þif iherde Vther:		þis ihorde Vther:	
þe king wes fwiðe fteorc.		þat king in londe was her.	
þat Gorloif hif eorl:		þat Gorloys his eorl:	
hif ferde hafde igadere. [f.107.c.1.]		ferde hadde i-gadered.	
and wolde halde weorre:		and wolde holde werre:	
mid muchelere wraððe.	10	mid mochelere wrappe.	
þe king bad hif ferde:		þe king bad his ferde:	
ȝeond al þisfen ærde.		oueral his erþe.	
& ȝeond al þan londe:			
þa stoden an hif honde.			
monief kinnes leoden:		mani cunnes leode:	
liðen heom to-gæderes.		liþede heom to-gaderes.	
and comen to Lundene:		and comen to Londene:	
to þan leod-kinge.		to þan leod-kinge.	
Ut of Lundenes tun:		UT of Londenes toun:	
ferde Vðer Pendrag.	20	verde Vther Pendragon.	Vðer Pen- dragon.
he & hif cnihtes:		he and his cnihtes:	
ferde uorð rihtes.		wende forþrihtes.	
fwa longe þat heo comen:		so lange þat hii come:	
into Cornwæille.		in to Cornwale.	

and lie careless asleep; and the earl kept the other, 'and' with him his own brother. Uther heard this, who was king 'most stark [in land here], that Gorlois, his earl, had gathered 'his' forces, and would hold war, with much wrath. The king summoned his host over all 'this [his] territory, 'over all the land that stood in his hand'; people of many kind marched them together, and came to London to the sovereign. Out of Londons town fared Uther Pendragon; he and his knights proceeded forth-right, so long, that they came into Cornwall, and over the water 'they'

¹ Sic MS.² aȝen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ouer þat water heo tueoȝen :	and ofer þat water wende :
þat hatten Tambreif.	þat Tambre his ihote.
riht to þan caſtle :	riht to þan caſtle :
þer heo Gorlois wuſten.	þar hii Gorloȝs wuſte.
Mid muchelere læðe :	and al þar aboute :
þene caſtel heo bilæien.	þane caſtel bi-leȝe.
ofte heo to-ræfden :	ofte hii to-refde :
mid ræȝere ſtrengðe.	mid rehȝere ſtrengþe.
to-ſomne heo leopen :	
leoden þer feollen.	
Fulle ſeouen nihte :	Folle ſouenihteſ :
þe king mid his cnihten.	þe king mid his cnihteſ.
bilæi þene caſtel :	bi-laȝ þane caſtel :
his men þer hafeden forȝen.	his men þare hadde teone.
ne miſte ¹ he of þan eorle :	ne mihte he of þan eorl :
naþing iwinne.	noþing a-winne.
and alle þa ſeouen nihte :	ac al þat ſoueniht :
ilaſte þat felliche feoht.	ilaſt þat ſelliche fiht.
þa iſeh Vðer kīg :	þo iſeh Vther þe king :
þat him ne ſpedde naðing.	þat him ne ſpedde noþing.
ofte he hine biþohte :	ofte he hine bi-þohte :
whæt he don mahte.	wat he don mihte.
for Ygærne him wes ſwa leof :	for Igerne him was ſo leof :
æfne alſe hiſ aȝen lif.	ſo hiſ owene lif.
and Gorloif him wes on leodē :	and Gorloȝs in londe :

passed, that Tambres 'hight [is named], right to the castle, where they knew Gorlois to be. 'With much enmity [and all thereabout] the castle 'they' besieged; oft they assaulted *it* with fierce strength; 'together they leapt, people there fell.' Full seven nights the king with his knights besieged the castle; his men there had sorrow; he might not of the earl anything win, 'and [but] all the se'nnight lasted the marvellous fight. When Uther [the] king saw, that nothing sped to him; oft he bethought him what he might do; for Ygærne was so dear to him, 'even' as his own life, and

¹ mihte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

monnen alre læðest.	man alre lopest.	
& ælches weief him wes wa :	and in eche weyes him was wo :	
a piſſere weorlde-riche. [c. 2.]	in piſſe worle-riche.	
for he ne mihte beon wurðe :	for he ne mihte habbe :	
na þing of hiſ wille.	noht of hiſ wille.	
þa wes mid þan kinge :	¶ þo was mid þan kinge :	
an ald mon ſwuðe hende.	an hold man ſwiþe hende.	
he wes a ſwiðe riche þein :		
and ræh on ælche dome.		
he wes ihaten Vlfin :	10 he was ihote Vlfin :	<i>Vlfin.</i>
muche wiſdō wes mid him.	moche wiſdom was mid him.	
þe king bræid up hiſ chin :	þe king i-breid vp hiſ chin :	
and biſah an Vlfin.	and bi-heold Vlfin.	
ſwiðe he murnede :		
hiſ mod wes iderued.		
þa quað Vðer Pendragun :	and feide mid hiſ mouþe :	
to Ulfin þan cnihte.	toward hiſ cnihte.	
Ulfin ræd me ſumne ræd :	Vlfin read me ſomne read :	
oðer ich beo ful raðe dæde.	oþer ich worþe ſone dead.	
ſwa ſwiðe me longeð :	20 ſo ſwiþe me langeþ :	
þ̅ ne mai i noht ¹ libben.	þat ich ne may noht libbe.	
after þere faire Ygærne :	after þare faire Igerne :	
þiſ word halt me derne.	þiſ word halt me deorne.	

Gorlois was to him in *the* land 'of all men [man of all] most loathsome ; and [in] each way was woe to him in this worlds realm ; because he might not have 'anything [aught] of his will. Then was with the king an old man exceeding well-informed ; ' he was a very rich thane, and skilful in each doom ' ; he was named Ulfin ; much wisdom was with him. The king drew up his chin, and 'looked on [beheld] Ulfin ; ' greatly he mourned ; his mood was disturbed.' 'Then quoth Uther Pendragun to Ulfin the [and said with his mouth toward his] knight : " Ulfin, say me some counsel, or I shall be ' full ' soon dead, so much *it* longeth me after the fair Ygærne, that I may not live.

¹ ich noht ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

for Ulfīn þe leoue : aðele þīne lare. lude & ftille : don ich heom wulle. þa andfwarede Ulfīn : þan kīnge þet spac wið him. Nu ihere ich mucche feollic : æne king fuggen. þu luuest Ygærne : and halft hit swa deorne. 10 þe wifmon if þe to leof : & hire lauerd al to lað. hif lond þu forberneft : & hine blæð wurchest. and þratteft hine to flæne : & his cun to fordōne. Wenest þu mid swulche hærme : to biȝeten Ygærne. þenne heo sculde don : fwa ne deð na wifman. 20 mid æie vnimete : halden luue fwete. Ah ȝif þu luuest Ygærne : þu sculdest hit halden derne. [f.107 ^b . c.1.]	for ich wole ilifue : al þīne lore. loude and ftille : don ich wolle. þo answerede Vlfīn : þan kīng þat spac wiþ him. Nou ihire ich mochel fellich : one king fegge. þou louest Igerne : and holdest hit so deorne. [c.2.] þe wifman his þe to leof : and hire louerd to loþ. his lond þou for-bearneft : and him seolue þreteft. Wenest þou mid soche hærme : to bi-ȝete Igerne. þanne ȝeo folde don : afe ne doþ no womman. mid heȝe onimete : holde loue fwete. Ac ȝef þou hire louedest : þou soft ¹ hire sondes fende.
---	---

This word hold to me secret; for 'Ulfīn the dear, thy good [I will believe all thy] counsels, loud and still I will do 'them'. Then answered Ulfīn to the king who spake with him: "Now hear I a king say great marvel! Thou lovest Ygærne, and holdest it so secret; the woman is to thee dear, and her lord 'all' loath; his land thou consumest, 'and makest him destitute,' and threatenest him[self] 'to slay, and his kin to destroy.' Weenest thou with such harm to obtain Ygærne? She should do then as no woman doth, with dread unmeet hold love sweet. But if thou 'lovest Ygærne [lovedest her],

¹ foldest?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and fendē hire fone :	
of feoluere and of golde.	
& luuien hire mid lifte :	and louie hire mid lifte :
& mid leofliche bihæfte.	and mid faire bi-hefte.
þa ȝet hit weore a wene :	And ȝet hit were a wene :
whar þu heo mihtes aȝe.	war þou hire habbe mihtes.
for Ygærne if wel idon :	for Igerne his wel idon :
a fwiðe treowe wimmon.	a fwiþe treouwe womman.
swa wes hire moder :	so was hire moder :
& ma of þan kunne.	10 and mo of hure cunne.
To foðe ich þe fuggē :	
leofest alre kinge.	
þat oðere weief þu most agunnen :	Ac oþer weies þou most a-gynne :
ȝif þu hire wult awinnen.	ȝef þou hire wolt a-winne.
For ȝurftendæi me com to :	For ȝorftnendai me com to :
an æremite wel idon.	on heremite wel idon.
& fwor bi his chinne :	and fwor bi his chinne :
þat he wufte Merlī.	þat he wufte of Merlȝn.
whar he ælche nihte :	ware he eche nihte :
reſteð vnder luſte.	20 reſte onder luſte.
and ofte he hī ſpæc wið :	and ofte he ſpac him wiþ :
& ſpelles him talde.	and ſpelles him tolde.
& ȝif we mihte M ⁹ lin :	And we mihte þorh eni þing :
mid lifte biwinnen.	a-winne þiſſne Merlȝn.
þenne mihteſt þu þine iwille :	þanne mihtes þou fone :

thou shouldest 'hold it secret, and' send her 'soon of silver and of gold [messengers], and love her with art, and with 'loving [fair] behest. 'The [And] yet it were a doubt, whether thou mightest 'possess [have] her; for Ygærne is chaste, a woman most true; so was her mother, and more of the [her] kin. 'In sooth I thee say, dearest of all kings,' 'that [But] otherwise thou must begin, if thou wilt win her. For yesterday came to me a good hermit, and swore by his chin, that he knew [of] Merlin, where he each night resteth under heaven; and oft he spake with him, and stories him told. 'And' if we might 'with art [through any thing] get [this] Merlin,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

allunge biwinne.

þa wes Vðer Pendragun :

þa fofter an his mode.

& 3if¹ andfware red :

Vlfin þu haueft wel ifæd.

Ich þe 3iue an honde :

þritti folh of londe.

þ þu M⁹lin biwīne :

& don mine iwille.

Vlfin 3eond þat folc wende : 10

& fohte al þa uerde. [c. 2.]

& he vmbe ftunde :

þene æremite finde³.

and an hi3inge :

brohte hine to þan kinge.

and þe king him fette an hond :

feouen ful3ene lond.

3if he mihte bringen :

M⁹lin to þā kinge.

þe æremite gon wēde :

in þene weft ænde.

to ane wilderne :

to ane wude muchele.

habbe þine wille.

þo was Vther Pendragun :

þe fohtere in his mode.

and anfwereðe þane read :

Vlfin þou haueft wel ifeid.

Ich 3eue an honde þe² : [f. 86^b. c. 1.]

þritti folh of londe.

þat þou Merlȝn a-winne :

and do mine wille.

Vlfin in þan londe wende :

and fohte al þe ferde.

and bi one ftunde :

þane heremite [funde].

and an hi3enge :

brohte hine to þan kinge.

and þe king him fette an hond :

fcoue folwene lond.

3ef he mihte finde :

Merlȝn and to þe kinge bringe.

þe heremite gan wende : 20

to þan weft eande.

to one wilderne :

to one wode mochele.

then mightest thou thy will 'wholly obtain [soon have]." Then was Uther Pendragun the softer in his mood, and 'gave answer [answered]: "Ulfin, thou hast well said [the] counsel; I give thee in hand thirty ploughs of land, so that thou get Merlin, and do my will." Ulfin went 'through the folk [in the land], and sought all the host, and 'he' after [a] time found the hermit, and in haste brought him to the king. And the king set to him in hand seven ploughs of land, if he might [find and] bring Merlin to the king. The hermit gan wend 'in [to] the West end, to a wilderness, to a mickle wood, where he had dwelt well many winters; and Merlin very

¹ 3af?² R. þe an honde.³ funde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer he iwuneð ¹ hafde :	þar he iwoned hadde :
wel feole wintre.	wel fale wýntres.
and M ⁹ lin fwiðe ofte :	and Merlȝn fwiþe hofte :
þer inne ² fohte.	þare hine fohte.
Sone þe armite com in :	Sone so þe heremite com in :
þa ifunde he Mærlin.	he ifeh Merlȝn.
vnder ane treo ftonden :	vnder one ftunde :
and fære him gon longē.	and fore him gan longȝe.
þene æremite he ifæh cume :	þan heremite he ifeh come :
alfe while wes his iwune.	afe wile was if wone.
he orn him to-ȝænes :	he orn him to-ȝeines :
beiene heo uæineden þas.	and to him faide þus.
heo cluptē heo cuften :	hii clupten hii cuften :
and cuðliche ſpeken.	an cuþliche ſpeke.
þa fæide M ⁹ lin :	þo faide Merlȝn :
muchel wiſdom wes mid him.	moche wiſdom was mid him.
Sæie þu mi leofe freond :	Sai þou me leofue freond :
wi naldeſt þu me fuggen.	wi noldeſt þou me couþe.
þurh nanef cūnes þinge :	þorh none þing :
þat þu wældeſt to þā kinge.	þat þou woldeſt to þan kinge.
Ah ful ȝare ich hit w ⁹ te :	Ac fol ȝare ich hit wiſte :
anan ſwa ich þe miſte.	anon afe ich þe miſte.
þat þu icumen weore :	

oft sought him there. So soon [as] the hermit came in, 'then found he [he saw] Merlin, 'standing under a tree [after a time], and sore gan for him long; he saw the hermit come, as whilom was his custom; he ran towards him, 'both they rejoiced for this [and said to him thus]; they embraced, they kissed, and familiarly spake. Then said Merlin,—much wisdom was with him,—“ Say thou, 'my [to me,] dear friend, why wouldest thou not 'say [make known] to me, through no 'kind of' thing, that thou wouldest go to the king? But full quickly I it knew anon as I thee missed, 'that thou wert come to Uther *the* king'; and what the king spake with thee,

¹ iwuned?² hine?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to Vðere kinge.

and what þe king þe wið spæc :

and of his londe þe bæd.

þat þu me fculdest bringe :

to Vðer kinge. [f.108,c.1.]

And Vlfin þe sohte :

& to þan kinge brohte.

& Vðer Pendragun :

forð rihtes anan.

fette him an honde :

þritti folh of londe.

& he sætte þe an honde :

seoue fulhzene lōd.

Vther if¹ of-longed :

æfter Ygærne þere hende.

wunder ane fwiðe :

after Gorloises wiue.

Ah longe if æuere :

þ ne cummeð nauere.

þ he heo biwinne :

bute þurh mine ginne.

for nis na wimmon treowere :

in þiffere worlde-riche.

& neoðeles he scal aze :

þa hende Ygærne.

and wat þe king þe wiþ spæc :

and of his londe þe bead.

þat þou me foldest bringe :

to Vth² þan kinge. [c.2.]

and Vlfin þe sohte :

and to þan kinge brohte.

and Vther fette hī an hond :

þritti solwene lond.

and þe he fette an honde :

foue solwene lond.

Vther his of-longed :

after Igerne.

wonderliche fwiþe :

after Gorloys his wifue.

Ac lange his euere :

þat ne comeþ neuere.

20 þat he hire awinne :

bote mid mine gýnne.

for nis no wommā treuwere :

in þisse worle-riche.

And nopeles he sal habbe :

þe hendi Igerne.

and of his land thee offered, that thou shouldest bring me to Uther [the] king. And Ulfin thee sought, and to the king brought, and Uther 'Pendragon forth-right anon,' set him in hand thirty ploughs of land; and he set thee in hand seven ploughs of land. Uther is desirous after Ygærne 'the fair,' wondrously much, after 'Gorloises [Gorloys his] wife. But so long as is eternity, that shall never come, that he obtain her, but (except) through my stratagem; for *there* is no woman truer in this worlds realm. And ne-

¹ R. if.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

on hir¹ he ſcal ſtreonē :
 þat ſcal wide ſturien.
 he ſcal ſtreonien hire on :
 ænne fwiðe felliche mon.
 Longe beoð æuere :
 dæd ne bið he næuere.
 þe wile þe þiſ world ſtænt :
 ilæſten ſcal iſ worðmunt².
 and ſcal inne Rome :
 walden þa þæineſ. 10
 Al him ſcal abuȝe :
 þat wuneð inne Bruttene.
 of him ſcullen gleomen :
 godliche fingen.
 of hiſ breoſten ſcullen æten :
 aðele ſcopes.
 ſcullen of hiſ blode :
 beorneſ beon drunke.
 of hiſ eȝene ſcullen fleon :
 furene gleden. 20
 ælc finger an hiſ hond : [c.2.]
 ſcarp ſtelene brond.
 ſcullen ſtan walles :

in hire he ſal ſtreni :
 þat ſal wide ſturie.
 he ſal ſtreoni hire on :
 one felliche man.
 Lange hiſ euere :
 dead ne worþ he neuere.
 þe wile þat þe worle ſteond :
 me wole of him telle.
 he ſal in Rome :
 welde þe cnihtes. 10
 Al him ſal abouwe :
 þat wonieþ in Bruttene.
 of hī ſolle gleomen :
 coupliche finge.
 of hiſ broſt ſollen eate :
 ſtaleworþe kempeſ.
 ſolle of hiſ blode :
 cnihtes beo dronge.
 of hiſ eȝene ſolle fleo :
 furie gledeſ. 20
 ech fenger of hiſ hond :
 ſcarp ſtelene brond.
 ſollen ſton walles :

vertheless he shall 'possess [have] the fair Ygærne ; *and* he shall beget on her what shall widely rule ; he shall beget on her a man 'exceeding' marvellous (*or* famous). *So long as* is eternity, he shall never die ; the while that 'this [the] world standeth, 'his glory shall last [men will of him tell] ; 'and' [he] shall in Rome rule the 'thanes [knights]. All shall bow to him that dwelleth in Britain ; of him shall gleemen 'goodly [familiarily] sing ; of his breast 'noble poets [stalworth warriors] shall eat ; of his blood shall 'men [knights] be drunk ; from his eyes shall fly fiery embers ; each finger 'on [of] his hand *shall be* a sharp steel brand ; stone walls shall before him

¹ Interlined by a second hand.² word munt, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

biuoren him to-fallen.
 beornes scullen rufien :
 reofen heoſ mæren.
 þuſ he ſcal wel longe :
 liðen ȝeōd londen.
 leoden biwinnen :
 & hiſ laȝen fette.

þiſ beoð þa tacnen¹ of þan fune :
 þe cumeð of Ure² Pendragune.
 and of Ygærne :
 þeſ ſpeche iſ ful derne.
 for ȝet næt hit neoðer :
 Ygærne no Uðer.
 þat of Vðere Pendragune :
 ſcal ariſe ſwile a fune.

for ȝet he beoð unſtreoned :
 þa ſturieð al þa þeoden.
 Ah laured quað Merlin :
 nu hit iſ iwille þin.
 þat forð I³ ſcal fuſe :
 to uerde þaſ kingeſ.
 þi word ich wulle heren :
 and nu ich wulle wende.
 and faren ich wulle for þire lufe :

to-vore hī to-falle.
 beornes ſolle rufie :
 reſe hire marke.
 þuſ he ſal wel lange :
 wende ouer al þan londes.
 folk to bi-winne : [f.87.c.1.]
 and hiſ laȝeſ fette.

þiſ beoþ þe tockne of þan ſone :
 þat comeþ of Vther Pendragon.
 and of Igerne :
 þat ȝet hiſ wel deorne.
 for ȝet not hit noþer :
 Igerne no Vther.

for ȝet he hiſ on-ſtreone :
 þat ſtorie ſal þeoſ þeode.
 Ac louerd cwaþ Merlȝn :
 nou hit hiſ wille þin.
 þat forþ ich ſal vare :
 to folke þeoſ kingeſ.
 þi word ich wolle iheren :
 and nou ich wolle wende.

and faren ich wolle for þine loue :

tumble; barons shall give way, *and* their standards fall! Thus he shall well long fare over [all the] lands, people to conquer, and set his laws. These are the tokens of the son, that shall come of Uther Pendragon and of Ygærne. 'This speech [That yet] is 'full [well] secret; for yet neither it knoweth, Ygærne nor Uther, 'that of Uther Pendragon such a son shall arise'; for yet he is unbegot, that shall govern 'all the [this] people. But, Lord," quoth Merlin, "now it is thy will, that forth I shall go to *the* 'host [folk] of 'the [this] king; thy words I will obey, and now I will depart, and

¹ beoð þacnen, *pr. m.*² Uðer?³ ich?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to Vthere Pendragune.
and habben þu scalt þat lond :
þ̃ he þe fette an hond.
þuſ heo þa iſpecken :
þæ æremite gon to weopen.

deorliche he hine cuſte :

þ̃er heo gunnen dælen.

Merlin ferde riht fuð :

þat lond him wæs ful cuð.

forð riht he fuſde :

to þes kinges ferde.

Sone ſwa Vðer hine iſæh : [f. 108^b.c.1.]

ſwa he him to-zeines bæh.

& þuſ quað Vder³ Pēdragune :

Mærlin þu ært wilcume.

Her ich fette þe an honde :

al þene ræd of mine londe.

and þ̃ þu me ræde :

to muchere neode.

Vther him talde :

al þ̃ he walde.

& hu Ygærne him wes on leodē :

wimmonnen⁴ leofeft.

to Vther Pendragon.

and habbe 3e folle þat lond :

þat a¹ 3ou fette an hond.Dorneliche² hii cuſte :

þo hii gonne to-deale.

Merlȳn wende riht forþ ſuþ :

þat lond him was wel couþ.

forþ riht he wende :

to þis kinges ferde.

Sone ſo Vther hine iſeh :

azeines him he beh.

and þuſ cwaþ Vther Pendragon :

Merlȳn þou hart wilcome.

Here ich þe fette an hond :

al þane read of mine lond.

for nou þou moſt me reade :

at mochele mine neode.

proceed I will for thy love to Uther Pendragon. And 'thou shalt [ye shall] have the land that he set 'thee [you] in hand.' 'Thus they then spake: the hermit gan to weep'; dearly 'he him [they] kissed; 'there [then] they gan to separate. Merlin went right 'forth' south, the land was well known to him; forth-right he proceeded to 'the [this] kings host. So soon as Uther him saw, 'so' he approached towards him; and thus quoth Uther Pendragon: "Merlin, thou art welcome! Here I set thee in hand all the counsel of my land, 'and that [for now] thou [must] me advise, at [my] great need." 'Uther told him all that he would, and how Ygærne was to him in *the* land dearest of women, and Gorlois, her lord, most odious

¹ he?² deoreliche?³ R. Vðer.⁴ wimmonnen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and Gorlois hire lauerd :

momnenen¹ alre laðest.

& buten ich habbe þīne ræd :

ful raðe þu ifihst me dæad.

þa andswerede M^olin :

Let nu cume in Vlfin.

& bitæc him an honde :

þritti fulzene lond.

& bi-tæc þan æremite :

þat þu him bihete.

for nulle ich azæn na lond :

neouðer²

for ich am on rade :

rihcheft alre monnen.

& ȝif ich wilne æhte :

þenne wurfede ich on crafte.

Ah al þī iwille :

wel ſcal iwurðen.

for ich cō swulcne leche-craft :

þe leof þe ſcal iwurðen.

for bote ich habbe þīne read :

wel ſone ich worþe dead.

for ich langȝ fo ſwiþe :

after Gorloȝs his wifue.

þo anſwerede Merlȝn :

Let nou come Vlfin. [c. 2.]

and bi-tak him an hond :

þritti ſolwene lond.

and bi-tak þe heremite :

þat þou hine bi-heate.

for nelle ich of þe habbe :

none cunne ȝeftes.

for ȝef ich wilnede hahte :

þanne werfede ich on crafte.

Ac al þīne wille :

wel þou ſalt habbe.

for ich can on ſoch craft :

þat þe ſal wel likie.

of all men.'—“‘And [For] unless I have thy counsel, ‘full [well] soon ‘thou wilt see me [I shall be] dead, [for I long so greatly after Gorloys his wife].” Then answered Merlin: “Let Ulfin now come ‘in,’ and give him in hand thirty ploughs of land, and give to the hermit what thou him promisedest; for I will not ‘possess any land, neither silver nor gold [have of thee any kind of gifts]; for ‘I am in counsel most skilful of all men, and’ if I wished for possessions, then should I become worse in craft. But all thy will well ‘shall come to pass [thou shalt have]; for I know such ‘leech’-craft, that shall ‘be to thee lief [to thee well like], so that all thy

¹ monnen?² Part of a line is here wanting. We should doubtless read neouðer feoluer na gold. Cf. l. 18579. et alib.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat al scullen þine gareres¹ :
 iwurðen fwulc þas eorles.
 þi speche þi dede :
 imong þere duȝeðe.

þine horf & þine iwede :
 & al fwa þu scalt ride.
 þenne Ygæne² þe scal ifeon :
 a mode hire scal wel beon.

heo lið inne Tintaieol :
 uafte bituned. 10

Nif nan cniht fwa wel iboren :
 of nane londe icoren. [c.2.]

þe mihte³ ftrēgðe of Tintaieol :
 þe ȝeten mihten un-tunen.

buten he⁴ weoren ibirfted :
 mid hungere & mid þurfte.

þat if þ̅ soðe :

þat ich þe fugge wulle.

þurh alle þinge þu scalt beon :
 fwulc þu eorl weore. 20

& ich wulle beon iwil del :

swulc him if Brutael.

þat if a cniht swiðe herd :

þat al folle þine cheres :

iworþe alfe þe eorles.

þi speche þin dede :

þin hors and so falt ride.

Wane Igerne þe fal ifen :

a mode þe bet hire fal ben.

ȝeo liþ ine Tyntagel :

faſte bi-tuned.

Nis no king so wel ibore :

of none londe icore.

þat mid ſtrengþe of Tyntagel :

þe ȝeates mihte ontune.

bo⁵ hii were burfted :

mid hunger and mid þorſte.

Ac þat his þat ſoþe :

þat ich þe ſegge wolle.

þorh alle þ̅ig þou falt beo :

aſe hit þe eorl were.

and ich wolle beon evereideal :

aſe him his Bricahel.

þat his a cniht ſwiþe hard :

appearance shall become as the earls; thy speech, thy deeds 'among thy people'; thy horse and 'thy weeds (garments); and so shalt 'thou' ride. When Ygærne shall see thee, in mood shall *it* be 'well [the better] to her; she lieth in 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel], fast inclosed. *There* is no 'knight [king] so well born, of no land chosen, that might with strength unfasten the gates of 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel], unless they were burst with hunger and with thirst. [But] that is the sooth that I will say to thee; through all things thou shalt be as *if* 'thou wert [it were] the earl; and I will be every bit as Britael he is, who is a knight most hardy, he is this earls

¹ *The first letter of this word is sup. ras.*

³ mid?

⁴ heo?

² *R. Ygærne.*

⁵ bote?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he is þeos eorles ftiward.	he his þis kingef ¹ ftiward.
Jurðan is hiſ bur-cniht :	Jordan þat his bour-cniht :
he iſ ſwiðe wel idiht.	
ich wulle makien anan :	
Ulfin ſwulc iſ Jurðan.	
þenne biſt þu lauer ² :	
& ich Brutael þi ftiward.	
& Ulfin Jurðan þi bur-cniht :	
& we ſcullen faren nu to niht.	foch ſal Vlfin beo to niht.
faren þu ſcalt bi ræde :	10 and fare þou ſalt to reade :
wuder ſwa ich þe læde.	woder þat ich þe leode.
Scullen nu to nihte :	Sollē nou to niht :
half hundred cnihten.	alf an hundred cnihtes. [f.87 ^b .c.1.]
mid ſperē and mid ſcelden :	mid ſpere and mid ſcealde :
beon abuten þine telden.	beo a-boute þine teldes.
þ̅ nauere nan quið ³ mon :	þat neuere non cwicmon :
ne cumē þer aneoſten.	ne come þar a-neweſt.
& ȝiſ þer auer æi mon cume :	and ȝeſ þar eni þare come :
þat hiſ hæued him beon bi-numē.	þat hiſ heued him beo bi-nome.
for þa cnihtes ſcullen fuggen :	For þe cnihtes ſolleþ ſegge :
ſelen þ̅e beornen.	21 ſeale þine þeines.
þat þu ært ilete blod :	þat þou har hi-lete blod :
and reſteſt þe on bædde.	and reſteſt on bedde.

steward; Jurðan 'is his [who is] chamber-knight, 'he is exceeding well dight; I will make Ulfin anon such as Jurðan is. Then wilt thou be lord, and I be Britael, thy steward, and Ulfin be Jurðan, thy chamber-knight.' 'And we shall go now [such shall Ulfin be] to-night; [and] fare thou shalt by counsel, whither 'soever [that] I lead thee. Now to-night shall half [a] hundred knights, with spear and with shield be about thy tents, so that never any man alive come there near; and if ever any 'man' come there, that his head be taken from him. For the knights shall say,—thy good 'men [thanes],—that thou art let blood, and restest 'thee'

¹ eorles?² lauerd?³ quik?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þas þīgges forð rihte :	þes þingef weren forþriht :
þuſ weoren idihte.	in þilke manere idiht.
Forð ferde þe king :	Forþ wende þe king :
næs hit cuð na þing.	nas hit couþ noþing.
and ferdan forð mid him :	and forþ wende mid him :
Ulfīn & M ^o lin.	Ulfīn and Merlyn.
he ¹ tuȝen riht þen wæi :	hii wende riht þane way :
þa in to Tintaieol læi.	þat in to Tȳntagel lay.
heo comen to þaſcaſtles ȝæte :	hii come to þan caſtel ȝæte :
& cuðliche cleopeden.	and coupliche ſpeke.
Vndo þiſ ȝæt eſſel :	Vndo þiſ ȝæte eſſel :
þe eorl iſ icumen here.	þe eorl hiſ icomen her.
Gorlois þe læuerd :	Gorloȳs þin louerd :
& Britael hiſ ſtiward.	and Britahel hiſ ſtiward.
and Jurdan þe burcniht :	and Jordan hiſ bourcniht :
we habbeoð ifaren al niht.	we habb hii-riden ² al niht.
þe ȝæteward hit cudde ouer al :	þe ȝæteward hit cudde oueral :
& cnihtes urnen uppen wal.	and cnihtes vrnē vppe wal.
and ſpeken wið Gorloif :	and ſpekē wiþ Gorloȳs :
and hine icneowen mid iwīſ.	and hine i-cnewe foliwiſ.
þa cnihtes weoren ſwide ³ whæte :	þeoſ cnihtes weren ſwiþe wate :
and weſden up þa caſtles ȝæte.	and weſde vp þe caſtel ȝæte.
& letten hine binnen fare :	and lete hine in vare :

in bed. These things were forth-right 'thus [in this manner] dight. Forth went the king; it was nothing known; and forth went with him Ulfīn and Merlin; they proceeded right the way that lay into 'Tintaieol [Tyn-tagel]; they came to the castle-gate, and 'called [spake] familiarly: "Undo this gate-bolt; the earl is come here, Gorlois 'the [thy] lord, and Britael his steward, and Jordan 'the [his] chamber-knight; we have 'journeyed [ridden] all night!" The gateward made it known over all, and knights ran upon *the* wall, and spake with Gorlois, and knew him full surely. 'The [These] knights were most alert, and weighed up the castle-gate, and let

heo?

² habbeþ i-riden?³ ſwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa læffe wes þa heore care.	þe lasse was hire [kare].
heo wēden mid iwiffe :'	hii wende mid iwiffe :'
to habben muchel bliffe.	to habbe mochel bliffe.
þa hædden heo mid ginne :'	þo haden hii mid gýnne :'
M ⁹ lin þer wið inne.	Merlȳ þar wiþ ine. [c.2.]
& heo ¹ Vðer þene king :'	and Vther þane king :'
wið ine heore walding.	wiþ hinne hire weldýng.
and ledde þer mid him :'	and ladde þare mid him :'
his gode þein Ulfín.	his leoue freond Merlȳn.
þis tidinde com biliue :'	þes tidinge com bliue :'
in to þā wífe.	into þan wífue.
þæt hire læuerd wes icumen :	þat hire louerd was icode :
and mid him his þreo gumen.	and mid him his þreo gomef.
Vt com Ygærne :	Vt com Igerne :
forð to þan eorle.	forn to þan eorl.
and þas word feide :	and þes word feide :
mid wunfume wurde.	mid wonsome speche.
Wilcume læuerd :	Wolcome louerd :
monne me leofest.	manne me leouest.
& wilcume Jurdan :	and wolcome Jordan :
and Britael if afwa ² .	and Britaeh al fon ³ .
beo 3e mid ifūde :	be 3eo mid ifunde :
to-dæled from þan kinge.	idealed frā þan kinge.
þa quæð Vðer ful iwif :	þo cwap Vther foliwis :

him come 'with' in,—the less was 'then' their care;—they weened certainly to have much bliss. Then had they with stratagem Merlin there within, and Uther the king within their possession, and led there with him his 'good thane Ulfín [dear friend Merlin]. These tidings came quickly unto the lady, that her lord was come, and with him his three men. Out came Ygærne forth to the earl, and said these words with winsome speech: "Welcome, lord, man to me dearest; and welcome, Jordan, and Britael 'is' also;—be ye in safety parted from the king?" Then quoth Uther full truly as *if* it were Gorlois: "Mickle [is] the multitude that

¹ Redundant? Perhaps we should read æc?² al fwa?³ Britahel al fo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

swulc hit weore ¹ Gorlois.	ase hit were Gorloÿs.
Muchel þat mōkun : [c.2.]	Mochel his þat mancun :
þæt is mid Vther Pend ^a gun.	þat his mid Vther þe king.
and ich æm bi nihte :	and ich ham al bi nihte :
bi-stole from þan fihte.	bi-stele fram þan fihte.
for æfter þe ic wes of-longed :	for after þe ich was of-langet :
wifmonne þu ært me leofueft.	womman þou hart me leoueft.
Buð in to bure :	Bou into boure :
& let mi bed makien.	and let min bed makie.
and ich me wulle ræsten : 10	and ich me wolle reafte :
to þiffere nihte uirfte.	to þisse niht his forfte.
& alle dai to mærwē :	and al dai to morewe :
to bliffien mire duȝeðe.	to gladie mine doȝeþe.
Ygærne beh to bure :	Igerne wende to boure :
& lætte bed him makien.	and lette bed makie.
wes þat kinewurðe bed :	was þat kineworþe bed :
al mid palle ouer bræd.	al mid palle ouer sprad.
þe kīg hit wel bihedde :	þe king hit wel bi-hedde :
& eode to his bedde.	and eod to his bedde.
and Ygærne læi adun : 20	and Igerne lay adun : [f.88.c.1.]
bi Uðere Pendragon.	bi Vther Pendragon.
Nu wende Yg ² ne ful iwis :	Euere wende Igerne foliwis :
þat hit weoren Gorloif.	þat hit were Gorloÿs.
þurh neuere nænes cunnef þing :	

is with Uther 'Pendragon [the king]; and I am [all] by night stolen from the fight, for after thee I was desirous, woman thou art to me dearest. Go into *the* chamber, and cause my bed to be made, and I will rest me for this 'nights [night his] space, and all day tomorrow, to gladden my people. Ygærne went to chamber, and caused *a* bed to be made 'for him'; the kingly bed was all overspread with *a* pall. The king viewed it well, and went to his bed; and Ygærne lay down by Uther Pendragon. 'Now [Ever] weened Ygærne full truly, that it were Gorlois; 'through

¹ weoren *pr. m.*, but *n* erased.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

no icneou heo Vðer þene king.

þe king hire wende to :

þe king hire wende to :

swa wapmō sculde to wimmon do. fo wepman fal to wifue do.

& hæfde him to done :

wið leofueft wimmonne.

& he ftreonede hire on :

and ftreonede hire on :

æenne felcuðne mō.

one felcoupe man.

kingen alre kenest :

king alre kenneft :

þæ æuere com to monnen.

þat euere com to londe.

& he wes on ærde :

10 and was on erþe :

Arð[ur].

Ærður ihaten.

Arþour ihote.

Nuste noht Yg²ne :

wha læie on hire ærme.

for æuere heo wende ful iwif :

þat it weoren þe eorl Gorloif.

Næs þer na mære uirft :[f.109^v.c1.] Nas þar na more fohriht :

buten þ hit wes dæi-liht.

bote þat hit was day-liht.

þer forð rihtes :

a-non forþ rihtes :

vnderzeten þa cnihtes.

onderzeten Vther his cnihtes.

þat þe king wes iuaren :

20 þat þe king was awend :

ut of þere uærde.

vt of þan ferde.

þa sæiden þa cnihtes :

þo faide þe cnihtes :

soð þæh hit neoren.

foþ þeh hit nere.

þat þe king wes iflozen :

þat þe king was afloze :

never any kind of thing knew she Uther the king.' The king approached her as man should do to woman, 'and had him to do with *the* dearest of women'; and 'he' begat on her a marvellous man, keenest of all kings, that ever came 'among men [to land], and 'he' was on earth named Arthur. 'Ygærne knew not who lay in her arms; for ever she weened full surely, that it were the earl Gorlois.' There was no greater 'interval [right sooth] but until it was day-light, 'there [anon] forth-right 'the [Uther his] knights understood, that the king was departed out of the host. Then said the knights, sooth though it were not, that the king was flown, 'filled with dread [for dread of the earl]; 'but it all was leasing that

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid ærhþen afeolled.	for drede of þan eorle.
ah al hit wes leffinge :	
þ̅ heo feiden bi þan kinge.	
her of heo heoldē muchel run :	and heolde her of mochel roun :
uppen Vder ¹ Pendragun.	vppe Vther Pendragon.
þa feiden þa eorles :	P O faide þe eorles :
& þa hæhste beōrnef.	and þe hehste beornes.
Nu þenne hit waht Gorlois :	Nou wane hit wot Gorloys :
hu hit iuaren if.	ou hit ivaren his.
þat ure kīg if ifaren :	10 þat oure king his afloze :
& hif ferde bilæiued.	and his ferde bi-lefued.
he wule forð rihtes :	he wole anon rihtes :
wepni hif cnihtes.	wepni his cnihtes.
and ut he wule to fihten.	and vt he wole to fihte :
& feollen uf to grūden.	and falle ous to grunde.
mid woden hif þeines :	
muchel wæl makien.	
þenne weore uf beteren :	þanne were vs betere :
þat we iboren neoren.	þat we ibore nere.
Ah leten we blawen bemen :	20 Ac lete we blowe bumes :
& bonnien ure uerde.	and banni oure ferde.
& Cador þe kene :	and Cador þe kene :
fcal beren þaf kinges marke.	fal bere þis kinges marke.
hæbben hæze þene drake :	holden heze þane drake :

[Cado]r.

they said of the king ; ' they [and] held hereof much converse upon Uther Pendragon. Then said the earls and the highest barons ; " Now when Gorlois shall know it, how it is passed, that our king is 'departed [fled], and *has* left his host, he will 'forth-right [anon right] weapon his knights, and out he will to fight, and fell us to ground, 'with his furious thanes make mickle slaughter ;' then were *it* better for us, that we were not born. But cause we *the* trumpets to be blown, and our army to assemble ; and Cador the brave shall bear 'the [this] kings standard ; 'heave [hold]

¹ R. Vðer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bi-foren þiffere duȝeðe.	bi-vore þeof ilke ferde. [c.2.]
and faren to þan caſtle :	and wende to þan caſtle :
mid kene ure folke.	mid al oure mihte.
and þe eorl Aldolf :	and þe eorl Aldolf :
ſcal beon ure aldre.	ſal beon oure eldre.
& we him ſcullen here :	and we him ſolle herie :
ſwulc hit þe king weoren.	aſe he þe king were.
& ſwa we ſwullen mid rihte :	and ſo we ſollen mid fihte ¹ :
wið Gorloif fihten. [c.2.]	wiþ Gorloys fihte.
and ȝif he uſ wule ſpeken wið :	and ȝif he wole ſpeke vs wiþ :
& ȝernē þiſ kinges grið.	and ȝerne þiſ kinges griþ.
ſetten ſæhtn ² fe :	
mid æðen foð-fæſte.	
þenne maȝen we mid wurðſcipen :	þanne mawe ² mid worſipe :
heonene iwenden.	hinne wende.
þenne nabbeoð ure æfterlinges :	þat nabbeþ oure onderlinges :
nane up-breidingeſ.	none vp-breidinges.
þat we for ærhſcipe :	þat we for enȝ ȝearſipe :
heonene at-ærnden.	hinene beoþ at-hourne.
Al þat leodliche folc :	Al þat ilke folk :
bilufde þeſne ilke ræd.	lofuede þane ilke read.
Bemen heo bleowē :	B vmes hii bleowen :
bonneden uærden.	and bannede hire ferde.
up heo hafden þene drake :	vp hii houe þane drake :

high the Dragon before this 'people [same host], and march to the castle, with 'our keen folk [all our might]. And the earl Aldolf shall be our chief, and we shall obey him, as *if* he were the king; and so we shall with right with Gorlois fight; and if he will speak with us, and yearn this kings peace, 'set amity with soothfast oath,' then may we with worship go hence; 'then [so that] our underlings will have no upbraidings, that we for any timidity hence [are] fled.'" All 'the nation-folk [that folk] praised 'this [the] same counsel. Trumpets they blew, [and] assembled [their] host;

¹ rihte?² mawe we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ælches mærlen vnimake.	eche marke onimake.	
þer wæs moni bald ſcalc ⁊	þar was many bold cniht ⁊	
þe ſceld weiden on ſculdre.	þat ſceal ¹ ſweynde on foldre.	
moni þein kene ⁊		
& wenden to þan caſtle.	and wende to þan caſtle ⁊	
Gorloif wes wið innē ⁊	þar Gorloý ² was wiþ ine.	<i>Gorloif.</i>
mid kene his monnen.		
he lette blawen beomen ⁊		
& bonnien hiſ ferden.		
leopen an ſteden ⁊		10
cnihtes gunnē riden.		
þæs cnihtes weoren ſwiðe wate ⁊	And hii were ſwiþe wate ⁊	
& wenden ut at þan ȝate.	and ſweinde vppe caſtel ȝate.	
to-ſomne heo comen ſone ⁊	and come to-gadere ſone ⁊	
faſtliche heo on-foȝen.	and faſtliche on-foȝe.	
feolle fæie men ⁊		
uolden iſohten ³ .		
þer wes muche blod gute ⁊	þar was mochel blod iȝote ⁊	
balu wes on folke.	wowe was mid folke.	
imong þan fihte ful iwif ⁊	20 amang þan fihte foliwiſ ⁊	
mon floh þene eorl Gorloif.	me floh þā eorl Gorloýs.	
þa gunnen hiſ men fleon ⁊	þo gonne hiſ men fleo ⁊	
& þa oðere after teon.	and þe oþer after teo.	

up they heaved the Dragon, by each standard unmatched; there was many a bold man, that hung shield on shoulder, 'many a keen thane'; and proceeded to the castle, [where] Gorlois was within, 'with his keen men. He caused trumpets to be blown, and his host to assemble; *they* leapt on steed; knights gan to ride.' 'These knights [And they] were exceeding active, and 'went out at the gate; [swung up the castle-gate, and] together 'they' came soon, [and] quickly 'they' attacked; 'fell *the* fated men; *the* ground *they* sought; there was much blood shed, harm was 'among [with] *the* folk; amidst the fight full certainly men slew the earl Gorlois. Then gan his

¹ ſceald?² R. Gorloýs.³ heo ſohten?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo comen to þan caſtle : ^[f.110.c.1.]	hii comen to þan caſtle :
and binnen heo þraſtē.	and hii in þraſte.
Sone hit comen binnen :	
ba twa þa uerden.	
þer ileſte þat fiht :	þar ilaſte þat fiht :
þurh þene dæi-liht.	þorh vt þan day-liyt. ^[f.88^b.c.1.]
ær þe dai weore al a-ſceken :	her þe dai were al a-ſake :
wes þe caſtel biȝeten.	was þe caſtel bi-ȝeate.
næs þer nan ſwa wracche ſwein :	
þat he nes a wel god þein. 10	
Comen þa tidinde :	Come þe tȝdinge :
into Totintageol ¹ an hiȝende.	to Tȝntagel an hiȝenge.
forð into þan caſtle :	
þer Vðer wes inne.	
þat iflaȝen wes ful iwif :	þat iflawe was foliwis :
þe eorl heore læuerd Gorloif.	þe gode eorl Gorloȝs.
& alle his hiſ ² here-gumen :	and alle hiſ hired-gomes :
and hiſ caſtel inumen.	and þe caſtel inome.
þiſ iherde þe king :	þiſ ihorde þe king :
þer he læi an ſkentting. 20	þar he lai a ſwetig.
& leop ut of bure :	and leop vt of boure :
ſwulc hit an liun weore.	aſe hit a lȝon were.
þa quað þe king Vðer :	þo ſaide king Vther :

men to flee, and the others to pursue after; they came to the castle, and 'within [in] they thrust. 'Soon it came within, both the two hosts;' there lasted the fight through[out] the day-light; ere the day were all gone, the castle was won; was there no swain so mean, that he was not a well good thane.' The tidings came 'in'to Tintageol in haste, 'forth into the castle wherein Uther was,' that the [good] earl 'their lord' Gorlois was slain full truly, and all his soldiers, and 'his [the] castle taken. The king heard this, where he lay 'in amorous play [a-sweeting], and leapt out of bower, as *if* it were a lion. Then 'quoth the [said] king Uther, [who]

¹ *R.* Tintageol.² *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

of þiffen tiðende he wes wær.	þat of þe tȳdinge was war.
Beoð ftille beoð ftille :	Cnihtes in halle :
cnihtes inne halle.	beoþ fwiþe ftille.
here ich æm ful iwif :	her ich ham foliwis :
eore læuerd Gorloif.	ȝoure louerd Gorloȳs.
and Jurdan mi burward :	and Jordan mȳ bourward :
and Brutael mi ftiward.	and Britahel mi ftiward.
Ich & þas tweie cnihtes :	Ich and þef tweie cnihtef :
leopen ut of þan fihte.	leopen vt of þan fihte.
and hider in we beoð idrazen :	and hider in we beoþ idraze :
neore we noht þeṛ iflazen.	11 nere we noht þare iflaze.
Ah nu ich wulle fuſē :	
& fumnien mine ferde.	
and ich & mine cnihtef :	Ac nou ich and mine cnihtes :
ſcullen al bi nihte.	follen alle bi nihte.
faren in ænne tun :	varen into on toun :
and imeten Vðer Pendragun.	and imete Vther Pendragon.
and buten he of fæhneſſe ¹ ſpeken :	bote he of ſahneſſe ¹ ſpeke :
ich wulle me wuðliche ² awrake.	ich wole me worþliche a-wreke.
& ȝe þefne caſtel :	[[c. 2.] And ȝe þifne caſtel :
bi-cluſeð ſwiðe uafte.	21 bi-tuneþ fwiþe faſte.
and hateð me Ýgerne :	and biddeþ Igerne :
þat heo noht ne murne.	þat ȝeo noht ne morne.
Nu ich fare forð riht :	Nou ich wende forþriht :

of 'this [the] tidings 'he' was ware : " Be 'still, be [most] still, knights in hall ! Here I am full truly, your lord Gorlois ; and Jordan, my chamberlain, and Britael, my steward. I and these two knights leapt out of (withdrew from) the fight, and in hither we are arrived,—we were not there slain. But now I 'will march, and assemble my host ; and I 'and my knights shall all by night proceed into a town, and meet Uther Pendragon, 'and' unless he speak of reconciliation, I will worthily avenge me ! And inclose ye this castle most fast, and bid Ygærne that she mourn not. Now go I

¹ fæhtneſſe ? ſahtneſſe ?² wurðliche ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

habbeoð alle gode niht.	habbeþ alle gode niht.
Bi-foren ferde M ^o lin :	Bi-vore wende Merlȝn :
& þe þein Vlfin.	and þe cnih ¹ Vlfin.
& feoððen Uðer Pendragun :	and supþe Vther Pendragon : [c. 2.]
ut of Tītageoleftun.	vt of Tȝntagelef toun.
æuere heo uerden alle niht :	euere hii wende al niht :
þat hit wes dæi-liht.	þat hit was dai-liht.
þa com he to þan ærde :	þo com he to þan ftude :
þer læi his ferde.	war laȝ his ferde.
Merlin hafde a þene king :	Merlȝn hadde al his craft :
10 his wlite ifet þurh alle þing.	ondo of þan kinge.
þa icneowen cnihtes :	þo icnewe his cnihtes :
heore kinelauerd.	hire kinelouerd.
þer wes moni oht Brut :	þar was manȝ bold Brut :
mid bliffen afeolled.	ifulled mid bliffe.
þa weoren inne Bruttene :	
bliffen inoze.	
hornes þer bleowen :	
gleomen gen ^e gleowen.	
glad æuer ælch cniht :	20 glad was ich cniht :
al mid pælle bi-þæht.	al mid palle bi-þehte.
þreo dæies wes þe king :	þreo dazef waf þe king :
wuniende þere.	woniende þare.
& þan feorðe dæie :	in þan feorþe daie :

forth-right ; have *ye* all good night !" Merlin went before, and the 'thane [knight] Ulfen, and afterwards Uther Pendragon, out of Tintageols town ; ever they proceeded all night, until it was day-light. When he came to the spot where his army lay, Merlin had 'on the king set his *own* features through all things [undone all his craft from the king] ; then [his] knights knew their sovereign ; there was many *a* bold Briton filled with bliss ; 'then was in Britain bliss enow ; horns there blew, gleemen gan chant' glad [was] 'every [each] knight, all arrayed with pall ! Three days was the king dwelling there ; 'and [on] the fourth day he went to Tintaieol. He

¹ cniht ?² Originally written *gleowen*, but the letters *leow* erased ; read *gon*.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to Tintaieol he wende.	to Tyntagel he wēde.
He fende to þan castle :	He fende to þan castle :
his feleſt þeines.	his wiſeſte cnihteſ.
& grætte Ygærne :	and grette Igerne :
wifuene aðeleſt.	wifuene hendef.
& fende hire taken :	and fende hire tockne :
whæt heo i bedde ſpeken.	wat hii in bedde ſpeke.
hehte heo þat heo aȝeuen :	hehte þat ȝeo aȝeoue :
þene caſtel biliue.	þane caſtel bliue.
þer nes nan oðer ræd :	þar naſ non oþer read :
for hire lauerd wes dæd.	for hire louerd wes dead.
ȝet wende Ygærne :	ȝet wende Igerne :
þat hit ſoð weoren.	þat hit ſoþ were.
þat þe dæde eorl :	þat þe deade eorl :
ifoht haſede hiſ duȝeðe. [f.110 ^b .c.1.]	ifoht hadde hiſ cnihteſ.
and al heo ilæfde :	and al wende :
þat hit læf weore.	þat hit leſ were.
þat þe king Vðer :	þat þe king Vther :
æuere weorē icumen her.	euere weren icome þer.
Cnihteſ eoden to ræde :	Cnihteſ eoden to reade :
cnihteſ eoden to rune.	cnihteſ eoden to roune.
radden þat heo nalden :	radden þat hii nolde :
þene caſtel lengere halden.	þane caſtel lengere holde.
heore brugge heo duden adun :	hire brugge hii dude adun :
& bitahte hine Vðer Pendragū.	and leten him ¹ Vther Pendragon. [f.89.c.1.]

sent to the castle his 'best thanes [wisest knights], and greeted Ygærne, 'noblest [fairest] of women, and sent her token what they spake in bed; *and* ordered 'her' that she should yield the castle quickly,—*there* was no other counsel, for her lord was dead. Yet Ygærne weened that it were sooth, that the dead earl had sought his 'people [knights], and 'she' all 'believed [weened], that it were false, that the king Uther had ever come there. Knights went to counsel, knights went to communing; *they* resolved that they would not hold the castle *any* longer; their bridge they let down,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa stod al þis kinelond :

æft an Vtheres hond.

þer Vðer þe kīg :

nom Ygærne to quene.

Ygærne wes mid childe :

bi Vðer kīge.

al þurh M⁹lines wīzel :

ær heo biwedded weore.

þe time cō þe wes icoren :

[Natus] est
Arthurus.

þa wes Arður iboren.

Sone fwa he com an eorðe :

aluen hine iuengen.

heo bigolen þat child :

mid galdere fwiðe stronge.

heo 3euē him mihte :

to beon bezft alre cnihten.

heo 3euen him an oðer þing :

þat he scolde beon riche king.

heo 3iuen hī þat þridde :

þat he scolde longe libben.

heo 3ifen him þat kine-bern :

cuften fwiðe gode.

þat he wes mete-cufti :

þo stod al þis kinelond :

in Vtheres owe hond.

þar Igerne iwarþ :

Vther his cwene.

and 3eo was gret mid childe :

bi Vther þan knge¹.

al þorh Merlynes craft :

here 3eo bi-wedded were.

þe tyme com þat was icore :

þo was Arþur ibore.

Sone so he to worle com :

aluene him onderfenge.

and 3euen him mihte :

to beon best alre cnihte.

hii 3euen him an oþer þing :

þat he folde beo riche king.

hii 3euen him þat þridde :

þat he folde lange libbe.

hii 3euen þane beorn :

3eftes fwiþe gode.

þat he wes mete-cufti :

and 'delivered it to [let in] Uther Pendragon. Then stood all this kingdom 'eft' in Uthers [own] hand. There 'Uther the king took Ygærne for queen; Ygærne was [Ygærne became Uther his queen, and she was great] with child by Uther [the] king, all through Merlins craft, before she was wedded. The time came that was chosen, then was Arthur born: So soon as he came 'on earth [in the world], elves 'took [received] him; 'they enchanted the child with magic most strong,' 'they [and] gave him might to be the best of all knights; they gave him another thing, that he should be a rich king; they gave him the third, that he should live long; they gave to 'him the prince [the child] virtues [gifts] most good,

¹ R. kinge.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

of alle quikemonnen.
 þis þe alue him ȝef :
 and al fwa þat child iþæh.
 Æfter Arður wes iboren :
 þeo ædie burde.
 heo wes ihaten Æne :
 þ̅ ædien maiden.
 & feoððen heo nom Loð :
 þe Leonef ahte.
 heo wæs inne Loeneif :
 leodene læfdi.
 Longe luuede Vðer :
 mid muchelere bliffe her.
 mid gode griðe mid gode friðe :
 freo on kinedome.
 þa þe he wes ald mō :
 þa com him ufel on.
 þat vfel hine læide adun :
 seoc wes Vðer Pendragun.
 fwa he wes here :
 seoc feoue ȝere.
 þa iwurðen Bruttes :
 swiðe ibalded.

of alle cwike manne.
 þis þe alfe him ȝeaf :
 and al fo þat child i-þeh.
 After Arþur was ibore :
 þat edie maide.
 ȝeo waf i-hote Anna.¹
 þat Leoneif hahte.
 ȝeo was in Leoneis :
 folkene leafdi.
L Ang lifuede Vther :
 mid mochele bliffe her.
 þo þat he was hold man :
 þo com him vuel an.
 þat vuel hine laide adun :
 feac was Vther Pendragon.
 so he was here :
 feac feoue ȝere.
 þar vore weren Bruttus :
 moche onbalded².

[c.2.]

10

20

[c.2.]

so that he was *most* generous of all men alive. This the elves gave him, and thus the child thrived. After Arthur, the blessed 'lady [maid] was born, she was named Anna, 'the blessed maiden; and afterwards she took (married) Loth,' who possessed Leoneis (Lothian); she was in Leoneis lady of *the* people. Long lived Uther with mickle bliss here, 'with good peace, with much quiet, free in *his* kingdom.' When that he was *an* old man, then came illness on him; the illness laid him down, sick was Uther Pendragon; so he was here sick seven years. 'Then became [Therefore were] *the* Britons much emboldened; they did oft wickedly, all for abs-

¹ A line is here apparently wanting.² ibalded?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo duden ofte unwræfte :

al for æie-lefte.

þe ȝet læi ibunden :

in þe quarterne of Lunden.

Octa Hengestef sune :

þa at Eouerwic wes inume.

and his iuerē Ebiffa :

& his oder Offa.

heom biu⁹ten twælf cnihtes :

dæief and nihtes. 10

þa weoren weri of-læien :

inne Lundenne.

Octa iherde fuggen :

of feocneffe þaf kinges.

& spac wið þa wardes-men :

þe hine witen scolden.

Hærcneð me nu cnihtes :

þat ich eou wulle cuðen.

We liggeð here i Lundene :

uafte ibunden. 20

and ȝe monienne longne dæi :

ouer uf ilæien habbeoð.

bettere uf weoren to libben :

inne Sexlonde.

mid muchele richedome :

hii dude ofte onwrefte :

al for heye-lefte.

ȝet lai ibunde :

in þe tour of Londene.

Octa Hengestes sone :

þat at Euerwich was inome.

and his iverē Ebiffa :

and þe oþer Offa.

ȝam bi-wufte twalf cnihtes :

daies and nihtes.

þat weri were for-leie :

ine Londene.

Octa to þis cnihtes :

spac þus forþrihtes.

Betere ȝou were libbe :

ine Saxlonde.

mid moche bliffe :

ence of dread. 'The' yet lay Octa, Hengests son, bound in the 'prison [tower] of London, who was taken at York, and his comrade Ebissa, and 'his [the] other Ossa. Twelve knights guarded them day and night, who were wearily oppressed with watching, in London. Octa 'heard say of the sickness of the king, and' spake 'with the guardsmen, who should keep him [thus forth-right to these knights]: "'Hearken to me now, knights, what I will make known to you. We lie here in London fast bound, and ye many a long day have watched over us.' Better were *it* for 'us [you] to live in Saxland, with much [bliss and] wealth [certainly], than thus

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

¹ and richedom iwiffe.
 þene þuſ reouliche here :¹ þane þuſ rouliche here :
¹ liggen afwounde.
 & ȝif ȝe wolden iwurðen : [f.111.c.1.] and ȝef² þiſſe wolde :
 & don mine iwille. alþing i-wourþe.
 ich eou wolden ȝiuen lond : ich ȝou wolde ȝeue lond :
 muchel feoluer & gold. boþe feoluer and gold.
 þat a ȝe mihten riche : þat ȝeo mihte richeliche :
 rixliē in þan londe. rixli on lond.
 and eoure liſ libben :
 ſwa eou bið alre leofueſt. [þing :
 For no biden ȝe nauere ȝiuen gode : For ne folle ȝeo neuere habbe ſoch
 of Vðer kinge. of Vther ȝoure king.
 for nu ful raðe he bið dæd : for hiſ³ almoſt dead :
 and hiſ duȝeðen al bilæueð. þanne nabbe ȝeo nanne read.
 þenne nabben ȝe nouðer : ne þanne nabbe ȝe noþer :
 þat an no þat oðer. þat on ne þat oþer.
 Ah biðenche eou ohte mē :
 & doð uſ eoure mildze on.
 & þencheð whæt eou weoren leof : Ac bi-þencheþ wat ȝou were leof :
 ȝif ȝe þuſ ibūden leien. 21 ȝef ȝe ibunde were.
 & mihten in eouwer londe : and mihte in oþer londe :

miserably here [lie asleep]. And if ye would [in all things] accomplish [this], 'and do my will,' I would give you land, 'much [both] silver and gold, so that 'ever' ye might richly rule in 'the' land, 'and live your life as to you shall be liefest of all.' For ye shall never have 'good gifts [such things] of Uther, [your] king, for 'now full soon he will be dead, and his people all desert; [he is almost dead; then will ye have no counsel, nor] then will ye have neither, the one nor the other. But be-think 'you, brave men, and give to us your compassion, and think' what were lief to you, if ye 'thus lay [were] bound, and might in 'your [other]

¹ Two lines seem to be missing here.² ȝefȝe ?³ he his ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

libben inne winne.	libbe mid winne.
Swiðe ofte Octa:ʒ	Swiþe ofte Octa:ʒ
wið þæs cnihtes fpac swa.	wiþ þis cnihtes fpac fo.
Cnihtes gunnen runen:ʒ	Cnihtes gonne roune:ʒ
cnihtes gunnen ræden.	cnihtef gonne reade.
to Octa heo feiden ful ftille:ʒ	and to Octa faide wel ftille:ʒ [f. 89 ^b .c.1.]
We fculen don þine iwille.	We follen don þine wille.
aðes heo fworen:ʒ	opes hii fworen:ʒ
fwiken þat heo nalden.	fwike þat hii nolden.
Hit wæs in ane nihte:ʒ	10
þ þe wind wende rihte.	
forð iwenden cnihtes:ʒ	Forþ wende cnihtes:ʒ
to þere mid-nihte.	to þare fee forþ rihtef.
and ledden uorð Octa:ʒ	
& Ebiffa & Offa.	
after þere Temefe:ʒ	
tuhten forð into þere sæ.	
forð heo iwenden:ʒ	and ouer wende:ʒ
into Sæxlonden.	in to Saxlonde.
Heore cun heom cō azeines:ʒ	20 Hire cun heom com to-zeines:ʒ
mid mucle flockes.	mid mochelere flockes.
heo liðen 3eond þan leoden:ʒ	[c.2.] hii wende oueral þan londe:ʒ
fwa heō wes alre leofueft.	ware heom were leueft.
me heom bi-tahte lond:ʒ	me 3af ham 3eftes and lond:ʒ

land live 'in [with] joy.' Very oft Octa spake so with these knights. *The* knights gan to commune, *the* knights gan to counsel; [and] to Octa *they* said 'full [well] still: "We shall do thy will." Oaths they swore, that they would not deceive. 'It was on a night that the wind went right'; forth went *the* knights 'at the midnight [to the sea forth-right], 'and led forth Octa, and Ebissa, and Ossa; along the Thames *they* proceeded forth into the sea'; 'forth they [and over] passed into Saxland. Their kindred came towards them with great flocks (forces); they marched over [all] the land, 'as [where] to them was liefest [of all]; men gave them [gifts and] land; 'men gave them silver and gold.' Octa bethought him what he

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

me ȝæf heom feoluer & gold.

Octa hine bidohte² :

whæt he don mahte.

he þohten hider wenden :

& wræken his fader wunden.

Ferden heo biȝæten :

of folke vnimete.

to þere fa heo wenden :

mid muchele þrætte.

1

to Scotlonde heo comen.

sone heo fufden alond :

and mid fure hit igrætten.

Sæxes weoren ræie :

Scottes heo floȝen.

mid fure heo adun læiden :

scotti⁴ hundred tunef.

Scottes heo floȝē :

moni and unifoȝen.

Comē þa tidende :

to Vðer kinge.

Vðer wes fwiðe wa :

& wunderliche ihærmed.

1

Octa hine bi-þohte :

wat he don mihte.

he þohte hider wende :

and wreke his fader wonde.

Ferde he bi-ȝet :

of folke onimet.

to þare féé hii wende :

mid moche þretinge.

10

forþ hii wende fone :

þat hii to Scotlond come.

sone hii þrafte lond³ :

and mid fure hit grette.

and þritti tounes :

hii leide to þan grunde.

Scottes hii floȝe :

manie ād inowe.

20

Comen þe tidinge :

to Vther þan kinge.

might do; he thought to come hither, and avenge his fathers wounds.

'They [He] procured a host of innumerable folk; to the sea they proceeded with great 'threats; [threatening; forth they went soon, so that] they came to Scotland; soon they pushed on land, and greeted it with fire; 'the Saxons were cruel, the Scots they slew; with fire' 'they down laid [and they laid to the ground] thirty 'hundred' towns; the Scots they slew, many and 'innumerable [enow]. The tidings came to Uther [the] king. 'Uther [he] 'was exceeding woe, and wonderfully grieved, and' sent 'in'to

¹ A line is deficient in both these places.² biðohte?³ an lond?⁴ þritti?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and fenden into Loæines :
 to leofen his freondē.
 and grette Lot his aȝum :
 & hehte hine beon an fund.
 & hahte hine nimen an his hond :
 al his kinewurðe lond.
 cnihtes and freomen :
 and freoliche heom halden.
 & leden heō to ferde :
 fwa laȝen beoð an ærde. 10
 & he hæhte his cnihtes leoue :
 beon hærfume Loðe.
 mid leofliche læten :
 swulc he weoren leodene king.
 For Lot wes fwiðe god cniht :
 & hafde i halden monifiht. [f. 111^b. c. 1.]
 and he wes mete-cuſti :
 æuer alche mōne.
 he bitahten him þa warde :
 of alle þiffen ærde. 20
 Octa heold mucche vnfrið :
 & Lot faht him ofte wið.
 & ofte he ahte biȝæt :
 & ofte he heom lofede.

he fende to Leoneys :
 to leofe his freonde.
 and grette Loth his oȝom :
 and bad hine beo hol and fund.
 and hehte hine nime his kinelond :
 to his owene hond.
 cnihtes and freomen :
 and freoliche heom holde.
 and he hehte his cnihtes :
 beo horfom to Loth.
 mid alle ſcines þing :
 afe he were leod-king. [c. 2.]
 þe kīg bi-tahte Loth þe ferde :
 of alle þis erþe.
 Octa ne ſohte no griþ :
 and Loth [faht] him ofte wiþ.
 and ofte he bi-ȝet :
 and heft hit lofede.

Loeneis, to his dear friends; and greeted Loth, his son-in-law, and bade him be 'in health [whole and sound], and ordered him to take in his [own] hand all his 'royal land [kingdom]; knights and freemen, and freely hold them, 'and lead them in a host, as *the* laws are in *the* land.' And he ordered his 'dear' knights to be obedient to Loth, with 'loving looks [all kind of thing], as *if* he were sovereign. 'For Loth was very good knight, and had held many fight, and he was liberal to every man,' 'he [The king] delivered 'to him [Loth] the 'government [host] of all this land. Octa 'held much war [sought no peace], and Loth often fought with him, and oft he gained 'possessions,' and 'oft he them [est it] lost. *The Britons* had mickle

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Bruttes hafden muchel mode :'	Bruttes hadde mochel mod :
& vnimete prute.	and onimete prude.
& weoren æielelefe ¹ :	
for þaſ kinges alde.	
and lætten fwiðe hokerliche :	and leten fwiþe moche hoker :
of Lote þan eorle.	of Loth þane eorle.
and dudē fwiðe vnwraſte :	
& ² alle hiſ haſte.	
and weoren alle twiræde :	and weren of twireade :
heore teone wes þa mare.	10 hire care was þe more.
þiſ wes iſæid ſone :	þiſ was ſone ibroht :
feockē þan kinge.	to þan ſeake kinge.
þat hiſ hæȝe men :	þat hiſ owene men :
Lot al for-hoȝeden.	Loth al for-howede.
Nu ich þe wulle tellen :	Nou ich þe wolle telle :
a þiſſen boc-ſpællen.	of þiſſe bok-ſpelle.
hu Vðer þe king :	hou Vther þe king :
uurede hine feolven.	fondede him feolue.
He ſæide þat he wolde :	He ſaide þat he wolde :
wende to hiſ ferde.	20 wende to hiſ ferde.
and mid hiſ eȝene iſeon :	and mid hiſ eȝen iſen :
wæ þer wolde wel don.	wo þar wolde wel don.
He lette makien þere :	He lette makie þere :
gode horſe-bere.	gode horſe-bere.

mood, and immoderate pride, 'and were void of dread, for (on account of) the king's age'; and looked very 'contemptuously [much derision] on Loth the earl, 'and did very evilly all his commands,' and were 'all [of] two counsels,—their care was the more! This was soon 'said [brought] to the sick king, that his 'high [own] men Loth all despised. Now will I tell thee, in this history, how Uther the king disposed himself. He said that he would go to his host, and see with his eyes who would there do well. He caused there to be made a good horse-litter, and caused an army to be

*and was
bringing
two = 3
to fight*

¹ æielefe?² Redundant?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& letten beoden uerde ⁊

and lette bede ferde ⁊

ȝeond al his kine-ærde.

oueral his kine-erþe.

þat ælc mon bi hiſ liue ⁊

þat ech man bi his liue ⁊

comen to him fwiðe.

come to him blifue.

bi heore liue & bi heore leme ⁊

to wræken þas kinges ſcome.

& ȝif þær iſ æi gume ⁊

And ȝef þar iſ eni gome ⁊

þæt nulle hiȝenliche cume. [[c.2.] þat nele an hiȝenge come.

ich wulle hine hiȝenliche fordon ⁊ ich hine wole ahon ⁊

oðer flæn oðer an-hon.

10 and cwikliche al for-don.

Alle ful ſone ⁊

to hirede heo comen.

no durſte þær bilæuen ⁊

Ne dorſte þar non bi-leſue ⁊

na þæ uatte no þe læne.

for þis kinges heȝe.

þe king forð rihtes ⁊

þe king forþ rihtes ⁊

nom alle his cnihtes.

nam alle his cnihtes.

& ferde him anan ⁊

and wende him a-non ⁊

*Verolam.*to þā tune of Merelam¹.

to þan toun of Verolam.

abuten Uerolames tun ⁊

a-boute Verolameſ toun ⁊ [[f.90.c.1.]

com him Vder² Pendragon.

20 com Vther Pendragon.

Octa.

Octa wes wið innen ⁊

Octa was wiþine ⁊

mid alle hiſ imonnen.

mid alle his manne.

þa wes Verolam ⁊

þo was Verolam ⁊

assembled over all his kingdom; that each man by (on pain of) his life should come to him quickly, 'by their lives and by their limbs, to avenge the kings shame.'—"And if there is any man, who will not come 'hastily [in haste], I will 'speedily destroy him, either slay either hang [him hang, and quickly all destroy]." 'All full soon to *the* court (*or* to *the* army) they came'; durst there [none] remain, 'nor the fat nor the lean [for dread of this king]. The king forthright took all his knights, and marched him anon to the town of Verulam; about Verolams town came 'him' Uther Pendragon; Octa was within with all his men. Then was Verolam a most

¹ Verolam?² Vðer? *here and below.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

a fwiðe kinewurðe hō.	a fwiþe worþlich hom.	
Seint Alban wes þes ¹ iflæȝen :	Saint Alban was þar ifllaȝe :	
& idon of lif-dæȝen.	and idon of lif-daȝe.	
þe burh wef seoððe for-uaren :	þe borh was supþe for-vare :	
& muchel folc þer wes iflæȝen.	and moche folk þar was iflaȝe.	
Vðer lai wið utē :	Vther laȝ wiþ houte :	
& Octa wið innen.	Octa wiþ ine.	
Vðeres ferde :	Vther his ferde :	
fufde to wal ² .	fufde to þan walle.	
ræfden to feondliche :		10
þeines riche.		
ne mihte heo of þā walle :	ne mihten hii of þan walle :	
æne fton falle.	one fton falle.	
no mid nare ftrengðe :		
þene wal amærre.		
Wælle bliðe wes þæ :	Wel bliþe was þo :	
Hangestef fone Octa.	Hengestes fone Octa.	
þa he ifæh Bruttes :	þo he ifah Bruttus :	
buzen from walle.	bouwe fram þe walles.	
& forhful wenden :		20
aȝæin to heore teldē.		
þa fæide Octa :	þo faide Octa :	Octa.
to his iueren Ebiffa.	to his ivere Ebýffa.	
Her if icumen to Æuerlam ³ :	Her his icome to Verolam :	Verolamia.

'royal [worthy] town; Saint Alban was there slain, and deprived of life-day; the burgh was subsequently destroyed, and much folk there was slain. Uther lay without, 'and' Octa within. 'Uthers [Uther his] army advanced to [the] wall; 'the powerful thanes fiercely assaulted it'; they might not of the wall one stone detach, 'nor with any strength the wall injure.' Well blithe was then Hengests son Octa, when he saw *the* Britons recede from [the] walls, 'and go sorrowful again (back) to their tents.' Then said Octa to his

¹ þer? ² An e is added above, so as to make wale, for walle?

³ Verolam?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Vder þe lome mon.	Vther þe lame man.
& wulle wið uf here ⁊	and wole wiþ houre here ⁊
fihten in his bære.	fihte in his bere.
he wænde mid hif crucche ⁊	
uf adun þrucche.	
Ah to mærze wæne hit dæi buð ⁊	Ac to morewe wane hit his day ⁊
duȝeðe ſcal arifen.	cnihtes folle a-rife.
& oppenien ure caſtel-ȝæten: ^[f.112. c.1.]	and hopeni þeof caſtel-ȝeate ⁊
þas riche we ſwullen al biȝeten.	and þes riche we folle bi-ȝete.
ne ſcullen we nauære here liggen ⁊	nolle we here ligge ⁊
for ane lomme monne.	11 for one lame manne.
Ut we ſcullen riden ⁊	
uppen ure ſteden goden.	
and to Uðere fuſen ⁊	
& hif folc fællen.	
for alle heo beoð fæie ⁊	
þat hider beoð iridenen.	
and nimen þene lome mon ⁊	ac him we folle a-welde ⁊
and leggen in ure benden.	and legge in houre bendes.
and halden þene wræcche ⁊	20 and holde þane wrech ⁊
a þat he for-wurðe.	forte he for-worþi.
& fa me ſcal lacnien ⁊	and fo me ſal lechni ⁊
hif leomes þat beoð fare.	his leomes þat beoþ fore.
and hif ban rihten ⁊	

comrade Ebissa: "Here is come to Verulam Uther, the lame man, and will with 'us here [own forces] fight in his litter; 'he weened with his crutch to thrust us down!' But to-morrow when it is day, *the* 'people [knights] shall arise, and open 'our [this] castle-gate, [and] this realm we shall 'all' win; 'shall we never [we will not] lie here for one lame man! 'Out we shall ride upon our good steeds, and advance to Uther, and fell his folk; for all they are fated (shall die) that hither are (have) ridden; 'and take the lame man [But him we shall get possession of], and lay in our bonds, and hold the wretch until 'that' he dies; and so men shall leach his limbs that are sore, 'and heal his bones with bitter steel!' " Thus spake 'him' Octa with

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid bitele ¹ stelen.	
þuſ him iſpac Octa :'	þuſ ſpac Octa :'
wið hiſ iuere Ebiffa.	wiþ hiſ iuere Ebyffa.
ah al hit iwarð ² oðer :	ac al hit iwende :
þene heo iwenden.	oþer þane hii wende.
Amarȝe þa hit dazedede :	A morwe þo hit dazedede :'
duren heo un-tunden.	doreſ hii on-tunde.
up araſ Octa :	vp a-roſ Octa :
Ebiffa & Offa.	Ebyffa and Offa.
and hehten heore cnihtes :	and hehte hire cnihtes :
ȝarkien heom to fihte.	greiþi heom to fihte.
vndon her brade ȝætē :	
burȝen un-tunen.	
Octa him ut ræd :	Octa him vt rod :
& mucche folc him aft ⁹ glæd.	and moche folk him after glod.
mid balden hiſ beornen :	
þer he bælu funden.	
Vðer him þiſ iſæh :	Vther þiſ iſeh :
þat Octa heom to bæh.	þat Octa him to beoh.
& þohten hiſ ferde :	and þohte hiſ ferde :
feolen to grūde.	fallen to þan grunde.
þa cleopede Uðer :	þo cleopede Vther :
mid quickere ſtefene þer.	mid cwickere ſtemne þer.
Wær beo ȝe Bruttes :	Ware beo ȝe Bruttes :

Octa.
Ebiffa.
Offa.

his comrade Ebissa; but all it happened otherwise than they weened. On the morrow when it dawned, they unfastened the doors; up arose Octa, Ebissa and Ossa, and ordered their knights to prepare them for fight, to undo their broad gates, and unfasten the burgh.' Octa rode him out, and much folk followed after him; 'with his bold warriors there he bale found!' Uther saw 'him' this, that Octa approached to 'them' [him], and thought to fell his host to [the] ground. Then called Uther with quick voice there: "Where be ye, Britons, [Where be ye,] my 'bold thanes [champions]?"

¹ bitere?² iwarð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

balde mine þeines.	ware beo ȝeo mine kempes.
nu is icumen þe ilke dæi :	nou his icome þe ilke dai :
þe drihtē uf helpen mai. [c. 2.]	þat drihte vs holde may.
þat Octa ſcal ifinden :	þat Octa mihte ifinde :
þat he þrættede me to binden.	þat he þretede me to binde.
Iþenched ¹ on eoure aldren :	Bi-þencheþ of ȝoure eldre :
hu gode heo weoren to fehten.	ou gode hii were to fihte.
iþenched ¹ þene wurðſcipe :	bi-þencheþ in þan worſcipe :
þ̅ ich eou habbe wel biwiten.	þat ich ȝou habbe wel iwited.
ne læten ȝe næuere þas hæðene :	ne lete ȝe neuere þis heaþene :
bruken eoure hames.	11 brouke ȝoure homes.
þæs ilke awedde hundes :	þeſ ilke a-wende ² hundes :
walden eouwere lōdes.	habbe ȝoure londes.
And ich wullen bidden drihten :	And ich wolle bidde drihte :
þ̅ ſcop þæs dæies lihten.	
& alle þaie halȝen :	and alle his halwe.
þa an hæfeuene ³ hæhȝe fitteð.	
þat [ich] on þiſſen felde :	þat ich in þiſſe wolde :
mote beon ifroured.	mote beon ifreuered.
Nu fuſeð heom to ſwiðe :	20 Nou fouſeþ heom to ſwiþe :
fulſte eou drihten.	fulſte vs drihte.
þe al waldinde god :	
bi-witen mine þeines.	

Now is come that day, that *the* Lord may 'help [sustain] us;—that Octa 'shall (may) find, *in* that he threatened me to bind. Think of your ancestors, how good they were in fight; think of the worship that I have to you well given; nor let ye ever this heathen enjoy your homes, *or* these same raging hounds 'possess [have] your lands. And I will pray to *the* Lord 'who formed the day-light,' and to all 'the [his] hallows, 'that sit high in heaven,' that I on this 'field [weald] may be succoured. Now march quickly to them,—may *the* Lord aid 'you [us], 'may the all-ruling God protect my thanes!' " Knights gan to ride, spears gan to glide,

¹ Iþencheð?² awedde?³ hæfene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Cnihtes gunnen riden :'	Cnihtes gonne ride :'
gæres gunnen gliden.	ſperef gonne glide.
breken bræde ſperē :	and breken brode ſperes :
br ^u sleden ſceldes.	braſtelede feldef.
helmef þer ſcenden :	healmes þar ȝolle :
ſcalkes feollen.	cnihtes þar folle.
þe Bruttes weoren balde :	þe Bruttus weren bolde :
& biſie to fihten.	and buſie to fihte.
& þa hæðene hundes :	and þe heaþene hundes :'
hælden to grunde.	fulle to grunde.
þer wes iflaȝen Octa :	þar was iflawe Octa :
Ebiſſa & Offa.	Ebiſſa and Offa.
þer ſeouentene þuſend :	þare ſouentene þuſend :
fiȝen into helle.	feȝen into helle.
feole þer at-wenden :	and fale þare at-wende :
touward þan norð enden.	to þan norþ ende.
Al þene dæi-lihte :	And al þan day-liht :
Vðeres cnihtes.	Vter his cnihtes.
floȝen and nomen :	floȝen and nemen :
al þat heo neh comen.	þat hii neh comen.
þa hit wes eauen :	þo eode a-dun þe ſonne :
þa wes hit al biwunnen.	þan was hit al a-wonne.
þa funggen hired-men :	þo ſaide hired-men :
mid hæȝere ſtrengðe. [f. 112 ^b .c.1.]	
& þæs word fæidē :	
inne murie heore ſongen.	mid murie hire ſonges.

[and] broad spears brake, shivered shields,—helms there 'were severed [re-sounded], men [there] fell! The Britons were bold, and busy in fight, and the heathen hounds fell to *the* ground. There was slain Octa, Ebissa, and Ossa; there seventeen thousand sunk into hell; [and] many there escaped 'toward [to] the North end. [And] all the day-light 'Uthers [Uther his] knights slew and captured 'all' that they came nigh; when 'it was even [the sun went down], then was it all won. Then 'sung [said] *the* soldiers with 'great strength, and said these words in' their merry songs: "Here

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Her is Vder Pendragū :
 icume to Verolamef tun.
 & he hæfueð idubbed fwa :
 Octa & Ebiffa & Offa.
 & itah heom a londē :
 laȝen fwiðe fstronge.
 þat men maȝen tellen :
 heore cun to fpelle.
 and þer of wurchen fonges :
 inne Sæxlonde.

þa wes Vðer bliðe :
 & igladed swuðe.
 and fpac wið his duȝeðe :
 þe deore him wes an heorte.
 & þas word fæide :
 Vðer þe alde.

Sexifce men me habbeod² :
 for hene ihalden.
 mine unhæle me atwiten :
 mid heore hoker worden.
 for ich wes here :
 ilad inne horfe-bere.
 & fæiden þ̅ ich wes³ ded :
 & mi duȝeðe afwunden.

Her his Vther Pendragon :
 icome to Verolames toun.
 and he haueþ idobbed fo :
 Octa Ebiffa and Offa.
 and itaht heom in þat lond :
 lawes fwiþe fstrong.
 þat men mawe telle :
 hire cun fpelles.

þo was Vther bliþe :
 and glad fwiþe.
 and þef wodrd¹ faide :
 Vther þe holde.

Saxiffe men min heolde atwite :
 mid hire hokere wordes.
 for ich waf here :
 ilad in horfe-bere.
 and fayde þat ich was dead :
 and min folk afwōde.

is Uther Pendragon come to Verulams town ; and he hath so beaten Octa, 'and' Ebissa, and Ossa, and given them in [the] land laws most strong, so that men may tell their kin 'in story [stories], 'and thereof make songs in Saxland!' " Then was Uther blithe, and exceeding glad, and 'spake with his people, that was dear to him in heart,' and these words said Uther the old : " Saxish men 'have accounted me for base'; my 'sickness [age] *they* twitted 'me' with their scornful words, because I was led here in a horse-litter; and said that I was dead, and my folk asleep. And now

¹ *R.* word.² habbeoð ?³ *This word is interlined, sec. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

And nu if muchel fellic :
 ifiȝen to piſſere riche.
 þat nu haueð þeos dede king :
 þaſ quiken aqualden.
 & fūme he heō flæmde :
 uorð mid þan wedere.
 Nu iwurðen her after :
 drihttenes wille.
 Fluȝen Sæxiſce men :
 feōdliche ſwiðe. 10
 þe weoren bihalues :
 ihalden from þā fihte.
 forð heo gunnen ſcriðen :
 into Scotlonde.
 and nomen heom to kinge :
 Colgrim þene hende. [c. 2.]
 He wes Hængeſtes mæie :
 & monnen him leofueſt.
 and Octa hine luſuede² :
 þæ while þe he leouede. 20
 Weoren þa Saxiſce mē :
 ſwiðe iſwūten.
 & iſcriðen heō to-fomne :
 into Scotlonde.

And nou his moche wonder :
 iſeȝe to piſſe londe.
 þat þis deade king :
 þe cwiķe haueþ alle acwelled.

Nou iworþe here after :
 drihtene wille.

FLowen Saxiſſe men :
 feōdeliche ſwiþe :
 þat weren bi-halues. [c. 2.]

iholden fram þan fihte :
 forþ hii gonne gon :
 riht into Scotlond.

and nemen him¹ to kinge :
 Colgrim þan hende.
 He was Hengeſtes may :

and Octa hine louede.

is much wonder come to this 'realm [land], that 'now' this dead king hath killed 'these [all the] quick; 'and some he *hath* them driven forth with the weather!' Now hereafter be done *the* Lords will!" *The* Saxish men fled exceeding fast, that were (had) aside retreated from the fight; forth they gan 'proceed [go right] into Scotland; and took to them for king Colgrim the fair. He was Hengests relation, 'and dearest of men to him'; and Octa loved him, 'the while that he lived. The Saxish men were greatly discouraged, and proceeded them together into Scotland; and

¹ ham?² luſiede *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& Colgrim þene hende :
 heo makeden to kinge.
 & fumneden færde :
 wide ȝeond þan ærde.
 and fæiden þat heo wolden :
 mid heore wiðer-craften.
 inne Winchastre tun :
 quellen Uðer Pēdragun.
 Wa la wa :
 þat hit ſculde iwurðen ſwa. 10
 Nu fæiden Saxiſce men :
 in heore ſom runen.
 Nime we fix cnihtes :
 wiſe men and wihte².
 and³ hæweres witere :
 & fenden we to hiredede⁴.
 læten heom uorð liðen :
 an almef monnes wiſe.
 & wunien an hirede :
 mid heȝe þan kinge. 20
 and æuer ælche dæie :
 þurh-gon al þa duȝeðe.
 and gan to þas kinges dale :

He¹ gaderede ferde :
 wide ȝeond þan erþe.
 and faide þat hii wolde :
 mid hire wiþere-crafteſ.
 ine Wincheſtre his toun :
 cwelle Vther Pendragon.
 Wo la wo :
 þat hit folde iworþe ſo.
 Nou faide Saxiſſe men :
 in hire deorne wordes.
 þat hii wol fix cnihteſ :
 fende forþrihteſ.
 to þis kinges ferde :
 in pore men guȝe.
 þat folde ȝam þorh gon :
 and tȝdinge hercny on.
 and go to þe kingeſ dole :

they made Colgrim the fair for king,' 'and assembled [They gathered] a host, wide over the land, and said that they would with their wicked craft in Winchester [his] town kill Uther Pendragon. Alas, that it should so happen! Now said *the* Saxish men in their 'communing together: "Take we [secret words, that they would send] six knights, 'wise men and active, and skilful spies,' 'and send we to *the* court [forth-right to this kings host], in 'almsmans [poor mens] guise, 'and dwell in *the* court, with the high king,' 'and every day pass through all the people [that should themselves through pass, and hearken to *the* tidings]; and go to the kings dole, as if

¹ Hii?² widtes *pr. man.*³ Struck out by the second hand.⁴ hirede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

swulc heo weoren vn-hale.

afe hii weren on-hole.

& imong þan wracchē :'

and a-mang þan wrecchen :'

harcnien ȝeorne.

hercnȳ wel ȝeorne.

ȝif mon mihte mid crafte :

ȝef man mihte mid crafte :

a dæi oðer a nihte.

bi daiȝe oþer bi nihte.

inne Winchæstres tun :

in Wȳnchestres toun :

cumen to Vder Pendragun.

come to Vther Pendragō.

& mid morð-spelle :

and mid morþre-spelle :

þene king aquellen.

þane king a-cwelle.

þenne weorē heore iwil : [f. 113.c.1:]

allunge iwurden¹.

11

þēne weoren heo care-læfe :

þanne weren hii careles :

of Coſtantes cunne.

of Conſtantineſ cunne.

Nu wenden forð þa cnihtes :

¶ Nou wende forþ þe cnihtes :

al bi dæief lihten.

2

on ælmes mōnes claðef :

cnihtes forcuðeſt.

to þaſ kingeſ hirede :

and al dude in dede :

þer heo hærm wrohten.

aſe hii raþer demde.

Heo eoden to þære dale :

20

swulc heo weoren un-hale.

& hærcneden ȝeornen :

of þaſ kingeſ hæreme.

hu me þæne kīg mihte :

to dæðe idihte.

they were infirm, and among the poor *people* 'hearken [well] studiously if man might with craft, by day or by night, in Winchesters town come to Uther Pendragon, and kill the king with murder;—' then were (would be) their will wholly accomplished,' then were they careless of Constantines kin. Now went forth the knights 'all by daylight, in almsmans clothes,—knights most wicked,—to the kings court,'—'there they harm wrought. They went to the dole, as if they were infirm, and hearkened studiously of the kings sickness, how men might put the king to death, [and all did in

¹ iwurðen?² A line is here missing.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa imetten heo enne cniht :'	Hii i-mette wiþ on cniht :'
from þan kinge he com riht.	frā þan kinge he com forþ riht. [f.91. c.1.]
he wes Vðeres mæi :	he was Vther his may :
& monnen him leofueft.	and manne him leouift.
þas fwiken þer heo fætē :	þef fwikes þar ifete ¹ :
on longē þere ftreten.	in langes þane ftrete.
cleopeden to þan cnihte :	cleopede to þan cnihte :
mid cudliche ² worden.	mid coupliche wordes.
Lauerd we beoð wracche men :	Louerd we beoþ wrecche men :
a þiffere weorlde-riche.	10 a þiffe worle-riche.
while we weoren on londe :	wile we were on londe :
for gode men iholden.	for gode men iholde.
a þat Sæxiſce men :	forte Saxiſſe men :
fetten uf a-dune.	fette vs a-doune.
& al bi-ræiueden uf :	
& ure æhtē binomen uf.	
Nu we beden fīgeð :	Nou we bedes fingeþ :
for Vðer kinge.	for Vter þan kinge.
ælche dæie on a mæl :	eche day on halmef :
ure mete trukeð ³ .	20 me houre mete bringeþ.
ne cumeð nauere inne ure diſc :	ne comeþ neuere in oure diſce :
neoper flæf na no fiſc.	noþer fleſ noþer fiſce.
no nanes cunnes dræc :	ne none cunnes drīgke :

deed, as they previously *had* determined]. 'Then' met they [with] a knight, from the king he came [forth-]right; he was 'Uthers [Uther his] relation, and dearest of men to him. These deceivers, where they sate along the street, called to the knight with familiar words: "Lord, we are wretched men in this worlds realm; whilom we were in land accounted for good (wealthy) men, until Saxish men set us adown, 'and bereaved us of all, and our possessions took from us.' Now we sing beads (prayers) for Uther [the] king; each day 'in a meal our meat faileth [in alms men bring our meat]; cometh never in our dish neither flesh 'nor any [neither] fish, nor any kind

¹ hii fete?² cudliche?³ *At first written* brukeð, *but altered by the same hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

buten water scenc.	bote water fenche.
buten water clæne :	
for þi we beoð þus læne. [c. 2.]	
þif iherde þe cniht :	þis ihorde þe cniht :
aȝæn he eode forð riht.	aȝen he wende forþriht.
& com to þā kinge :	and com to þan kinge :
þer he lai on bure.	þar he lay a fweuekinge ¹ .
& feide to þan kinge :	
Lauerd beo þu on funde.	
her ute fitteð fix men :	10 Here vte fetteþ fix men :
iliche on heouwen.	iliche of ewe.
alle heo beoð iferen :	alle hii beoþ iveren :
ifcrudde mid heren.	ifcrud mid herde here.
While heo weoren :	Wile hii weren riche :
a þiffere worlde-richē.	
god-fulle þeines :	
mid goden afeolled.	and mihti of gode.
nu habbeoð Sæxifce men :	nou habbeþ Saxiffe men :
ifæt hō to grunden.	ifet heom to grunde.
þat heo beoð on weorlde :	20 þat hii beoþ in worle :
for wracchen ihaldē. ²	for wrecchef iholde.
no raccheoð heo to borde :	ne habbeþ hii at borde :

of drink but a draught of water, 'but water clean,—therefore we are thus lean.' ” The knight heard this; back he went forth-right, and came to the king, where he lay 'in chamber [in slumber], 'and said to the king: "Lord, be thou in health!" Here out sit six men, alike in hue (appearance); all they are companions, *and* clothed with [hard] hair-cloth. Whilom they were 'in this worlds realm goodly thanes, *and* 'filled with [rich, and mighty of] goods; now have Saxish men set them to ground, *so* that they are in *the* world accounted for wretches; they have not at board

¹ a fweneninge?

² This and the preceding line and half are on an erasure in the MS., but by the original hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

buden¹ bræd ane.
 no to heore drencches :
 bute water fscenches.
 þus heo leodeð heore lif :
 inne þire leode.
 & heore beoden biddeð :
 þ̅ godd þe lete longe libben.
 þa quað Vder þe king :
 Let heom cumen hider in in².
 ich heom wulle fcruden : 10
 & ich heom wulle ueden.
 for minef drihtenef lufe :
 þa wille þa ich liuie.
 Comen into bure :
 beōrnef þa fwikele.
 þe king heo lette fedē :
 þæ king heom lette fcruden.
 & nihtes hom læiden :
 ælc on his bedde⁴.
 & ælc on his halue : 20
 heoȝede ȝeorne.
 hu heo mihtē þene king :

bote bred one.
 ne to hire dringke :
 bote water cleane.
 þus hii leadeþ hire lif :
 amang þine leode.
 and hire bedef biddeþ : [c.2.]
 þat þou mote libbe.
 þo faide Vther þe king :
 Let heom come hider in.
 ich ȝam wole fcrude :
 and ich³ wole feode.
 for loue of mine drihte :
 wile þat ich libbe.
 Comen in to boure :
 men fwiþe fwikele.
 þe king heom lette fede :
 þe king ȝam lette fcrude.
 and a nihtes ȝam leyde :
 ech on his bedde.
 and ech on his fide :
 aspide wel ȝeorne.
 hou hii mihte þane king :

but bread alone, nor for their drink but water 'draughts [clean]. Thus they lead their life 'in [among] thy people, and bid their beads, that 'God will let thee long [thou mayest] live." Then 'quoð [said] Uther the king : "Let them come in hither ; I will them clothe, and I will them feed, for *the* love of my Lord, 'the' while that I live." 'The' [most] treacherous men came into *the* chamber ; the king caused them to be fed, the king caused them to be clothed, and at night each laid them on his bed. And each on his 'part [side] aspied [well] earnestly how they might kill the king

¹ R. buten.

² Sic MS. A word in the margin has been erased, as also the first two letters of wulle in the next line but one.

³ ich ȝam ?

⁴ Interlined.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid morðe aquellen.	[[f.113 ^b .c.1.]	mid morþre acwelle.
ah ne mihten heo þurh naþing :		ac ne mihten hii þorh no þing :
aquellen Vðer þene king.		a-cwelle Vther þane king.
ne þurh nane crafte :		
cumen to him ne nahten. ¹		
þa iwærd ² hit in ane time :		þo iwarþ hit on an tyme :
þe ræin him gon rine.		þe reyn him gan rýne.
þa cleopede þer a læche :		þo faide a leche :
þer he læi on bure.		þat þar was in boure.
to ane bur-cnihte :	10	to one bourcniht :
and hahte hine forð rihtes.		and hehte him forþriht.
irne to þere welle :		heorne to þare wille :
þe wes on væft þere halle.		þat waf bi þare halle.
and fetten þene ³ ænne ohte swain :		and fette þare one ohte fweyn :
to biwiten heo wið ræin.		for to witýe hine for þe reyn.
For þe king ne mai on duzeðe :		For þe king ne may on worle :
bruken nanes drenches.		dringke none fenche.
buten cald welles ftræm :		bote cold welles water :
þat him if iquene ⁴ .		þat him his icweme.
þat if to hið ufele :	20	
aðeleft alre drencche.		
þas speche uorð rihtes :		¶ þeos speche forþ rihtes :
iherden þas fix cnihtes.		i-horde þes cnihtes.

with murder ; but they might not through anything kill Uther the king, 'nor through any craft might come to him,.' Then happened it on a time, the rain it gan to pour ; then 'called there [said] a leech, 'where he lay [who was there] in *the* chamber, to a chamber-knight, and ordered him forth-right to run to the well, that was 'near [by] the hall, and set there a good swain, [for] to keep it from [the] rain.—“ For the king may not 'enjoy [drink] no draught in *the* world but *the* cold well 'stream [water], that is to him pleasant ; 'that is for his sickness best of all draughts.' ” This speech forth-right heard these 'six' knights,—to harm they were prompt,

¹ mahten ?² iwærð ?³ þere ?⁴ iqueme ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to harme heo weoren wipte ¹ :	to harme hii weren lihte :
and ut wenden bi-nihte.	and hout eode bi nihte.
forð to þere welle :	to þan ilke wille :
þer ho ² hærm wrorhten ³ .	þare hii harmef wrohte.
Vt heo droȝen fone :	Vt hii drowe fone :
amppullen fcone.	fix ampulles.
ifulled mid attere :	mid hatter ifulled : [f.91 ^b .c.1.]
weten alre bittereft.	
six amppullen fulle :	
heo ȝeoten i þan welle.	10 and caſte hit in þan wille.
þa wes þa welle anan :	
al mid attre bi-gon.	
þa weoren ful bliðe :	þo werē wel blipe :
þæ fwiken on heore liue.	þe fwikes on hire lifue.
& forð heo iwenden :	and forþ anon wende :
ne durſten heo þer bilæfen.	ne dorſten hii þare bi-lefue.
þa comen þer forð rihtes :	þo com þar forþ rihtef :
tweien bur-cnihtes.	twei bourcnihtef.
heo beren on heore honde : [c. 2.]	and bere on hire honde :
twæie bollen of golde.	20 twei bolles of golde.
Heo comen to þare welle :	Hii come to þare welle :
and heore bollen feolde.	and hire bolles fulde.
aȝæin heo gunnen wēde :	aȝein hi gonne wende :
to Vðer þan kinge.	to Vther þan kinge.

—and went out by night 'forth to the [to the same] well,—there they harm wrought. Out they drew soon 'fair [six] phials, filled with poison, 'of all liquids bitterest; six phials full' 'they poured [and cast it] in the well; 'then was the well anon all with poison infected.' Then were 'full [well] blithe the traitors in their life, and forth 'they [anon] went; they durst not there remain. Then came there forth-right two chamber-knights; 'they [and] bare in their hands two bowls of gold. They came to the well, and filled their bowls; back they gan wend to Uther the king, 'forth into the

¹ The letter þ is interlined.² Interlined.³ worhten? wrohten?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

forð in to þan bure :'	
þer he læi on bedde.	
Hail feo þu Vðer :'	and faide to Vther :'
nu we beoð icumen her.	Nou we beoþ icome her.
and we habbeoð þe ibroht :	and we habbeþ ibroht :
þat þu ær bedde.	þat þou her bede.
clæld ¹ welle water :	cold welles water :
bruc hit on wunne.	brouket ² mid winne.
Vp araf þe feocke king :	Vp a-ros þe feake king :
& fat on his bedde.	10 and fat on his bedde.
of þan watere he dronc :	of þan watere he drong :
& fone he gon fweten.	and fone gan fwete.
his heorte gon to wakien :	his heorte gan to wokie :
his neb bigon to blakien.	his neb bi-gan to blokie.
his wombe gon to swellien :	
þe king gon to fwelien.	
Næs þer nan oðer ræd :	Nas þar non oþer read :
þer wef Vðer king dæd.	bote þar iwarþ þe king dead.
alle heo iwurðen dede :	and alle hii dead were :
þat drunken of þan watere.	20 þat drongke of þan watere.
þa þat hired ifah :	
þat forhȝen of þan kinge.	
& of þas kinges monnē :	
þe mid attre weoren for-done.	

chamber, where he lay in bed.'—"Hail be thou, [and said to] Uther! Now we are come here, and we have brought 'thee,' what thou ere bade, cold well water; receive it with joy." Up arose the sick king, and sate on his bed; of the water he drank, and soon 'he' gan to sweat; his heart gan to weaken, his face began to blacken, 'his belly gan to swell, the king gan to burst. There was no other hap, [but] there was 'Uther [the] king dead; [and] all they were dead, who drank of the water. 'When the attendants saw the calamity of the king, and of the kings men, who with poison were

¹ cæld?² brouk hit?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa wenden to þere welle :
 enihtes þe weoren snælle.
 & þa welle for-duden :
 mid derfulle fwincche.
 mid eorðe & mid stanen :
 fstepne hul makedē.

þa nomen þa duzeðe :
 þene king dede.
 vnimete uolc :

& forð hine uereden. 10
 stið imodede men : [f.114.c.1.]

in to Stanhengē.
 & hine þer bureden :
 bi leofen his broðer.
 side bi fide :

beiene heo þer liggeð.
 þa com hit al to-gadere :
 þat hæhft wes on londe.
 eorles & beornes :

& boc-ilarede men. 20
 heo comen to Lundene :
 to muchelere huftinge.

Nomen heom to rade :
 þeines riche.

þat heo wolden ouer fæ :

þo wende to þan wille :
 cnihtes fwiþe snelle.
 and þane wel dutte :

mid stoness and mid erþe.

þo nemen hii alle :
 þane king deade.

and forþ hine ladde.

into Stonhenge.
 and hine þare leyde :
 bi his leofue broþer.

side bi fide :
 þare hii boþe liggeþ.

þo comen to-gadere : [c.2.]
 þe heheft of þis londe.

and nomen alle to reade :

þat hii fende wolde.

destroyed,' then went to the well knights 'that were [exceeding] active, and 'destroyed [stopt up] the well 'with painful labor,' with earth and with stones 'made a steep hill.' Then 'the people [they all] took the dead king, —'numerous folk,'—and forth him carried '*the* stiff-minded men' into Stonehenge, and there 'buried [laid] him, by his dear brother; side by side there they lie both. Then came 'it all' together, 'that was [the] highest 'in *the* [of this] land, 'earls and barons, and book-learned men; they came to London, to a mickle husting,' [and] '*the* rich thanes' betook 'them' [all] to counsel, that they would send 'messengers over sea' into 'Britanny

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fenden fonde.	
in to Bruttainne :	into Britaynes lond :
after bezft alre ȝeoȝeðe.	after Arthur þan ftrong.
þa a þiffere weorlden-riche :	
a þan dæȝen weore.	
Ærður ihaten :	
bezft alre cnihten.	
and fuggen þat he cumen fone :	and bidden hine fone :
to hiſ kinedome.	come to his kinedome.
for dæd him wes Vðer :	10 for dead was Vther Pendragon :
al swa Aurilien wes ær.	
and Vðer Pendragune :	
nefde nenne oðerne fune.	nadde he non oþer fone.
þat mihte after his dæȝen :	and þat mihte after his daiȝe :
halden Bruttes to laȝe.	holde Bruttus to lawe.
mid wurðſcipe halden :	mid worſipe holden :
& þifne kinedom walden.	and þifne kinedom welden.
For ȝæt weoren in þiffen londe :	F OR ȝet weren in þiffe londe :
Sæxes at-ftonden.	Saxif at-ftonde.
Colgrim þe kene :	20 Colgrim þe kene :
and moni þuſend of his iuerē.	and mani þouſend of his ivere.
þa ofte ure Bruttes :	þat ofte oure Bruttus :
makeden huſele burſtes.	makede ſcondes.
Bruttes ful fōe :	Bruttus wel fone :
þreo biſcopes nomen.	þreo biſſopes neme.

Colgrim.

[Britannys land], after 'the best of all youth that was in the worlds realm in those days, named' Arthur [the strong], 'the best of all knights; and 'say that he should [bid him] come soon to his kingdom; for dead was 'he' Uther [Pendragon], 'as Aurelie was ere', 'and Uther Pendragon [he] had no other son, [and] that might after his days hold by law (govern) the Britons, maintain with worship, and rule this kingdom. For yet were in this land the Saxons settled; Colgrim the keen, and many thousands of his companions, that oft made to our Britons 'evil' injuries. The Britons 'full [well] soon took three bishops, and seven riders, 'strong in [high of] wis-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. 237

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and ridæres feouene :
 ræiȝe on wiſdome.
 forð heo gunnen buȝen :
 ī to Bruttaine.
 & heo ful ſone :
 to Ærðure comen. [c. 2.]
 Hail ſeo þu Arður :

aðeleſt cnihten.
 Vðer þe græten :
 þa he ſculde iwihten.
 & bæd þat þu ſculdeſt :
 a Bruttē þe feoluen.
 halden laȝen rihte :
 & hælpen þine folke.

and wihten þiſne kinedom :
 ſwa god king ſculden don.
 þine feond flæmen :
 & driuen heom of londen.
 & he bad þe to fultume :
 þene milde godeſ ſune.
 þat þu moſtes wel don :
 & þat lond of godde a-ſon.
 For dæd iſ Vðer Pendragun :

and ridares fouene :
 heh of wiſdome.
 forþ hii gonne bouwe :
 in to Brutayne.
 and hii fol ſone :
 to Arthur come.
 Hayl beo þou Arthur :

þe king þe gan grete.
 þo he wende folde :
 vt of þiſe liſue.
 and bad þat þou foldeſt :
 holde gode lawes.

and witie þine kinedom :
 ſo god king folde don.
 þine freond¹ fleome :
²
 And beo þe nou to ſoltome :
 þane milde godes ſone.
 þat þou mote wel don :
 and of god vnderſon.
 for dead hiſ Vter þe king :

dom; forth they gan proceed into Britanny, and they full soon came to Arthur.—“Hail be thou, Arthur, ‘noblest of knights! ‘Uther thee greeted [The king gan thee greet], when he should ‘depart (die) [go out of this life], and bade that thou shouldest ‘thyself in Britain’ hold ‘right [good] laws, ‘and help thy folk,’ and defend ‘this [thy] kingdom, as good king should do; defeat thy enemies, ‘and drive them from land.’ And ‘he prayed [be] the mild Son of God ‘to be’ to thee [now] in aid, that thou mightest do well, and ‘the land’ receive from God. For dead is Uther

¹ feond?² A line is here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þu ært Ærður his fune.	and þou hart Arthur his [fone].
& dæd is þe oðer :	and dead his þe oþer : [f.92.c.1.]
Aurilien his broðer.	Aurelie his broþer.
þus heo gūnen tellen :	þus hii gonne telle :
& Arður sæt ful stille.	and Arthur sat stille.
æenne stunde he wes blac :	one while he was blac :
and on heuwe fwiðe wak.	
ane while he wef reod :	an oþer wile he stille sat.
and reoufede on heorte.	
þa hit alles up brac :	þo hit alles vp brac :
hit wef god þat he spæc.	hit was god þat he spæc.
þus him sæide þer riht :	and þus him saide forþriht :
Arður þe aðele cniht.	Arthur þe gode cniht.
Lauerd crist godes fune :	Louerd crist godes fone :
beon us nu a fultume.	beo me nou to foltome.
þat ich mote on life :	þat ich mote on lifue :
goddes laȝen halden.	gode lawes lofuie.
Fiftene ȝere wes Ardur ¹ ald :	Fiftene ȝer was Arthur holde :
þa þis tiðende him wes itald.	þo þes tyðinge him was itold.
& alle heo weoren wel bitoȝen :	and alle þe ȝeres weren wel bi-toȝe :
for he wes fwiðe iðoȝe.	for he was wel iþoȝe.
Ærður forð rihtes :	Arthur forþrihtes :
cleopede his cnihtes.	cleopede his cnihtes.

Pendragon [the king], and thou art Arthur, his son; and dead is the other, Aurelie his brother." Thus they gan tell, and Arthur sate 'full' still; one while he was wan, 'and in hue exceeding pale'; 'one while he was red, and was moved in heart [an other while he sate still]. When it all brake forth, it was good that he spake; [and] thus said he 'there [forth]-right, Arthur the 'noble [good] knight: "Lord Christ, Gods Son, be to 'us [me] now in aid, that I may in life 'hold Gods [love good] laws!" Arthur was fifteen years old, when this tiding was told to him, and all 'they [the years] were well employed, for he was 'much [well] instructed. Arthur

¹ Arður?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& hæhte æuer ælcne mon : ¹ [f. 114 ^b . c. 1.]	and hehte euerech man :
bonnien hif weppnen.	louie ¹ his wepne.
& heore hors fadelie :	and hire hors fadelie :
hiȝendliche fwiðe.	hiȝenliche fwiȝe.
for he wolde buȝe :	for he wolde wende :
to þiffere Brutene.	to þiffere londe.
To þere fæ wenden :	To þare féé wende :
fele þeines.	felie cnihtes.
at Mihæles munte :	at Mihȝelef munte :
mid muchelere uerede.	mid mochelere ferde.
þa fæ heo ² sætten a þat ſtrond :	þe ſee ȝam ſette a þan ſtronde :
at Suð-hamtune heo comen alond.	at Suphamtone hii come a londe.
Forð hī gon ride :	Forþ hii wende rihtef :
Arður þe riche.	
riht to Selechæſtre :	toward Cireceſtres.
þer him fel þuhte.	
þer wes ³ Bruttene weored :	þar was Bruttene ferde :
baldeliche iſomned.	boldeliche igadered.
Muchel wes þa bliſſe :	Moche was þe bliſſe :
þa Arður com to burhȝe.	þo Arthur com to borewe.
þa wes bemene blæſt :	
& ſwiðe glade beornes.	
þer heo houen to kinge :	þar hii houen to kinge :

forth-right called his knights, and bade every man get ready his weapons, and saddle their horses very speedily, for he would go to this 'Britain [land]. To the sea proceeded *the* good 'thanes [knights], at Michaels mount, with *a* mickle host; the sea set them on the strand, at Southampton they came ashore. Forth 'he gan ride, Arthur the powerful, right to Silchester [they went right toward Cirencester]; 'there *it* seemed good to him; 'there was *the* host of Britons boldly 'assembled [gathered]. Great was the bliss when Arthur came to *the* burgh; 'then was blast of trumpets, and men most glad';

¹ banni?² heom?³ The last letter of this word is *sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Arður þene ȝūge.

þa þe Arður wes king :

hærne¹ nu feollic þing.

he wes mete-cuſti :

ælche quike monne.

cniht mid þan beȝſte :

wunder ane kene.

he wes þan ȝungen for fader :

þan alden for frouer.

and wið þan vnwiſe :

wunder ane ſturnne.

woh him wes wūder lað :

and þat rihte a leof.

Ælc of his birlen :

& of hiſ bur-þæinen.

& hiſ ber-cnihtes :

gold beren an honden.

to ruggen and to bedde :

iſcrud mid gode webbe.

Neſde he neuere nænne coc :

þ he neſ keppe ſwide² god.

neuær nanes cnihtes ſwein : [c.2.]

þat he næs bald þein.

Arthur þan ȝonge.

PO Arthur was king : [c.2.] [Arðu]r.

þercne nou fellech þing.

he was mete-couſti :

to eche cwike manne.

cniht mid þan beſte :

wonder one kene.

he was þan ȝonge for fader :

þane holde for froure.

and wiþ þan onwiſe :

wonderliche ſteorne.

woh him was ſwiþe loþ :

and riht him was ſwiþe leof.

there they raised to *be* king Arthur the young. When Arthur was king,—hearken now *a* marvellous thing ;—he was liberal to each man alive, knight with the best, wondrously keen ! He was to the young for father, to the old for comforter, and with the unwise wonderfully stern ; wrong was to him exceeding loathsome, and ‘the’ right ‘ever [was to him exceeding] dear. ‘Each of his cupbearers, and of his chamber-thanes, and his chamber-knights, bare gold in hand, to back and to bed, clad with gold web.’ ‘He [Arthur] had ‘never any [no] cook, that he was not champion ‘most’ good ; ‘never any knights swain, that he was not bold thane !’ The king held

¹ hærne ?² ſwiðe ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe king heold al hiſ hired :
 mid hæzere blife.
 & mid ſwulche þinges :
 he ouer-com alle kingeſ.
 mid ræhzere ſtrengðe :
 & mid riche-dome.
 ſwulche weoren hiſ cuſtes :
 þat al uolc hit wuſte.
 Nu weſ Arður god king :
 hiſ hired hine luſede.
 æc hit weſ cuð wide :
 of hiſ kinedome.
 þe king huld i Lundene :
 ane muchele huſtinge.
 þer to weoren ilaðede :
 hiſ leond-cnihtes alle.
 riche men and hæne :
 to hæzen þan king.
 þa þe hit weſ al icume :
 uolc vnimete.
 vp aræf Arður :
 aðeleſt kingen.
 & lette bringen him biſoren :
 halidomes wel icoren.

þe king heold al hiſ folk :
 to-gadere mid bliſſe.
 and mid ſoche þinges :
 he ouer-com alle kȳnges¹.
 mid rehzere ſtrengþe :
 and mid richedome.
 Nou waſ Arthur god king :
 and al folk hine louede.
 þat hit waſ widene couþ :
 of hiſ kinedome.
 þe king heold in Londene :
 one mochele ſpeche.
 þar to weren ilaped :
 hiſ riche cnihteſ alle.
 þo þe hii were alle icome :
 folk onimete.
 vp a-ros Arthur þe gode king :
 and lette bringe halidomes to him.

all hiſ folk [together] with 'great' bliſſ; and with ſuch thinge he overcame
 all kinge, with fierce ſtrength and with treaſure. 'Such were hiſ qualities,
 that all folk it knew.' Now waſ Arthur good king; 'hiſ people [and all
 folk] loved him; 'eke [ſo that] it waſ known wide, of hiſ kingdom. The
 king held in London a mickle huſting; thereto were arrived all hiſ [rich]
 knighte, 'rich men and poor, to honor the king.' When that 'it waſ
 [they were] all come, a numerous folk; up aroſe Arthur 'nobleſt of kinge
 [the good king], and cauſed to be brought 'before [to] him reliques 'well

¹ R. kynges.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer to gon cneoli : and gan þar to cneolý :
 þe king fume¹ þrie. þe king fone þries.
 n²te noht his duȝeðe : nuſte noht his cnihtef :
 what he deme wolde. wat he ſeggen wolde.
 Arður heold up his riht hond : Arthur held vp his rih² hond :
 ænne að he þer ſwor. an oþ he ſwor a-non.
 þat næuere bi hiſ liue : þat neuere bi hiſ lifue :
 for nanes monnes lære. for none mannes lore. [f.92^b.c.1.]
 ne ſculden ine Brutene : ne folde in Brutayne :
 Sæxes wurðe bliðe. 10 Saxeffe bliþe worþe.
 londes beon wurðen : ne londes brouke :
 no wurðſcipe bruke. ne homes habbe.
 ah he heom wolde flemen : ac he ȝam wolde fleme :
 for heo weoren iuæid wið him. and falle heō to grunde.
 floȝen Vðer Pendragune : For hii floȝe Vther þane king :
 þe wes Coſtaces³ ſune. þat was fader min.
 ſwa heo duden þene oder⁴ : so hii dude þan oþer :
 Aurilien hiſ broðer. [f.115.c.1.] Aurelie hiſ broþer.
 for þi heo weoren on londe : for þi hii me beoþ in londe :
 laðeſt alre uolke. 20 lopeſt alre folke.
 Arður forð rihtes : **A**rthur forþ rihtes :
 nom hiſ wiſe cnihtef. nam hiſ wiſeſte cnihtes.
 weore heom lef weore heom lað : were heom leof were heom loþ :

Arður.

choice'; [and] thereto the king gan soon to kneel thrice;—his 'people
 [knights] knew not what he would 'pronounce [say]. Arthur held up his
 right hand, an oath he 'there [anon] swore, that never by his life, for no
 mans lore, should *the* Saxons become blithe in Britain, [nor] 'be land-
 holders [possess lands], nor 'enjoy worship [have homes]; but he would drive
 them out, 'for they were at enmity with him; [and fell them to ground. For
 they] slew Uther 'Pendragon [the king], who was 'son of Constance [my
 father]; so they did the other, Aurelie, his brother; therefore they 'were
 [are to me] in land loathest of all folk. Arthur forth-right took his 'wise

¹ fume?² riht?³ R. Coſtances.⁴ oðer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle heo fwoƿen þene að.
 trouliche þat heo woldē ⁊
 mid Arðure halden.
 & wreken þene king Vðer ⁊
 þat Sæxes aqualden her.
 Arður hiſ writen fende ⁊
 wide ȝeond hiſ londe.
 after alle þan cnihten ⁊
 þe he biȝiten mihte.
 þat heo ful ſone ⁊ 10
 to þan kinge comen.
 & he heom wolde on londe ⁊
 leofliche at-halden.
 ſcipien heom mid londe ⁊
 mid ſeoluere & mid golde.
 Forð þe kīg ferde ⁊
 mid vnimete uerde.
 folc he ledde fællic ⁊
 & ferde riht to Eouerwic.
 þer he læi ane niht ⁊ 20
 amærwe he ferde forð riht.
 þer he wuſte Colgrim ⁊
 & hiſ iuerē mid him.

alle hii fwore þan ilke oh.
 treuliche þat i¹ wolde ⁊
 mid Arthur holde.
 and wreke þan king Vther ⁊
 þat hii acwelde her.
 Arthur hiſ wretes fende ⁊
 to manicunne londe.
 after alle þe cnihtes ⁊
 þat he bi-ȝete mihte.
 þat hii fol ſone ⁊
 to þan kinge come.
 and he ȝam wolde on londe ⁊
 loueliche at-holde.
 Forþ þe king wende ⁊
 mid onimete ferde.
 folk he ladde fellich ⁊
 and wende riht to Euerwich.
 þar he lay one niht ⁊
 a morwe he wende forþriht.
 þar he wiſte Colgrim ⁊
 and hiſ i-veres mid him.

[wisest] knights; were *it* lief to them were *it* loath to them, they all
 swore the [same] oath, that they would truly hold with Arthur, and avenge
 the king Uther, whom *the* Saxons [they] killed here. Arthur sent his
 writs 'wide over his [to many kind of] land, after all the knights that he
 might obtain; that they full soon should come to the king, and he would
 in land lovingly maintain them; 'reward them with land, with silver and
 with gold.' Forth went the king with *a* numerous host; he led *a* surprising
 multitude, and marched right to York. There he lay one night; on *the*
 morrow he proceeded forth-right where he knew Colgrim *to be*, and his

¹ hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Swedððen¹ Octa wes of-flazen :

& idon of lif-dæȝen.

þe wes Hengestes sune :

yt of Sæxlonde icumen.

Colgrim wes þe hæhst mon :

þat ut of Saxlonde com.

aft² Hengeste :

& Horfe his broðer.

& Octa & Offa :

and heore iuere Ebiffa.

Heold a þan ilke dæȝen :

Colgrim Sæxes to laȝen.

ladde & radde :

mid ræȝere strengðe.

muchel wes þat moncun :

þat ferde mid Colgrim. [c. 2.]

Colgⁱm iherde tidende :of Arðude² þā kīge.

þat he touward him com :

and wolde him vfel don.

Colgrim hine biþohte :

whæt he dō mahte.

& bonnede his uerde :

ȝeond al þan norð ærde.

Colgrī was þe baldeste man :

þat vt of Saxlonde com.

after Hengest and Octa :

Ebiffa and Offa.

Heold a þan ilke dæȝe :

Colgrim Saxen to laȝe.

ladde and radde : [c. 2.]

mid rehȝere strengþe.

moche was þe mankun :

þat ferde mid Colgrim.

Colgrim ihorde tȝdinge :

of Arthur þan kinge.

þat he toward him com :

and wolde him vuel don.

Colgrim hine bi-þohte :

wat he don mihte.

and bannede his ferde :

oueral þan Norþ ende.

comrades with him. 'Since Octa was slain, and deprived of life-day, who was Hengests son, out of Saxland come,' Colgrim was the 'noblest [boldest] man that came out of Saxland, after Hengest, and 'Hors, his brother, and' Octa, 'and Ossa, and their companion Ebissa [Ebissa and Ossa]. At that day Colgrim ruled *the* Saxons by authority, led and counselled, with fierce strength; mickle was the multitude that marched with Colgrim! Colgrim heard tiding of Arthur the king, that he came toward him, and would do to him evil. Colgrim bethought him what he might do, and assembled his host over all the North 'land

¹ feoððen?² R. Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þer liðen to-somne :
 alle Scotleode.
 Peohtes & Sæxes :
 fiȝen heom to-gæderes.
 & moniennef cunnef men :
 uuleden Colgrimē.
 Forð he gon fufen :
 mid vnimete verde.
 to-ȝaines Arðure :
 aðeleft kingen.
 he þohte to quellen :
 þe king on hiȝ þeodē.
 & hiȝ folc ualden :
 uolden to grūden.
 & fetten al þiȝ kine-lond :
 an hiȝ aȝere hond.
 & fallen to þan grūde :
 Arður þene ȝunge.
 Forð wende Colgrī :
 & hiȝ ferde mid him.
 & wende mid hiȝ ferde :
 þat he com to ane watere.
 þat water iȝ ihaten Duglaȝ :
 duȝeðen hit aquelle.
 þer com Arður him aȝein :

Dug[las].

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þar comen to-gaderes :
 al Scotleode.
 Peuteȝ and Saxiȝ :
 wende heom to-gaderes.
 and maniane cunnes man :
 folwede Colgrim.
 Forþ he gan fouȝe :
 mid onimete ferde.
 to-ȝeines Arthure :
 baldeȝt alre kinge.
 he þohte to cwelle :
 þane king in hiȝ londe.
 Forþ wende Colgrim :
 and hiȝ Saxiȝȝe mid him.
 and wende mid ferde :
 þat hii come to one watere.
 þat hiȝ iȝote Duglaȝ :
 manie þare fulle.
 þar com Arthur him aȝein :

[end]. There came together all *the* Scottish people; Peohtes and Saxons joined them together, and men of many kind followed Colgrim. Forth he gan to march with *an* immense force, against Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings; he thought to kill the king in his land, 'and fell his folk to *the* ground, and set all this kingdom in his own hand, and fell to the ground Arthur the young.' Forth marched Colgrim, and his 'army [Saxons] with him, and proceeded with 'his' host until 'he [they] came to a water; 'the water [that] is named Duglas; 'people it destroyed [many there fell]! There came Arthur against him, ready 'with his [to]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ȝaru mid hiſ fehte¹.
 in ane brade forde :
 þa ferden heom imetten.
 faſtliche on-floȝen :
 ſnelle heore kenpen³.
 feollen þa uæie :
 uolden to grunde.
 þer wes muchel blod gute :
 balu þer wes riue.
 bruſtlede ſcæftes :
 beornes þer ueollen. [f.115^b.c.1.]
 þat iſæh Arður :
 on mode him wes unneðe.
 Arður hine biðohte :
 whæt he dō mahte.
 & thehte hine a backward :
 in enne uald brade.
 þa wenden hiſ feond :
 þat he flæn walde.
 þa wes glad Colgrim :
 and al hiſ ferde mid him.
 heo wenden þat Arður :
 mid arhredðe weore aſallæd þere.
 & tuȝen ouer þat water :

redi to fihte.
 in one brode forde :
 þe ferde hire hii-mette².
 faſteliche hii flowen :
 follen þe veie.
 þar was moche blod izote :
 and wowe þar was riue.
 þis iſeh Arthur :
 þat ȝam lute lofuede.
 and him bi-pohte :
 wat he don mihte.
 and teh hine a backward.
 in one brode felde.
 þo wende hiſ fon :
 þat he fleon wolde.
 þo was glad Colgrim :
 and hiſ iueres mid him.
 and after him wende :

*Primum
bellum Ar-
thuri.*

fight; on a broad ford the hosts them met; vigorously 'their brave champions attacked [they slew]; the fated fell 'to the ground!' There was much blood shed, [and] woe there was rife; 'shivered shafts; men there fell!' Arthur saw 'that; in mood he was uneasy; Arthur [this, who loved them little, and] bethought him what he might do, and drew him backward on a broad field (plain). When his foes weened that he would fly, then was Colgrim glad, and 'all his host [his comrades] with him; 'they weened that Arthur had with fear retreated there,' and 'passed over the water [after him

¹ *At first written ferde.*² ȝam i-mette?³ kempen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alfe heo wode weoren.

þa Arður þat ifah :

þat Colgrim him wes fwa neh.

& heo weoren beien :

bihalues þan wateren.

þuſ feide Arður :

aðeleſt kingen.

Iſeo ȝe mine Bruttes :

here uſ bilalfues¹.

uſ iuan uulle :

crist heom aualle.

Colgrim þene ſtronge :

ut of Sæx-londe.

Hiſ cun i þiſſe lōde :

ure ælderne aqualden.

ah nu iſ þe dæi icumen :

þe drihten haueð idemed.

þat he ſcal þat liſ leoſen :

& leoſien hiſ freonden.

oðer we ſculle dæde beon :

ne muȝe we hine quic iſeon.

ſcullen Sæxiſce men :

ſorȝen ibiden.

& we wreke wurhliche :

aſe he wod were.

þo Arthur þat iſeh :

þat Colgrim him was fo neh.

þat hii weren beȝne :

in on half þan watere.

þo faide Arthur :

and ſpac to hiſ cnihtes.

Ne ſe ȝe mine Bruttus :

her vs bi-halues.

10 houre iſon folle :

crist ȝam a-cwelle.

Colgrim þane ſtrōge :

vt of Saxlonde.

Hiſ cun in þiſſe londe :

oure eldre a-fulde.

ac nou hiſ þe dai i-come :

þat drihte haueþ idemid.

þat hii hit folle a-bugge :

of² ich mote libbe.

20 oþer ich wolle dead bean :

ne maȝ ich hine cwik i-ſen.

ſolle Saxiſſe men :

forewe ibide.

pursued], as *if* 'they [he] were mad. When Arthur saw that, that Colgrim was so nigh to him, 'and [that] they were both 'beside [on one side of] the water, 'thus [then] said Arthur, 'noblest of kings [and spake to his knights]: "See ye [not], my Britons, here beside us, our full foes,—Christ destroy them!—Colgrim the strong, out of Saxland? His kin in this land killed our ancestors; but now is the day come, that *the* Lord hath appointed, that 'he shall lose the life, and lose his friends [they shall pay for it, if I may live], or *else* 'we shall [I will] be dead; 'we [I] may not see him alive! *The* Saxish men shall abide sorrow, 'and we avenge worthily our friends

¹ R. bihalfues.² ȝef?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ure wine-maies.

Vp bræid Arður hif ſceld :

foren to hif breoſten.

& he gō to ruſien :

ſwa þe runie wulf. [c. 2.]

þenne he cumeð of holte :

bi-honged mid ſnawe.

and þencheð to biten :

ſwulc deor ſwa him likeð.

Arður þa cleopede :

to leofe hif cnihten.

Ford² we biliue :

þeief ohte.

alle ſomeð³ heom to :

alle we ſculleð wel don.

& heo uorð hælden :

ſwa þe hæze wude.

þēne wind wode :

weieð hine mid mæine.

Fluȝen ouer þe woldef :

þritti þuſend ſceldef.

& ſmiten a Colgrimes cnihtes :

þat þa eorðe aȝæn quehte.

Vp brayð Arthur his ſeald :

forn to his breoſte.

and he gan to reſe :

fo þe wode wolf.

wane he comeþ of holte :

bi-honge mid ſnowe.

and þencheþ to bite :

woch ſeap þat him likeþ.

10 Arthur þo cleop¹ :

to leoue hif cnihtes.

Wende we blifue :

and do ȝam vt of lifue.

20 Floȝen ouer þe feldes :

þritti þuſend feldes.

and ſmiten Colgrim his cnihtes :

þat þe erþe aȝein cwehte.

(or relatives).” Up caught Arthur his shield, before his breast, and he gan to rush as the howling wolf, when he cometh from *the* wood, behung with snow, and thinketh to bite ‘such beasts as [which sheep that] he liketh. Arthur then called to his dear knights: “Advance we quickly, ‘brave thanes! all together towards them; we all shall do well, and they forth fly, as the high wood, when *the* furious wind heaveth it with strengta [and put them out of life]!” Flew over the ‘wealds [fields] thirty thousand shields, and smote ‘on’ ‘Colgrims [Colgrim his] knights, so that the earth shook again. ‘Brake *the* broad spears, shivered shields;’ *the* Saxish men

¹ cleopede?² Forð?³ ſomed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

breken braden speren ⁊

bruftleden ſceldes.

feollen Sæxiſce men ⁊

folden to grunden.

þat iſah Colgrim ⁊

þer uore wa wes him.

þe alre hendefte mon ⁊

þe ut of Sexlonde com.

Colgrim gon to flænne ⁊

feondliche fwiðe.

& hiſ horf hine bar ⁊

mid hæhære ſtrengðe.

ouer þat water deope ⁊

& ſcelde hine wið dæðe.

Saxes gunnen ſinken ⁊

forȝe heom wes ȝiueðe.

Arður wende hiſ ſperes ord ⁊

and for-ſtod heð þene uord.

þer adruncke Sexes ⁊

fulle ſeoue þuſend.

Summe heo gunnen wondrien ⁊

ſwa doð þe wilde cron.

i þan moruenne ⁊

þenne hiſ flocc iſ awēmed. [f. 116. c. 1.] wane hiſ fliht hiſ a-wemmid.

& him halded¹ after ⁊

folle Saxiſſe men ⁊

folde to grunde.

þat iſeh Colgrim ⁊

þar fore wo was him.

and he gan to fleonde ⁊ [c. 2.]

10 wonderliche fwiþe.

and hiſ horf hine bar ⁊

mid mochelere ſtrengþe.

ouer þat water deope ⁊

and readde hine fram deaþe.

Arthur to þan watere ⁊

hiȝede fwiþe.

and tornde þe ſperes hord ⁊

and forſtod ȝam þane ford.

þar ha-drongke Saxiſſe ⁊

folle foue þuſend.

Somme hii gonne wondri ⁊

ſo doþ þe wilde crane.

in þan mor-fenne ⁊

and him holdeþ after ⁊

fell to the ground! Colgrim saw that, therefore he was woe,—‘the fairest man of all that came out of Saxland.’ ‘Colgrim [and he] gan to flee, exceeding quickly; and his horse bare him with great strength over the deep water, and saved him from death. ‘The Saxons gan to sink,—sorrow was given to them!’ Arthur [hastened speedily to the water, and] turned ‘his [the] spears point, and hindered to them the ford; there *the* Saxons were drowned, full seven thousand. Some they gan wander, as the wild crane doth in the moorfen, when his flight is impaired, and swift hawks pursue

¹ haldeð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hauekes fwifte.
 hūdes ī þā reode :'
 mid reouðe hine imeteð.
 þēne nis him neouðer god :'
 no þat lond no þat flod.
 hauekes hine smiteð :'
 hundes hine biteð.
 þenne bið þe kinewurðe foʒel :'
 fæie on his fiðe.
 Colgrim ouer feldes :'
 flæh him biliuef.
 þat he com to Eouerwic :'
 riden fwiðe fellic.
 he wenden into burʒe :'
 & fafte heo biclufde.
 hafuede he binnen :'
 ten þufend monnen.
 burh-men mid þa bezfte :'
 þe him bihalues weoren.
 Arður halde after :'
 mid þritti þufend cnihten.
 & ferde riht to Eouerwic :'
 mid folke fwiðe fellic.
 and bi-læi Colgrim :'

10

hauekes fwifte.
 houndes in þan reode :
 mid roupe hine imeteþ.
 þanne nis him noþer god :'
 no þat lond ne þat flod.
 hauekes hine smiteþ :'
 houndes hine biteþ.
 þan his þe kineworpe foʒel :'
 adrad in eche fide.
 Colgrim ouer feldes :'
 flep him wel swipe.
 þat he com to Euerwich :'
 ride swipe fellich.
 he wende in to borewe :'
 and fafte hine bi-tunde.
 and hadde þar ine :
 ten þufend manne.
 20 Arthur him heol¹ after :'
 mid þritti þoufend cnihtes.
 and bi-laȝ at Euerwich Colgrim :'

Colgrim.

after him, *and* hounds with mischief meet him in the reeds; then is neither good to him, nor the land nor the flood; *the* hawks him smite, *the* hounds him bite, then is the royal fowl 'at his death-time [adread on each side]! Colgrim fled him over *the* fields 'quickly [well speedily], until he came to York, riding most marvellously; he went into the burgh, and fast it inclosed; 'he [and] had within ten thousand men, 'burghers with the best; that were beside him.' Arthur pursued after [him] with thirty thousand knights, 'and marched right to York with folk very numerous,' and besieged Colgrim [at York], who defended *it* against him. Seven nights therefore

¹ heold?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe weorrede aȝæin him.
 Seouen niht þer biuoren :
 wes suðward ifaren.
Baldulf. Baldolf þe hende :
Colgrim. broðer Colgrimes.
 and lai bi þare fæ brimme :
 & abad Childrichen.
Childric. Childric wes i þan dazen :
 cæifer of riche lazen.
 inne Alemaine :
 þat aðel wes hif aȝene.
 þa iherde Baldolf :
 þer he bi fæ lai.
 þat Arður hafde inne Eouerwic :
 Colgrim biclufed.
 Baldolf hæfde ibonned : [c. 2.]
 feouen þuſēd monnen.
 baldere beornnen :
 þe bi fæ leien.
 heo nomen heom to ræden : 20
 þat aȝæin heo woldē riden.
 and bi-læuen Childric :
 & faren in to Eouerwic.
 & fehten wið² Arðure :
 & aquellen al hif duȝeðe.

þat werrede a-ȝein him.
 Soueniht þar bi-vore :
 was fuþward ivare.
 Baldolf þe hende :
 Colgrimes broþer.
 and laȝ bi féé fellich :
 abidende Cheldrich.
 Cheldrich was a þane daze : [f. 93^b. c. 1.]
 kaifer of heȝe laȝe.
 10 in Alemaine :
 þat lond was his owe.
 þo ihorde Baldolf :
 þar he bi féé laȝ.
 þat Arthur hadde in Euerwich :
 Colgrim bi-clufed.
 Baldolf hadde ibanned :
 foue þuſend manne.
 and nemem him¹ to reade :
 þat aȝen hii wolde ride.
 and bi-léue Cheldrich :
 and wende riht to Euerwich.
 and fihte wiþ Arthur :
 and a-cwelle his doȝeþe.

Baldolf the fair, Colgrims brother, was gone southward, and lay by 'the sea-side, and abode [*the* sea strangely, abiding] Childric. Childric was in those days *a* kaiser of powerful authority; the land in Alemaine was his own. When Baldolf heard, where he lay by *the* sea, that Arthur had inclosed Colgrim in York, Baldolf had assembled seven thousand men, 'bold fellows, who by *the* sea lay'; 'they took them [and took him] to counsel, that back they would ride, and leave Childric, and proceed 'into [right to] York, and fight with Arthur, and destroy 'all' his people. 'Baldolf swore in his

¹ nemen ȝam?² wið?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Baldolf fwor ð hif grome :	
þat he wolde beon Ardureref ¹ bone.	
& bruken al þaf riche :	
mid Colgrime hif broðere.	
Nolde Baldolf abide :	Nolde Baldolf abide :
þan keifere Childriche.	þane cayfer Cheldriche.
ah þenne he ferde uorð :	ac þanene he ferde forþ :
and droh him forð rihtes nord ² .	and droh him riht norþ.
from dæie to dæie :	
mid baldre ³ duzeðe.	10 forte he come to one wode :
þat he com in ane wude :	to one wilderne.
in ane wilderne.	
frō Ardures ⁴ ferde :	fram Arthures ferde :
fulle feoue milen.	folle foue mile.
He hafde ipohte bi nihten :	He hadde ipoht bi nihte :
mid feouen þufend cnihten.	mid alle his cnihtes.
to riden uppen Arður :	comen vppen Arthur :
ær þe king wore ware ⁵ .	are þe king were war.
and hif folc afeollen :	and his folk falle :
& hine feolf aquelle.	20 and him seolf a-cwelle.
Ah al hit oðer iwarð :	Ac oþer weies hit was idiht :
oðer he iwēde.	here hit were dai-liht.
for Baldolf hafede on hirede :	for þar was mid Baldolf :

anger, that he would be Arthurs bane, and possess all this realm, with Colgrim his brother.' Baldolf would not wait for the kaiser Childric, but thence he marched forth, and drew him 'forth' right north, 'from day to day, with *his* bold folk,' until he came 'in [to] a wood, 'in [to] a wilderness, full seven miles from Arthurs host. He had thought by night with 'seven thousand [all his] knights to 'ride [come] upon Arthur, and fell his folk, and himself kill. But 'all it otherwise happened, other *than* he weened [otherways it was disposed, ere it were daylight]; for 'Baldolf had in *his* host [there was with Baldolf] a British knight; he was Arthurs relative,

¹ Arðures?² norð?³ balde *pr. m.*⁴ Arðures?⁵ *The last two words of this line are interlined.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

æenne cniht Bruttiscne.
 he wes Arðures mæi :
 Mau[rin]. Maurin ihaten.
 Maurin bi-halues :
 to þan wude halde.
 þurh wude & þurh feldes :
 þat he com to Arðures teldes.
 and þus feide sone : [f.116^b.c.1.]
 to Arður kinge.
 Hail seo þu Arður : 10
 kingene aðelest.
 ich æm hidere icume :
 ich æm of þine cunne.
 Her is Baldulf icumen :
 mid fwiðe hæerde hære-gumen.
 & þencheð in þiffere nihte :
 to flæn þe & þine cnihtes.
 to wracken his broðer :
 þe fwiðe is vnbaldeð.
 ah godd him scal forwænen³ : 20
 þurh his muchele mihten.
 [Cado]r. & send nu uorð Cador :
 þene eorl of Cornwaile.
 and mid him ohte cnihtes :

on cniht Bruttiffc.
 he was Arthures may :
 Morisse ihote.
 Moris wende bi-halues :
 þorþ wode and þorh feldes.
 forte¹ to Arthur come :
 and him faide sone.
 Hæyl beo þou Arthur :
 kingene wifest.
 ich ham hider icome :
 ich ham of þine cunne.
 Her his Baldolf icome :
 mid fwiþe kene gomes. [c. 2.]
 and þencheþ in þisse nihte :
 flea² þe and þine cnihtes.
 ac god hit fal for-werne :
 þorh his mochele mihte.
 Ac fende nou forþ Cador :
 þan eorl of Cornwale.
 and mid him gode cnihtes :

named 'Maurin [Moris]. Maurin went aside 'to the wood,' through woods and through fields, until he came to 'Arthurs tents [Arthur]; and 'thus' said soon to 'Arthur *the* king [to him]: "Hail be thou, Arthur, noblest of kings! I am hither come; I am of thy kindred. Here is Baldolf arrived with 'warriors [men] most 'hardy [keen], and thinketh in this night to slay 'thee and thy knights, 'to avenge his brother, who is greatly discouraged;' but God shall prevent 'him [it], through his mickle might. 'And [But] send now forth Cador, the earl of Cornwall, and with him 'bold [good] knights, 'good and brave [that are keen to fight], full seven hundred good

¹ fort he ?² flean ?³ forwænen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

gode and wihte.
 fulle feoue hundred :
 felere þeines.
 & ich heom wulle ræden :
 & ich hō wulle leden.
 hu heo muwē Baldulf :
 flæn al se enne wulf.
 Forð ferde Cador :
 & alle þas cnihtes.
 þat heo comen bihalues :
 þer Baldulf¹ lai on comele.
 heo hī to helden :
 on ælchere haluē.
 heo floȝen heo nomen :
 al þat heo aneh comen.
 þer weorē aqualde :
 niȝen hundred alle italde.
 Baldulf wes bi-halues :
 igan him aburhȝes².
 & þurh þa wilderne flæh :
 feondliche fwiðe.
 and hafde hiȝ men leofe : [c.2.]
 mid reouðe bilæfued.
 & fleh him fwa feor norð :

þat kene beo to fihte.
 folle foue hundred :
 felie kempes.
 and ich ȝam wolle reade :
 and ich ȝam wolle leade.
 ou hii mawe Baldolf :
 flean aȝe hit were a wolf.
 Forþ wende Cador :
 and alle þes cnihtes.
 þat hii come bi-halues :
 þar Baldolf lay in teldes.
 and floȝen and nemen :
 al þat hii neh comen.
 þar weren a-cweld :
 folle niȝe hundred.
 Baldolf was bi-halues :
 i-gon vt of teldes.
 and þorh the wilderne fleoh :
 wonderliche fwiȝe.
 and fleþ him so for norh :

'thanes [champions] ; and I will counsel them, and I will lead them, how they may Baldolf slay as *if* [it were] a wolf.' Forth went Cador and all these knights, so that they came aside where Baldolf lay in tents ; 'they advanced to him on each side' ; 'they [and] slew, 'they [and] captured all that they came nigh ;—there were killed [full] nine hundred 'all out told.' Baldolf was gone aside 'to save himself [out of *the* tents], and fled through the wilderness, wondrously fast ; 'and had his dear men with sorrow deserted' ; and fled him so far north, that he came so forth, where

¹ Balulf *pr. m.*² aburhȝen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat he com fwa feor forð.¹

þat he com fwa uorð :

þer Arður lai in uolde.

mid richen hif ferde.

al abuten Eouerwic :

kīg fwiðe feollic.

Colgrī wef wið innen :

mid Sæxifce monnen.

Baldulf hine biþohte :

what he don mihte. 10

mid wulches cunnes ginne :

he mihte cumen binnen.

in to þere burhze :

to Colgrime hif broðere.

þe wes him on liue :

leofest alre monne.

Baldulf lette ft'ken :

to þan bare lichen.

his bærd and hif chinne :

and makede hine to croffe. 20

he lette fceren half hif hæfd :

and nō him ane harpe an hond.

þat he com so forþ.

þar Arthur lay on felde :

mid riche his ferde.

al aboute Euerwich :

ferde fwiþe fellich.

Colgrim was wiþ ine :

mid Saxiffe manne.

Baldolf hine bi-þohte :

wat he don mihte.

mid woche cunnes gýnne :

he mihte come wiþ ine.

Baldolf lette strike :

to þan bare liche.

and lette feren his heued :

afe me doþ an fole.

and nom him an honde :

one harpe longe.

Arthur lay on *the* 'weald [field], with his powerful host, all about York,—
 'king [host] most surprising! Colgrim was within with *the* Saxish men, and
 Baldulf bethought him what he might do; with what kind of stratagem he
 might come within, 'into the burgh, to Colgrim his brother, who was to him
the dearest of all men alive.' Baldulf caused to be shaved to the bare skin
 'his beard and his chin, and made him as *a* fool'; 'he [and] caused 'half'
 his head to be shorn, [as men do a fool]; and took him in hand a [long]
 harp. He could harp [exceeding] well in his childhood; and with his

¹ This line is evidently superfluous.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

He cuðen harpien wel :
 an hif child-haden.
 & mid hif harpe he ferde :
 to þaƿ kinges hirede.
 & gon þær to gleowien :
 & mucche gome to makien.
 Ofte me hine smæt :
 mid smærte ȝerden.
 ofte me hine culde :
 swa me deð crofce. 10
 ælc mon þe hine imette :
 mid biſmare hine igratte.
 ſwa nauere na mon nuſte :
 of Baldulfes cuſte. [f.117.c.1.]
 buten hit weore croſſe :
 icumen to þan hirede.
 Swa he eode longe³ upward :
 swa longe he eode adunward.
 þat heo weoren warre :
 þe weoren þær wið innen. 20
 þat hit wes Baldulf :
 Colgrimes broðer.
 Heo wurpen ut enne rap :
 & Baldulf hine faſte igrap.

He coupe harpi ſwe¹ wel :
 in his child-hode. [f.94.c.1.]
 and² his harpe he wende :
 to þan kinges ferde.
 and gan þære to pleoye :
 and moche game makie.
 Ofte me hine ſmot :
 mid ſwiþe ſmorte ȝerdes.
 ofte me hine culde :
 ſo me ſal an fole.
 ſo neuere no mā nuſte :
 of Baldolf his cuſtes.
 bote þat hit a fol were :
 i-come to þan folke.
 So lang he ȝeode vpward :
 ſo lange he ȝeode a-dunward.
 þat hii were war wiþ ine :
 þat hit was Baldolf wiþ houte.
 Corgrim⁴ his broþer :
 nadde he non oþer.
 Hii worpen vt one rop :
 and Baldolf hine igrop.

Baldulf.

harp he went to the kings host, and gan there to play, and much game to make. Oft men him smote with wands [most] smart; oft men him struck (?) as men 'do [shall a] fool; 'each man that met him, greeted him with derision; so never any man knew of 'Baldulfs [Baldolf his] appearance, but [that] it were [a] fool come to the folk! So long he went upward, so long he went downward, that they were aware, 'who were there' within, that it was Baldulf [without], 'Colgrims [Colgrim his] brother [he had no other]. They cast out a rope, and Baldulf grasped it

¹ ſwiþe?² and mid?³ Better ſwa longe he eode.⁴ R. Colgrim.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and brudden up Baldolf :

þat he binnen com.

mid fwulches cunnef ginnes :

Baldulf com wið innen.

þa wes bliðen Colgrī :

and alle hiſ cnihtes mid hī.

and fwiðe heo gunnen þrattien :

Arður þene king.

Arður bihaluef wef :

& þiſ gomen iſæh.

and wraðde hine fulne :

wunderliche fwiðe.

and hæhte anan wepnien :

al hiſ wunliche uolc.

he þohte þe burhze :

mid ſtrengðe to biwinnen.

Alſe Arður wolde :

to þan walle ræſe.

þa com þer riden :

Patric.

Patric þe ricche mon.

þat wes a Scottiſc þein :

ſcone an hiſ londen.

& þuſ clupien a-gon :

to þan kinge anan.

Hail ſeo þu Arður :

and mid þan ilke gýnne :

hii brohte him þar ine.

þo was bliþe Colgrim :

and alle hiſ cnihtes mid him.

and fwiþe hii gonne þretie :

Arthur þan kinge.

10 Artur þiſ game iſeh :

and wreþþede him fwiþe.

and hehte a-non wepni :

alle hiſ cnihtes.

he þohte þane borh :

mid ſtrengþe bi-winne.

Al ſo Arthur wolde :

to þan walle reafe.

þar com ride anon :

20 Patrich þe riche man.

and þuſ him faide :

to Arthur þan kinge.

Haȝl beo þou Arthur þe king :

'fast,' and '*they* drew up Baldulf, so that he came within'; with 'such kind of [that] stratagem 'Baldulf came within [they brought him therein]. Then was Colgrim blithe, and all his knights with him, and greatly they gan to threaten Arthur the king. Arthur 'was beside, and saw' this game, and wrathed himself 'wondrously much'; and ordered anon all his 'brave folk [knights] to weapon *them*; he thought to win the burgh with strength. As Arthur would (was about to) assault the wall, 'then [anon] came there riding Patrick, the rich man, 'who was a Scottish thane, fair in his land'; and thus 'began to call to the king anon [he said to Arthur the king]:

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

aȝeleſt Brutten.

Bruttene deorlyng.

Ich þe wulle tellen : [c. 2.]

Ich þe wolle telle :

neouwe tidende.

neowe tidynge.

of þā kæifere Childriche :

of þan kaifer Childrich : [c. 2.]

þan wode & þan richen.

þan wode and þan riche.

þan ſtrongen & þan balden :

þan bolde and þan ſtronge :

He iſ inne Scottlōde.

He hiſ in Scotlonde.

ihælde to are hafene :

& hames forberneð.

and waldeð al ure lond :

10 and haueþ i-nome al oure lond :

after hiſ ahȝere hond.

to hiſ owane hond.

He haueð uerde wel idone :

He haueþ ferde wel idone :

al þa ſtrengðe of Rome.

al þe ſtrengþe of Rome.

he ſæið mid hiſ ȝelpe :

he ſaiþ mid hiſ ȝelpe :

þenne me him win ſcenccheð.

wane me him win ſenccheþ.

þat þu ne dærſt in nare hude :

þat þou ne darſt in none ſtude :

hiſ ræſſes abiden.

hiſ reaſes a-bide.

no on uelde no on wude :

no nauere nane ſtude

& ȝiſ þu him abideſt :

20 and ȝeſ þou him abideſt :

he þe wule binden.

he þe wole acwelle.

quellen þine leoden :

and þi lond aȝen.

Oſte weſ Arðure wa :

nauere wuſe þene þa.

O Fte waſ Arthur wo :

neuer worſe þane þo.

“Hail be thou, Arthur [the king], ‘nobleſt of Britons [Britons darling] ! I will tell thee new tiding, of the kaiſer Childric, the furious and the powerful, the ‘ſtrong [bold] and the ‘bold [ſtrong]. He iſ in Scotland ‘arrived in a haven, and *the* homes conſumeth,’ and ‘wieldeth [hath captured] all our land in hiſ own hand. He hath *a* hoſt brave; all the ſtrength of Rome; he ſaith with hiſ boalt, when men pour to him *the* wine, that thou daereſt not in any ſpot hiſ attacks abide, ‘neither in field, nor in wood, nor *in* ever any place.’ And if thou him abideſt, he will thee ‘bind [kill]; ‘deſtroy thy people, and poſſeſſ thy land.’” Oſt waſ Arthur woe, *but* never worſe than

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and he droh hine abac :

bihalues þere burȝe.

clupede to ræde :

cnihtes to neode.

beornes and eorlef :

& þa hali biſcopes.

& bad þat heo him radden :

hu he mihte on richen.

mid his mon-weorede :

hiſ monſcipe halden.

& fehten wið Childriche :

þan ſtrōge & þan richen.

þa hider wolde liðe :

to helpen Colgrime.

þa ādſwarede Bruttes :

þa þere weoren bihalueſ. [f.117^b.c.1.]

Faren we riht to Lundene :

and lete hine liðē after.

& ȝif he cumeð ridē :

forȝe he ſcal ibiden.

he ſeolf and hiſ ferde :

fæie ſcal iwurðen.

Arður al bilufedē :

þat radden hiſ leoden.

forð he gon liðen :

and he droh hine abac :

bi-halues þare borewe.

cleopede to reade :

cnihtes to neode.

and bad þat hii him radde :

ou he miht on riche.

mid his man-ferde :

his manſipe holde.

and fihte wiþ Childrich :

þane ſtronge and þan riche.

þo faide Bruttes :

þat þare were bi-halues.

Wend þe¹ riht to Londene :

and let hine come after.

and ȝef he comeþ ride :

forwe he ſal a-bide.

him ſeolf and hiſ ferde :

fæie ſal iworþe.

Arthur al wrohte :

aſe radde hiſ cnihtes.

forþ he gan wende :

then; and he drew him backward, beside the burgh; called to counsel knights at need, 'barons and earls, and the holy bishops'; and bade that they should him counsel, how he might in *the* realm with his army his honor maintain, and fight with Childric, the strong and the powerful, 'who hither would come, to help Colgrim.' Then answered *the* Britons, that were there beside: "Go we right to London, and let him come after; and if he cometh riding, sorrow he shall abide; 'he [him]self and his host shall die!' " Arthur 'approved [wrought] all 'that [as] his 'people [knights] counselled; forth

¹ we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat he to Lundene com.	toward Londene.
Colgrim wes in Eouerwic :	Colgrim was in Euerwich :
& þær abad him Childric.	and þar abod him Childrich.
Childric gon wende :	Cheldrich gan wende :
ȝeon ¹ þan norð ende.	to þan Norþ ende.
& nom on honde :	and nam on his hond :
muchæl dal of londe.	mochel deal of londe.
Al Scot-þeode :	
he ȝaf hif ane þeine.	
& al Norð-humberlond :	10
he fette hif broðer an hond.	
Galeweoie & Orcaneie :	and dealde alle þe londes :
he ȝaf hif ane eorle.	among his eorles.
him feolf he nō from Humber :	and him seolf nam fram Humber :
þat lond into Lundene.	þat lond into Londene.
Ne þohte he nauere mare :	Ne þohte he neuere more :
of Arður habben are.	of Arthur habbe ore.
buten he wolden hif mō bicume :	bote he wolde his man bi-come :
Arður Vðeres fune.	Arthur Vther his fone.
Arður wes in Lundene :	20 Arthur was in Londene :
mid alle Brutleoden.	mid al Brutleode.
he bed hif ferde :	he bad his ferde :
ȝeond alle þiffen ærde.	ouer al þan erþe.

[Gale]waie.

he gan march 'until he came to [toward] London. Colgrim was in York, and there he abode Childric. Childric gan proceed 'over [to] the North end, and took in [his] hand a great deal of land. 'All Scotland he gave to athane of his, and all Northumberland he set in *the* hand of his brother; Galloway and Orkney he gave to an earl of his; [and dealt all the lands among his earls, and] himself he took the land from Humber into London. He thought never more of Arthur to have mercy, unless he would become his man, Arthur, 'Uthers [Uther his] son. Arthur was in London, with all *the* Britons; he summoned his forces over all 'this [the] land, that

¹ ȝeond ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat æuer ælc mon :
 þe hī god vðen.
 ræðe & ful fone :
 to Lundene comen.
 þa wæs Ænglene lond :
 mid ærmþe of-fulled.
 her wes wop & her wes rop :
 and reouðen vniuoðe.
 muchel hunger & hæte : [c.2.]
 at æuer ælche monnes ȝete. 10
 Arður fende ouer fæ :
 fele tweie cnihtes.
 to Hoele hif mæie :
 þe wes him leofest monnē.
 þe ahte Bruttaine :
 cniht mid þan bezste.
 and bad hine ful fone :
 þat he hider come.
 liðen to londe :
 leodē to helpen. 20

*Cheldric.**Colgrim.
Baldulf.*

for Chældrich hafde an honde :
 muchel of þiffen londe.
 and Colgim & Baldulf :

þat ech man fone :
 to Londene come.
 þo was Englene lond :
 mid harme i-fulled.
 her was hunger an hate :
 at euereche mannes¹ ȝete.
 Arthur fende [ouer] féé :
 tweie wise cnihtes.
 to Howel his may :
 þat he louede swiþe.
 þat hahte Brutayne :
 cniht mid þan beste.
 and bad hine wel fone :
 þat hii² hider come.
 for Childrich hadde an honde :
 mochel of his londe.
 and Colgrim and Baldolf :

'every [each] man, 'that good would grant to him, quickly and full' soon
 to London should come. Then was England filled with harm; here was
 'weeping and here was lament, and sorrow immoderate; mickle' hunger
 and strife (?) at every mans gate! Arthur sent over sea two 'good [wise]
 knights, to Howel his relation, 'who was to him dearest of men [whom he
 loved greatly], who possessed Britanny, knight with the best; and bade
 him 'full [well] soon, that he hither should come, 'sail to land, to help *the*
 people;' for Childric had in hand much of 'this [his] land, and Colgrim
 and Baldulf were come to him, and thought to drive Arthur the king 'out

*R. mannes.*² he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

him to iboȝen weoren.	i-wend to him were.	
and ȝohten Arður ȝene king :	and ȝohte Arthur ȝane king :	
driuen ut of cuððen.	driuen of londe.	
binimen him hiȝ icunde :	bi-nimen his cunde :	
and his kineriche.	and hiȝ kine-riche.	
ȝenne were hiȝ cun iȝcend :	ȝat were his cun iȝend :	
mid ſcomeliche witen.	for ene and for euere.	
heore wurðſcipe iloren :		
a ȝiſſere worlde-richē.		
ȝenne weoren ȝan kingge betere :	ȝanne betere ȝan kinge were :	
ȝat he iboren neore.	11 ȝat he ibore neore.	
ȝiȝ iherde Howel :	ȝiȝ ihorde Howel :	Howel.
ȝa hahte of Brutaine ¹ .	and fori was in heorte.	
& he cleopien agon :		
hiȝ fele cnihtes anan.		
& bæd heō to horſe :	and bad hiȝ cnihtes ſwiȝe :	
hiȝenliche ſwiðe.	bi hiȝe bare lifue. [c.2.]	
& faren into France :	wenden into France :	
to ȝan freo cnihten.	to ȝan freo cnihtes.	
& ſeide heom ȝat heo comen :	and ſaide ȝat icome ² :	
raðe & ful ſone.	21 raȝe and fol ſone.	
to Mihaeles munte :	to Mihheleſ monte :	Miheles
mid muchere ſtrenðe.	mid mochelere ſtrengȝe.	munte.

of [from] *the* land ; take from him his right, and his kingdom ;—‘then were [so that should be] his kindred disgraced ‘with shameful injury ; their worship lost in this worlds realm [once and for ever] ; then were *it* better for the king, that he were not born ! Howel heard this, ‘the highest of Britanny [and was sorry in heart] ; ‘and he gan to call his good knights anon,’ and bade ‘them to horse exceeding speedily, and [his knights quickly, by their bare life] go into France, to the free knights, and should say ‘to them’ that they should come, quickly and full soon, to Michaels Mount, with mickle strength, all who would of silver and of gold, win worship in this

¹ Bruaine *pr. m.*² hii come ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle þa þe wolden :	alle þe þat wolde :
of feoluere & of golde.	of seoluer and of golde.
wurhscipe iwinne :	worſipe bi-winne :
a þiffere weorlde-richen. [f.118.c.1.]	a þiſſe worle-riche.
To Peito he fende :	To Peyto he fende :
fele hiſ þeines.	
& ſumme touward Flandres :	
feondliche ſwiðe.	
and to Turuine :	and into Turuïne.
tweie þer wēden.	
& into Gaſcuinne :	and in to Gaſcoïne :
cnihtes æc gode.	cnihtes þar wende.
& hahten heom mid maine :	and ſomne ¹ cnihtes :
touward Mihhæleſ munte.	to Miheleſ monte.
& ær heo eoden to ulode :	and her hii eode to flode :
heo ſculden habbeon ȝiuen gode.	hii ſolde habbe ȝeſtes gode.
þat heo mihte þa bliðere :	þat hii mihte þe bloþelokere :
buzē from heore ærde.	wende vt of londe.
& mid Howeſe þan hende :	mid Howel þan hende :
cumen to þiſſen lōde.	in to More Britayne.
to helpen Arðure :	to helpe Arthur hiſ meȝ :
aðeleſt kingen.	þat narewe waſ bi-þronge.
þreottene dæies igon weoren :	

worlds realm. To Poitou he ſent 'hiſ good thanes; and ſome toward Flanders, exceeding quickly'; and 'to [into] Touraine, 'two there proceeded'; and into Gaſcony, knights 'eke good [there proceeded]; and 'ordered them *to come* with ſtrength toward [ſummoned *the* knights to] Michaels Mount; and ere they went to flood (embarked), they ſhould have gifts good, that they might the blither 'depart from their [go out of] land, 'and' with Howel the fair 'come to this land [into Greater Britain], to help Arthur, 'nobleſt of kings [hiſ relative, who waſ narrowly preſſed]. 'Thirteen days were paſſed ſince the meſſengers came there'; then ad-

¹ ſomnede.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

seoððen þa beoden commen þære.	
þa halden hit ¹ to fæ :	þo held hii toward féé :
fwa habzel deh from wolcne.	afe þe hawel þat falleþ.
twa hundred fciþene :	and two hundred fipes fūde :
þer weoren wel biwitene.	bi þare féé grunde.
me feoldē heom mid folke :	and ȝam alle fulde :
and heo forð wenden.	mid cnihtes fwiþe gode.
wind ſtond & þat wede :	
after heore wille.	
and heo at Hamtone :	10 and hii at Hamtone :
halden to londe.	come to londe.
Up leoppen of fciþe :	Vp leopen of fipes :
wode ſcalkkes.	buſie cnihtes.
beren to londe :	and to londe bere :
halmes & burnen.	healmes and brunies.
mid ſpæres & mid ſceldes :	mid ſperes and mid ſcealdes :
heo wriȝen al þa feldes.	hii wreȝen al þe feldes.
þer wes moni bald Brut :	þar waſ mani bold Brut :
þat beot wes aræred.	þat mid worde ſeide.
heo beoteden fwiðe :	20
bi heore quiken liue.	
þat heo wolden igræten :	þat hii wolde grete : [f.95.c.1.]
Cheldric þene richen.	Cheldric þan riche.

vanced they [toward] *the* sea, as [the] hail 'doth from *the* welkin [that fall-eth]; [and] two hundred ships 'were there well prepared; men filled them with folk, and forth they voyaged [*they* found, by the sea-shore, and filled them all with knights most good]; '*the* wind and the weather stood after their will'; and they came to land at Hamtone. Up leapt from *the* ships *the* 'furious men; [busy knights, and] bare to *the* land helms and burnies; with spears and with shields they covered all the fields. There was many a bold Briton that 'threat had raised; they threatened greatly, by their quick life [said with words], that they would greet Childric the powerful,

¹ heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þene [bolde] kæifere :
 mid muchele harme þere. [c. 2.]
 And ȝif he nolde awæi fleon :
 & touward Alemaine teon.
 and he wolde on londe :
 mid fehte atftonden.
 mid balde hif beornen :
 beorkes abiden.

here heo sculde bilauen :
 þat heom weore alre ladeft¹. 10
 hafden and heore honden :
 & heore white halmes.
 & fwa heo scullen on londē :
 lofien heore freonden.
 hælden into hælle :
 hæðene hundes.

Arð[ur].

Arður wes i Lūdene :
 aðeleft kingen.
 & iherde fuggen :
 fuðere spellen. 20

Howel.

Howel þe stronge.

Hamt[une].

to Hamtune forð rihtes :
 mid þritti þufen³ cnihten.

þane bolde cayfere :
 mid mochelere harme þere.
 ȝef he wolde in londe :
 mid fihte at-ftonde.
 here he folde bi-leafue :
 þat him were alre leoueft.
 hauekes and hundes :
 and hire brihte healmes.
 and so hii folle in þisse lond :
 lofie hire freondef.
 and fallen into helle :
 heapene hundes.

Arthur was in Londene :

and ihorde telle :

of Howel his may :

þat hi-come² was to londe.

to Hamtone forþriht :

mid þritti þufed cnihtef.

the [bold] kaiser, with much harm there. 'And if he would not flee away, and toward Alemaine proceed, and' [if] he would in *the* land with fight resist; 'with his bold people *the* barks (vessels?) abide;' here 'they [he] should leave what to 'them [him] were dearest of all, 'their heads and hands [hawks and hounds], and their 'white [bright] helms; "and so they shall in [this] land lose their friends, [and] fall into hell,—*the* heathen hounds!" Arthur was in London, 'noblest of kings,' and heard 'say [tell] 'sooth relation,' 'that Howel, the strong [of Howel, his relation, that he] was come to land, forth-right to Hamtone, with thirty thousand knights, and with

¹ leofest?² icode he?³ þufend?

unmistak
 byrce æ.
 Unlink
 byrce
 beorke
 vgl. this
 orthographie
 V. 22297

misery

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& mid vnimete uolke :
 þat wollezede þan kinge.
 Arður him to-ȝaines bah :
 mid hæþzere bliffe.
 mid muchelere mon-weorede :
 to-ȝæines his mæie.
 To-fomne heo comen :
 bliffe wes on hirede.
 cuften & clupten :
 & cuðliche speken.
 & anan forð rihtes :
 fomneden heore cnihtes.
 þa weoren þer to-fomne :
 fele twa ferdan.
 Howel ſculde dihten :
 þritti þuſend cnihten.
 & Arður hafde an londe :
 feouwertu þuſend an honde.
 Forð rihtes he¹ wenden :
 toward þā norð ænde.
 toward Lincolne :
 þe Cheldric þe kaiſere bilai.
 Ah he heo þa ȝæte :
 nefde noht biwūnen.

10

20

and mid onimete folk :
 þat folwede him a fote.
 and Arthur him to-ȝeines beoh :
 mid mochelere bliffe.
 mid mochele manferde :
 to-ȝeines his mæye.
 To-gadere hii comen :
 an cuſte wel ilome.
 and anon forþ rihtes :
 bannede hire cnihtes.
 þo weren þar to-gadere :
 two gode ferdas.
 Howel ſolde dihte :
 þritti þuſend cnihtes.
 and Arthur hadde an londe :
 fourti þouſend an hond.
 Forþ hii anon wende :
 to þan Norþ ende.
 toward Lyncolne niht and day :
 þar Childrich þe borh bi-lay.
 Ac he þe ȝet :
 nadde noþing awonne.

[Linc]olne.

innumerable folk, that followed 'the king [him on foot; and] Arthur towards him marched, with great bliss; with *a* mickle host, towards his relation. Together they came,—bliss was among *the* folk,—[and] 'they kissed 'and embraced [well often], 'and spake familiarly'; and anon forth-right assembled their knights. Then were there together two good armies; *of whom* Howel should command thirty thousand knights, and Arthur had in hand forty thousand in hand. Forth-'right [anon] they marched, 'toward [to] the North end, toward Lincoln [night and day], 'that [where] Childric the 'kaiser [the burgh] besieged. But he the yet had 'nought

¹ heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

for þer weoren wið inē :
 feoue þufen¹ monnen.
 ohte men and wihte :
 dæies and nihtes.
 Arður mid hiſ ferde :
 fuſde touward burȝe.
 & Arður for-bæd hiſ cnihtes :
 dæies & nihtes.
 þat heo liðen ſtille :
 ſwulc neo ſtelen woldē.
 liðen ouer leoden :
 & luden² bilefden.
 hornes & bemen :
 alle weoren bilafde.
 Arður nom enne cniht :
 þe wes oht mon and wiht.
 & fende hine to Lincolne :
 to leuē hiſ monnen.
 & he heō to foðe :
 fæide mid muðe.
 þat cumen wolde Arður :
 aðeleſt kingē.
 to þere middernihte :

for þare were wiþ ine :
 foue þufend manne.
 ohte men an wihte :
 daiȝes and nihte.
 Arthur mid hiſ ferde :
 wende touward borewe.
 Arthur for-bed hiſ cnihtes :
 daiȝes and nihtes.
 þat hii ȝeoden aſe ſtille :
 ſo hii ſtele wolde.
 Arthur nam one cniht :
 þat was wiſ man and wiht.
 and fende hine into Lyncolne :
 to leoue hiſ manne.
 þat he folde to foþe :
 ſegge mid mouþe.
 þat comen wolde Arthur :
 to þare midnihte.

[nothing] won; for there were within seven thousand men, brave men and active, by day and night. Arthur with his forces marched toward *the* burgh; and Arthur fore-ordered his knights, by day and night, that they should proceed [as] still, as *if* they would steal; 'pass over *the* country, and cease *any* noise; horns and trumpets, all should be relinquished.' Arthur took a knight, that was a 'brave [wise] man and active; and sent him to Lincoln to his dear men, 'and he said to them [that he should say] in sooth, with mouth, that Arthur would come, 'noblest of kings,' at the midnight, 'and with him many a good knight.'—"And ye within,

¹ þufend?² The first two letters of this word are on an erasure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& mid him moni god cniht.	
& ȝe wið inne :	And ȝe wiþ ine beoþ iwar :
þenne beoð eou iwarre.	
þat þenne ȝe i-hereð þene dune :	wane ȝeo þe dune ihereþ.
þat ȝe ȝæten untunen.	þat ȝe þe ȝeates vntune :
and fufed ¹ ut of burȝe :	and vt wendeþ fwiþe.
& eoure feod ² felleð.	
& finiteð a Cheldrichen :	and smiteþ on Cheldrich :
þan fstrongen & þan richen.	þane fstronge and þane riche.
and we heom fculleð tellen :	10 and we heom folle telle :
Bruttiffe fpelles.	Bruttuffe fpelles.
Hit waf to þere middel-niht :	Hit was to þan midniht :
þe mone fcaen fcan ³ fuð riht. [c. 2.]	þe mone fon foupriht.
Arður mid his ferde :	Arthur mid his ferde :
fufde to burh.	wende to borewe.
þat folc wes fwa ftille :	þat folc was fo ftille :
swa heo ftelen woldē.	fo hii ftele wolde.
forð heo comen liðen :	forþ hii comen wende :
þat heo ifeiȝen Lincolne.	to Lȝncolnef ende.
þuſ him cleopien agon :	20 þo him cleopie agan :
Arður þe kene mon.	Arthur þe kene man.
Whar beo ȝe mine cnihtes :	Ware beo ȝeo mine cnihtes :
mine hære-kemppen.	mine deorworþe kempes,
Iſeo ȝe þa teldes :	Nou ȝeo ifeþ þe teldes :

‘then’ be ‘ye’ ware, ‘that’ when ye hear the din, that ye [the] gates unfasten; and sally out ‘of *the* burgh [quickly], ‘and fell your foes’; and smite on Childric, the strong and the powerful; and we shall tell them British tales!”—It was at the midnight, *when* the moon shone right south, Arthur with his host marched to *the* burgh; the folk was as still as *if* they would steal; forth they proceeded until they saw ‘Lincoln [to Lincolns end. ‘Thus [Then] gan he call, Arthur the keen man: “Where be ye, my knights, my [dear-worthy] warriors? ‘See ye [Now ye see] the tents,

¹ fufeð?² feond?³ Redundant?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Constanz.
Constantin.
Ver.
Aurilie.

þer Childrich lið i ueldef.

Colgrim & Baldulf :

mid baldere strengðe.

þat Alemainisce uolc :

þat uf hæfeð ihærmed.

& þat Sæxisce uolc :

þat forzen uf bihateð.

þat alle habbeoð aqualde :

þa hæhfte of mine cunne.

Constanz and Costantin : 10

& Vðer þe wes fader min.

and Auriliæn Ambrofie :

minef fader broðer.

& moni þufend mōnen :

of aðele mine cunne.

Utē we heom to liðe :

and to grunde leggē.

and wreken wruðliche² :

ure cun & heore riche.

and alle fomeð³ forð riht : 20

nu ride æuer alc god cniht.

Arður gon to riden :

þa ferde gon gliden.

war Childrich liþ in feldes.[f.95^b.c.1.]

Colgrȳm and Baldolf :

mid boldere strengþe.

þaxisse¹ folk :

þat habbeþ vs iharmid.

þat alle habbeþ acweld :

þe beste of oure cunne.

Constance and Constantin :

and Vther þat was fader min.

and Aurelie Ambrofie :

þat was min fader broþer.

and many þoufend manne :

of gode mine cunne.

Hote to heō wende :

and to grunde legge.

and wreke worþliche oure cun :

and oure kine-riche.

þo Arthur gan ride :

and þe ferde forþ glide.

where Childric lieth on *the* fields ; Colgrim and Baldulf, with bold strength ; the 'Alemainish [Saxish] folk, that us hath harmed, 'and the Saxish folk, that sorrow to us promiseth ; that all hath killed, the 'highest [best] of 'my [our] kin ; Constance and Constantine, and Uther, who was my father, and Aurelie Ambrosie, [who was] my fathers brother, and many thousand men of my 'noble [good] kindred ? Go we out to them, and lay to *the* ground, and worthily avenge our kin and 'their realm [our kingdom] ; 'and all together forth-right now ride every good knight !' " [Then] Arthur gan to ride, [and] the army 'gan [forth] to move, 'as *if* all the earth

¹ þa Saxisse ?² wurðliche ?³ fomed ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fwulc al þa eorðe :		
wolde for-bærnen.		
and smiten i þa ueldef :		and smiten in þe feldes :
imōg Childriches teldes.		among Childrich his teldef.
þæt wes þæ ærefte mon :		þat was þe erefte man :
þe þer cleopien agon.	[f.119.c.1.]	þat þare cleopie agan.
Arður þe heze gume :		Arthur þe heze gome :
þe wes Vðeres fune.		þat his Vth ⁹ his fone.
kenliche & lude :		keneliche and loude :
fwa bicumeð kinge.	10	so bi-comeþ kýnges.
Nu fulste uf Marie :		Nou fulste vs Marie :
goddes milde moder.		þat his godef moder.
and ich ibidde hire fune :		and ich bidde hire fone :
þat he uf beon a fultume.		þat vs beo a foltome.
Æfne þan wordes :		Efne þan worde :
turnden heo heore ordes.		hii tornde hire ordes.
ftikeden & flozen :		ftikede and flowe :
al þat heo neh comen.		al þat hii neh come.
And cnihtes ut of burhze :		And cnihtes vt of borewe :
buȝen heō to-ȝæines.	20	wende heom to-ȝenef.
ȝif heo fluȝen to burȝen :		ȝef hii floȝe to borewe :
þer heo for-wurðen.		þare hii hadde forewe.
ȝif heo floȝen to þa wunde ¹ :		ȝef hii floȝe to þare wode :

would be consumed'; and smote in the fields among 'Childrics [Childric his] tents. That was the first man, that there gan to shout,—Arthur the noble man, who 'was Uthers [is Uther his] son,—keenly and loud, as cometh 'a king [kings] : “Now aid us, Mary, 'Gods mild [that is Gods] mother! And I pray her son, that he be to us in succour!” Even with the words they turned their spears; pierced and slew all that they came nigh. And *the* knights out of *the* burgh marched against them (the enemies); if they fled to *the* burgh, there they 'were destroyed [had sorrow]; if they fled to the wood, there they [men] slaughtered them; come wher-

¹ R. wude.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Bellum Ar-
thuri.

þer hi heom forduden.

þare me heom for-dude.

comen þer heo comen :

come ware hii come :

æuere heo heom floȝen.

euere me hii slowe. [c. 2.]

Nif hit a nare boc idiht :

Nis hit in none boke idiht :

þat æuere weore æi fiht.

þat euere her were soch fiht.

inē þiffere Bruttene :

in þiffere Brutaine :

þat balu weore fwa riue.

þare fleah were so riue.

for volken him wes ærmeft :

þat æuere com to ærde.

þer wes muchel blod ȝute :

þar was mochel blod iȝote :

balu wes on folke.

dæð þer wes rife :

deap þar was riue.

þe eorðe þer dunede.

Childric.

Childrich þe kæifere :

CHildrich þe kayfer :

hæfede ænne castel here.

hadde one castel her.

a Lincolnes felde :

a Lyncolnes felde :

þer he læi wið innen.

þar he lay wiþ ine.

þe wes neouwen iworht :

he was newene iwroht :

& fwiðe wel biwuf.

and fwiþe wel he was idiht.

& þere weoren mid him :

and þar weren mid him :

Baldulf & Colgrim.

Baldolf and Colgrim.

and iſeȝen þat heore uðlc :

and iſehȝe þat hire folke :

fæie-fiȝ worhtē.

folle to grunde.

& heo forð riht anon :

And hii forþ riht anon :

on mid heore burnen, [c. 2.]

an mid hire brunief.

ever they might come, *ever* 'they [men] them slew. It is not in any book indited, that *ever* 'any [such] fight were [ere] in this Britain, 'that mischief [where slaughter] was so rife, 'for folk it was most miserable, that *ever* came to *the* land!' There was mickle blood-shed, 'mischief was among *the* folk'; death there was rife; 'the earth there became dun!' Childric the kaiser had a castle here, in Lincolns field, where he lay within, 'that [it] was newly wrought, and exceeding well 'guarded [it was made]; and there were with him Baldulf and Colgrim, and saw that their folk 'suffered death [fell to ground]. And they anon forth-right, on with their burnies, and

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. 8M

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii. M

and fluzen ut of caſtle : and flozen vt of caſtle :
 kenſcipe bidaled¹. kenſipe bi-dealed.
 and fluzen forð riht anan : and flozen forþriht anon :
 to þe wude of Calidon. to þan wode of Calidon. *Calid[on]*.
 Heo hafden to iferen : And hadde to i-vere :
 feouen þuſend rideren. foue hundred ridereſ.
 and ho bilafden of-flažen : and hii bleſde of-slawe :
 & idon of lif-dažen. and idon of lif-daȝeſ.
 feowerti þuſude² : fourti þuſend :
 iſeolled to þan grunde. 10 liggen on þare feldes.
 Alemainiſce mē :
 mid ærnðe³ fordemed.
 and þa Sexiſce men :
 i broht to þan gr^uden.
 þa iſæh Arður : þo iſeh Arthur :
 aðeleſt kingen. boldeſt alre kinge.
 þat Childrich wes i flozen : þat Cheldrich was a-flowe :
 into Calidonie itoȝē. and in to Calidoine itowe.
 and Colgrim & Baldulf : and Colgrȳm and Baldolf :
 mid him i bozen weoren. 20 mid him þare were.
 into þā haȝe wude :
 in to þan hæȝe holme.
 & Arður bæh after : Arthur wende after :
 mid fixti þuſend cnihten. mid fixti þuſend cnihteſ.

fled out of *the* castle, of courage bereft; and fled forth-right anon to the
 wood of Calidon. They [And] had for companions seven thousand riders;
 and they left forty thousand slain, and deprived of life-day, felled 'to the
 ground [lying on the fields]; 'Alemainish men, with mischief destroyed,
 and the Saxish men, brought to the ground!' Then saw Arthur, 'noblest
 of [boldest of all] kings, that Childric was flown, [and] into Calidon gone,
 and Colgrim and Baldulf with him were 'gone [there,] 'into the high
 wood, into the high holm. And' Arthur pursued after with sixty thousand

¹ bidaleð *pr. m.*² þuſunde?³ ærmðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Bruttene leoden ⁊	Bruttene leode ⁊
þene wude al bileien.	þane wode al bi-leie.
and an are halfe hine feolden ⁊	in one half hii hine fulde ⁊
fulle feoue milen.	folle foue mýle.
treo uppen oðer	treo vppe treo ⁊
treoliche fafte.	kenliche fwiþe.
an oðer halue he hine bilai ⁊	an oþer half hine bi-leýe ⁊
mid hiȝ leod-ferde.	mid gode his folke.
þreo dazes & þreo niht ⁊	þreo daizes and þreo niht ⁊
þ̅ wes heom muchel pliht.	10 þat was to heom god riht. [f.96.c.1.]
Colg[rim]. þa iȝæh Colgrī ⁊	þo iȝeh Colgrim ⁊
alfe he læi þer in.	aſe ¹ laȝ þar in.
þat þer wes buten mete ⁊	þat þare was bouten mete ⁊
ſcarp hunger & hete. (<i>Brand, Durst</i>)	ſcarp hunger and hate.
ne heō no heore horfen ⁊	ne hii ne hire hors ⁊
hælp neȝde nenne.	help naȝde nanne.
And þuȝ cleopede Colgrim ⁊	[f.119 ^b c.1.] þo faide Colgrȝm ⁊
to þan kaiſere.	to þan caȝſere Cheldrich.
Sæie me lauerd Childric ⁊	Sai me louerd Childrich ⁊
soðere worden.	20 ſoþere wordeȝ.
for whulcheȝ cunnes þiȝe ⁊	for woche cunnes þiȝe ⁊
ligge we þuȝ here.	ligge we þuȝ her ine.
whi nulle we ut faren ⁊	wi nole we vt fare ⁊
& bonnien ure ferden.	and banny oure ferde.

knights of British people; the wood *he* all surrounded; 'and' on one side [they] it felled, full seven miles, 'one' tree upon another, truly fast [tree upon tree, very keenly]; on *the* other side 'he' surrounded it with his 'army' [good folk], three days and three nights;—that was to them 'mickle harm' [right good]. Then saw Colgrim, as he lay therein, that there was without meat sharp hunger, and strife (?); nor they nor their horses help had any. 'And thus called [Then said] Colgrim to the kaiser [Childric]: "Say me, lord Childric, sooth words; for what kind of thing lie we thus here[in]? Why should we not go out, and assemble our host, and begin

¹ aſe he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and biginnen ¹ fehtes :	and bi-ginne fihtes :
wið Arður & wið his cnihtes.	wiþ Arthur and his cnihtes.
for betere uf if on londe :	for betere vs his on londe :
mid mōſcipe to liggen.	manſipliche ligge.
þene we þus here :	þane we þus here :
for hungere to-wurðen.	mid hunger forworþi.
ifwenched ² uf fære :	
folke to ſcare.	
Oðer we ſendeð wið and wið :	Oþer we ſende him wiþ :
and ȝeornen Arðures grið.	and ȝeorne Arthur his griþ.
and bidden þuſ hiſ milce :	and bidde him milce :
& ȝiſles him bitechen.	and ȝiſles bi-take.
& wurchē freondſcipe :	
wið þan freo kīge.	
þiſ iherde Childric :	þiſ ihorde Cheldrich :
þer he læi wið inne dic.	þar he lai wiþ ine dich.
and he andſwarede :	and anſwerede :
wið ærmliche ſtefene.	mid cwickere ſtemne.
ȝiſ hit wulle Baldulf :	ȝeſ hit wole Baldolf :
þe iſ þin aȝe broðer.	þat hiſ þin owe broþer.
and ma of uſ iſeren :	and mo of oure fereſ :
þe mid uf fundē here.	þat mid vs beoþ here.
þat we bidden Ardures ³ grið :	þat we bidde Arthures griþ :

fight with Arthur and 'with' his knights? For better *it* is for us on land 'with honor [honorably] to lie, than *that* we thus here perish 'for [with] hunger; '*it* grieveth us sore, to *the* destruction of *the* folk.' Either send we 'again and again [to him], and yearn 'Arthurs [Arthur his] peace, and pray 'thus his [him] mercy, and hostages deliver him, 'and make friendship with the free king.'" Childric heard this, where he lay within *the* dyke, and 'he' answered with 'sorrowful [quick] voice: "If Baldulf it will, who is thine own brother, and more of our comrades, who with us are here, that we pray Arthurs peace, and make amity with him, after your

¹ bigunnen *pr. m.*² ifwencheð?³ Arðures?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& sahtneffe him wurchen wið.	and sæhtneffe him werche wiþ.
after æuwer wille :	after oure ¹ wille :
dō ich hit wulle.	don ich hit wolle.
For Arður if swiðe hæh mon :	For Arthur his wel heh man :
ihalden on leoden.	hi-holde in londe.
leof alle hif monnen :	leof alle his manne :
& of kine-wurðe cunne.	and of kineworþe cunne.
al of kingen icume :	al of kinges icome :
he wes Vðeres fune.	he was Vther his fone.
& of ² hit ilimpeð :	And ofte hit bi-falleþ :
a ueole cunne þeoden.	in manȳcunne leode. [c.2.]
þer gode cnihtes :	þar þe gode cnihtes :
cumeð to sturne fihte. [c.2.]	comeþ to strange fihtes.
þat heo ærest biȝiteð :	þat þaȳe þat her bi-ȝeteþ :
after heo hit leofeð.	eft hii leofeþ.
& al swa uf to-ȝere :	and al so ous to-ȝere :
if ilimpen here.	his ifalle here.
& æft uf bet ilippeð :	
ȝif we motē liuien.	
Sone forð rihtes :	20 Sone forþrihtes :
andswareden þa cnihtes.	answerede alle þe cnihtes.
Alle uf biluuiet ³ þisne ræd :	Alle we louieþ þane read :
for þa hæfst wel ifæid.	for þou haueft wiſliche i-feid.
Heo nomen twælf cnihtes :	Hii nemen twalf cnihtes :

will I will do it. For Arthur is esteemed 'very [well] noble man in land ; dear to all his men, and of royal kindred, all come of kings ; he was 'Uthers [Uther his] son. And oft it befalleth, in many kind of land, where [the] good knights come to 'stern [strong] fight, that they [who] first gain, 'afterwards [eft] they 'it' lose. And thus to us now is befallen here, 'and eft to us better will happen, if we may live.' " Soon forth-right answered [all] the knights : " We all praise 'this [the] counsel, for thou hast 'well [wisely] said ! " They took twelve knights, and sent forth-right, where

¹ ȝoure ?² oft ?³ biluuiet ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fenden forð rihtes.	and fende forþrihtes.
þer he wes on telde :	þar Arthur was in telde :
bi þaƿ wudes ende.	bi þan wodeƿ hende.
þe an cleopeden anan :	and on cleopie agan :
mid quickere ſtefne.	loudere ſtemne.
Lauerd Arður þi grið :	Louerd Arthur þin griþ :
we wolden ſpeken þe wið.	we wollen ſpeke þe wiþ.
hider þe kaiſere uf ſēt :	hider þe kaiſer vs ſent :
Childric ihaten.	þat Cheldrich his ihote.
& Colgrim & Baldulf :	10 Colgrȳm and Baldolf :
beien to-ſomē.	beȳne to-gadere.
Nu and æuere mare :	Hii biddeþ þin ore :
heo bidded ¹ þine ære.	nou and euere more.
þine men heo wulleð bicumen :	þine men hii wolleþ bi-come :
& þine mōſcipe hæȝen.	and treouþe to þe holde.
& heo wulleð ȝiuē þe :	
ȝifles inowe.	
& halden þe for lauerð ² :	
fwa þe beoð alre leofeſt.	
ȝif heo moten liðe :	20 ȝef hii mo ³ libbe :
heonene mid liue.	and hire limes habbe.
into heoſ leoden :	and hinene wende :
& lað-ſpæl bringen.	in to hire londe.
For her we habbeod ⁴ ifunden :	For her we habbeþ i-funde :

'he [Arthur] was in tent, by the woods end ; [and] 'the' one 'called anon [began to call] with 'quick [loud] voice : " Lord Arthur, thy peace ! We would speak with thee ; hither the kaiser sent us, [who is] named Childric, 'and' Colgrim and Baldulf, both together. Now and evermore they pray thy mercy ; thy men they will become, and 'thy honor advance, and they will give to thee hostages enow, and hold thee for lord, as to thee shall be liefest of all, if they may depart hence with life, [troth to thee hold, if they may live, and have their limbs, and hence depart,] into their land ;

¹ biddeð ?² lauerd ?³ mowe ?⁴ habbeoð ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

feole cunne forȝen.	fale cunnef forewe.
at Lincolne bilæued :	at Lyncolnes feldes :
leofe ure mæies.	bi-leaued oure freondes.
fixti þufend monnen :	sixti þoufend manne :
þa þer beoð of-flæzene.	þar liggeþ of-flawe.
And ȝif hit þe weore :	And ȝef hit were þin wille :
wille an heorte.	[f. 120. c. 1.]
þat we moften ouer sæ :	þat we moft away wende.
winden mid feile.	
nulle we nauere mare :	10 nolde we neuere more :
æft cumen here.	eft comen here.
for her we habbeod ¹ for-lorē :	for he ² we habbeþ for-lore :
leoue ure mæies.	oure leafue meȝef.
swa longe fwa bið ³ æuere :	so lange fo beoþ euere :
her ne cume we næuef.	her ne come we neuere.
þa loh Arður :	þo loh Arthur :
ludere ftefene.	[f. 96 ^b . c. 1.]
ludere ftefene.	loudere ftemne.
Iþonked wurðe drihtene :	Ich þonki mine drihte :
þe alle domef waldeð.	þat alle domef weldeþ.
þat Childric þe fstronge :	20 þat Childric þe fstronge :
if fad of mine londe.	hið fad of mine londe.
Mi lōd he hafeð to-dæled :	Mi lond he haueþ idealed :
al hið duȝeðe-cnihtes.	amang his freo cnihtes.
me feoluē he þohte :	mi feolue he þohte :

Arður.

‘and bring evil tidings.’ For here we have found sorrows of many kind ; at ‘Lincoln [Lincolns fields] left our ‘dear relatives [friends] ; sixty thousand men, ‘that’ there ‘are [lie] slain. And if it were ‘to thee will in heart [thy will], that we might ‘pass over sea with sail [go away], we would nevermore eft come here ; for here we have lost our dear relatives. So long as is ever, here come we *back* never !’ Then laughed Arthur, with loud voice :—“ ‘Thanked be the [I thank my] Lord, that all dooms wieldeth, that Childric the strong is tired of my land ! My land he hath divided

¹ habbeoð ?² R. her.³ bið ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

driuen ut of mire leoden.

driue vt of mine cuþpe.

halden me for hæne :

& habben mine riche.

& mi cun al for-uaren :

mi uolc al fordemed¹.Ah of hī² bið iwurðen :

fwa bið of þan voxē.

þēne he bið baldest :

ufen an þan walde.

& hafeð hif fulle ploze :

& fuzeles inoze.

for wildſcipe climbið :

and cluden iſeched³.

i þan wilderne :

holzes him wurcheð.

farē wha fwa auere fare :

naueð he næuere næne kare.

he weneð to beon of duzeðe :

baldest alre deoren.

þēne⁵ fiȝeð him to :

ſegges vnder beorȝen.

mid hornen mid hundē :

Ac of him hit his iworpe :

fo hif of þā foxe.

wane he his boldest :

ouenan þe wolde.

10 and haueþ hif folle pleay :

and foweles inowe.

for wildſipe clembeþ :

and cludeþ he ſecheþ.

in þan wilde cleues :

holes he ſecheþ⁴.

fare wo ſe þar fare :

naueþ neuere nanne care.

he weneþ þat he be þanne :

boldest alre deore.

20 Ac wane ſieþ him to :

hontef onder borewe.

mid hornes mid hundes :

'to all [among] his [free] knights; myself he thought to drive out of my country; 'hold me for base, and have my realm, and my kin all put to death, my folk all destroy.' But of him [it] is happened, as *it* is of the fox, when he is boldest over the weald, and hath his full play, and fowls enow; for wildness *he* climbeth, and rocks [he] seeketh; in the 'wilderness [wild cliffs] holes 'to him [he] worketh. Fare 'whosoever [whoso there] shall fare, he hath never any care; he weeneth 'to be of power [that he is then] *the* boldest of all animals. [But] when come to him *the* 'men [hunters] under *the* hills, with horns, with hounds, with loud cries; *the*

¹ fordemen?² *At first written* hit.³ iſeched?⁴ wircheþ?⁵ Ah þēne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid haȝere ſtefenen. [c. 2.]

hunten þar talieð :

hundes þer galieð.

þene vox driueð :

ȝeond daleſ & ȝeond dunes.

he ulih to þā holme :

& hiſ hol¹ iſecheð.

i þā uirſte ænde :

i þan holle wendeð.

þenne iſ þe balde uox :

bliſſen al bideled.

& mon him to-delueð :

on ælchere heluen.

þēne beoð þer forcuðeſt :

deoren alre prutteſt.

Swa wes Childriche :

þan ſtrongen & þan riche.

he þohten al mi kinelōd :

ſentten² an hiſ aȝere hond.

ah nu ich habbe hine idriuen :

to þan bare dæðe.

whæðer ſwa ich wulle don :

oðer flæn oðer ahon.

Nu ich wulle ȝiſen hī grið :

mid heȝere ſtemne.

hontef þar talieþ :

houndes þar galieþ.

þane fox driueþ :

ȝeond dounef and dales.

þanne flicþ he to þan cleoue :

and hiſ hol ſecheþ.

in to þan forreſt ende :

of þan hole he wendeþ.

þanne hiſ þe bolde fox :

bliſſe al bi-dealed.

and man him to-dealueþ :

in euereche halue.

þanne hiſ forcoupift :

deor alre proteſt.

So was Childriche :

þe ſtrange and þe riche.

he þohte al min kinelond : [c. 2.]

ſette on hiſ owe hond.

ac nou ich habbe hine idriue :

to þan bare deaþe.

waþer ſo ich wolle don :

oþer flen oþer an-hon.

Nou ich wolle ȝeſue him griþ :

hunters there hollow, *the* hounds there give tongue, *they* drive the fox over 'dales and over downs [downs and dales, then] he fleeth to the 'holm [cliff], and seeketh his hole; 'in [into] the furthest end 'in [of] the hole [he] goeth; then is the bold fox of bliss all deprived, and men dig to him on 'each [every] side; then is 'there' most wretched *the* proudest of all animals! So was *it with* Childric, the strong and the rich; he thought all my kingdom to set in his own hand; but now I have driven him to the bare death, whether so (whatsoever) I will do, either slay or hang. Now will

¹ holt *pr. m.*, but *t* erased.² *R.* ſetten.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

& leten hine me ſpecken wið. nulle ich hine flæ no ahon : ah hiſ bode ich wulle fō. ȝifles ich wulle habbē : of hæxten his monnen. horf & heore wepnen : ær heo heōne wenden. and ſwa heo ſcullen wræcchen : to heoren ſcipen liðen. fæilien ouer fæ : to fele heore londe. & þer wirdliche¹ : wunien on riche. and tellen tidende : of Arðure kīnge. hu ich heom habbe ifreoied : for mineſ fader faule. & for mine freo-dome : [£.120^b.c.1.] ifrouered þa wræcchen. Her weſ Arður þe king : aðelen biðæled. nes þer nan ſwa rehȝ mon : þe him durſte ræden. þet him of-þuhte fære :	and lete hine ſpeke me wiþ. nolle ich hine flean ne an-hon : al hiſ bede ich wolle don. ich wolle habbe ȝifles : of þe hehteſt of hiſ manne. horf and hire wepne : her hii wende ine. ſo hii ſolle wrecchef : to hire fipes wende. ſayli ouer féé : to hire owe londe. and þar worþlice : wonie on hire riche. and tellen tȝdinde : of Arthur þan kinge. hou ich hā ifroued : for mine fader faule. and for mine fredome : ifroued þe wrecches. Her waſ Arthur þe king : aþele bi-dealed. naſ þar non ſo reh mon : þat him dorſte reade. þat him of-þohte :
---	---

I give him peace, and let him speak with me ; I will not him slay, nor hang, 'but [all] his prayer I will 'receive [do]. Hostages I will have of [the] highest of his men ; their horses and weapons, ere they hence depart ; 'and' so they shall *as* wretches go to their ships ; sail over sea to their 'good [own] land, and there worthily dwell in [their] realm, and tell tidings of Arthur [the] king, how I them 'have freed [succoured], for my fathers soul, and for my freedom solaced the wretches." *Hereby* was Arthur the king of honor deprived ; was there no man so bold that durst him advise ;—

¹ wirðliche ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fone þer after.

fone þar after.

[Child]ric.

Childric cō of comela :'

Cheldrich com of comelan :'

to Arðure þan kinge.

to Arthur þan kinge.

& he hif mon þer bi-com :

and he his man þar bi-com :

mid hif cnihten alle.

and his cnihtes alle.

Feouwer and twenti ȝifles :

Four and twēti hostages :

Childric þer bitæhte.

Cheldrich þar bi-tahte.

alle heo weoren icorene :

alle hii weren i-core :

and hæhȝe men iborenne.

and heȝe men i-bore.

heo bi-tahten heore horf :

hii bi-tahte hire hors :

and heore burnen.

and al hire wepne.

scaftes & sceldes :

scaftes and feldes :

& longe heore fweordes.

and al hire fweordef.

al heo bi-læfden :

al hii bi-lefden : [£.97. c. 1.]

þat heo þer hæfden.

þat hii þar hadden.

Forð heo gunnen fiȝen :

Forþ hii gonne wende :

þat heo to fæ comen.

þat hii to féé come.

þer heore fciþen gode :

þar hire fipes gode :

bi þere fæ ftoden.

bi þare [féé] ftode.

Wind ftod on wille :

20

weder fwiðe murie.

he¹ fciufen from þan ftronde :and hi hii² fouen fram þan londe :

fciþen grete & longe.

hire fipes ftronge.

that repented him 'sore,' soon thereafter! Childric came from covert (?) to Arthur the king; and he there became his man, 'with [and] all his knights. Four and twenty hostages Childric there delivered; all they were chosen, and noble men born; they delivered their horses, and 'their burnies [all their weapons], spears and shields, and 'their long [all their] swords; all they relinquished that they there had. Forth they gan to march until they came to *the* sea, where their good ships by the sea stood. 'The wind stood at will, *the* weather most favorable,' [and] they shoved from the 'strand [land their] ships 'great and long [strong]; 'the land they all left,'

¹ heo?² Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat lond heo al bilæfden :

& liðen after vðen.

þat nāene fiht of londe :

ifeō heo ne mahten.

þat water wes stille :

after heore iwille.

heo lettē to-fomne :

fæiles gliden.

bord wið borden :

beornes þer fpileden.

10

sæiden þat heo wolden :

[c. 2.]

eft to þiffen londe.

& wreken wurdliche¹ :

heore wine-mæies.

& weften Arðures lond :

& leoden aquellen.

and castles biwinnen :

& wilgomē wurchen.

Swa heo liðen after fæ :

efne al fwa longe.

20

þat heo commen bitwize :

Ænglelonde & Normandie.

heo wenden heore lofes :

& liðen toward lōde.

and wende forþ so longe :

þat no lond hii ne sehze.

þat weder was stille :

after hire wille.

and gliden to-gaderes :

and wordes speke.

and faide þat hii wolde :

eft to þisse londe.

and weften Arthur lond :

and hif folk cwelle.

Hii wende hire loues :

and tornde to þisse londe.

and 'floated with the waves [proceeded forth so long], that no 'sight of' land they 'might see [saw]. The 'water [weather] was still, after their will; 'they let together *their* sails glide, board against board, *the* men there discoursed [and glided together, and words spake; and] said that they would *return* eft to this land, 'and avenge worthily their relatives,' and waste Arthurs land, and kill [his] folk, 'and win *the* castles, and work *their* pleasure. So they voyaged on *the* sea even so long, that they came between England and Normandy'; they veered their luffs, and 'came toward [turned

¹ wurðliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat heo comen ful iwif :
to Derte-muðe at Totteneis.
mid muchelere bliffe :

heo buȝen to þan londe.

Sone fwa heo a lond comen :

þat folc heo afloȝen.

þa cheorles heo uloȝen :

þa tiledē þa eorðen.

heo hengen þa cnihtef :

þa biwuften þa londes.

alle þa gode wiufes :

heo stikeden mid cnifes.

alle þa maidene :

heo mid morðe aqualden.

and þaie ilærede men :

heo læiden on gledē.

Alle þa heorede-cnauen :

mid clibben heo a-qualden.

heo velledden þa castles :

þat lond heo a-wæsten.

þa chirechen heo for-barnden :

baluw wes on folke.

þa fukende children :

heo adrēten inne wateren.

þat orf þat heo nomen :

þat hii come foliwis :
to Dertemuþ at Totenas.

Sone fo hii a lond come :

þat folk hii a-flowe.

þe cherles hii hilden :

þat telede þar erþe.

þe cnihtef hii an-hong :

þat were in þan londe.

alle þe gode wives :

hii stekede mid cnifues.

alle þe maidene :

mid morþre hii acwelde.

and alle þe learedemen :

hii caste in fure.

þe cheorchef hii for-barnde :

þe chaftles hii afulde.

þat horf þat hii nome :

to this] land, so that they came full surely to Dartmouth at Totnes; 'with much bliss they approached to the land.' So soon as they came on land, the folk they slew; the churls they drove off, that tilled 'the' earth [there]; the knights they hung, that 'defended [were in] the land; all the good wives they stuck with knives; all the maidens they killed with murder; and [all] the learned men (clergy) they 'laid on embers [cast in *the* fire]. 'All the domestics (*or* baser sort) they killed with clubs; they felled the castles, the land they ravaged'; the churches they consumed, [the castles they felled],— 'grief was among *the* folk!—the sucking children they drowned in *the* water.'

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

al heo flozen.	al hii of-flowe.
to heore inne ladden :	to hire ine hii hit ladde :
and fudē and bradden. [f.121.c.1.]	and fude hit and bradde.
al heo hit nom :	al hii hit neme :
þat heo neh comen.	þat hii neh come.
Alle dæi heo fungen :	Al day hii fonge :
of Ardure ¹ þan kinge.	of Arthur þan kinge. [c.2.]
and sæiden þat heo haueden :	and faide þat hii hadde :
hamef biwunnen.	homes bi-wonne.
þæ scolden heom i-halden : 10	woche hii wolde holde :
in heore onwalden.	
& þer heo woldē wunien :	
wintres & sumeref.	wýntref and fomerer.
And ȝif Arður weoren swa kene :	and ȝef Arthur were so kene :
þat he cumen wolde.	þat he comen wolde.
to fihten wið Childrichen :	to fihte wiþ Childrich :
þan fstrongen & þan richen.	þan fstrong and þe rich.
heo wolden of his rugge :	We wollep of his rugge :
makien ane brugge.	makien one brugge.
and nimen þa ban alle : 20	and nime þe bones alle :
of aðele þan kinge.	
and teien heom to-gadere :	and tiȝe heom to-gadere :
mid guldene teȝen.	
and leggen i þare halle-dure :	and legge heom in þare halle-dore :

The cattle that they took, all they slaughtered ; to their inns [they] carried [it], and boiled [it] and roasted ; all they it took, that they came nigh. All day they sung of Arthur the king, and said that they had won homes, 'that [which] they 'should [would] hold 'in their power ; and there they would dwell' winter and summer. And if Arthur were so keen, that he would come to fight with Childric, the strong and the rich, 'they would [" We will] of his back make a bridge, and take all the bones 'of the noble king,' and tie them together 'with golden ties,' and lay [them] in the hall

¹ R. Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer æch mon sculde uorð faren. þar ech man sal forþ fare.
 to wurðscipe Chilche¹ :
 þan strongen & þan riche.
 þis wes al heore gome : þis was al hire game :
 for Arðures kinges sceome. for Arthur þe kinges fame.
 ah al hit iwarð² on oðer : ac al hit iwarþ oþer :
 sone þer after. sone þar after.
 heore ȝelp & heore gōe : heore ȝeolp and hire game :
 ilomp heom seoluen to scāe. ful ȝam feolue to grame.
 & swa deð wel iwære : 10 so doþ wel iware :
 þe mon þe swa ibereð. þe man þat vuel wircheþ.
 Childric þe kaifere biwon : **C** Hildrich al a-won :
 al þat he lokede on. þat he mid ehȝene lokede on.
 he nom Sumerfete : he nam Somerte³ :
 & he nom Dorfete. he nam Dorfete.
 and al⁴ Deuene-scire : and in Deueniffire :
 þat volc al for-ferde. þat folk he for-ferde.
 and he Wiltun-scire :
 mid wiðere igrætte. [c.2.]
 he nom alle þa londes : 20 he nam alle þe londes :
 in to þære fæ strōde. to þare féé strondes.
 þa æt þan laste : þo at þan laste :
 þa lette heo blawē.

Childric.

door, where each man 'should [shall] go forth, 'to the worship of Childric, the strong and the rich !' This was all their game, for Arthur [the] kings shame ; but all it happened 'in' other *wise*, soon thereafter ; their boast and their game befell to themselves to 'shame [grief] ; 'and' so doth well everywhere the man that 'so acteth [worketh evil]. Childric 'the kaiser' won all that he looked on [with eyes] ; he took Somerset, 'and' he took Dorset, and in Devonshire the folk 'all [he] destroyed, 'and Wiltshire with hostility he greeted' ; he took all the lands 'un'to the sea strand. Then at the last, 'then caused he horns and trumpets to be blown, and' his host 'to be as-

¹ Childriche.² iwarð ?³ Somerfete ?⁴ an ? i ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hornes & bemen :		he bannede his ferde.	
& bonniē his ferden.		and saide þat he wolde :	
& forð he wolde buzen :		Baþe bi-ligge.	
& Baðen al biliggen.		and eke Bruftouwe :	
and æc Bristouwe :		a-boute bi-rowe.	
abuten birouwen.		þis was hire broc :	
þis was heore ibeot :		are hii to Baþe come.	
ær heo to Baðe comen.		þider wende þe cayser :	
To Baðe com þe kæifere :		and bi-laȝ Baþe þer.	
& bilæi þene castel þere.	10	and þe men wiþ ine :	[f. 97 ^b . c. 1.]
& þa men wið innen :		ahlice a-gonne.	
ohtliche agunnen.		wenden vppe ston wal :	
stepen uppen stanene wal :		wel iwepnid oueral.	
wel iwepned ouer al.		and werede þe riche :	
& wereden þa riche :		wiþ þan strong Childriche.	
wið þan stronge Childriche.			
þer lai þe kaifere :			
& Colgrim his iuere.			
& Baldulf his broðer :			
& moni an oðer.	20	Arthur was bi Norþe :	
Arður wes bi norðe :		and noht her of nuste.	
and noht her of nuste.		he wende oueral Scotlond :	
ferde ȝeōd al Scotlond :		and sette hit in his owe hond.	
& sette hit an his aȝere hond.		Man and Organeȝe :	
Orcaneie & Galeweie :			

sembled, and forth he would march, and [he assembled, and said that he would] Bath 'all' besiege, and eke Bristol about berow. This was their threat, ere they to Bath came. 'To Bath came [Thither went] the kaiser, and belay 'the castle [Bath] there; and the men within bravely began; *they* mounted upon *the* stone walls, well weaponed over all, and defended the place against Childric the strong. 'There lay the kaiser, and Colgrim his companion, and Baldulf his brother, and many another.' Arthur was by *the* North, and knew nought hereof; [he] proceeded over all Scotland, and set it in his own hand; 'Orkney and Galloway, Man and Moray [Man and

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Man & Murene¹.

and alle þa londes :

þe þer to læien.

Arður hit wende :

to iwiflichē þinge.

þat Childric iliðen² weoren³ :

to hiſ aȝene londe.

and þat he nauere mære :

nolde cumen here.

þa comen þa tidende :

to Arthure kinge.

þat Childric þa kæifere :

icumen wes to londen⁴.

and i þan fuð ende :

sorȝen þer worhten.

[Ar]ður.

þa Arður feide :

aðeleſt kingen.

Wala wa walawa :

þat ich ſparede mine iua.

þat ich nauede on holte :

mid hūgere hine adefeð⁵.

oðer mid ſweorde :

Morayne and Galeweye.

Arthur hit wende :

þat hit ſop were.

þat Childrich were ichord :

to his owe londe.

and þat he neuere more :

nolde comen here.

þo comen þe tidynge :

to Arthur þan kinge.

þat Cheldrich þe cayſer :

icome waſ to londe.

in þan fuþ eande :

harmef he wrohte.

þo faide Arthur :

boldeſt alre kinge.

Wolawo :

þat ich ſparede mine fo.

þat ich nadde on holte :

mid hunger hine a-cwelled.

oþer mid ſweorde :

Orkney, Moray and Galloway], ‘and all the lands that lay thereto.’ Arthur it weened ‘to be certain thing [that it were sooth], that Childric had departed to his own land, and that he never more would come here. When the tidings came to Arthur [the] king, that Childric the kaiser was come to land, ‘and’ in the South end ‘sorrow there [harms he] wrought, then said Arthur, ‘noblest of [boldest of all] kings: “Alas! Alas! that I spared my foe! that I had not with hunger destroyed him in *the* wood, or with

¹ The last two letters are sup. ras.² The second letter of this word is sup. ras.³ The final n has been struck out by a second hand.⁴ Lunden, pr. m.⁵ adrefeð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

al hine to-fwugen¹.
 Nu he me ȝilt mede :
 for mire god dede.
 ah swa me hælpēn drihten :
 þæ fscop þæf dæies lihten.
 þer fore he fscal ibiden :
 bittereft alre baluwen.
 harde gomenef :
 hiſ bone ich wulle iwurðen.
 Colgⁱm & Baldulf :
 beiene ich wulle aquellen.
 & al heore duȝeðe :
 dæð fscal iðolien.
 ȝif hit wule ivnnen :
 waldende hæfnen.
 ich wulle wurðliche wreken :
 alle hiſ wiðer deden.
 ȝif me mot ilaſten :
 þat lif a mire breoſten.
 & hit wulle me iunne :
 þat i-fcop mone & funne.
 ne fscal nauere Childric :
 æft me bi-charren.

al hine to-fwonge.
 Nou he me ȝelt mede :
 for mine god hede².
 al³ fo me helpe drihte :
 þat fop þiſ daiȝef lihte.
 he hit fal a-bugge :
 ȝef ich mote libbe.
 10 and Colgrim and Baldolf :
 beȷne ich wolle acwelle.
 and alle hire cnihtes :
 deaþ folle þolie.
 ȝef hit wole drihte :
 þat alle þinges dihteþ.
 ich [wolle] worþliche a-wreke :
 al hiſ wiþere deades.
 ȝef hit mot i-laſte : [c. 2.]
 þat lif in mine breoſte.
 20 ne fal neuere Cheldrich :
 eft me bi-chorre.

[Col]grim.

sword cut him all to pieces! Now he yields to me meed for my good deeds. But so help me *the* Lord, who formed 'the [this] daylight, he shall 'therefore abide bitterest of all bales,—hard games;—his bane I will be [pay for it, if I may live]! [And] Colgrim and Baldulf both I will kill, and all their 'people [knights] shall suffer death. If *the* 'Ruler of Heaven [Lord] will 'grant' it, [who ruleth all things] I will worthily avenge all his hostile deeds; if the life in my breast [it] may last 'to me, and *the* *Power* that formed moon and sun will grant it to me,' never shall Childric eft deceive me!" Now called Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings:—

¹ to-fwungen?² dede?³ ac?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Nu cleopede Arður :

aðeleſt kingen.

Whar beo ȝe mine cnihtes :

ohte men & wiðte.

to horſe to horſe :

3e [he¹ haleðes gode.and we ſculled² buȝen :

touward Baðe ſwiðe.

Leteð up fuſen :

heȝe forkē.

& bringeð her þa ȝæſles :

biforē ure cnihtes. [c.2.]

and heo ſcullen hongien :

on hæȝe treowen.

þer he lette fordon :

feouwer & tweti³ childerren.

Alemainiſce mē :

of ſwide⁴ heȝe cunnen.

þa comē tidende :

to Arðure þan kinge.

þat ſeoc wes Howel hiſ mæi :

þer fore he wes ſari.

i Clud ligginde :

& þer he hine bilæfde.

Nou cleopede Arthur :

boldeſt alre kinge.

Ware be ȝe mine cnihtes :

ohte men and wihte.

nou we mote wende :

toward Baþes eande.

leteþ hongy þe ȝiſles :

þat hii ous bi-toke.

þar he lette for-don :

four and twenti children.

Alamainiſſe :

of ſwiþe heȝe cunne.

þo com tyðinge :

to Arthur þan kinge.

þat ſeak was Howel hiſ maȝ :

þar vore he waſ fori.

faſte liggende :

and ſo he hine bi-lefde.

“Where be ye, my knights, brave men and active! ‘To horse, to horse, good warriors’; ‘and we shall [now we must] march toward ‘Bath speedily [Baths end]! Let ‘high gallows be up raised, and bring here the hostages before our knights, and they shall hang on high trees [the hostages be hung, that they delivered to us]!’” There he caused to be destroyed four and twenty children, Alemainish ‘men’ of very noble race. Then came tidings to Arthur the king, that Howel, his relation, was sick,—therefore he was sorry,—lying ‘in Clud [fast]; and ‘there [so] he left him.

¹ [Probably superfluous.] 3e³ R. twenti.² ſculleð?⁴ ſwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Hizenliche fwiðe :'	and he an hizenge :'
forð he gon liðe.	toward Baþe wende.
þat he bihalues Bade ¹ :	þo he nehlehte :
beh to ane uelde.	bi-halues þan toune.
þer he alihte :	
& hiſ cnihtes alle.	he hehte alle his cnihtes :
and on mid heore burnen :	an mid hire brunies.
beorneſ ſturne.	
& he a fif dæle :	and he a fif deale :
dælde hiſ ferde ² .	10 to-deale ³ to-dealde hiſ ferde.
þa he haſde al iſet :	
and al hit iſemed.	
þa dude he on hiſ burne :' ²⁴	And he warp on him :
ibroide of ſtele.	one brunie of ſtele.
þe made on aluiſc ſmið :	þat made an haluiſ ſmiþ :
mid aðelen hiſ craſte.	mid his wiſe craſte.
he wes ihaſe Wýgar :	he was i-hote Wigar :
þe witeze wurhte.	þe wittýe wrohte.
His ſconken he helede :	His legges he helede :
mid hoſe of ſtele.	20 mid hoſen of ſtele.
Calibeorne hiſ ſweorð ⁴ :	Caliburne his ſweord :
he ſweinde bi hiſ fide.	he ſweinde bi his fide.
hit wes iworht in Aualun :	hit was i-wroht in Auylun :

Wygar.

Caliburne.

'Forth he gan to push exceeding hastily, until he beside Bath approached to a plain; there he alighted, and all his knights; and [and he in haste toward Bath went. When he approached beside the town, he ordered all his knights] on with their burnies '*the stern men*,' and he in five divisions separated his army. 'When he had set (appointed) all, and it all beseemed, then' 'he put on his burny, fashioned of steel [And he threw on him a burny of steel], that an elvish smith made, with his 'excellent [wise] craft; he was named Wygar, the witty wright. His 'shanks [legs] he covered with hose of steel. Caliburn, his sword, he hung by his side; it

¹ Baðe?³ *Superfluous*.² *feorde pr. m. but o expuncted.*⁴ *sweord?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

	mið ¹ wizele-fulle craften.	mid witfolle crafte.
	Halm he fet on hafde :'	One helm he fette on his heued :'
	hæh of ftele.	heze of ftele.
	þer ð wes moni ȝim-fton :'	þar an was mani ȝemfton :'[f. 98. c. 1.]
	al mid golde bi-gon.	al mid golde bi-gon.
	he wes Vderes ² :	
	þas aðelen kinges.	
<i>Goswhit.</i>	he wes ihaten Goswhit :	he waf ihote Gofwiht :
	ælchen oðere vnilic.	alle oþer onilich.
	He heng an his fweore :'[f. 122. c. 1.]	He heng on his fwere :
	æenne fceld deore.	11 one fceald deore.
	hif nome wes on Bruttisc :	his name was in Bruttiffe :
<i>Prid.</i>	Pridwen ihaten.	Pridewyn ihote.
	þer wes innen igrauen :	þat ³ was hine igraued :
	mid rede golde ftauen.	on anlichnisse of golde.
	an on-licnes deore :	þat was mid ifoþe :
	of drihtenes moder.	drihtene moder.
	His fpere he nom an honde :	His fpere he nam an honde :
<i>Ron.</i>	þa Ron wes ihaten.	þat Ron was ihote.
	þa he hafden al hif iweden :	20 þo he hadde al his wede :
	þa leop he on his fteden.	þo leop he on his ftede.
	þa he mihte bihalden :	þo hii mihte bi-holde :
	þa bihalues ftoden.	þat þar bi-halues were.

was wrought in Avalon, with 'magic [witful] craft. [A] helm he set on [his] head, high of steel; thereon was many gemstone, all encompassed with gold; 'it was Uthers, the noble kings'; it was named Goswhit, 'each [all] other unlike. He hung on his neck a precious shield; its name was in British called Pridwen; therein was engraved 'with red gold tracings' 'a precious image of [an image of gold, that was in sooth] Gods mother. His spear he took in hand, that was named Ron. When he had all his weeds, then leapt he on his steed. Then might 'he [they] behold, who 'stood [were] beside, the fairest knight, that *ever* host should lead; 'never saw

¹ mid ?² Vðeres ?³ þar ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þene uæirefte cniht :
 þe verde scolde leden.
 ne ifæh næuere na man :
 selere cniht nenne.
 þene him wes Arður :
 aðelest cunnes.
 þa cleopede Arður :
 ludere stæfne.
 Lou war her biforen uf :
 heðene hundes :
 þe flozen ure alderē :
 mid luðere heore craften.
 and heo us beoð on londe :
 læðest alre þīge.
 Nu fufen we hom to :
 & stærcliche heom leggen on.
 & wræken wunderliche :
 ure cū & ure riche.
 & wreken þene muchele scome :
 þat heo uf iscend habbeoð.
 þat heo ouer vðen :
 comen to Derte-muðen.
 & alle heo beoð for-fworene :
 & alle heo beoð for-lorene.

þane fairest cniht :
 þat ferde fal leade.
 þo cleopede Arthur :
 loudere stemne.
 Lo war her bi-vore ous :
 heaþene hundes.
 þat oure eldre floze :
 mid hire luþer craftes.
 and hi ous beoþ on londe :
 lopest alre þinge.
 Nou wende¹ to heom :
 and starlige ȝam legge an.
 and wreken þane mochele fame :
 þat ous hii do habbeþ.
 for alle hii beoþ for-fworen :
 and alle hii beoþ for-loren.

any man better knight none, than Arthur he was, noblest of race !' Then called Arthur with loud voice : "Lo ! where here before us *the* heathen hounds, who slew our ancestors with their wicked crafts ; and they are to us in land loathest of all things. Now march we to them, and starkly lay on them, and avenge 'worthily our kindred, and our realm, and avenge' the mickle shame 'by which they have disgraced us [that they have done to us], 'that they over *the* waves should have come to Dartmouth.' 'And [For] all they are forsworn, and all they shall be de-

¹ wende we ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. 211

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii. 211

heo beoð for-demed alle :

mid drihttenes fulste.

Fuse we nu forð ward :

uafte to-somē.

æfne al fwa softe : [c.2.]

fwa we nan ufel ne þohten.

and þenne we heð cumeð to :

mi feolf ic wullen on-fon.

an alre freomeste¹ :þat fiht ich wulle biginnen². 10

Nu we scullen riden :

and ouer lond gliden.

and na man bi his liue :

lude ne wurchen.

ah faren fæstliche :

drihten us fulsten.

þa riden agon :

Arðu[r].

Arður þe riche mon.

beh ou wælde :

& Baðe wolde ifechē. 20

þa tidende com to Childriche :

þan fstrongen & þan richen.

Nou we folle ride :

nou we folle glide.

and al þe formeft :

þat fiht ich wolle bi-gynne.

nou me helpe to dai :

drihte þat wel maȝ.

pO riden agan :

Arthur þe riche man.

wende ouer wolde :

Baþe to feche.

þe tȝding com to Childrich :

þane fstronge and þane rich. [c.2.]

stroyed; 'they shall be all put to death, with *the* Lords assistance! March we now forward, fast together, even all as softly as *if* we thought no evil; and when we come to them, myself I will commence; foremost of all the fight I will begin.' Now we shall ride, 'and over *the* land [now we shall] glide; and 'no man on *pain* of his life make noise, but fare quickly; *the* Lord us aid [all the foremost the fight I will begin; now help me to day *the* Lord that well may]!' Then Arthur the rich man gan to ride; *he* proceeded over *the* weald, 'and' Bath 'would [to] seek. The tiding came to Childric, the strong and the rich, that Arthur came

¹ feormeste?² Written bigunnen, but a plummet line over the first limb of the u indicates the correction.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þ Arður mid ferde com :'	þat Arthur mid ferde :
al ȝaru to fihte.	ȝaru cō to fihte.
Childric & hiſ ohte men :	Cheldrich mid his ohte men :
leopen heom to horſen.	leopen heom to horſe.
igripen heore wepnen :	and grepen hire wepne :
heo wuſten heom ifæied.	hii wiſte ȝam i-feiþed.
þiſ ifæh Arður :	
aðeleſt kinge.	
ifæh he ænne hæðene eorl :	þo ifeh Arthur an eorl :
hældē him to-ȝeines.	10 holde him to-ȝenef.
mid ſeouen hundred cnihten :	mid ſoue hundred cnihtef :
al ȝærewe to fihten.	al ȝaru to fihte.
þe orl him ſeolf ferden ¹ :	þe eorl him ſeolf ferde :
bi-foren al hiſ genge.	bi-vore al his genge.
& Arður him ſeolf arnde :	and Arthur him ſeolf :
bi-uoren al hiſ ferde.	bi-vore al his ferde.
Arður þe ræie :	Arthur þe bolde :
Ron nom an honde.	his ſpere nam an honde.
he ſtræhte ſcaft ſtærne :	
ſtiðimoden king.	20
hiſ horf he lette irnen :	his horf he made eannee :
þat þe eorðe dunede ² .	þat al þe erþe dunede.
Sceld he braid on breoſtē :	Sceald he breid to breoſte :

with host 'all' ready to fight. Childric 'and [with] his brave men leapt them to horse, [and] grasped their weapons,—they knew themselves to be hateful! 'Arthur saw this, noblest of kings'; 'he [Then Arthur] saw a 'heathen' earl advance against him, with seven hundred knights, all ready to fight. The earl himself approached before all his troop, and Arthur himself 'rode' before all his host. Arthur the bold took 'Ron [his spear] in hand; 'he extended (couched) *the* stark shaft, *the* stiff-minded king'; his horse he 'let [made to] run, so that [all] the earth dinned. *His* shield he drew to *his* breast,—the king was incensed,—he smote 'Borel' the earl

¹ The final letter has been struck out by a second hand.² dunc pr. m.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

[*Bor*]el.

þe king wes abolȝen. [f.122 ^b .c.1.]	þe king was a-bolwe.
he fmat Borel þene eorl :	he fmot þan eorl :
þurh ut þa breosten.	þorh vt þe breofte.
þat þæ heorte to-chā :	þat þe heorte to-chon :
and þe king cleopede anan.	and þe king cleopede anon.
þe formeste if fæie :	þe formeste his oure :
nu fulsten uf drihte.	nou helpe ous drihte.
and þa hefenliche quene :	
þa drihten akēde.	
þa cleopede Arður :	10
aðeleft kinge.	
Nu heom to nu heō to :	Nou heom to nou heom to :
þat formeft if wel idon.	þe formeste his wel idon.
Bruttes hom leiden on :	Bruttus heom leide on :
fwa me scal a luðere don.	fo me fal þe luþer don.
heo bittere fwipen ȝefuen :	bitere fwipes hii ȝeuen :
mid axes & mid fweordes.	mid axes and mid cniues.
þer feolle Cheldriches men :	þar folle Childreches men :
fulle twa þuſend.	folle two þouſend.
fwa neuere Arður ne lef :	20 so neuere Arthur ne leas :
næuere ænne of hiſ.	on of his manne.
þer weoren Sæxiſce men :	
folken alre ærmeft.	
& þa Alemainiſce men :	
ȝeomereft alre leoden.	
Arður mid hiſ fweorde :	Arthur mid hiſ fweorde :

throughout the breast, so that the heart sundered. And the king called anon, "The foremost is 'dead [ours]! Now help us *the* Lord, 'and the heavenly queen, who *the* Lord bore!" Then called Arthur, noblest of kings': "Now to them! now to them! The commencement is well done!" *The* Britons laid on them, as men should do on [the] wicked; they gave bitter strokes with axes and with 'swords [knives]. There fell of Childrics men full two thousand, so *that* never Arthur lost 'ever' one of his [men]; 'there were *the* Saxish men of all folk most wretched, and the Alemainish men most miserable of all people!' Arthur with his sword 'wrought destruction

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fæie-scipe wurhte.
 al þat he smat to :
 hit wes sone for-don.
 Al wæs þe king abolȝen :
 swa bið þe wilde bar.
 þēne he i þan mæste :
 monie [fwyn] imeteþ.
 þis isæh Childric :
 & gon him to charren.
 & beh him ouer Auene :
 to burȝen him seoluen.
 And Arður him læc to :
 swa hit a liun weoren.
 & fufde heom to flode :
 monie þer weoren fæie. [c.2.]
 þer sunken to þan grūde :
 fif & twenti hūdred.
 þa al wes Auene stram :
 mid stele ibrugged.
 Cheldric ouer þat wate¹ flæh :
 mid fiftene hundred cnihten.
 þohte forð siðen :
 & ouer fæ liðen.
 Arður isæh Colgrim :

bitere swipes fwipte.
 al þat he smot to :
 hit was sone for-do.
 Al waf þe king a-bolwe :
 so his þe wilde bor.
 wane he in þan maste :
 many fwyn i-meteþ.
 þis i-feh Cheldric : [f. 98^b. c. 2.]
 and gan him to flende.
 10 and iwende ouer Auene :
 to borȝe him fram arme.
 And Arthur heom leap to :
 ase hit a lȝon were.
 and wende him to flode :
 and manie weren fæie.
 þar funke to þan grunde :
 fouene an twenti hundred.
 þat al was þe streim of Auene :
 mid stele i-brugged.
 Childrich ouer þan water fleap :
 mid fiftene hundred cnihtes.
 he þohte forþ wende :
 and ouer see failȝ.
 Arthur isah Colgrim :

*Auene.**Childric.**Colgrim.*

[bitter strokes struck]; all that he smote at, it was soon destroyed! The king was all enraged as is the wild boar, when he in the beech-wood meeteth many swine. Childric saw this, and gan him to 'turn [flee], and 'bent him [went] over *the* Avon, to save 'himself [him from harm]. And Arthur 'approached [leapt] to 'him [them], as *if* it were a lion, and 'drove them [advanced him] to *the* flood; 'there [and] many were slain; there sunk to the bottom 'five [seven] and twenty hundred, so that all 'Avons stream [the stream of Avon] was bridged with steel! Childric over the water fled, with fifteen hundred knights; [he] thought forth to push, and sail over

¹ water?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

climben to munten. clembe to on hulle.

buzen to þan hulle :

Baðe. þa ouer Baðen ftondeð.*Baldulf.* & Baldulf beh him after : and Baldolf wende after :

mid seoue þusend cnihtes. mid soue þousend cnihtes.

heo þohten i þan hulle : hii þohten o þan hulle :

hæhliche at-ftonden. hehliche at-ftonde.

weorien heom mid wepnen :

& Arður¹ awæmmen.*Arður.* þa isæh Arður : 10

aðelest kingen.

Colgrim. whar Colgrim at-ftod :

& æc stal wrohte.

þa clupede þe king : þo cleopede þe king :

kenliche lude. kenliche londe.

Balde mine þeines : Bolde mine cnihtes :

buhȝeð to þā hullef. boueþ to þan hulle.

For ȝerstendæi wes Colgrim : For ȝorftendai was Colgrim :

monnen alre kenneft. man alre kenneft.

nu him is al swa þere gat : 20 nou hī his ase wo ase þe got :

þer he þene hul wat. þar he þane hulle wot.

hæh uppen hulle : heh vppen hulle :

fehteð mid hornen. fihteþ mid hornes.

the sea. Arthur saw Colgrim climb to 'the mount [a hill], 'retreat to the hill that standeth over Bath'; and Baldulf went after 'him,' with seven thousand knights; they thought on the hill to withstand nobly, 'defend them with weapon, and do injury to Arthur. When Arthur saw, noblest of kings, where Colgrim withstood, and eke battle wrought,' then called the king, keenly loud : " My bold 'thanes [knights], advance to the 'hills [hill]! For yesterday was Colgrim 'of all men keenest [man keenest of all], but now 'it is to him all as to [he is as woe as] the goat, where he guards the hill; high upon *the* hill *he* fighteth with horns, when the wild

¹ The last two letters are interlined.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þenne comed¹ þe wlf wilde :
 touward hire winden.

þeh þe wulf beon ane :
 butē ælc imane.

& þer weoren in ane loken :
 fif hundred gaten.

þe wulf heom to iwiteð :
 and alle heom abiteð.

Swa ich wulle nu to dæi : [f.123.c.1.]
 Colgrī al fordemen.

ich am wulf & he if gat :
 þe gume ſcal beon fæie.

þa ȝet cleopede Arður :
 aðeleſt kingen.

ȝurſtendæi wes Baldulf :
 cnihten alre baldeſt.

nu he ſtant on hulle :
 & Auene bi-haldeð.

hu ligeð i þan ſtræme :
 ſtelene fiſces.

mid ſweorde bi-georede :
 heore fund if awemmed.

heore ſcalen wleoteð :
 ſwulc gold-faȝe ſceldes.

wane comeþ þe wolf :
 wilde toward him winde.

þeh þe wolf be one :
 wiþ houte heni imone.

and þar were on flockes :
 two hundred gotes.

þe wolf to witeþ :
 and alle a-biteþ.

So ich wolle nou to dai :
 Colgrīm for-deme.

ich ham wolf and he got :
 þat ſal deaþ þolie.

ȝet him ſpekeþ Arthur : [c.2.]
 baldeſt alre kinge.

ȝorſtendai was Baldolf :
 cniht alre baldeſt.

nou he ſtond on hulle :
 and Auene bi-holdeþ.

hou liggeþ in þan ſtreme :
 ſtelene fiſces.

wolf approacheth toward him. Though the wolf be alone, without 'each [any] herd, and there were in 'a fold five [flocks two] hundred goats, the wolf to them goeth, and all 'them' biteth. So will I now to-day Colgrim 'all' destroy; I am *the* wolf and he 'is' *the* goat; 'the man shall die [that shall suffer death]!' 'The' yet 'called [speaketh him] Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Yesterday was Baldulf 'of all knights [knight of all] boldest, *but* now he standeth on *the* hill, and beholdeth *the* Avon, how *the* steel fishes lie in the stream! 'Armed with sword, their life is destroyed; their scales float like gold-dyed shields; there float their fins,

¹ comed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer fleoteð heore spiten :
 fwulc hit spæren weoren.

þis beoð seolcuðe þing :
 ifizen to þissē londe.

fwulche deor an hulle :
 fwulche fises in walle.

Childric.

ʒurstendæi wes þe kaifere :
 kenneft alre kingen.

nu he is bicumen hunte :
 & hornes him fulieð.

flihð ouer bradne wæld :
 beorkeð his hundes.

he hæfeð bihaluf Baðen :
 his huntinge bilæfued.

freom his deore he flicð :
 & we hit scullen fallen.

and his balde ibeot :
 to nohte ibriȝen.

and swa we scullē brukien :
 rihte bi-ȝæten.

20

Arður.

¶ Efne þan worde :
 þa þe kīȝ seide.

he bræid hæȝe his sceld :
 forn to his breosten.

[c. 2.]

he igrap his spere longe :

þis wonderes beoþ :
 ifize to londe.

foch fis in wille :
 foch deor on hulle.

ʒorstenday was Cheldrich :
 kenneft alre kinge.

nou he his bi-come honte :
 and hornes him folweþ.

flicþ ouer broðne feld :
 borkeþ his hundes.

he hæweþ bi-haluf Baþe :
 his hontȳnge bi-lefued.

fram his deor he flicþ :
 we hit folle-falle.

and his balde ibeot :

to nohte ibriȝen.

and swa we scullē brukien :

rihte bi-ȝæten.

Efne þan worde :
 þat þe king saide.

he breid heȝe his scelde :
 vp to his breoste.

he grop his spere longe :

as *if* it were spears'. These are 'marvellous things [wonders] come to 'this' land; such beasts on *the* hill, such 'fishes [fish] in *the* stream! Yesterday was 'the kaiser [Childric] keenest of all kings; now is he become *a* hunter, and horns him follow; *he* flieth over *the* broad 'weald [field]; his hounds bark; he hath beside Bath his hunting deserted; from his deer he flieth, 'and' we it shall fell, 'and his bold threats bring to nought; and so we shall enjoy *our* rights gained.' " Even with the words that the king said, he drew his shield high 'before [up to] his breast; he grasped his long spear, 'his horse he gan [and gan his horse] spur. Nigh

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hif horf he gon fporie.	and gan his horf fporie.
Neh al fwa fwi ¹ :	Neh al fo fwiþe :
swa þe fuþel flizeð.	fo þe fowel flieþ.
fuleden þan kinge :	folwede þan kinge :
fif and twenti þuþend.	fif and twenti þouþend.
whitere monnen :	
wode under weþnen.	
hældē to hulle :	hii wende to þan hulle :
mid hæþere ftrēgðe.	mid baldere ftrengþe.
and uppen Colgrime fmiten :	and vppe Colgrī fmite :
mid fwiðe fmærte biten.	fwiþe fmorte bitef.
And Colgrim ² heom þer hente :	And Colgrim 3am hende :
and feolde þa Bruttes to grūde.	and fulde þe Bruttus.
i þan uormefte ræfe :	in þe forfte reafe :
fulle fif hundred.	folle fif hūðred.
þat iſæh Arður :	þis iſah Arthur :
aðeleſt kingen.	
and wrað hī ³ him iwræððed :	and wrappede him fwiþe :
wunder ane fwiðe.	
and þus cleopien a-gon :	and cleopie agan :
Arður þe hæþe mā.	Arthur þe heþe man.
War beo 3e Bruttes :	Ware be 3eo Bruttef :
balde mine beornes.	bolde mine cnihtef.
her ftondeð us biuoren :	here ftondeþ vs bi-vore : [f. 99. c. 1.]

all so swift as the fowl flieth, five and twenty thousand 'of brave men, mad under arms,' followed the king; [they] proceeded to the hill with 'great [bold] strength, and smote upon Colgrim 'with' exceeding smart strokes. And Colgrim them 'there' received, and felled the Britons 'to ground'; in the 'foremost [first] attack fell five hundred. Arthur saw 'that [this], 'noblest of kings,' and wrathed him 'wondrously' much; and 'thus' gan to call Arthur, the noble man: "Where be ye, Britons, my bold 'men [knights]! Here stand before us our foes all chosen; 'my good warriors,

¹ fwiðe?² grum, *pr. m.*, but corrected in the margin.³ *Sic MS.* These two words are probably superfluous.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

vre ifan alle icorē.	oure fon al icore.
gumen mine gode :	go we mid ifunde :
legge we heom to grunde.	and legge we heom to grunde.
Arður igrap his sweord riht :	Arthur grop his fweord riht :
& he fmat ænne Sexife cniht.	and fmot ane Saxiffe cniht.
þ þ sweord ¹ þ wes fwa god :	þat þe fweord þat was fo god :
æt þan toþen at-ftod.	at þe middel hit aftod.
& he fmat enne oðer :	and he fmot on oþer :
þat wes þas cnihtes broðer.	þes cnihtes broþer.
þat hiſ halm & hiſ hæfd :	þat his helm and his heued :
halden to grunde.	wende in þan felde.
þene þridde dunt he ſone ȝaf :	þane þridde dunt he ſone ȝeaf :
& enne cniht atwa clæf.	and one cniht he al to-cleof.
þa weoren Bruttes : [f. 123 ^b . c. 1.]	þo weren Bruttus :
fwiðe ibalded.	fwiþe ibolded.
& leiden o þan Sæxen :	and leiden on þe Saxiffe :
læzen fwi ² ſtronge.	mid hire ſtronge mihte.
mid heore ſperen longe :	
and mid fweoreden ſwiðe ſtrōge.	
Sexes þer uullen :	þat Saxiffe þar folle :
& fæie-ſih makeden.	manie to grunde.
bi hundred bi hundred :	
hælden to þan grunde.	

[go we in safety, and] lay we them to *the* ground!" Arthur grasped his sword right, and 'he' smote a Saxish knight, so that the sword that was so good at the 'teeth [middle it] stopt; and he smote another, 'who was' this knights brother, so that his helm and his head fell 'to *the* ground [on the field]; the third blow he soon gave, and a knight 'in two clove [he all clove asunder]. Then were *the* Britons greatly emboldened, and laid on the Saxons 'laws (blows) most strong [with their strong might,] 'with their long spears and with swords most strong'; [so that] *the* Saxons there fell, 'and made *their* death-time, by hundreds and hundreds sank to the [many

¹ *Sup. ras.*² *fwiðe? Cf. v. 19581.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bi þufund & bi þufend :'	
þer feollen æuere in þene grund.	
þa ifeh Colgrim :	þo ifeh Colgrī :
wær Arður com touward him.	war Arthur com toward him.
ne mihte Colgrī for þan wæle :	ne mihte he fliht makie :
fleon a nare fide.	in neuere one fide.
þer fæht Baldulf :	
bi-fiden his broðer.	
þa cleopede Arður :	þo faide Arthur :
ludere ſtefne.	10 to Colgrim þan kene.
Her ich cume Colgim :	
to cuððen wit ſcullen ræchen.	
nu wit ſcullen þiſ lond dalen :	Nou we ſolle þiſ kinelond :
ſwa þe bið alre laððeſt.	deale ous bi-twine.
Æfne þan worde :	E Fne þan word : [Ar]ður.
þa þe king fæide.	þat þe king faide.
hiſ brode ſwærd he up ahof :	hiſ brode ſweord he vt droh :
and hærdliche adun floh.	
and ſmat Colgimes hælme :	and vppe Colgrim hiſ helm ſmot.
þ he amidde to-clæf.	20
and þere burē hod :	and to-cleof þane brunie hod :
þat hit at þe breoſte at-ſtod.	þat hit at þe breoſte a-ſtod.
And he ſweinde touward Baldulfe :	And he a wiþer ſweýncde :

to] ground, 'by thousands and thousands fell there ever on the ground!' When Colgrim saw where Arthur came toward him, 'Colgrim [he] might not 'for the slaughtered flee on any [make flight on ever one] side; 'there fought Baldulf beside his brother.' Then 'called [said] Arthur 'with loud voice [to Colgrim the keen]: "'Here I come, Colgrim! 'to *the* realm we *two* shall reach'; now we shall divide this 'land [kingdom between us], 'as shall be to thee loathest of all!'" Even with the words that the king said, his broad sword he 'up heaved [out drew], 'and hardily down struck,' and smote 'Colgrims [upon Colgrim his] helm, 'so that he clove *it* in *the* midst, and [clove asunder] the burnys hood, so that it (the sword) stopt at the breast. And he smote to' ward' Baldulf [his brother] 'with his left

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid his swiðrē hōde.
 & swipte þat hæfued of :
 forð mid þan helme.
 þa loh Arður :
 þe alðele¹ king.
 and þus ȝeddien agon :
 mid gomenfulle worden.

Lien nu þere Colgim :
 þu were iclumben hæȝe. [c. 2.]
 and Baldulf þi broðer :
 lið bi þire fide.
 nu ich al þif kine-lond :
 fette an eorwer³ ahȝere hond.
 dales & dunef :

Colgrim.

& al mi drihtliche uolc.⁴
 þu clumbe a þiffen hulle :
 wunder ane hæȝe.
 fwulc þu woldest to hæuene :
 nu þu scalt to hælle.
 þer þu miht kenne :
 mucche of þine cunne.
 And gret þu þer Hengeft :
 þe cnihten wes faȝereft.

to Baldolf his broþer.
 and swipte þat heued of :
 forþ mid þan helme.
 þo loh Arthur þe king : [c. 2.]
 and þes word faide.

Li nou þar Colgrȝm :
 þe² were iclemde to heȝe.
 and Baldolf þin broþer :
 liþ bi þine fide.
 nou ich al þif kinelond :
 fette in ȝoure tweire hond.

ȝe clemde to heȝe :
 vppen þiffe hulle.
 afe þeh ȝe wolde to heuene :
 ac nou ȝe mote to helle.
 and þare ȝeo mawe kenne :
 moche of ȝoure cunne.
 And greteþ þare Hengeft :
 þat was cniht faireft.

hand [again], and struck off the head, forth with the helm. Then laughed Arthur, the 'noble' king, and 'thus gan to speak with gameful words [said these words]: "Lie now there, Colgrim; thou wert climbed [too] high; and Baldulf, thy brother, lie by thy side; now set I all this kingdom in your 'own [two] hands; 'dales and downs, and all my good folk!' 'Thou [Ye] climbed 'on [upon] this hill 'wondrously [too] high, as 'if thou wouldst [though ye would] *ascend* to heaven; [but] now 'thou shalt [ye must] to hell, [and] there 'thou mayest [ye may] know much of 'thy [your] kindred. And greet 'thou [ye] there Hengest, that was fairest of knights, Ebissa, [Octa]

¹ R. aðele.² þou?³ eower?⁴ This line is sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Ebiffa & Offa :
 Octa & of þine cūne ma.
 and bide heom þer wunie :
 wintres & fumeref.
 & we scullen on londe :
 libben in blisse.
 bidden for eower faulen :
 þat fel ne wurðen heom nauære.
 & scullen her æuwer ban :
 biſide Baðe ligen. 10
 Arður þe king cleopede :
 Cador þene kene.
 of Cornwale he wes eorl :
 þe cniht wes fwiðe kene.
 Hercne me Cador :
 þu ært min aȝe cun.
 Nu iſ Childric iuloȝen :
 & awæiward itohȝen.
 he þencheð mid iſunde :
 aȝen cumen liðen. 20
 Ah nim of mire uerde :
 fif þuſend monnen.
 & fareð forð rihtes :
 bi dæie & bi nihte.
 þat þu cumme to þare fæ :

Ebiffa Octa and Offa :
 and of þine cunne mo.
 and bide heom þare wonie :
 wýntres and fomeref.
 and we ſollen here in londe :
 libbe in blisse.
 Arthur þo ſaide :
 to Cador þe kene.
 of Cornwale he was eorl :
 þat was a cniht kene.
 Hercne me Cador :
 þou hart min eorl deore.
 Nou his Childrich a-ſloȝe :
 and a-weiward itowe.
 and þencheþ mid iſunde :
 aȝein hider wende.
 Ac nim of mine ferde :
 fif þouſend manne.
 and far þe forþ riht :
 bi daie and bi niht.
 þat þou come to þare ſée :

and Ossa, 'Octa,' and more of thy kin, and bid them there dwell winter and summer; and we shall [here] in land live in bliss; 'pray for your souls, that happiness never come to them; and here shall your bones lie, beside Bath!' " Arthur, 'the king, called [then said to] Cador, the keen;—of Cornwall he was earl, 'the knight was most [that was a knight] keen:—"Hearken to me, Cador, thou art 'mine own kin [my dear earl]. Now is Childric flown, and awayward gone; 'he [and] thinketh with safety again to come [hither]. But take of my host five thousand men, and go forth-right, by day and by night, until thou come to the sea, before (previous to) Chil-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bi-foren Childriche.	bi-vore Childriche.
and al þat þu miht biwīnen :	and al þat þou miht bi-winne :
bruc hit on wunnen.	brouket ¹ hit mid wonne.
& ȝif þu miht þene kaifere : ² [f. 124.c.1.]	and ȝef þou miht þan cayfer :
ufeſe aquellen þere.	eniwiſe a-cwelle þar.
ich þe ȝifue ² to mede :	ihe þe ȝefe to mede : ³ [f. 99 ^b .c.1.]
al Doreſete.	al Dorſete.
Al ſwa þe aðele king :	Onneþe hadde þe kīg :
þas word haſede iſæid.	þat word ibroht to þe hende.
Cador ſprong to horſe :	10 þat Cador ne ſparng ³ to horſe :
ſwa ſpærc him doh of fure.	aſe ſparc doþ of fure.
fulle ſeoue þuſend :	folle ſoue þuſend :
<i>Cador.</i> fuleden þan eorle.	folwede þan eorle.
Cador þe kene :	
& muchel of hiſ cunne.	
wenden ouer woldes :	hii wende ouer feldes :
& ouer wildernes.	and ouer wildernes.
ouer dales & ouer dunes :	
ouer deope wateres.	
Cador cuðe þene wæi :	20 Cador couþe þane way :
þe toward hiſ cunde læi.	þat touward hiſ cupþe lay.
an oueſte he wende fuliwif :	and an hiȝenge wende foliwis :
<i>Tottenais.</i> riht toward Toteneis.	riht touward Totenas.

dric; and all that thou mayest win, possess it with joy; and if thou mayest 'with evil [anywise] kill there the kaiser, I will give thee all Dorset to meed." 'All as the noble king these words had said, [Scarcely had the king brought the words to the end, before] Cador sprang to horse, as spark 'it' doth from fire; full seven thousand followed the earl. 'Cador the keen, and much of his kindred,' [They] proceeded over 'wealds [fields], and over wilderness, 'over dales and over downs, *and* over deep waters.' Cador knew the way that toward his country lay, 'by *the* nearest he [and in haste] proceeded full surely right toward Totnes, day and night, [until] he

¹ brouke? ² ȝifuen, *pr. m.*, but *n* erased. ³ ſprang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

dæies & nihtes :	daizes and nihtes :	
he com þere forð rihtes.	forte he com þer forþ rihtes.	
swa neuere Childric nuste :	Childrich noþing nuste :	
of his cume nane cufte.	of his come no cufte.	
Cador com to cuððe :	Cador com to cuppe :	
bi-uoren Childriche.	bi-fore Cheldriche.	
and lette hī fufen ¹ biforen :	he lette wende him bi-vore :	
al þas londes folc.	al þat londes folk.	
cheorles ful ȝepe :	cheorles fol ȝepe :	
mid clubben swiðe græte.	mid clubbes wel grete.	
mid spæren and mid græte wazen :		
to þan ane icoren.		
and duden heom alle clane :	and dude ȝam alle cleane :	
into þan fciþen grunde.	into þan fipef grūde.	
& hæhte heom þere lutie wel :	and hehte heom lotie wel :	Childric.
þat Childric of heom neore war.	þat Cheldrich nere noht war.	
& þenne his folc come :	ac wane his folk come :	
& in wolden climben.	and in wolde clembe.	
heore botten igripen :	Nimeþ ȝoure badtes :	
and ohtliche on smiten.	and hahtliche ȝou ftoorieþ.	
mid heore wazen & mid heore		
spæren :		
[c. 2.]		
murðren Childriches heren.		

came there forth-right, 'so *that*' Childric 'never [nothing] knew any manner of his coming. Cador came to *the* country before Childric, 'and [he] caused to advance before him all '*the* folk of the land [the land-folk]; churls full sagacious, with clubs 'exceeding [well] great, 'with spears and with great staves, chosen for the purpose'; and placed them all clean into the ships holds, and ordered them 'there' to stoop well (low), that Childric were not aware 'of them'; 'and [but] when his folk came, and in would climb, 'to grasp their ["Take *ye* your] bats, and bravely 'on smite [stir you!"]'; 'with their staves and with their spears to murder Childrics host.' The churls did all, as Cador them taught. To

¹ This word is on erasure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Al duden þa cheorles :
 swa Cador heom tæhte.
 To þan scipen wenden :
 wiðer-fulle cheorles.
 in æuer ælche scipe :
 oder¹ half hundred.
 And Cador þe kene bæh :
 in toward ane wude hæh.
 fif mile from þan stude :
 þær þæ stoden þa scipen². 10
 and hudde hine on wille :
 wūder ane stille.
 Childric com fōe :
 ouer wald liðen.
 walde to þan scipen fleon³ :
 and fufen of lōden.
 Sone fwa Cador ifæh :
 þat wes þe kene eorl.
 þat Childric wes an eorðen :
 bitweonen hī and þā cheorlen.
 þa clupede Cador :
 ludere stefne. 21
 Wær beo ȝe cnihtes :
 ohte men & wihte.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Al dude þe cheorles :
 afe Cador ȝam tahte.
TO þan fipes wend :
 wiþerfolle cheorles.
 in euereche fipe :
 oþer half hundred.
 And Cador þe kene beh :
 and toward one wode teh.
 fif mile frā þan stude :
 þar þe fipes stode. [c. 2.]
 and hudde him an wile :
 wonderliche stille.
 And Cheldrich com sone :
 ouer dounes wende.
 wolde to þan fipes fleon :
 and stelen vt of londe.
 Sone so Cador þis ifeh :
 þat was þe eorl kene.
 þat Childrich was bi-twixe :
 him and þe cheorles.
 þo faide Cador :
 loudere stemne.
 Ware beo ȝe cnihtes :
 ohte men and wihte.

the ships proceeded *the* valiant churls; in every ship *a* hundred and half. And Cador the keen withdrew, 'in [and] toward a wood 'high [marched], five miles from the place where the ships stood; and hid him a while, wondrously still. [And] Childric soon approached, over *the* 'weald [downs]; *and* would flee to the ships, and 'push from [steal out of] land. So soon as Cador saw [this], who was the earl keen, that Childric was 'in land,' 'between [betwixt] him and the churls, then 'called [said] Cador, with loud voice: "Where be ye, knights, brave men and active?

¹ oðer?² þær þa scipen stoden?³ *R.* fleon.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Iþenched¹ what Ardur² :
 þe if ure aðele king.
 at Baðen us bi-fohte :
 ær we wenden from hirede.
 Leou war fufeð Childric :
 & fleō wule of londe.
 and þencheð to Alemaine :
 þer beoð hif ældren.
 and wule bi-ȝiten ferde :
 and æft cumen hidere. 10
 and wule faren hider in :
 and þencheð awrækē Colgrim.
 and Baldulf hif broðer :
 þæ bi³ Baðen reſteð.

Ah no abide henæuere þæredæȝen : Ac ne abide we neuere þane day :
 ne ſcal he no ȝif we maȝen. ne ſal he no ȝef ich maȝ.
 Æfne þere ſpæche : [f.124^b.c.1.] Efne þan ſpeche :
 þa ſpac þe eorl riche. þat ſpac þe eorl riche.
 and on ueſt he gon ridē :
 þe reh⁴ wes on moden. 20
 halden ut of wude ſcaȝe :
 ſcalkes fwiðe kene. hii leopen vt of wode :
 afe hit lýons were.

Bethink *ye* what Arthur, who is 'our noble king [lord of us all], at Bath besought us, ere we went from 'the host [him]. Lo! where Childric wendeth, and will 'flee [fare] from *the* land; and thinketh *to pass* to Alemaine, where his ancestors 'are [dwell]; and will obtain *an* army, and eft 'come hither, [seek this land, for] 'and will fare in hither; and thinketh 'to avenge Colgrim, and Baldulf, his brother, 'who rest at Bath.' But 'he [we] never shall abide the day; he shall not, if 'we [I] may *prevent him!*' Even with the speech, that the powerful earl spake, 'and promptly he gan ride, that was stern in mood; 'the warriors most keen advanced out of *the* wood-shaw [they leapt out of *the* wood, as *if* it were lions], and

¹ Iþencheð?² R. Arður.³ This word is interlined by a second hand.⁴ On erasure, but by first hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and after Cheldriche :
 þan strongen & þan richen.
 Cheldriches cnihtes :
 bi-fehȝen heom baften.
 ifehȝen ouer wolden :
 winden heore-mærken.
 winnien ouer ueldes :
 fif þuſed ſceldes.
 þa iwærð Childric :
 chærful¹ an heorten.
 and þas word ſæide :
 þe riche kaiſere.
 þiſ iſ Arður þe king :
 þe alle uſ wule aquellen.
 fleo we nu biliue :
 & in to ſcipen fuſen.
 and liðen forð mid watere :
 ne recchen we nauere wudere.
 þa Childric þe kaiſere :
 þas word hæuede ifæid.
 þa gon he to fleōne :
 feondliche ſwiðe.
 & Cador þe kene :
 com him after ſone.

and after Cheldrich :
 þan kene and þan riche.
 Childreches cnihtes :
 ifehȝe bi-hinde.
 hearne ouer feldef :
 fif þouſend ſcealdef.
 þar iwarþ Cheldrich :
 forþfolle in heorte.
 and þeſ word ſaide :
 þe riche cayſer.
 þiſ hiſ Arthur þe king : [f.100.c.1.]
 þat al vs wole a-cwelle.
 fleo we nou ſwiþe :
 and in to ſiþe wende.
 and wende forþ mid wedere :
 ne reche we neuere wodere.
ÞO Childrich þe cayſere :
 þiſ word hadde ifaid þare.
 þo gonne hii to fleonde :
 feondeliche ſwiþe.
 and Cador þe kene :
 com ȝam after ſone.

after Childric *pursued*, the 'strong [keen] and the rich. Childrics knights looked behind 'them; *they* saw over *the* weald *the* standards wind'; 'approach [run] over *the* fields five thousand shields. Then became Childric 'careful [sorrowful] in heart, and these words said the powerful kaiser: "This is Arthur the king, who will us all kill; flee we now quickly, and into ship go, and voyage forth with *the* 'water [weather], reck we never whither!" When Childric the kaiser had said [there] these words, then gan 'he [they] to flee exceeding quickly; and Cador the keen came soon after 'him [them]. Childric and his knights came to ship forth-right; they

¹ cærful?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Childric and his cnihtes :	Childrich and his cnihtes :
to fcipe comen forð rihtes.	to fiþe come forþ rihtes.
heo wenden þa fciþen ftronge :	hii wende þe fiþes ftronge :
to fculuen ¹ from þan londe.	feue fram þan londe.
þæ cheorles mid heore botten :	þe cheorles mid hire battef :
weoren þer wið innen.	weren þar wiþ ine.
þa botten heo up heouen :	þe battes hii vp houen :
& adun riht floȝen.	and a-dun rihttes flowen.
þer wes sone iflaȝen :	þar was sone iflaȝe :
moni cniht mid heoŕ wahȝen.	10 mani cniht mid hire wawes.
wið heore pic-forcken : [c.2.]	mid hire pic-forken :
heo ualden heom to grundē.	feolde heom to grūde.
Cador & his cnihtes :	Cador and his cnihtes :
floȝen heō baften.	flowen heom bi-hinde.
þa ifah Childric :	þo ifeh Cheldrich :
þ heō ilomp liðerlic.	þat him bi-fulle luþerlich.
þa al hiſ folc mucle :	
feol to þan grūde.	
nu i-fæh he þer bilaluef ² :	
æenne swiðe mare hul.	20
þat water tið þer under :	he fleoþ to one hulle :
þat Teine if ihatē.	þat Teyne his i-hote.
þa hulle ihaten Teinnewic :	to þan hul of Teýnifwich :

Teine.

weened to shove the strong ships from the land. The churls with their bats were there within; the bats they up heaved, and adown right swung; there was soon slain many a knight with their clubs; with their pitch-forks 'they' felled them to ground, and Cador and his knights slew them behind. 'Then [When] saw Childric, that *it* befell to 'them [him] evilly; 'that all his mickle folk fell to the ground; now saw he there beside a hill exceeding great'; 'the water floweth there under, that is named Teine; the hill is named Teinewic; thitherward [he fled to a hill, that is named Teyne; to the hill of Teyneswich fast] fled Childric, as quickly as he might, with

¹ fcuuen?² bihaluef?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þider ward flæh Childric.
 swa fwiðe swa he mihte :
 mid feouwer & twenti cnihten.
 þa ifæh Cador :
 hu hit þa uerde þer.
 þat þe kaifere flæh :
 & touwarde þæ hulle tæh.
 and Cador him after :
 swa swiðe swa he mahte.
 and him to tuhte :
 & hine of-toc sone.
 þa faide Cador :
 þe eorl swiðe kene.
 Abid abid Child'ic :
 ich wulle þe ȝefen Teinewic.
 Cador his fweord an-hof :
 and he Childric of-floh.
 Monie þe þer fluȝen :
 to þan watere heo tuhȝen.
 inne Teine þan watere :
 þer heo for-wurðen.
 al Cador awælde² :
 þat he quic funde.
 and summe heo crupen i to þan

fwiþe fleoh Cheldrich.
 so fwiþe so he mihte :
 mid four and twenti cnihtes.
 þat ifeh Cador :
 ou hit þo ferde þar.
 he him went after :
 so fwiþe so he mihte.
 and him of-tok sone :
 in lutele tyme.
 þo faide Cador þe eorl :
 þat cniht¹ was fwiþe kene. [c. 2.]
 Abid abid Cheldrich :
 ich wole ȝeue þe Teyneswich.
 Cador his sweord a-hof :
 and he Cheldrich of-sloh.
 Many þo þar floȝen :
 and to þan watere toȝen.
 and þar hi a-dreinte :
 for Cador his heiȝe.
 al Ca[dor] a-fulde :
 [wude : þat he cwik funde.

four and twenty knights. 'Then [That] Cador saw, how it then fared there, 'that the kaiser fled, and toward the hill retreated ;' 'and Cador *pur-sued* [he went] after him, as speedily as he might, and 'came up to him, and 'overtook him soon [in little time]. Then said Cador, the earl [who was knight] most keen : "Abide, abide, Childric ! I will give thee Teinewic !" Cador heaved up his sword, and he Childric slew. Many 'that [then] there fled, [and] to the water 'they' drew ; [and] 'in Teine the water,' there they 'perished [were drowned, for Cador his dread] ; Cador 'killed [felled] all that he found alive ; 'and some they crept into the wood, and all he them there

¹ cniht?² acwælde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and alle he heō þer for-dude.

þa Cador heom haueden alle ouer þo Cador þat fiht hadde ouercome:
cumen :

and æc al þat lond inumen.

and þat lond to him inome.

he sette gīt swiðe god :

he sette griþ fwiþe god :

þat þer after longe stod. [f. 125.c.1.] þat þar after lange stod.

þeh ælc mon beere an honde :

þeh ech man bere an honde :

behʒef of golde.

bezef of golde.

ne durfte nauere gume nan :

ne dorfte no gome :

oðerne ufele ig^eten¹.op² vuele igrete.

Arður wes forð iwende :

10

A Rthur was forþ iwende :

Arður.

in to Scotlondē.

in to Scotlonde.

for Howel lai inne Clud :

for Howel lay ine Clud :

faſte bicluſed.

faſte bi-cluſed.

Haſden Scottes hine bi-læien :

Hadde Scottes hine bi-leye :

mid luðere heore craftē. [icumen : mid hire luþer craftes.

and ʒif Ardur² neore þe rader³ and ʒef he nadde þe raþer bi-come :þenne weoren Houwel inumen. Howel hadde bi nome⁴.

and al hiſ folc þer iflaʒen :

and hiſ folk þar iflaʒe :

and idon of lif-daʒen.

and idon of lif-daʒe.

Ah Arður com sone :

20

Ac Arthur com ſone :

mid ſelere ſtrengðe.

and Scottes to fleōne :

and Scottes to fleonde.

feor of þan ærde.

destroyed.' When Cador had overcome 'them all [the fight], and 'eke all' the land [to him] taken, he set peace most good, that thereafter long stood; though each man bare in hand rings of gold, durst 'never' any man greet *another* evilly. Arthur was forth marched into Scotland; for Howel lay in Clud, fast inclosed. *The* Scots had besieged him with their wicked crafts; and if 'Arthur were [he had] not the earlier 'come [arrived], 'then' 'were [had been] Howel taken, and 'all' his folk there slain, and deprived of life-day. But Arthur came soon, 'with good strength,' and *the* Scots

¹ ig^eæten *at first, but æ expuncted.*³ raðer?² Arður?⁴ be inome?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in to Muræine :
 mid mucle mon-weorede.
 And Cador com to Scotlonde :
 þer he Arður ifunde.
 Arður and Cador :
 into Clud ferden.
 & funden þer Howel :
 mid hahære bliffe an fel.
 of his seocneffe :
 ifund wes iwurðen. 10
 muchel wes þa bliffe :
 þæ þa wes in burȝe.
 Scottes weoren inne Mureine :
 and þer þeohten wunien.
 & mid bolde heore worden :
 heore beot makeden.
 and sæiden þat heo wolden :
 þa riche walden.
 and Arður þer abiden :
 mid baldere ftrenðe. 20
 for ne durste nauere Arður :
 for his life come þer.
 þa iherde Arður :
 ærhðen bidæled. [c. 2.]
 whæt Scottes hafden ifæid :

in to Morayne :
 mid mochelere ferde.
 And Cador com to Scotlōd :
 þar he Arthur funde.
 Arthur and Cador :
 into Clud wende.
 and funden þar Howel :
 mid baldere bliffe.
 of al his seacniffe :
 hol was i-worþe. [f. 100^b. c. 1.]
 moche was þe bliffe :
 þat þo was in borwe.
 Scottes weren in Morayne :
 and þare þohte wonie.
 and faide heom bi-twine :
 mid hire bolde wordef.
 þat Arthur nolde neuere :
 for his lifue come þare.
 þis ihorde Arthur :
 baldest alre kinge.
 wat Scottes hadde ifeid :

gan to flee 'far from the land,' into Moray, with a mickle host. And Cador came to Scotland, where he Arthur found. Arthur and Cador proceeded into Clud, and found Howel there, with 'great [bold] bliss 'in health,' of [all] his sickness whole *he* was become; great was the bliss that then was in *the* burgh! *The* Scots were in Moray, and there thought to dwell, and with their bold words 'made their boast, and said that they would rule the realm, and Arthur there abide, with bold strength; for [said them between that] Arthur 'durst [would] never for his life come there. 'When [This] Arthur heard, 'void of fear [boldest of all kings], what *the*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid heore hux wordē.	mid hire hokere wordes.
þa fæide Arður :	
aðeleſt kīgē.	
Whær ært þu Howel :	He cleopede Howel :
hæhft of mine cunne ¹ .	þe hehzeft of his cunne.
and Cador þe kene :	and Cador þe kene :
ut ² of Cornwæle.	vt of Cornwale.
Leteð blæwē bemen :	Letep blowe bemen :
& bonnien ure ferden.	and banni vre ferde.
& to þere mid-nihte :	10 and at þare midniht :
we ſculleð faren forð riht.	we folle wende forþriht.
toward Mureine :	
ure mon-ſcipe ³ to bi-tellen.	
ʒif hit wule drihte :	
þe ſcop þæs dazes lihten.	
we heom ſculle tellen :	
forhfulle ſpelles.	
heore ʒælp fellen :	and hire ʒealp falle :
& heom ſeolue a-quellen.	and ʒam ſeolf a-cwelle.
To þere mid-nihte :	20 To þare md-niht ⁴ :
Arður aras forð riht.	Arthur a-ros forþ riht.
hornes me gon blawen :	
mid hahzere ſtafnen.	

Scots had said with their scornful words, 'then said Arthur, noblest of kings': "Where art thou, [he called] Howel, [the] highest of 'my [his] kindred, and Cador the keen, out of Cornwall? Let *the* trumpets blow, and assemble our host, and at the midnight we shall march forth-right 'toward Moray, our honor to win. If *the* Lord will it, who shaped the day-light, we shall them tell sorrowful tales,' [and] fell their boast, and themselves kill." At the midnight Arthur forth-right arose; 'horns men gan to blow with loud sound; knights gan arise, and stern words to speak.'

¹ This word is interlined by second hand.

² Originally written out, but o expuncted.

³ scipe is interlined sec. m.

⁴ R. mid-niht.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

cnihtes gunnen arifen :
and ræhȝe word ſpeken.

Mid muche mon-weorede :
into Mureine.
forð gunnen wræſtē :
þreottene þuſend.
a feormefte flocke :
feondliche kene men.

Seoððen com Cador :
þe eorl of of¹ Cornwæille. 10
mid ſeouentene þuſen² :
felere þeinen.

Seoððen com Heowel :
mid hiſ kēppen ſwiðe wel.
mid an and twenti þuſen² :
mid³ aðelere kempen.

Seoððen com Arður :
aðeleſt kingen.
mid ſeouen & twenti þuſend :
fiȝen heom afterward. [f. 125^b. c. 1.]

ſceldes þer clifedē : 21
lihten hit gon dæȝen.
þat word com to Scotten :
þær þar heo wuneden.

and wende mid hiſ ferde :
toward Morayne.
forþ gonne þreafte :
þrittene þouſend.

Suppe com Cador :
þe eorl of Cornwale.
mid ſouentene þouſend :
felere cnihtes.
þar after com Howel :

mid on and twenti þouſend :

þo com Arthur him feolf :

mid ſouene and twenti þouſend.

ſcealdes þar gliffenede :
and liht hit gan dæȝeie.

þat word com to Scottes :
þar þat hii wonede.

'With a great army *he marched* into [and marched with his host toward] Moray ; forth gan press thirteen thousand ' in the foremost flock, men exceeding keen.' Afterwards came Cador, the earl of Cornwall, with seventeen thousand good 'thanes [knights]. 'Next [Thereafter] came Howel, 'with his champions exceeding well,' with one and twenty thousand 'noble champions.' Then came Arthur [himself], 'noblest of kings'; with seven and twenty thousand 'followed them afterward'; *the* shields there glistened, [and] light it gan to dawn. The tidings came to *the* Scots, 'there where [where that] they

¹ *Sic MS.*² þuſend?³ *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hu Arður þe kīg :
com touward heore londe.

feōdliche fwiðe :

mid vnimete folke.

þa weoren ærheft :

þat ær weoren baldest.

and gunnen to fleonnen :

feondliche fwiðe.

into þan watere :

þer wunderes beoð inoze.

þat is a feolcuð mere :

ifet a middelærde.

mid fenne & mid ræode :

mid watere fwiðe bræde.

mid fiſcen & mid feoȝelen :

mid uniuele þigē.

þat water is unimete brade :

nikeres þer badieð inne.

þer if æluene ploȝe :

in atteliche pole.

Sixti æit-londes :

beoð i þā watere longe.

in ælc of þan æit-londe :

is a clude hæh and ſtrong.

þer næſtieð arnes :

hou Arthur þe king :

com to hire londe.

þo weren hii ȝearþheft :

þat her weren baldest.

[c.2.]

and gonne to fleonde :

feondeliche fwiþe.

in to þan watere :

þar wondres beoþ inowe.

þat his a wonder mere :

ifet in middilerþe.

mid fenne and mid reode :

and mid water brode.

þat water his onimete brod :

nikeres þar wonieþ.

Sixti eyllondes.

beoþ in þan mere longe.

in ech of þan yllond :

his a chluð fwiþe ſtrong.

þar neſtleþ hearnes :

dwelt, how Arthur the king came to 'ward' their land, 'exceeding quickly, with innumerable folk.' Then were [they] fearfullest, who ere were boldest, and gan to flee exceeding quickly into the water, where wonders are enow ! That is a marvellous lake, set in middle-earth, with fen (marsh), and with reed, [and] with water 'exceeding' broad; 'with fish, and with fowl, with evil things !' The water is immeasurably broad; nikers 'therein bathe [there dwell]; 'there is play of elves in *the* hideous pool.' Sixty islands are in the long 'water [lake]; in each of the islands is a rock 'high and [most] strong; there 'nest [nestle] eagles, and other great fowls. The eagles

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& oðere græte uoʒeles.	and oþer grete foʒeles.
þe ærnes habbeoð ane laʒe :	þe hearnes habbeþ one lawe :
bi æuerælches kinges dahʒen.	bi euereche kinges dawē.
whænne ſwa æi ferde :	wane fo eny ferde :
fundeð to þā ærde.	fundeþ to þan erþe.
þeonne fleoð þa fuʒeles :	þanne fleoþ þe foʒeles :
feor i þan luſte.	for in to þan luſte.
moni hundred þuſen ¹ :	
& muchel feoht makieð.	
þenne iſ þat folc buten wene : 10	
þat reouðe heō iſ to cumene.	
of ſummes cunneſ leoden : [c. 2.]	
þe þat lond wulleð iſechen.	
Tweien dæʒes oðer þreo :	Twei dæʒes oþer þreo :
þuſ ſcal þiſ taken ² beo.	þuſ ſal þe tockne beo.
ær unkuðe men :	
to þan londe liðen.	
ʒet þer iſ ſellic :	ʒet þat hiſ ſellich :
to ſuggen of þan watere.	to ſeggen of þan watere.
þer walleð of þan mære : 20	þar falleþ in þan mere :
a moniare ſiden.	
of dalen & of dunen :	
& of bæcchen deopen.	
fixti wateres :	many cunneſ watereſ :

have a law by every kings day; whensoever any army cometh to the country, then fly the fowls far in[to] the sky, 'many hundred thousands, and mickle fight make. Then is the folk without doubt, that sorrow is to come to them from people of some kind, that will seek the land.' Two days or three thus shall 'this [the] token be, 'ere foreign men approach to the land.' Yet 'there [that] is a marvellous *thing* to say of the water; there falleth in the lake, 'on many a side, from dales and from downs, and from deep valleys, sixty streams, all there collected; so (yet) never out of the lake any man

¹ þuſend?² On erasure, but by the original hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle þer ifomned.	
fwa neuere ut of þan mære :	
na man no uindeð.	
þat þer ut wenden :	and vt noþing ne goþ :
buten an an ænde.	in neuere one fide.
an imetliche broc :	
þe of þan mere ualleð.	
& swiðe ifemeliche :	
into fæ wendeð.	
þa Scottes weoren to-deled :	10 þar ine weren Scottes :
mid muclen viſelen.	
ʒeond þa monie mūtē :	oueral þan muntef.
þa i þan watere weoren.	
Arður biſeohte ſcipes :	and Arthur him bi-fohte fipes :
& gon heom to wenden.	and in him gan wende.
& floh þer vniuoʒe :	and floh þar onifoʒe :
moni and inoʒe.	mani and inoʒe.
& mōi þuſend ¹ þer wes dæd :	
for heō trukede ælc bræd.	
Arður þe aðele :	20 Arthur þe king :
was an æſt fide.	was on eaſt ende.
Howel þe ſele :	Howel þe ſele :
wes a suð halme ² .	was a ſuþ ende.

findeth that thereout *they* flow, except a small brook at one end, that from the lake falleth, and wendeth very stilly into *the* sea [waters of many kind, and nothing goeth out on never one side]. The Scots were 'dispersed [therein] 'with much misery,' over [all] the 'many' mounts 'that were in the water. [And] Arthur sought [him] ships, and 'gan to enter them [in him gan wend]; and slew there without number, many and enow; 'and many *a* thousand there was dead, because each (all) bread failed them.' Arthur the 'noble [king] was on *the* east 'side [end]; Howel the good was on *the* south 'half [end]; and Cadur the keen guarded 'them [it]

¹ On erasure, but by first hand.² halve?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& Cador þe kene :
 bi norðen heom biwufsten.
 and his smale uolc :
 he fetten alle bi weste fiden.
 þa weoren Scottes :
 ihalden for fottes.
 þer heo leieien ȝeōd þa cliues :
 faste bi-cluseð¹. [f.126.c.1.]
 þer weoren fixti þusend :
 mid forreȝe for-farene.
 Gillomar. þa wes Irlondes king :
 icum̄ in to hafene.
 twalf milen frō Arðure :
 þer he lai mid ferde.
 Scotten to hælpenn :
 Howel to for-farene.
 þer⁴ iherden Arður :
 aðelest kinge.
 & nom his ane ferde :
 & þiderward fufden.
 & funde þene king Gillomar :
 þe icumen wes to londe þar.
 Arður him faht wið :
 & nolde him ȝiuenn na grið.

and Cador þe kene :
 bi norþe hit wiste.
 and his smale folk :
 he sette al bi weste. [f.101.c.1.]
 þo weren Scotess :
 mid hunger ibursted.
 þ^{Ar²} Irlondes king :
 icsome was to haue³.
 twealf mýle fram Arthur :
 þar he lai mid ferde.
 Scottess to helpe :
 and Arthur to cwelle.
 Arthur his one ferde nam :
 20 and þiderwardes wende.
 and funde þane king Gillomar :
 þat icsome was to londe þar.
 and Arthur heom faht wiþ :
 and ȝef ȝam no griþ.

by *the* north; and his inferior folk he set all by *the* west 'side'. Then were *the* Scots 'accounted for sots, where they lay around the cliffs, fast inclosed; there were sixty thousand' with 'sorrow [hunger] destroyed. 'Then [There] was come 'into [to] haven *the* king of Ireland; twelve miles from Arthur, where he lay with *an* army, to help the Scots, [and] 'Howel [Arthur] to 'destroy [kill]. Arthur 'heard this, noblest of kings, and' took one host of his, and thitherward marched; and found the king Gillomar, who was come there to land. [And] Arthur fought with 'him [them], and 'would give him [gave them] no peace (quarter), and felled

¹ bi-clused?² þa?³ *R.* hauene.⁴ þis?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and feolde Irifce men ;	and fulde Ireffe men ;
feondliche to g ^u den.	manȝe to grunde.
And Gillomar mid twalf ſcipen ;	And Gellomar mid twelf fipes ;
teh from þan londe.	
& ferde to Irlande ;	fleoh to Irlande ;
mid harme ſwiðe ſtronge.	
And Arður a þan londe ;	And Arthur in þan londe ;
floh ¹ al þat he uunde.	floh al þat he funde.
and feoððen he wende to þan mere ;	and wende ſuppe to þan mere ;
þer he hiſ mæi lette.	10 þar he Howe ² bi-lefde.
Howel þene hende ;	
hahſt of Brutlonde.	
wið uten Arðure ;	
aðeleſt kingen.	
Arður Howel uunde ;	Arthur Howel funde ;
þer he wes bi hauene.	þar he was bi hauene.
bi þan mere brade ;	
þer he abiden hafde.	
þa fainede ſwiðe ;	
folc an hirede.	20
of Arðures cume ;	
& of aðele hiſ dede.	
þer wes Arður ford ³ riht ;	and þar a-bide forþ riht ;

the Irish men 'exceedingly [many] to *the* ground. And Gillomar with twelve ships 'departed from the land, and' 'proceeded [fled] to Ireland, 'with harm most strong.' And Arthur in the land slew all that he found ; and afterwards 'he' went to the lake, where he left 'his relation' Howel 'the fair, noblest of Britain, except Arthur, noblest of kings.' Arthur found Howel, where he was by *the* haven, 'by the broad lake, where he had abode. Then rejoiced greatly *the* folk in *the* host, of Arthurs arrival, and of his noble deeds ;' 'there was Arthur [and there abode] forth-right, two days and two nights. 'The Scots lay over *the* rocks, many

¹ *The first letter has been corrected.*² *R. Howel.*³ *forð?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

twei dæies & twa niht.	twei dazes and two niht.
Scottes leie ȝeōd clude :'	[c. 2.]
moni þusend dede.	
mid hungere for-uarene :	
folkene alre ærmeft.	
I þan þridde dæize :	In þan þridde daiȝe :
faire hit gon dazizen.	fair hit gan dazeie.
þa tuȝen touward hirede :	þo come toward ferde :
alle þat weoren ihadded.	alle þat hoded were.
& þreo biſcopes wiſe :	10 biſſopes and canounes :
a boke wel ilæred.	
preoſtes & mucnekes ¹ :	preoſtes and clerekes.
vnimete monie.	
canones þer comen :	
monie & wel idone.	
mid alle þan halidomē :	mid many halidomes :
þa haſt an londe weoren.	²
and ȝeornden Arðureſ grið :	and beden of Arthur griþ :
& his aðmeden.	þat hii moſte ſpeken him wiþ.
þider þa wiſes comen :	20 þider þe wiſes come :
þa i þan londen wuneden.	þat in þan londe weren.
heo wæiden in hære ærmen :	
heore childrē ærmen.	

thousands dead, with hunger destroyed, most miserable of all folk !' On the third day, it gan to dawn fair ; then came toward *the* host all that were hooded, 'and three wiſe biſhops, in book well learned [biſhops and canons] ; prieſts and 'monks [clerks], 'many without number ; canons there came, many and good,' with 'all the [many] reliques 'that were nobleſt in *the* land,' and 'yearned Arthurs [prayed of Arthur] peace, 'and his compaſſion [that they might ſpeak with him]. Thither came the women, that 'dwelt [were] in the land ; 'they carried in their arms their miſerable children' ; they wept before Arthur wondrously much, and their fair hair

¹ munekeſ ?

J. 11. 11. 11.

J. 11. 11. 11. ² A line is here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo weopen on Arðure :

wunder ane fwiðe.

and heore uæx fæire :

wælden to volde.

curuen heore lockes :

& þer niðer læiden.

to þas kinges foten :

bi-foren al his duzeðen.

nailes to heore nebbe :

þat æfter hit bledde.

Neh þan alle clæne :

nakede heo weoren.

sorhliche heo gunnen clupien :

to Arðure þan kinge.

and fumed þuſ ifeiden :

þer heo on fið weoren.

King we beoð on ærde : [f.126^b.c.1.]

ærmest alre uolke.

we ȝeorneð þine milzce :

þurh þæne milde godd.

þu haueſt a þiſſe londe :

ure leoden aflæȝen.

mid hungere & mid hete :

mid feole cunne hærmē.

mid wapnen mid wæteren :

hii wepen vppen Arthur :

wonderliche fwiþe. [c.2.]

and hire her faire :

al hii to-tere.

corue hire lockes :

and þar a-dun laide.

bi-vore þis kinges fote :

to-fore alle his cnihtes.

nayleſ fette to nebbe :

10 þat after hit bledde.

and þus hii gonne grede :

to Arthur þan kinge.

King we biddeþ þine milce :

20 for loue of al-mihti.

þou haueſt of oure londe :

oure men iſlawe.

mid hunger and mid hate :

and mid fale harmes.

'threw to *the* earth [they tore all in pieces]; cut off their locks, and there down laid 'at the [before this] kings feet, before all his people; [set] *their* nails to their face, so that afterwards it bled. 'They were naked nigh (nearly) all clean; and 'sorrowfully [and thus] they gan to 'call [cry] to Arthur the king, 'and together thus said, where they were in affliction' (?): " King, 'we are on earth most wretched of all folk'; we 'yearn [pray] thy mercy, 'through the mild God [for love of *the* Almighty]! Thou hast 'in this [of our] land our 'people [men] slain, with hunger and with strife (?), [and] with many kind of harms; 'with weapon, with water, and with many

*MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid feole wan-fiðen.

vre children imaked faderlese :

& frofre bidæled.

þu ært cristine mon :

& we al fwa funden.

Sæxifce men beoð :

hæðe¹ hundes.

Heo comen to þisse londe :

and þif folc here aqualden.

3if we heom hereden :

þat was for ure hermē.

for we nefden nænne mon :

þe us wið heom mihtē griðien.

Heo uf duden fwiðe wa :

& þu uf deft al fwa.

þa heðene uf hatieð :

& þe cristine uf fari makieð.

wær scullen we bicumen :

queðen þa wif to þan kinge.

A3ef uf 3et þa quicke men :

þa liggeð 3eōd þas cluden.

and 3if þu 3iueft milze :

þisse moncunnen.

þou hart cristeneman :

and we beoþ al fon.

þe heapene vs dude moche wo :

and þou vs doft al fo.

ware folle we bi-come :

cwaþ þe wifues to þan kinge.

3ef vs 3et þe cwike men :

þat liggeð ine clude.

mischiefs our children made fatherless and deprived of comfort.' Thou art a christian man, and we are also; 'the Saxish men are heathen hounds. They came to this land, and this folk here killed; if we obeyed them, that was because of our harm, for we had no man that might accord us with them.' 'They [the heathens] did us much woe, and thou dost to us also; 'the heathens us hate, and the christians make us sorrowful';—whereto shall we become (what will become of us)!"—quoth the women to the king. "Give us yet the men alive, who lie 'over these [in *the*] rocks; 'and if thou givest grace to this multitude, thy honor will be the greater,

¹ hæðene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þi mon-scipe bið þa mare :

nu and æuere mære.

Lauer¹ Arður ure kīg :

leoðe vre benden.

þu hafuſt al þiſ lond inomen :

& al þiſ folc ouercumen. [c. 2.]

we beoð under uote :

a þe iſ al þa bote.

þiſ iherde Arður :

aðeleſt kingen.

þefne wop & þefne rop :

& reouðen vniuoze.

þa toc he to ræde :

and reofede on heorte.

he uunde on his ræde :

to don þat heo hīe bedē.

he 3æf heō liſ he 3ef heom lumen :

& heore lond to halden.

He lette blæwen bemen :

and þa Scottes bæcnien.

& heo ut of cluden :

to þan ſcipen comen.

an auerælchen fiden :

Louerd Arthur þe king :

flake oure bendes.

þou haueſt al þiſ lond inome :

and þiſ folk hiſ ouercome.

we beoþ vnder fote :

in þe hiſ al þe bote.

þiſ i-horde Arthur þe king :

10 Bruttene deorling.

and 3eode to reade :

and roufede on heorte.

and funde in hiſ reade :

don þat hii hine bede.

He hehte blouwen bumes :

20 and bannien Scottes.

hii copen vt of cloudes :

in euereche fides.

now and evermore.' Lord Arthur 'our [the] king, loosen our bonds ! Thou hast taken (conquered) all this land, and 'all' this folk [is] overcome ; we are under *thy* foot ; in thee is all the remedy." Arthur [the king] heard this, 'noblest of kings [Britons darling] ; 'this weeping and this lament, and immoderate sorrow' ; 'then took he [and went] to counsel, and had pity in heart ; 'he [and] found in his counsel to do what they him prayed ; 'he gave them life, he gave them limb, and their land to hold.' He caused *the* trumpets to be blown, and 'the' Scots to be summoned ; 'and' they 'came [crept] out of *the* rocks 'to the ships' ; on every side 'approached toward land. They were

¹ Lauerd ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fiȝen touwar¹ londe.

Heo weoren fwiðe iharmede :

mid scærpen þan hungre.

aðes heo fworen :

fwiken þ² nalden.

and heo þa iȝefuen :

ȝifles þan kingen.

and alle ful fone :

þaf kinges men bicomē.

& seoððen heo gunnen fufen :

þat folc þer to-delden.

ælc mon to þan ende :

þer³ he wes wuniende.

and Arður þer grið sette :

god mid þan bezfte.

Whær ært þu Howel mi mæi :

monne me leofest.

ifixt þu þifne muchelne mære :

þer Scottes beoð amærrēd.

ifihst þu þaf hæhȝe treon :

and fihst þu þas ærneſteon. [f.127.c.1.]

inne þiffe uenne :

if fiſc unimete.

and oþes þar fworen :

fwike þat hii nolden. [f.101^b.c.1.]

and alle fol fone :

þis kinges men bi-come.

And þo hii gonne wende :

ech man to his ende.

and Arthur grið sette :

god mid þan beſte.

þo ſayde Arthur :

to Howel his maȝe.

i-fihte þifne mere :

þat her his bi-halues.

greatly harmed by the sharp hunger ; ' [and] oaths 'they [there] swore, that they would not deceive ; ' and they then gave hostages to the king, ' and all full soon became 'the [this] kings men. And then they gan depart ; ' the folk there separated, ' each man to 'the [his] end, ' where he was dwelling ; ' and Arthur 'there ' set peace, good with the best. [Then said Arthur :] ' " Where art thou, [to] Howel, 'my [his] relation, 'dearest of men to me ? ' 'Seest thou [Behold] this great lake, 'where *the* Scots are harmed [that is here beside] ; ' seest thou these high trees, and seest thou these eagles fly ? In this fen is fish innumerable. Seest thou these islands, that stand over

¹ toward ?² þ heo ?³ þær þer, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ifihst þu þas æit-londes :
þe ȝeond þas watere ftondeð.

Seollic þuhte Howel :

of fwulchere ifihðe.

and wonddrede wide¹ :

bi þan watere flode.

and þus þer cleopede Howel :

hæhef cunnes.

Seoððen ich wes mon iboren :

of mire moder bofme. 10

no ifah ich a none londe :

þuf feolcude² þinges.

swa ich here biuoren me :

mid æȝenen bihalde.

Wundreden Bruttes :

wunder ane fwiðe.

þa cleope Arður :

aðeleft kingen.

Howel min aȝe mæi :

monnen me leofest. 20

luſt mire worden :

of mucle mære wonder.

þat ic þe wulle tellen :

of foðe mine ſpellē.

Bi þiſſe mære³ enden :

In to þan mere :

this water?" Marvellous *it* seemed to Howel, of such *a* sight, and *he* wondered greatly by the water-flood; and thus there spake Howel, of noble race: "Since I was born man of my mothers bosom, saw I in no land things thus (so) wonderful, as I here before me behold with eyes!" *The Britons* wondered wondrously much. Then spake Arthur, noblest of kings: "Howel, mine own relative, dearest to me of men, listen to my words, of *a* much greater wonder that I will tell to thee in my sooth speech." 'By this

¹ fwiðe?² feolcuðe?³ *This word is sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þer þis water wendeð.
 if an lutel wiht mære :
 monnen to wundre.
 he if end-longe :
 feouwer & fixti munden.
 he is imeten a bræde :
 fif & twenti foten.
 fif fotē he is deop :
 alfene hine dulfen.
 Feower noked he is :
 and þer inē is feower kunnes fisc.
 and ælc fisc an his ende :
 þer he his cun findeð.
 ne mai þer nan to oðere : [c. 2.]
 buten al fwa tacheð hif icunde.
 Nes næuer nan mon iboren :
 ne of fwa wise crafte icoren.
 no libbe he fwa longe :
 þe mazen hit vnder-ftonde.
 what letteð þene fisc :
 to uleoten to þan oðere.
 for nif þer noht bitwenen :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

on lutel water wendeþ.
 hit his on lengþe :
 four and twēti mundes.
 hit his imete in brede :
 fif and twenti fote.
 fif fote hit hit¹ his deop :
 aluene hine dolue.
 Four nokede hit his :
 and þar in his four cunne fisc.
 and ech fisc in his ende :
 ware was his cunde.
 þat non þoh hii wolde :
 þar nif no man ibore :
 no fo witty icore.
 þat wite wat lette þane fisc :
 for fleote to oþer.
 for noht nif bi-twine :

lakes end, where this [Into the lake a little] water floweth, is a certain little lake, to *the* wonder of men! It is in length four and 'sixty [twenty] palms; it is in measure in breadth five and twenty feet; five feet it is deep; elves it dug! Four-cornered it is, and therein is fish of four kinds, and each fish in his end where 'he findeth [was] his kind; 'may there none go to other, except all as belongeth to his kind [so that none, though they would, *can pass to another*]. 'Was never any [There is no] man born, nor 'of so wise craft [so witty] chosen, 'live he *ever* so long, that may 'understand it [know]; what letteth (hindereth) the fish [for] to swim to 'the others; for 'there' is nought between but water clean!" 'The yet spake

¹ Sic MS.² A line is here wanting.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

buten water clæne.

bote water cleane.

þa ȝet cleopede Arður :

aðeleſt kingen.

Howel i þiſſen lōdes ænde :

neh þere ſæ ſtronde.

if a mære ſwiðe muchel :

þat water if un-fæle.

and whænne þa ſæ vledeð :

ſwulc heo wulle aweden.

and falleð ine þene mære : 10

vnimete ſwiðe.

no bið næuere þæ mere :

on watere þa mare.

Ah þenne þa ſæ falleð in :

and ſcen warð þa uolden.

and heo bið al inne :

in alden hire dēne.

þenne ſwelleð þe mære :

and ſwærkeð þa vðen.

vðē þer leppeoð ut : 20

vnimete g^ete.

fleoð ut a þat lond :

þat leoden agrifeð an hond.

ȝif þer cumeð æi mon :

þat noht ne cunne þer on.

þat ſeollic to iſeonne :

Arthur, noblest of kings : “ Howel, in this lands end, nigh the sea-strand, is a lake exceeding great,—the water is evil,—and when the sea floweth, as if it would rage, and falleth in the lake exceeding quickly, the lake is never the more *increased* in water. But when the sea falleth in (ebbs), and the ground becomes fair (?), and in it is all in its old seat, then swelleth the lake, and the waves darken ; out *the* waves there leap, exceeding great, flow out on the land, *and* the people soon terrify. If any man cometh there, that knoweth nought thereof, to behold the marvel by the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bi þere fæ ſtronde.
 ȝif he hiſ neb wendeð :
 touwærd þan mære.
 ne beo he noht ſwa loh iboren :
 ful wel he beoð iborȝen. [f.127^b.c.1.]
 þat wat⁹ him glit biſiden :
 and þe mon þer wuneð ſofte.
 after hiſ iwille :
 he wuneð þer uul ſtille.
 þat no bið he for þan watere : 10
 naððing idracched.
 þa fæide Howel :
 hæh mon of Brutten.
 Nu ic ihere tellen :
 feolcuðe ſpellen.
 & feollic if þe lauerd :
 þat al hit iſette.
 þa cleopede Arður :
 aðeleſt kingen.
 Blaweð mine hornes : 20
 mid hæhzere ſtæfne.
 and fuggeð mine cnihtef :
 þ̅ ic fare forð rihte.
 Bemen þer blewen :
 hornes þer ſtureden.

þo faide Arthur :
 baldeſt alre kinge.
 Leteþ blowe bumēs :
 warnie cnihtes.
 þat ich faren wolle :
 vt of þiſſe londe.

sea-strand ; if he turneth his face toward the lake, be he nought (never) so low born, full well he shall be saved ; the water glideth him beside, and the man there remaineth easy ; after his will he dwelleth there full still, so that he is not for (on account of) the water anything injured !” Then said Howel, noble man of Brittany : “ Now I hear tell a wonderful story, and marvellous is the Lord that it all made !” Then said Arthur, ‘ noblest of [boldest of all] kings : “ ‘ Blow ye my horns [Cause trumpets to be blown] ‘ with loud noise, and ’ say ye to my [to warn] knights, that I [will] march ‘ forth-right [out of this land].” ‘ Trumpets there were blown, horns there

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bliffe wes an hiredere¹ :
 mid bifie þan kinge.
 for ælc wef ifreoured :
 & ferde toward hif ærd.
 And þe king for-bæd heom :
 bi heore bare liuen.
 þat na mon on worlde :
 swa wod no iwurðe.
 no fwa ær witte gume :
 þat his grið bræke. 10
 and ȝif hit dude æi mon :
 he fculden dō ðolien.

Æfne þan worde :

fufde þa uærde.

þer fuggen beornes :

feolcuðe leoðes.

of Ardure² þā kinge :

& of his here-þringē.

and fæiden on fonge :

to þiffe worlde longe. 20

neo³ neuere mære fwulc king :

afe Arður þurh alle þing.

kīg no kæifere : [c. 2.]

in næuere nare kuððe.

Efne þan worde :

wende þe ferde.

þar fongen enihtes :

of felcoupe londes.

of Arthur þan kinge :

and of his here-dringes.

and feiden on fonge :

to þiffe worle longe.

ne worþ neuere foch king :

afe Arthur þorh alle þing.

king ne cayfer icore :

in neuere none cupþe.

resounded ; bliss was in *the* host with the busy king ; for each was solaced, and proceeded toward his land. And the king forbade them, by their bare life, that no man in *the* world should be so mad, nor person so unwise, that *he* should break his peace ; and if any man did it, he should suffer doom.' Even with the words the army marched ; there sung 'warriors marvellous songs [knights of strange lands] of Arthur the king, and of his chieftains, and said in song, to this worlds end never 'more' would be such a king as Arthur, through all things, king nor [chosen] caiser, in ever any

¹ hirede?² *R.* Arðure.³ neore?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Piram.

Arður forð to Eouuerwic :
mid folke fwiðe feollic.
and wunede þer wiken fixe :
mid muchelere wunne.

þa burh walles weoren :
to-broken & to-fallen.

þat Childric al for-barnden :
& þa hallen alle clæne.

þa cleopede þe king :

Piram ænne preost mæren. 10

he wes swiðe wis mon :

and witful on bocken.

Piram þu ært min aȝe preost :

þe æð þe scal iwurden¹.

þe king nō ane rode :

hali and swiðe gode.

and² Piram an hond :

and þer mid swiðe muchel lond.

and þene ærchebiscopes staf :

þer he Pirā aȝaf. 20

ær wes Piram preost god :

nu he is ærchebiscop.

þa hæhte hine Arður :

ARthur forþ to Euerwich :
mid folke fwiþe fellich. [c.2.]

and wonede þare fix wikes :

mid mochelere winne.

þe borh wallef weren :

to-broken and to-fallen.

þe chirchen for-barnd :

þe hallef to-fallen.

þo cleopede þe king :

one preft Pýram.

he was fwiþe wif man :

and witfol on boke.

þe king an halidom nam :

and bi-toc Pýram.

and þan archebiffop staf :

þare he Pýram aȝaf.

her was Pýram preost god :

nou he his archebiffop.

þo him bad Arthur :

realm ! Arthur proceeded to York, with folk very surprising (numerous), and dwelt there six weeks with much joy. The burgh walls were broken and fallen down, 'that Childric all [the churches] consumed, 'and' the halls 'all clean [fallen down]. Then called the king a 'distinguished' priest, Piram ;—he was *an* exceeding wise man, and learned in book :—“ Piram, thou art mine own priest, the easier *it* shall be for thee.” The king took a 'rood [relique], 'holy and most good,' and gave to Piram in hand, 'and therewith very much land'; and the archbishops staff he there gave to Piram ;—ere was Piram *a* good priest, now is he archbishop ! Then bade

¹ iwurðen?² and bi-tok?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

aðeleſt kīgen.

þat he rærde churechen :

cherches a-rere :

& þa ſonges rihten.

and goddes folc biwuſten :

and godeſ worc rihte :

& fæire heō dihtten.

and þe folk dihte.

And he hæhte alle cnihtes :

And he bad alle his cnihtes :

demen rihte domes.

deme rihte domes.

and þa eorðe-tilien :

and þe erþe-tilief :

teon to heore cræften.

hire lond teorne.

& æuerælne gume :

10

and euer¹ gome :

oðerne igræten.

oþerne hi-grete.

& wulc mon swa wurf dude :

And woch man oþer dude :

þene þe king hafde ibodē.

þane þe king hadde ibode.

he wolde hine ifuſen :

he ſolde dom þolie :

to ane bare walme.

at þe king his wille.

& ȝif hit weore læð mon :

he ſculde hongie for þon.

þa ȝet cleope Arður :

[f. 128. c. 1.]

ȝet clepede Arthur :

aðeleſt kingen.

boldeſt alre kinge.

hæhte þat alc mon :

20

þe hiſ lond hafde for-gan.

hehte þat hiſ lond hadde ilore :

mid wulcheſ cunnes wite :

swa he bi-wæiued weore.

him Arthur, 'noblest of kings,' 'that he should arear [to arear] churches, and restore 'the hymns (?), and take charge of 'Gods 'folk [work], and rule 'them fair [the folk]. And he bade all [his] knights to deem right (just) dooms; and the earth-tillers to 'take to their craft [turn their land]; and every man to greet other. And what man 'soever,' did 'worse [otherwise] than the king had ordered, he 'would drive him to a bare burning, and if it were a base man, he should for that hang [should suffer doom, at the king his will]. 'The' yet spake Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings; ordered 'that each man' who had lost his land 'by whatsoever kind of punishment he were bereaved,' that he should come 'again [to him], 'full' quickly and

¹ euer^{ech}?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat he azain come :

þat he to him come.

ful raðe & ful fone.

raþe and ful fone.

þe riche & þe laze :

þe riche and þe lowe :

and hefde æft hiſ azen.

to habbe ȝein his owe.

bute he weore swa fule¹ biwite : bote he were ſo vuel bi-ȝete :

þ he weore lauerd-fwike.

þat he were louerd-fwike.

oðer touward hiſ lauer² man- oþer to his louerd man-fwore :

swore :

þene þe king demde for-lore.

þane þe king demde ilore.

þer come þreo ibroðeren :

þar comen þe þreo broþers :

þe weore kiniborne.

10

þat weren kinebore.

Lot & Angel & Vrien :

Loth Augel and Vrien :

welle hwulche þreo men.

wele woche þreo men. [f. 102. c. 1.]

þeos here-þrīges þreo :

þeos þre heredringes :

comen to þan kige³.

come to þan kinge.

& fetten an heore cneowen :

and fete on hire cnouwes :

biſoren þan kæifere.

bi-fore þā caifere.

Hal ſeo þu Arður :

Hayl beo þou Arthur :

aðeleſt kīgē.

and þi duȝeðe mid þe :

an alle þine cnihteſ.

a mote heo wel beo.

20

We ſundeð þreo broðeren :

We beoþ þreo broþereſ :

iboren of kīgen.

ibore al of kinges.

full soon,—the rich and the low,—‘and should have eft [to have again] his own, unless he were so ‘foulyly [evilly] conditioned, that he were traitor to *his* lord, or ‘toward [to] his lord forsworn, whom the king should deem lost (out of the limits of pardon). There came [the] three ‘brethren [brothers], that were royally born, Loth, ‘and’ Angel, and Urien;—well *are* such three men! These three chieftains came to the king, and set on their knees before the caiser:—“Hail be thou, Arthur, ‘noblest of kings,’ and ‘thy people with thee [all thy knights]; ‘ever may they well be!’ We are three ‘brethren [brothers], born [all] of kings. All our ‘rightful land

¹ The first two letters of this word are *sup. ras.* by a second hand.

² lauerd?

³ R. kinge.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

if al ure icūde lond :	his al oure kine-lond :
i-gan ut of ure hond.	igo vt of vre hond.
for habbeoð hæðene men :	for þe heaþene men :
uf hene imakede.	pore vs habbeþ imaked.
and iwæst ¹ uf al Leonæis :	and iwest vs Leoney's :
Scotlond & Muræf.	Scotlond and Moraynes.
& we biddeð þe for godes luue :	And we biddeþ þe for godes loue :
þat þu uf beo fultume.	þot þou vs be a foltome.
and for þire mucle wurðscipe :	for þine mochele worfipe :
þat þu us wurðe milde. [c. 2.] 10	þat þou vs milde worþe.
aʒif uf ure icunde lond :	and ʒef vs oure icunde lond :
and we þe sculleð luuien.	and we þe wollep louie.
hælden þe for lauer ² :	holde þe for louerd :
an ælche leod wifen.	on euereche wise.
þis iherde Arður :	þis ihorde Arthur :
aðelest king.	boldest alre kinge.
hu þeos þreo cnihtes :	ou þes þreo cnihtes :
fæire hine biſohten.	faire hine bi-ſohte.
reoufede on heorte :	he reoufede on heorte :
& he reordien gan. 20	
and þas word fæide :	and þes word faide.
feleſt alre kinge.	
Vrien bi-cum mi mon :	Vrian bi-com mi man :
þu ſcalt to Muræiue aʒæn.	þou ſalt Morayne habbe.

[kingdom] is gone out of our hand; for [the] heathen men have made us poor, and wasted us all Leoneis, Scotland, and Moray. And we pray thee, for Gods love, that thou be to us [in] aid, 'and' for thy great honor, that thou be mild to us, [and] give us our rightful land; and we 'shall [will] love thee, *and* hold thee for lord, in 'each land- [every] wise." Arthur heard this, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, how these three knights fair besought him; [he] had compassion in heart, 'and he gan speak,' and said these words,—'best of all kings':—"Urien, become my man; thou shalt 'to Moray again [have Moray]; thereof thou

¹ iwæst, *pr. m.*² lauerd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer of þu ſcalt beon icleoped :'	þar of þou falt beon icleoped :'
king of þan londe.	king of þan londe.
& hæh an mine hirede :'	
mid þine ¹ mon-weorede.	
And Angele ich fette an hond :'	And Augel ich take þe an hond :'
al to-gædere Scotlond.	al to-gadere Scotlond.
habbe hit an honde :'	habben hit an hond :'
and beon king of þan londe.	and beon king of þan londe.
from þan fader to þan ſune :'	fram þan fader to þan ſone :'
þer of þu ſcalt mi mon bi-cumen.	þar of þou falt mi man bicom.
And þu Lot mi leofe freond :'	And þou Loth min leoue man :'
godd þe wurðe liðe.	god þe worþe milde.
þu haueſt mine fufter to wiue :'	þou haueſt mine ſofter :'
þæ bet þe ſcal iwurde ² .	þe bet þe fal iworþe. [c.2.]
Ich þe ȝifue Loenæis :'	Ich þe ȝeue Leoneys :'
þat if is ³ a lond faier.	þat his a lond riche.
and ich wulle lengen ⁴ þer to :'	and ich wolle legge þar to :'
londes ſwiðe gode.	londef ſwiþe gode.
bifide þere Hūbre :'	bi-fides Norþhumbre :'
wurð an hundred punden.	worþ an hundred pund.
For mi fader Vðer :'	For mi fader Vther :'
þe while þe he wes king here.	wile þat he was king her.
luſede wel hiſ dohter :'	louede ſwiþe hiſ dohter :'

shalt be called king of the land, 'and high in my court (*or* host), with thy forces.' And 'to' Angel I 'set [give thee] in hand Scotland altogether; to have it in hand, and be king of the land, from the father to the son; thereof thou shalt my man become. And thou, Loth, my dear 'friend [man],—God be to thee mild!—thou hast my sister 'to wife'; the better *it* shall be for thee. I give thee Leoneis, that is a land 'fair [rich]; and I will lay (add) thereto lands most good, beside 'the Humber [North-humber], worth an hundred pounds. For my father Uther, 'the' while that he was king here, loved

¹ þinne, *pr. m.*³ *Sic MS.*² iwurðe?⁴ leggen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe wes hif bæd ipohte.	þorh alle cunnes þinge.
& heo if mi fuster :	
& haueð funen tweien.	And sonef ȝeo haueþ tweie :
þeo me beoð ð londe :	leof hii beoþ me beie.
children alre leofest.	
þus spæc Ardur ¹ þe king :	
þa wes Walwain lute child.	þat was Woweýn and Modred : [Wal]wein.
swa wef ² þe oðer :	for ȝam þou salt iworþe bet.
Modræd hif broðrer ³ .	
wale þat Moddræd wef ibore :	Ac walawo þat Modred was ibore : [M]odrid.
muchel hærm com þer fore.	moche harm com þar vore.
Ardur ¹ for to Lundene :	Arthur com to Londene :
& mid him his leoden.	and mid him his leode.
he heold inne londe :	and he þare makede :
ane muchele hustinge.	fwiþe mochele speche.
and fette alle þa laȝen :	and fette alle þe lawes :
þat stoden bi his ælderne dāȝen.	þat stode bi his eldre dāȝef.
alle þa laȝen gode :	
þe her ær stoden.	
he fette grið he fette frið : 20	
and alle freodomes.	
þenene he for to Cořwale :	Fram þanene he wende :

'well [greatly] his daughter, 'who was his desire (?) esteemed [through all kind of thing]; 'and she is my sister,' and sons [she] hath twain; they are to me 'in land dearest of all children [both dear].'' 'Thus spake Arthur the king.' 'Then was Walwain *a* little child; so was the other, Modred his brother. [that was Woweýn and Modred; "for them thou shalt be *the* better." But] alas! that Modred was born; much harm therefore came! Arthur 'proceeded [came] to London, and with him his people; 'he held in *the* land a mickle husting [and he made there *an* exceeding great conference], and established all the laws that stood in his elders days; 'all the good laws that ere here stood; he set peace, he set protection, and all freedoms.' [From] thence he

¹ R. Arður.² This word is interlined sec. m.³ broðer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to Cadores riche.
 he funde þer a mæide ⁊
 vnimete fæier.
 Wes þas mæidenes moder ⁊
 of Romanifce mannen.
 Cadores mæze ⁊

& þat maide¹ hī bi-tahte.
 & he heo fæire a-feng² ⁊
 and softe heo fedde.

Heo wes of heze cūne ⁊ 10
 of Romanifce monnen.

næs in nane londe ⁊
 maide nan swa hende. [c.2.]
 of specche & of dede ⁊
 and of tuhtle swiðe gode.

Wenhaver. heo wes ihatē Wenhauer ⁊
 wifmonne hēdest.

Arður heo nom to wife ⁊
 & luuede heo wunder fwiðe.
 þis maiden he gon wedde ⁊ 20
 and nom heo to his bedde.

Arður wes i Cornwale ⁊
 al þene winter þere.

in to Cornwale.
 he funde þar a maýde ⁊
 Cador his mowe.
 Was þeos maýdes moder ⁊
 of Romaniffe cunne.

nas in none londe ⁊
 maýde so hende.
 of speche ne of deade ⁊
 ne of alle þeues.

þeo was i-hote Gwenayfer ⁊
 maýdene hendeft.

Arthur hire nam to wifue ⁊
 and louede hire fwiþe.
 þis maide he gā wedde ⁊
 and nam hire to bedde.

A Rthur was in Cornwale ⁊
 al þane wynter.

Gwenayfer.

marched 'to [into] Cornwall, 'to Cadors territory'; he found there a maid 'extremely fair [Cador his relation]. This maidens mother was of Romanish 'men [kindred], 'Cadors relative; and the maid *Cador* on him bestowed, and he received her fair, and softly her fed. She was of noble race, of Romanish men'; was in no land 'any' maid so fair, of speech 'and [nor] of deeds, 'and of manners most good [nor of all virtues]; she was named 'Wenhaver [Gwenayfer], fairest of 'women [maidens]. Arthur took her to wife, and loved her 'wondrously' much; this 'maiden [maid] he gan wed, and took her to 'his' bed. Arthur was in Cornwall all the winter 'there;

¹ maide he?

² *Written at first afenge, but the last letter expuncted by the same hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and al for Wenhæuere lufe ⁊
 wimmonē him leofueft.
 þa þe winter wes agan ⁊
 and fumer com þer anan.
 Arður hine biþohte ⁊
 whæt he don mahte.
 þat his folc gode ⁊
 afwunden ne læie þere.
 He ferde to Æxchæſtræn ⁊
 to þan mid-feſten. 10
 & heold þer hiſ huſtinge ⁊
 of hehȝen hiſ folke.
 & feide ꝥ he wolde ⁊
 in to Irlonde.
 wenden³ al þat kine-lond ⁊
 to hiſ æhȝere hond.
 buten þe kīg Gillomar ⁊
 to him raþer come ær.
 and mid liſten hī ſpeken wið ⁊
 & ȝirnde Arðures grið. 20
 he wolde weſtē hiſ lond ⁊
 and luðere him gon an hond.
 mid fure mid ſtele ⁊

for Gwenayfer hiſ¹ loue ⁊ [f. 102.^b c. 1.]
 womman heom² leofueft.
 þo þat wýnter was agan ⁊
 and fomer com þar anon.
 Arthur him bi-þohte ⁊
 wat he don mihte.
 þat hiſ folk gode ⁊
 a-fwonde ne leýe.
 To Excetre he wende ⁊
 and heold þare ſpeche.
 and faide þat he wolde ⁊
 in to Irlonde.
 and winnen al þat kinelond ⁊
 to hiſ owene hond.
 bote þe king Gillomar ⁊
 þe raþer to him come her.
 and faire him ſpeke wiþ ⁊
 and ȝornde Arthur hiſ griþ.
 Ich wolde waſti hiſ lond ⁊
 and luþer go him an hond.

Gillomar.

and' all for Wenhavers love, dearest of women to him. When the winter was gone, and summer came there anon, Arthur bethought him what he might do, that his good folk should not lie 'there' inert. He marched to Exeter, 'at the mid-feast (of St. John Baptist?),' and held there 'his husting [*a* conference] 'of his noble folk,' and said that he would go into Ireland, [and] win all the kingdom to his own hand; unless the king Gillomar [the] sooner came ere to him, and spake with him 'with good will [fair], and yearned 'Arthurs [Arthur his] peace, 'he would ["I will] waste his land, and go (act) to him evilly in hand, 'with fire *and* with

¹ *Sic MS.*² *R. him ?*³ *winnen ?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

streit gomen wurchen.

& þat lond-folc aflæn :

þe wolde stonden him aȝein.

Æfne þan worde : [f. 129. c. 1.]

þa þe kīg fæide.

þa andfwarede þat folc :

fæire þan kinge.

Lauuerd king hald þi word :

we beoð alle ȝarewe.

to ganne & to ride :

oueral to þire neode.

þer wes moni bald Brut :

þe hafde beres leches.

heouen up heore bruwen :

i-burst an heore þonke.

Wendē touwarde innen :

cnihtes mid heore monnen.

heo ruokedē burnen :

bonnedē helmef.

heo wipeden horf leoue : 20

mid linnene claðe.

heo fceren¹ heo scoiden :

scalkes balde weorē.

Efne þan worde :

þat þe king faye.

þo answereð alle :

in boure and in halle.

Louerd king hold þin word :

for we beoþ alle ȝarue.

10 to gon and to ride :

oueral in þine neode.

þar was mani bold Brut :

kene to neode.

Hii wende to hire hinne :

cnihtes mid hire manne.

hii rollede wepne :

and soide hire stedef.

[Kingan þorȝ of þe manne]

steel work(hostile)game, and the land-folk slay, who would stand against him.' Even with the words that the king said, then answered 'the folk, fair to the king [all, in bower and in hall]: "Lord king, hold thy word, [for] we are all ready, to go and to ride over all 'at [in] thy need.'" There was many a bold Briton 'that had boars glances [keen at need]; 'heaved up their brows, enraged in their thought.' [They] went toward [their] inns, knights with their men: they 'got ready burnies, prepared helms [rubbed *their* weapons], 'they wiped *their* dear horses with linen cloths ;' 'they sheared, they [and their steeds] shod,—' *the* men were bold!' Some

¹ heore steden?

streit -
strictum

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fū scæft horn fūm scaft ban :
 sum ȝarked stelene flan.
 sum makede¹ þwonges² :
 gode & fwiðe strong.
 summe beouweden³ speren :
 & beonneden sceldes.

Arður letten beoden :
 ȝeond al his kine-þeoden.
 þat æuerælc god cniht :
 to him come forð riht. 10
 and euerælc oht mon :
 comen forð riht anan.
 & wa swa bilæfden :
 his leomen he sculde leosen.
 & wha swa come gladliche :
 he sculden wurðe riche.
 Seouen niht uppen Æstre :
 þa men hafden iuaft.
 þa comen alle þa cnihtes : [c.2.]
 to scipē ford⁵ rihtes. 20
 wind heom stod an honde :
 þe scaf heom to Irlonde.

somme safde sceftes :
 somme beoude longe speres.
 somme makede þwanges :
 gode & fwiþe stronge.
 Arthur lette beode :
 oueral his kineþeode.
 þat euer ech oht cniht :
 to him come forþriht.
 and euerech oht man : [c.2.]
 to him come anon.
 and wose leafde :
 his leome he folde leose.
 and wose come gladliche :
 h⁴ folde i-worþe riche.
 Soue niht vppe Easter :
 þo men hadde ifaste.
 þo comen alle þeof cnihtes :
 to sipe forþ rihtes.
 wind ȝam stod an honde :
 þat saf ȝam to Irlonde.

shaped (*or* shaved) 'horn; some shaped bone; some prepared steel darts [shafts; some bent (?) long spears]; some made thongs, good and very strong; 'some bent (?) spears, and made ready shields.' Arthur caused to be bidden over all his kingdom, that every 'good [brave] knight should come to him forth-right, and every brave man should come 'forth-right [to him] anon; and whoso should remain *behind*, his limbs he should lose, and whoso should come gladly, he should become rich. Seven nights after Easter, when men had fasted, then came all 'the [these] knights to ship forth-right; *the* wind stood to them in hand (favorably), that drove them to Ireland; [they embarked upon *the* strand, into

¹ make *pr. m.*³ Altered by the second hand to beoueden.² wonges, *pr. m.*⁴ he?⁵ forð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Arður a þet lond ferde :
 and þa leoden a-merden.
 muchel uolc he afloȝ :
 orf he nom vniuoh.
 & æuef he hæhte ælcne mon :
 chireche-grið halden.
 þet tidende com to þan kinge :
 þe lauerd wes of þan londe. 10
 þat þer wes icunen¹ Arður :
 and ærmðen iwrohte þer.
 He fumnede al his leoden :
 ȝeond his kinelonde.
 and his Irifce uolc :
 fufden to fehte.
 to-ȝæines Arðure :
 þan aðele kinge.
 Arður and his cnihtes :
 heō wepnede forð rihtes. 20
 & forē heom to-ȝæines :
 folc vnimete.
 Arðures men weoren :

hii wenden vppe ftrōde :
 in to þan ilke londe.

Arthur in þan londe ferde :
 and þat folk a-morde.
 mochel folk he þare floh :
 and he nam horf inoh.
 and euere he hehte ech man :
 cherch-griþ holde.
 þe tȝding com to þan kinge :
 þat louerd waf of þan londe.
 þat Arthur king was þider icome :
 and moche harm wrohte.
 He fomne² alle his cnihtes :
 to-ȝeines Arthur fihte.
 forþ hii wende fone :
 þat hii to Arthur come.

that land.] Arthur marched in the land, and the people destroyed; much folk he [there] slew, [and] he took cattle enow; and ever he ordered each man church-peace to hold. The tiding came to the king, who was lord of the land, that Arthur [*the* king] was come 'there [thither], and [much] harm 'there' wrought. He assembled all his 'people, over his kingdom; and his Irish folk marched to *the* fight, against [knights, against Arthur to fight; forth they soon marched, so that they came to] Arthur 'the noble king. Arthur and his knights they weaponed *them* forth-right, and advanced against them, a numerous folk.' 'Arthurs men were with arms

¹ R. icumen.² fomnede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid wepnen al bi-þehte.		
þa Irifce men weoren :		ac hii weren nakede :
nakede neh þan.		and þe oþe hi-heled mid hire ¹ .
mid fperen & mid axen :		
& mid swiðe fæærpe fææxen.		
Arðures men letten fleon :		And Arthur his men :
vnimete flā.		lette flon to ȝam fleon.
and merden Irisc folc ² :		and morde Ireffe folk :
& hit fwiðe ualden.		þat hit ful fwiþe.
ne mæhten heo ipolien :	10	ne mihten hii þis þolie :
þurh nanef cūnes þingen.		þorþ none cunnef þinge.
ah fluȝen awai fiðe ³ :		ac floȝe away fwiþe :
fwiðe uæle þufend.		in euereche fide.
& Gillomar þe king flah :	[f. 129 ^b . c. 1.]	And Gillomar þe king :
& awæwardes teh.		fleh fwiþe an hiȝeng.
and Arður him after :		and Arthur him after :
and þene king ikahte.		and þane king cahte. [f. 103. c. 1.]
he nom bi þan honde :		he nam bi þan honde :
þene king of þan londe.		þan kīg of þan londe.
Arður þe hæȝe :	20	Arthur þe bolde :
herbeorwe ifohte.		to his hinne wende.
an his mode him wes þa æðe :		in his mode him was heþ :

all covered, the Irish men were nearly naked [but they were naked, and the others covered with their *weapons*], 'with spears and with axes, and with sæxes exceeding sharp.' 'Arthurs [And Arthur his] men let fly [at them] 'numerous' darts, and killed *the* Irish folk; 'and [so that] greatly it 'felled [fell]; they might not [this] sustain, through any kind of thing, but fled away quickly, 'very many thousands [on every side]. And Gillomar the king fled, 'and awayward drew [greatly in haste], and Arthur *pursued* after him, and caught the king; he took by the hand the king of the land. Arthur the 'noble sought lodging [bold went to his inn]; in his mood

¹ hire wepne? *Perhaps* mid hire is *superfluous*.² *Added by a second hand in the margin.*³ fwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þat Gillomar him wes fwa neh.
Nu dude Arður :

aðeleft kingen.

swiðe muche freondscipe :

at-foren al hif folke.

he lette þene king scrude :

mid ælchere prude.

and æc bi Arðure fat :

and æc mid him feolue æt.

mid Arðure he win dronc : 10

þat him wes mucheles unðonc.

Naðeles þa he ifah :

þat Arður wes fwiðe glad.

þa cleopede Gillomar :

an his horte him wes sær.

Lauerd Arður þi grið :

ʒef me leomē & ʒif me lif.

ich wulle þi mō bicumē :

& biteche þe mine þreo funen.

mine funē deore : 20

to don al þine iwille.

& ʒet ich wulle mare :

þat Gillomar him was fo neh.

Ne¹ dude Arthur þe bolde king :

on fwiþe freo þing.

he lette þane king scrude :

mid allere prude.

and bi Arthur he fat :

and eke mid him seolf hate.

mid Arthur me² wýn drong :

þat was mid mochel onþong.

Noþeles þo he ifeh :

þat Arthur was fo neh.

Gillomar him faide :

mid forþ-folle heorte.

Louerd Arthur þin griþ :

ʒef me leome and ʒef me lif.

and ich wolle þin man bi-come :

to hostage take þe mine fone.

And ʒet ich wolle more :

it was the easier to him, that Gillomar was so nigh him. Now did Arthur 'noblest of kings, very great friendship before all his folk [the bold king, a thing most liberal]; he caused the king to be clothed with 'each [all] pride (richly); and 'eke' by Arthur [he] sate, and eke with himself ate; with Arthur he drank wine,—that 'to him' was [with] mickle unthank. Nevertheless when he saw that Arthur was 'most glad [so nigh], then said Gillomar [to him],—in his heart he was sore [with sorrowful heart]: "Lord Arthur, thy peace! Give me limb and give me life, [and] I will become thy man, 'and' deliver thee my 'three sons [son for hostage], 'my dear sons, to do all thy will.' And yet I will *do* more, if thou wilt give me

¹ Nou?² he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

ȝif þu me wult ȝefen ære.

ȝef þou me wolt ȝefue ore.

ich wulle þe bi-tache :

ich wolle þe bi-take :

ȝifles fwiðe rich.

hoſtageſ riche.

children fume fixti :

children folle fixti :

hæȝe & fwiðe mæhti.

riche and wel mihti.

ȝet ich¹ wulle mære :

And ȝet ich wolle more :

ȝif þu me ȝifueſt ære.

ȝef þou me ȝeueſt ore.

ælche ȝere of mine londe :

eche ȝer of mine londe :

feouen þuſend punde. [c. 2.]

foue þouſend pound þe fende.

& fenden heom to þine londe : 10

& fixti mark of golde.

& ȝet ich wulle mare :

ȝif þu wult me ȝifuen are.

alle þa ſteden :

and alle mine ſtedes :

mid alle heore iweden.

mid alle hire wedeſ.

þa hæuekes & þa hundes :

min hauekeſ and mine houndes :

& hehȝe mine (maħmes) *maħmes*

and oþer riche ȝeſteſ.

ich bitache þe to hōde :

ich take þe an honde :

of alle mine londe.

of al mine londe.

And þēne þu haueſt þiſ idon : 20

And wane þou haueſt þuſ idon :

ich wulle nimē halidom.

ich wolle nime halidomes.

of ſeīt Colūkille :

of ſeint Columkille : [c. 2.]

þe dude godes iwille.

þat dude godes wille.

& ſeint Brændeneſ hæfed :

and ſeint Brendan hiſ heued :

grace; I will deliver thee hostages 'exceeding' rich, children 'some' [full] sixty, 'noble' [rich] and 'most' [well] mighty. [And] yet I will more, if thou givest me grace; each year of my land seven thousand pounds [thee send]; 'and send them to thy land, and sixty marks of gold. And yet I will more, if thou wilt give me grace'; [and] all 'the' [my] steeds, with all their trappings, 'the' [my] hawks, and 'the' [my] hounds, and 'my rich treasures' [other rich gifts] I give thee in hand, of all my land. And when thou hast this done, I will take *the* reliques of Saint Columkille, who did

¹ This word is interlined.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe godd feolf haleȝede.
 & feinte Bride riht fot :
 þe hali if & swiðe god.
 & halidomes inoze :
 þe comen ut of Rome.
 & swerien þe to soðe :
 fwiken þe þat ich nulle.
 ah ich þe wulle luuien :
 and halden þe for lauerd¹.
 halden þe for hahne king : 10
 & mi feolf beon þin vnderling.
 þif iherde Arður :
 aðelest king.
 & he gan lihȝe :
 luddere stestne².
 & he gon andfwerie :
 mid ædmode worden.
 Beo nu glad Gillomar :
 ne beo þin heorte noht fær.
 for þv ært a wif mon : 20
 þa bet þe scal iwurðen.
 for æuere me æhte wifne mon :
 wurðliche igreten.

þat god feolf halwede.
 and feinte Bride riht fot :
 þat his holȝ and god.
 and halidomes inowe :
 þat come vt of Rome.
 and fwerien þe to soþe :
 fwike þat ich þe nelle.
 ac ich þe wolle louie :
 and holde þe for louerd.

p Is ihorde Arthur :
 boldest alre kinge.

and him andfwerede :
 mid mildeliche wordes.
 Beo nou glad Gillomar :
 ne beo þou noht in heorte for.
 for þou hart a wifman :
 þe sal þe bet for þan.

Gods will, and Saint 'Brandans [Brandan his] head, that God *himself* hallowed, and Saint Brides right foot, that is holy and 'most' good, and reliques enow, that came out of Rome, and swear to thee in sooth, that I will thee not deceive ; but I will love thee, and hold thee for lord, 'hold thee for high king, and myself be thy underling.' " Arthur heard this, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, 'and he gan laugh with loud voice,' and he 'gan answer [answered] with gracious words : " Be now glad, Gillomar ; be 'not thy heart sore [thou not sore in heart] ; for thou art a wise man,—the better [therefore] shall *it* 'be' to thee, 'for ever one ought worthily a

¹ lauer, *pr. m.*² stefne ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

for þine wiſdome ⁊	for þine wiſdome ⁊
no ſcal þe noht þa wurfe. [f. *129. c. 1.]	ne ſal þe noh þe worfe.
muchel þu me beodeſt ⁊	moche þou me bedeſt ⁊
þe ſcal beon þa betere.	þe ſal beon þe betere.
Her forð rihteſ ⁊	Her forþrihtes ⁊
bi-foren al mine cnihtes.	bi-vore alle mine cnihtes.
forziuen þe amare ¹ ⁊	ich for-zeue of þine bode ⁊
al þæ haluen dæle.	al þan haluendeale.
of golde & of gærſūe ⁊	of golde and of garifome ⁊
ah þu ſcalt mi mon bicumen. 10	ac þou ſalt min man bi-come.
and half þat gauel ſende ⁊	and half þat gauel ſende ⁊
ælche ȝere to mine londe.	in to mine londe.
Halfe þa ſteden ⁊	Halue þe ſtedes ⁊
& halfe þa iweden.	and halue þe wedes.
halue þa hauekeſ ⁊	halue þe hundes ⁊
& halue þa hundes.	and halue þe hauekes.
þæ þu me beodeſt ⁊	þat þou me bedeſt ⁊
ich wulle þe bi-lefen.	ich wolle þe bi-lefue.
ah ich wulle habben ⁊	ac ich wolle habbe þine ſone ⁊
þire hæhre monne childrē. 20	
þeo heom beoð alre leofueſt ⁊	
ich heom mai þe bet ileouē.	ich maȝ þe þe bet i-leue.
& ſwa þu ſcalt winien ⁊	And þou ſalt wonie ⁊

wise man to greet';—for thy wisdom shall *it* not *be* the worse for thee; much thou me offerest, the better *it* shall be to thee. Here forth-right, before all my knights, I forgive thee 'the more, [of thy offer] all the half-part, of gold and of treasure; but thou shalt become my man, and half the tribute send 'each year' [in]to my land. Half the steeds, and half the weeds (garments), half the 'hawks [hounds], and half the 'hounds [hawks], that thou me offerest, I will relinquish to thee; but I will have 'the children of thy noble men [thy son], 'who are to them dearest of all'; I may the better believe 'thee [them]. And 'so' thou shalt dwell in thy honor (honorably) in thy

¹ þa mare?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in wurðſcipe þire.
 a þine kine-dome :'
 i þine rihte icunden.
 & ic þe wulle ȝeuen to :'
 þat ne ſcal þe king woh don.
 butē he hit abugge :'
 mid hiſ brare¹ rugge.
 þeo² hit ſæide Arður :'
 aðeleſt kingen.
 þa hafden he an hond :'
 al to-ſomne Irlond.
 & þe kīg hiſ mon bicumen :'
 and bitæht hī hiſ þreo ſeonen.
 þa ſpac Arður :'
 to ſele hiſ cnihten.
 Faren³ to Hiſ-lond :'
 & nimē we hit to ure honde.
 Ferde þer fuſde :'
 & com to Iſlonde. [c.2.]
 Ælcuſ þe kīg wes ihatē :'
 hæh mon of þan ærd.
 he iherde þa tidende :'
 of Arðure þan kinge.
 he dude al ſo wiſ mon :

Ælcu[s.]

in worſipe þine.
 in þine kinelonde :'
 and þin rihte icunde. [f.103^b.c.1.]
 and ich þe wolle loke to :'
 þat no king ne ſal þe miſ-do.
 bote he hit a-bugge :'
 mid hiſ bare rugge.
 þuſ him ſaide Arthur :'
 holdeſt alre kinge.
 þo he hadde al Irlond :'
 to hiſ owene hond.
 and þe king hiſ man bi-com :'
 and bi-tok Arthur hiſ ſone.
 þo ſpac Arthur :'
 to ſele hiſ cnihteſ.
 Wende we to Iſlond :'
 and nime hit to oure hond.
 Forþ hii wende :'
 þat hii þider come.
 Alcuſ hehte þe king :'
 he hadde mani onderlȳng.
 he ihorde þan tȳdingge :'
 of Arthur þan kinge.
 he dude aſe a wiſman :

kingdom, 'in [and] thy right territory; and I will 'give [look] to thee, that 'the king shall not do wrong [no king shall misdo] to thee, unless he pay for it with his bare back!" Thus 'it said [said him] Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings. Then had he [all] Ireland 'all together' in [his own] hand; and the king became his man, and delivered 'him [Arthur] his 'three sons [son]. Then spake Arthur to his good knights: "Go we to Iceland, and take 'we' it in our hand." 'The host there marched, and to Iceland [Forth they went, until they thither] came. The king 'was named [hight] Ælcus, 'high man of the land [he had many *an* underling]; he heard the tiding of Arthur the

¹ R. bare.² þuſ?³ Faren we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& wende toȝeines him anan.	and wende aȝenest him anon.	
anan forð rihtes :	fwiȝe forȝ rihtes :	
mid fixtene cnihtes.	mid fixtene cnihtes.	
he bar on hiȝ honde :	he bar on his honde :	
æenne mucle ȝeord of golde.	ane mochele ȝeord of golde.	
Sone ſwa he Arður iſæh :	Sone ſo he Arthur iſeh :	
ſwa he on hiȝ cneowen bæh.	on his cnowes he him beh.	
& þas worð ¹ him iquað :	and þeos word ſaide :	
þe king wes aſæred.	þe king waȝ a-fered.	
Wulcume ſire Arður :	Wolcome ſire Arthur :	10
wilcume lauerd.	wolcome louerd.	
Her ich biteche þe an hond :	Her ich bi-take þe an hond :	
al to-gadere Iſlond.	al to-gadere Iſlond.	
þu ſcal beō min hæhȝe king :	þou ſalt beo min hehȝe king :	
and ich ² wul beon þen underling.	and ich wolle beo þin onderling.	
Ich þe wullen heren :		
ſwa mon ſcal don hiȝ hærren.		
& ich wulle þi mon bicumen :	Ich wolle here þi man bi-come :	
& bitæche þe minne leofue ſune.	and take þe mine ſone.	
Eſſcol iȝ ihaten :	Eſcol hiȝ ihote :	20
and þu hine ſcalt iæðelien.	and þou hine moȝt teche.	
to cnihte hine dubben :	to cnihte hine dobben :	
alſe þi aȝene mon.	aſe þin owene man.	
Hiȝ moder ich habbe to wiȝe :	Hiȝ moder hiȝ wel ibore :	[c. 2.]

Eſſco[l.]

king ; he did 'all' as [a] wiſeman, and marched againſt him anon ; 'anon [quickly] forth-right, with ſixteen knights ; he bare in his hand a mickle wand (ſceptre) of gold. 'So' ſoon as he ſaw Arthur, he bent [him] on his knees, and 'quoȝ [ſaid] theſe words 'to him,'—the king was afraid :—
 "Welcome, ſir Arthur ! welcome, lord ! Here I deliver thee in hand all together Iceland ; thou ſhalt be my high king, and I will be thy underling. 'I will obey thee, as man ſhall do his maſter, and' I will become [here] thy man, and deliver thee my 'dear' ſon, *who* is named Eſcol ; and thou 'ſhalt him honor (*or* reward) [muſt him teach], *and* dub him to knight, as thine own

¹ word ?² *Inserted in the margin by ſecond hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þaſ kinges dohter of Rufie.	þe kinges dohter of Rufie icore.
And æc ælche ȝere :	And eke eche ȝere :
ȝiuen ¹ þe wulle æhte.	ȝefen ich þe wolle.
seoue þuſend punde :	foue þouſend pound :
of feoluere and of golde.	of feoluer and of golde.
& to æuer ælche ræde :	and to euereche reade :
beon ȝæru to þire neode. [f.*129 ^b .c. 1.]	beo ȝaru to þine neode.
þiſ ich wullen þe ſwerien :	þiſ ich wolle ſwerie :
uppen mine sweorden.	vppen mine ſweorde.
þe halidom iſ a þere hilde :	þar hiſ an halidom wel icore :
þe hexſte of þiſſe londe.	in þan helte bi-vore.
likien ſwa me liken :	likie ou me likie :
nulle ich þe nauere ſwiken.	nolle ich þe neuere ſwike.
þiſ iherde Ardur ² :	þiſ ihorde Arthur :
aðleſt kīgē.	boldeſt alre kinke ³ .
Arður wes wunſum :	Arthur waſ wiſman :
þer he haſde hiſ iwillen.	ware he haðde hiſ wille.
& he wes wod ⁴ ſturne :	he waſ wonder ſteorne :
wið hiſ wiðer-iwinnen.	wiþ hiſ wiþer-iwinne.
Arður þa liðe word iherde :	Arthur grantete þan king :
of þan leod-kinge.	al þat he ȝornde.
al þat he ȝirnde :	
al he hī ȝette ⁵ .	

man. His mother 'I have to wife [is well born], the kings [choice] daughter of Russia. And eke each year [I] will give thee 'money,' seven thousand pounds of silver and of gold; and in every counsel be ready at thy need. This I will swear 'to thee,' upon my sword; 'the relique is in the hilt, the noblest of this land [there is a relique well choice in the hilt before]; like as me shall like, will I never be false to thee!' Arthur heard this 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings. Arthur was 'winsome [wise man] where he had his will, and he was exceeding stern with his enemies. Arthur 'heard the mild words of the monarch; he' granted 'him [the king] all that he

¹ ȝiuen ich?² R. Arður.³ kinge?⁴ wonder?⁵ Sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ȝilles¹ and aȝes :

and alle hiȝ ibodes.

¶ þa iherde suggen :

foðere worden.

þe king of Orcaneie :

vnimete kene.

Gonwais wes ihate :

hæðene kenpe².

þat Arður king wolde :

cume to hiȝ londe.

mid muchelē ſcip-ferde :

fuſen to leoden.

Gonwaif hī uerde to-ȝæines :

mid wiȝe hiȝ þeines.

and ſette Arðure an hond :

al Orcaneies lōd.

and twa and þritti æit-lond :

þe þider in liggeð.

and hiȝ mon-radene :

mid muchelere menſce.

And he him haȝde a uoreward :

biſoren al hiȝ duȝeðe.

ælcche ȝere to iwitē :

oþes he þare nā :

and hoſtageȝ al ſon.

PO ihorde ſegge :

foþere wordes.

þe king of Organeȝe :

onimete kene.

Gongwas was ihote :

heaþene kempe.

þat Arthur þe ſtronge gome :

to hiȝ londe wolde come.

Gongwas ȝeode to-ȝeynes :

mid wiȝe hiȝ cnihteȝ.

and ſette Arthur an hond :

al Organeȝes lond.

and two and þritti ŷllondes :

þat þar to liggeþ.

and hiȝ manradene :

mid mochelere menſce.

And he him haȝde a foreward :

bi-vore alle hiȝ cnihtes.

eche ȝer to iwite :

[Go]nwais.

yearned; 'hostages and oaths, and all his proffers [oaths he there took, and hostages also]. Then heard say sooth words the king of Orkney, exceeding keen, *who* was named Gonwais, *a* heathen warrior, that Arthur *'the* king [the strong man] would come to his land; 'with *a* mickle fleet sail to *his* country.' Gonwais proceeded towards 'him,' with his wise 'thanes [knights], and set to Arthur in hand all Orkneys land, and two and thirty islands, that 'thither in [thereto] lieth, and his homage, with much reverence. And he had (made) to him in covenant, before all his 'people [knights], each year to wit, full sixty ships at his own cost to bring

¹ R. ȝifles.² kempe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fulle fixti scipen.	fulle fixti fipes.
mid his azere costninge : [c. 2.]	mid his owene costninge : [f. 104. c. 1.]
bringē heom to Londenne.	bringen ȝam to Londene.
ifulled to iwisse :	i-fulled mid iwisse :
mid gode sæ fisce.	of gode féé vifce.
ȝif forward he iuaſte :	
and ȝifles he funde.	
and aȝes he ſwor gode :	Oȝes he ſwor gode :
ſwiken ȝan ¹ he nolde.	ſwike ȝat he nolde.
& feoȝðen he lefe nom : 10	and ſupȝe he lefue nam :
& forȝ he gon liȝen.	and forȝ he gan wende.
Lauerd haue wel godne dæi :	Louerd haue godne day :
ich wulle cumen wenne ich mai.	ich wolle come wan ich may.
for nu ȝu art mi lauerd ² :	
leoueft alre kingen.	
ȝa Ardur ³ hafde ȝif idon :	ȝo Arthur hadde ȝif idon :
ȝa ȝet he wolde mare aſon.	ȝet he wolde more vnder-ſon.
he nom hiſ writen gode :	he nam hiſ ſonde :
and ſenden to Gutlonde.	and ſende to Gutlonde.
<i>Doldamin.</i> and grætte ȝe king Doldanim : 20	ād grette ȝane king Deldanȳm :
and hehte hine ſone comen to	and hehte hine an hiȝenge come
him.	to him.
& him ſeolf hiſ mon bicume :	and him ſeolf hiſ man bi-come :
and bringen him hiſ tweien ſunen.	and bringe mid him hiſ tweie ſones.
And ȝif ȝu ȝ nulle :	And ȝef ȝou ȝat nolle :

them to London, filled truly with good sea-fish. 'This covenant he confirmed, and hostages he found; and' oaths he swore good, that he would not deceive. And afterwards he took leave, and forth he gan wend:—"Lord, have 'well' good day! I will come when I may; 'for now thou art my lord, dearest of all kings.' " When Arthur had done this, 'the' yet he would more undertake; he took his 'good writs [messengers], and sent to Gutlond; and greeted the king Doldanim, and bade him 'soon [in haste] come to him, and himself become his man, and bring [with] him his two sons.—"And if thou

¹ ȝat?² lauer *pr. m.*³ *R.* Arður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

do þat þu wulle.
 ich þe wulle fende :
 fixtene þufend.
 heze here-kempen :
 to mucle þine harmen.
 scullē þi lond waften :
 and þire leoden aflan.
 and þ̅ lōd fetten :
 swa heom bezft þincheð.
 and þe feoluen binden :
 & to me bringen.
 þis iherde þe king :
 þræt þaf kaiferes.
 & he on uafte iuēg :
 fæiere his iweden.
 hundes & hafekes :
 & his gode horffes. [f. 130. c. 1.]
 muchel feoluer muchel gold :
 his tweien sunen an his hond.
 And forð he gon wenden :
 to Arðure þan kingen.
 and þas word fæide :
 Doldanim þe fele.

do wat þou wolle.
 and ich þe wolle fende :
 fixtene þoufend kempes.
 þat þe folle þe¹ binde :
 and to me bringe.
 and þin lond wafti :
 and falle þine cnihtes.
 þis ihorde þe king :
 of þisse herde þreting.
 and caſte on his rugge :
 fwiþe riche webbes.
 and him nam bi-fides :
 hundes and hauekef.
 moche feoluer and gold :
 and his fones beine.
 And forþ he he² gan wende :
 to Arthur þan kinge.
 and þes word faide :
 Doldanȳm þe fele.

wilt not that, do what thou wilt, [and] I will send thee sixteen thousand 'noble' warriors, 'to thy mickle harm,' [who] shall 'waste thy land, and slay thy people [bind thee, and bring to me], 'and set the land as to them best seemeth,' and 'thyselſ bind, and to me bring [waste thy land, and fell thy knights].'" The king heard this, 'the threat of the kaiser, and he speedily took his fair weeds [of this hard threatening, and cast on his back exceeding rich clothes, and took to him besides] hounds and hawks, 'and his good horses'; much silver, 'much [and] gold; 'his two [and both his] sons 'in his hand.' And forth he gan wend to Arthur the king; and said these words Doldanim the good: "Hail be thou, Arthur, 'nobleſt of [boldeſt

¹ Sic MS.² Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Hail feo þu Ardur¹ ⁊
aðeleſt kingen.

Her ich bringe tweiene ⁊
mine funen beiene.

heore moder if kīnges iſtreon ⁊
quene heo if min aȝene.

ich tache þe mine leofen funen ⁊
mi feolf ich wulle þi mō bicumen.
ich heo biȝat mid ræflac ⁊

ut of Ruſie.

10

And ic wulle ſende ⁊
gauel of mine londe.

æuer ælche ȝere ⁊
to ȝiueleſ² þingen.

ich wulle ſēden þe in to Lundene ⁊

feouen þuſend punden.

þat ic wulle ſwerien ⁊

þat nulle ich næuere ſwiken.

ah here ich wulle þi mon bicomē ⁊
þi monſcipe if þa mare.

20

ſwiken nulle ich nauere ⁊

ſwa long ſwa beoð auere.

Arður nom his ſonde ⁊

& ſende to Winent-londe.

Haȝl beo þou Arthur ⁊

boldeſt alre kinge.

Her ich bringe tweie ⁊

mine ſones hii beoþ beȝe. [c. 2.]

hire moder his kingeſ ſtreon ⁊

cwene ȝeo his min owe.

here ich take hire ſones ⁊ [come.

and mi feolf ich wolle þin man bi-

ich heo biȝat mid ræflac ⁊

ut of Ruſie.

And ich þe wolle ſende ⁊

gauel of mine londe.

euereche ȝere ⁊

to ȝiueleſ² þingen.

ich wulle ſēden þe in to Lundene ⁊

ſoue þouſend poundes.

þat ic wulle ſwerien ⁊

þat nulle ich næuere ſwiken. [come ⁊

ah here ich wulle þi mon bicomē ⁊

þi monſcipe if þa mare. and oþes þe ſwerie.

þat ſo lang ſo beoþ euere ⁊

ne ſwike ich þe neuere.

Arthur nam his ſonde ⁊

and ſende to Winet-londe.

of all] kings! Here I bring twain, my sons [they are] both; their mother is of kings race, she is mine own queen; 'I won her with spoil, out of Russia.' [Here] I deliver 'thee' 'my dear [her] sons, [and] myself I will become thy man. And I will send [thee] tribute of my land; every year 'as thing bestowed (?), I will send thee into London' seven thousand pounds. 'That I will swear, that I will never be false,' 'but [And] here I will become thy man,—'thy honor is the greater—[and oaths to thee swear, that] so long as is ever, I will deceive [thee] never!' Arthur took his

¹ R. Arður.

² A plummet-mark in the margin would seem to indicate some mistake here.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to Rumareð þan kinge :'	to Rumerat þan kinge :'	<i>Rumareð.</i>
and hehte him cuðen ā hizenge.	to cuþi him an hizenge.	
þat he hæfde in his hond :'	þat he hadde in his hond :'	
Brutlond & Scotlond.	Brutlōd and Scotlond.	
Gutlond & Irlond :'	Gutlond and Irlond :'	
Orcanie & Iflond. [c.2.]	Orcaneýe and Iflōd.	
He hæhte Rumareð cumen :'	He hehte Rumerat come :'	
and bringen him hiſ ældeſte fune.	and bringe hiſ huldeſt fone.	
& ȝif he þ̅ nolde :'	and ȝef he þat nolde :'	
he wolde hine driuē of londe.	10 he wolde him driue of londe.	
and ȝif he mihte aſon :'	and ȝef he him mihte onder-ſon :'	
he wolde hine flæn oðer an-hon.	he wolde him hehȝe an-hon.	
and hiſ lond al for-don :'		
hiſ leoden for-demen.		
þiſ iherde Rumareð :'	þiſ ihorde Rumerat :'	
þe rich king of Winete.	þe riche king of Winet.	
fwiðe he wes aſered :'	fwiþe he was aſered :'	
al ſwa þa oðere weoren arer.	al ſo þe oþer were.	
laðe him weoren þa tidende :'	loþ him were þe tȝdinges :'	
from Arðure þan kīge.	20 fram Arthur þan kinge.	
Noðeles þe king Rumareð :	Noþeles þe king Rumerat :	
hercnede rædes.	hercnede tidinges.	
he nom hiſ ældeſte fune :'	he nam hiſ eldeſte fone :'	
and ſele twælf eorles.	and oþer twealf cnihtef.	

messengers, and sent to Winetland, to Rumareth the king, 'and bade him know [to make known to him] in haste, that he had in his hand Britain and Scotland, Gutland and Ireland, Orcany and Iceland. He ordered Rumareth to come, and bring 'him' his eldest son; and if he would not *do* that, he would drive him from land; and if he might [him] capture, he would 'slay him or hang [hang him high], 'and destroy all his land; his people exterminate.' Rumareth heard this, the rich king of Winet; greatly he was afraid, all as the others were 'ere'; loath to him were the tidings from Arthur the king. Nevertheless the king Rumareth hearkened 'counsels [tidings]; he took his eldest son, and twelve 'good earls

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ferde to Arðure :'	and wende to Arthur :
þan kīge aðele.	þane bolde kinge.
and fet æt his fotē :	and fat hat his fote :'
and feire hine gon greten.	and faire hine gan grete.
Hail seo þu Arður :	Haȝl beo þou Arthur þe king :
aðeleft Brutten.	Bruttene deorling.
Ich hatten Rumareð :	Ich hatte Rumeret :
þe kīg of Winet-londe.	of þe londe of Winet.
inoh ich habbe iherd kenne :	inoh ich hure kenne :
of kē-scipe þine.	10 of kenfipe þinne.
þat þu ært widē icuð :	þat þou hart wide icud :
kingen alre kenneft.	kenneft alre kinge.
þu haueft moni kine-lōd :	þou haueft many kine-lond :
biȝiten al to þire hond.	a-wonne to þin owe hond.
nis na king an londe :	nis non king in londe :
þe þe mazen ftonde ¹ .	þat maze þe wiþ-ftonde.
kīg ne na kaifere :'	[f. 130 ^b .c.1.]
in nauere nane cōpe.	
of al þat þu biȝinnest :	of al þat þou bi-ginneft :
þu deft þine iwille.	20 þou doft þine wille.
Her ich æm to þe icume ✓	Her ich ham to þe icome :
and broht þe mine aldefte fune.	and hi-broht min eldefte fone.
her ich sette þe an hond :	ich sette þe her an hond :

[other knights], and proceeded to Arthur the 'noble [hold] king, and sate at his feet, and gan him fair greet: "Hail be thou, Arthur [the king], 'noblest of Britons [Britons darling]! I hight Rumareth, 'the king of Winetland [of the land of Winet]; enow I 'have heard [hear] declared of thy valor; that thou art wide known, keenest of all kings. Thou hast won many kingdom 'all' to thine [own] hand; *there* is no king in land that may thee withstand, 'king nor kaiser, in ever any combat'; of all that thou beginnest, thou dost thy will. Here am I to thee come, and brought 'thee' my eldest son; here I set thee in hand myself and my kingdom,

¹ wið-ftonde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

me feoluen and mi kine-lond.	my feolfen and mi kinelond.
and mīne fune leofe ⁊	and mine fone leue ⁊
and mine leoden alle.	and mine men alle.
wif & mine weden ⁊	
and alle mine wunnen.	
wið þat þu me griðie ⁊	wiþ þan þat þou me griþie ⁊
wið þine grim ræfen.	wiþ þine grȳm reafes.
And beo þu min hæhȝe kīg ⁊	And beo þou min hehȝe king ⁊
and ich wulle beon þin underling.	and ich wolle beo þin onderling.
and fenden þe to honde ⁊	and fende þe to honde ⁊
fif hundred pund of golde.	fif hundred pound of golde.
þaſ ȝeuen ich finde þe wulle ⁊	fram ȝere to ȝere ⁊
æue ¹ alche ȝere.	to Londene þe fende.
Al Arður him ȝette ⁊	Arthur him grantede ⁊
þat þe king ȝirde ² .	al þat he ȝornde.
and ſeoððen he heolde runen ⁊	and ſuþþe helde rouning ⁊
wið ſele his þeinen.	wiþ leoue his cnihtes.
& ſeide þat he wolde ⁊	þat he wolde aȝen wende ⁊
aȝæin to þiſſe londe.	into þiſſe londe.
and iſeon Wenhauer ⁊	and iſen Gwēnaifer ⁊
þe wuneliche quene.	þe leodiffe cwene.
Bemen he lette blawē ⁊	Bumef he lette bloue ⁊
& bonnien hiſ ferden.	and banni his ferde.
and to ſcipen wenden ⁊	and to fiþe wende ⁊

and my dear son, and all my 'people [men], 'my wife and my weeds, and all my possessions,' on condition that thou give me protection against thy fierce attacks. And be thou my high king, and I will be thy underling, and send thee to hand five hundred pounds of gold; 'these gifts I will thee find, every year [from year to year to London thee send].'" Arthur granted him all that 'the king [he] yearned, and afterwards 'he' held communing with his 'good thanes [dear knights], 'and said' that he would [return] again [in]to this land, and see Wenhaver, the 'comely' queen [of the country]. Trumpets he caused to be blown, and his army to assemble;

¹ æuere?* *pr. m. sende (f > f)*² ȝirnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wunder bliðe þeines.	many blipe chnihtef. [c.2.]
Wind heom stod on willen :	Winde ȝam stod at wille :
weder alfe heo wolden.	weder afe hii wolde.
bliðe heo weoren alle for þi :	glad hii were for þi :
[Gri]mesbi. up heo comen at Grimesbi.	vp hii come at Grimesbi.
þ̅ iherden fone :	þat i-horde fone :
þa hæhste of þissen londe. [c.2.]	þe heheste of þisse londe.
and to þære quene com tidende :	and to þar cwene com tyding :
of Arðure þan kinge.	of Arthur þan king.
þat he wes ifund icumen : 10	þat he was ifonde icome :
& his folc ð felen.	and his folk on sele.
þa weoren inne Bruttene :	þo weren in Bruttayne :
bliffin inoze.	bliffes inowe.
her wes fiðelinge and song :	was her sipeling and song :
her wes harpinge imong.	her was harping a-mang.
pipen & bemen :	of alle cunnes dremes :
murie þer sungen.	murie her songe.
Scopes þer fungen :	of Arthur þa kinge :
of Arðure þan kingen.	and of his winninge.
& of þan muchele wurð-scipe : 20	of his mochele worþipe :
þe he iwunnen hafeden.	þat he a-wonne hadde.
folc cō to hirede :	folk þar was i-gadered :
of feole cunne þeode.	of mani cunne londe.
widen and fiden :	

and to ship marched *the* thanes wondrous [many knights] blithe. *The* wind stood them at will; weather as they would; 'blithe [glad] they were 'all' therefore; up they came at Grimesby. That heard soon the highest of this land, and to the queen came tiding of Arthur the king, that he was come in safety, and his folk in prosperity. Then were in Britain joys enow! Here was fiddleing and song, here was harping among; 'pipes and trumps [of all kind of music.] sang 'there [here] merrily. 'Poets there sung' of Arthur the king, [and of his winning,] 'and' of 'the [his] great honor, that he had won. Folk 'came in concourse [was there gathered] of many kind of land; 'wide and far *the* folk was in prosperity.' All that Arthur saw, all

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

folc wes on felen.

Al þat Arður ifæh :

al hit him to bæh.

riche men and pouere :

fwa þe hazel ualleð.

nef þer nan swa wræcche Brut :

þ he nes awælzed.

Her mon mai arede :

of Arðure þan king.

hu he twelf ȝere :

feoðen wuneden here.

inne griðe & inne friðe :

in alle uæȝerneffe.

Na man him ne faht wið :

no he ne makede nan un-frið.

ne mihte nauere nan man :

bi-þenchen of bliffen.

þat weoren in ai þeode :

mare þan i þiffe.

ne mihte nauere mon cūne :

nan fwa muchel wunne. [f.131.c.1.]

swa wes mid Arðure :

& mid his folke here.

Ich mai fugge hu hit iwarð :

Al þat Arthur i-feh :

al hit him to beh.

riche and pore :

afe þe hawel þat falleþ.

nas þar non so wrecche Brut :

þat he nas wel iwelid.

HEr man may reade :

of Arthur þā kene.

10 hou he twalf ȝere :

fuþþe wonede here.

in griþe and bliffe :

and in alle fairniſſe.

No man him ne faht¹ wiþ :

ne he non oþer wiþ.

ne mihte no mam² bi-þenche :

of bliffe þat were more.

in eni cunneſ londe :

þane was wiþ alle. [f.105.c.1.]

Ich may ſegge ou hit iworþ :

it submitted to him, rich 'men' and poor, as the hail [that] falleth; was there no Briton so wretched, that he was not enriched! Here man may tell of Arthur the 'king [keen], how he afterwards dwelt here twelve years, in peace and 'in amity, [bliss, and] in all fairness. No man fought with him, nor 'made he any strife [he with any other]; might 'never any [no] man bethink of bliss that were greater in any 'country [kind of land] than 'in this [was with all]; 'might never man know any so mickle joy, as was with Arthur, and with his folk here!' I may say how it happened, won-

¹ faht?² R. man.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wunder þæh hit þunche.	þeh hit wonder þinche.
Hit wes in ane ȝeol-dæie :	Hit was in on holý day :
þat Arður in Lundene lai.	þat Arthur ine Londene lay.
þa weoren him to i-cumen :	þar weren to him icome :
of alle hiȝ kinerichē.	of al his kineriche.
of Brutlonde : of Scotlonde :	of Brutlond of Scotlonde :
of Irlonde : of Iflonde.	of Irlond of Iflond.
and of al þan londe :	and of alle þan londes :
þe Arður hæfede an honde.	þat Arthur hadde an honde.
alle þa hæxte þeines :	and alle þe hexfte cnihtes :
mid horfen & mid sweiēs.	þat were mid hire fweines.
þer weoren seouen kingene sunes :	þar were foue kingene fones :
midseouē hundred cnihten icumen.	mid foue hundred cnihtes.
wið uten þan hired :	wiþ oute þan folke :
þe herede Arðure.	þat Arthur hadde on hepe.
Ælc hafede an heorte :	
leches heȝe.	
and lette þat he weore :	
betere þan his iuere.	
þat folc wes of feole londe :	þat folk was .. many londe :
þer wes muchel onde.	þar was mochel onde.
for þe an hine talde hæh :	for euerech wende :
þe oðer mucche herre.	be betere þan oþer.
þa bleou mon þa bemen :	Bumes .ar blewe :

drous though it seem. It was on a 'yule-day [holy day], that Arthur lay in London; 'then [there] were come to him *men* of all his kingdoms, of Britain, of Scotland, of Ireland, of Iceland, and of all the lands that Arthur had in hand; [and] all the highest 'thanes [knights], 'with horses and with [that were with their] swains. There were 'come' seven kings sons, with seven hundred knights; without the folk that 'obeyed Arthur [Arthur had in heap]. 'Each had in heart proud thoughts, and esteemed that he were better than his companion.' The folk was of many *a* land; there was mickle envy; for 'the one accounted himself high, the other much higher [every *one* weened *him* to be better than other]. 'Then [There]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& þa bordes bradden.	bordes me wýde.
water me brohte an uloren :	water me brohte an flore :
mid guldene læflen.	mid goldene bole.
seoððen claðef soften :	suppe cloþef fohte ¹ :
al of white feolke.	al of wite folke.
þa sat Arður adun :	þo fat Arthur a-dun :
& bi him Wēhauer þa quene.	and Gwennayfer his cwene.
seoððen fete þa eorles :	suppe feten eorles :
and þer after þa beornes.	beornes and cnihtef.
seoððen þa cnihtes :	10
al fwa mon heom dihte. [c.2.]	
þa heȝe iborne :	And þe heȝe ibore men :
þene mete beoren.	þane mete beare.
æfne forð rihten :	euere forþrihtef :
þa to þan cnihten.	toward þe cnihtef.
þa touward þan þæinen :	ech man þare :
þa touward þan fweinen.	fareuede hiȝ freonde.
þa touward þan bermoennen :	So lang hit wende þuȝ : [c. 2.]
forð at þan borden.	and fone þar after wors.
þa duȝeðe wærð iwraððed :	20 þat ſomme weren wel wroþ :
duntes þer weoren riue.	and duntes hii ȝefue.
Æreȝt þa laues heo weorpen :	hereȝt hii louef worpen :

blew 'men the' trumpets, 'and' spread [men] 'the' tables; water men brought on floor, with golden bowls; next soft clothes, all of white silk. Then sate Arthur down, and 'by him' Wenhaver 'the [his] queen; next sate 'the' earls, 'and thereafter the barons; next the knights, all as men them disposed. [barons and knights. And] the high-born [men] bare the meat 'even [ever] forth-right 'then to [toward] the knights; 'then toward the thanes, then toward the swains, then toward the porters, forth at the board. The people became angered, *and* blows there were rife [each man there served his friend. So long it went thus, and soon thereafter worse, that some were well wrath, and blows they gave]; *at* first they

¹ fohte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa while þa heo ilæsten.
 and þa bollen feoluerne :
 mid wine iuulled.
 & feodden¹ þa uuftes :
 uufden to fweoren.
 þa leop þer forð a ȝung mon :
 þe ut of Winet-londe com.
 he wes iȝefen Arður :
 to halden to ȝifle.
 he wes Rumarettes fune : 10
 þaſ kīges of Winette.
 þuſ ſeide þe cniht þere :
 to Arðure kinge.
 Lauerd Arður buh raðe :
 into þine bure.
 and þi quene mid þe :
 & þene mæies² cuðe.
 & we þiſ comp ſcullen to-delen :
 wið þaſ uncuðe kempen.
 Æfne þan worde : 20
 he leop to þan borde.
 þer leien þa cniueſ :

wile þat hii laſten.
 þo nemen hii þe bolleſ :
 i-fulled mid wine.
 and ſuþþe mid þā fuſtes :
 ſtarcliche fohte.
 þo leop þar forþ a ȝong man :
 þat vt of Wýnet-londe com.
 he was Rumaret his ſone :
 þe riche king of Wýnet.
 he was bi-take Arthur :
 in ſtede of hoſtage.
 þuſ ſaide þe cniht þare :
 to Arthur þan kinge.
 Louerd Arthur wende a-non :
 into þine boure.
 and þi cwene mid þe :
 and þine cnihtes leue.
 and we þiſ fiht ſolle to-deale :
 wiþ þiſ on-couþe leode.
 Efne þan worde :
 he leop to þan borde.
 þare leýen þe cniues :

threw 'the' loaves, 'the' while that they lasted, 'and the silver [then took they the] bowls, filled with wine, and afterwards [with] the fists approached to necks [fought strongly]. Then leapt there forth a young man, who came out of Winetland; he was given to Arthur 'to hold as [instead of] hostage; he was 'Rumareth's [Rumaret his] son, the [rich] king of Winet. Thus said the knight there to Arthur [the] king: "Lord Arthur, go 'quickly [anon] into thy chamber, and thy queen with thee, and thy 'known relatives [dear knights], and we shall decide this 'combat [fight] against 'these [this] foreign 'warriors [people]." Even with the words he leapt to the board, where lay the knives before the sovereign; three

¹ feoððen?² At first written mæidenes, but den expuncted.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bi-foren þan leod-kinge.	bi-vore þan leod-kinge.
þreo cnifes he igrap :'	þreo cnifes he igrop :
and mid þan anæ he fmat.	and mid þan one he fmat þan cniht.
i þere fwere þe cniht :	
þe ærest bigon þat ilke fiht.	þat ereft bi-gan þat fiht.
þat hiſ hefued i þene flor :'	[f.131 ^b .c.1.] þat his hefued in þan flor :
hælde to grunde.	fol to þan grunde.
Sone he floh ænne oðer :	Sone he floh an oþer :
þes ilke þeines broðer.	þis ilke cniht his broþer.
ær þa sweordes comen :	10 here þe fweordeſ come :
seouene he aſelde.	fouene he afulde.
þer wes fæht ſwiðe græt :	þar waſ fiht ſwiþe gret :
ælc mon oðer ſmat.	ech oþerne ſmot.
þer wes muchel blod gute :	þar waſ mochel blod iȝote :'
balu wes an hirede.	[f.105 ^b .c.1.] wowe þar waſ riue.
þa com þe king buȝen :	þo com þe king bouwe :
ut of hiſ buren.	vt of hiſ boure.
mid him ā hūdreð beornen :	mid him an hundred cnihtes :
mid helmen & mid burnen.	mid helmes and mid brunief.
ælc bar ā hiſ riht hond :	20 ech bar on hiſ riht hond :
whit ſtelene broð ¹ .	one ſtlene ² brond.
þa cleopede Arður :	þo cleope Arthur :
aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt alre king.

knives he grasped, and with the one he smote the knight 'in the neck,' that first began the 'same' fight, so that his head on the floor fell to [the] ground. Soon he slew another, this same 'thanes [knight his] brother; ere the swords came, seven he felled. There was fight exceeding great; each 'man' smote other; there was much blood shed, mischief was 'among the folk [there rife]! Then approached the king out of his chamber; with him an hundred 'nobles [knights], with helms and with burnies; each bare in his right hand [a] 'white' steel brand. Then called Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Sit ye, 'sit ye [down] quickly, each man on his

¹ brond?² R. ſtelene.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Sitteð fitteð swiðe :	Sitteþ a-dun fwiþe :
elc mon bi his liue.	ech man bi his liue.
and wa swa þat nulle don :	and wo se nele þat don :
he ſcal for-demed beon.	he ſal beo for-demed.
Nimeð me þene ilke mon :	Nimeþ me þan ilke man :
þa þiſ feht ærſt bigon.	þat þiſ fiht ereſt bi-gan.
& doð wiððe an his ſweore :	and doþ a-boute his ſwere :
& drazeð hine to ane more.	one raketeȝe.
& doð hine in an ley ¹ uen :	and drazeþ hine to on laȝe fen :
þer he ſcal liggen.	þar he ſal luggen.
And nimeð al his nexte cun :	And nimeþ al his nexſte cun :
þa ȝe maȝen iuīden.	þat ȝe maȝe finde.
and ſwēgeð of þa hafden :	and ſwengeþ of þe hefdes :
mid breoden eouwer ſweorden.	mid brode ȝoure ſweordeſ.
þa wiſmen þa ȝe maȝen iſinden :	þe wiſſen þat ȝe findeþ :
of his nexten cunden.	of his nexſte cunne.
kerueð of hire neoſe :	kerueþ of hure noſe :
& heore wlite ga to loſe.	and ſo hi ſolle go to loſe.
and ſwa ich wulle al fordon : [c.2.]	and þuſ ich wolle fordon :
þat cū þat he of com.	þat he of com.
And ȝiſ ich auere mare :	An ȝeſ ich ſuppe i-here :
seoððen ihere.	eni man fire.
þat æi of mine hirede :	more of þiſſe fihte :

life ! And whoſo will not that do, he ſhall be put to death. Take *ye* me the ſame man, that this fight firſt began, and put 'withy on [a chain about] his neck, and draw him to 'a moor, and put him in' a low fen ; there he ſhall lie. And take *ye* all his neareſt kin, that *ye* may find, and ſtrike off the heads of *them* with your broad ſwords ; the women that *ye* 'may' find of his neareſt kindred, carve *ye* off their noſes, and 'let their beauty [ſo they ſhall] go to deſtruction ; and 'ſo [thus] I will 'all' deſtroy 'the race' that he of came. And if I 'evermore' ſubſequentlly hear, 'that any of my folk, of high or of low, eft arear ſtrife on account of

¹ At firſt written waze, but corrected by a ſecond hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

of heȝe na of loȝe.	eorl oȝer cnihtef ¹ .
of ȝiffen ilke flehte :	
æft fake are ² .	
ne ſculde him neoðer gon fore :	ne fal him noȝer go vore :
gold ne na gærfume.	gold noȝer garifome.
hæh horf no hære ſcrud :	
ȝat he ne ſculde beon ded.	ȝat he ne fal be to-draȝe :
orðer ³ mid horfen to-draȝen :	
ȝat if elches ſwiken laȝen.	ȝat his ſwiken laȝe.
Brigeð ȝene halidom :	10 Bringeȝ ȝane halidom :
and ich wulle ſwerien ȝer on.	and wolle ich ſwerie ȝar on.
ſwa ȝe ſcullen cnihtes :	and ſo ȝe ſolle cnihtes :
ȝe weorē at ȝiffen fihte.	ȝat weren at ȝan fihte.
eorles & beornes :	eorles an cnihtef :
ȝat ȝe hit breken nulleð.	ȝat ȝe hit ibreke nolleȝ. [c.2.]
Ærft ſweor Arður :	A Reft ſwor Arthur :
aðeleft kingen.	boldeſt alre kinge.
seoððen ſworen eorles :	ſuppe ſworen eorles :
seoððen ſweoren beornes.	ſuppe ſworen cnihtes.
seoððen ſweoren ȝeines :	20
seoððen ſweoren ſweines.	
ȝat heo nauere mare :	ȝat hii neuere more :
ȝe ſake nulde arere.	ȝe fake nolde arere.

this same slaughter [any man meddle more of this fight, *be he* earl or knight], shall go for (ransom) him neither, gold `nor any [neither] treasure, 'fine horse nor war-garment,' that he `should [shall] not be 'dead, or with horses' drawn in pieces,—that is of 'each' traitor *the* law! Bring *ye* the reliques, and I will swear thereon; [and] so, knights, shall ye, that were at 'this [the] fight, earls and 'barons [knights], that ye will not it break." First swore Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings; then swore earls, then swore 'barons [knights]; 'then swore thanes, then swore swains,' that they nevermore the strife would arear. Men took all the dead, and `carried

¹ cnihte?² arere?³ *R.* oðer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Me nom alle þa dede :'	Me nam alle þe deade :'
& to leirstowe heom ladden.	and leide ȝam on erþe.
Seoððen me bleou bemen :'	Suppe me bleu þe bumef :'
mid swiðe murie dremē.	mid fwiþe murie dremes.
weoren him leof weoren him læd ¹ :	were ȝam leof were ȝam loþ :
elc þer feng water & clæd ² .	alle hii fenge water and cloþ.
& seoððen adun fetē :	and suppe adun fete :
sæhte to borden.	alle to þan borde.
al for Arðure æiȝe :'	for Arthures heȝe :
aðelest kingen.	boldest alre kinge.
Birles þer þūrgen ³ :	Borles þar þronge :
gleomē þer fungen.	glemen þar fonge.
harpen gūnē dremen :	
duȝeðe wes on felē.	
þus fulle feoueniht :	þus folle foue nih. :
wes þā hirede idiht.	was al þat folk idiht.
Seoððen hit seið in þere tale :	S..þe hit saiþ in þare ta.. :
þe king ferde to Cornwale.	þe king wende to Corn..le.
þer him com to anā :	þar him com to an.. :
þat wæs a crafti weorc-man.	þat was a crafti man.
and þene king imette :	and þane king mette :
and feiere hine grætte.	and faire hine grette.
Hail seo þu Arður :	Hayl beo þou Arthur :

[laid] them 'to burial-place [in earth]. Afterwards men blew [the] trumpets, with noise exceeding merry; were 'he [they] lief, were 'he [they] loath, 'each there [all they] took water and cloth, and then sate down 'reconciled [all] to [the] board, 'all' for Arthurs dread, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings. Cupbearers there thronged, gleemen there sung; 'harps gan resound, *the* people was in joy.' Thus full seven nights was [all] the folk treated. Afterwards it saith in the tale, *that* the king went to Cornwall; there came to him anon *one* that was a crafty 'work'-man, and met the king, and fair him greeted:—"Hail be thou, Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest

¹ læð?² clæð?³ þrūgen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

aðeleſt kinge.	boldeſt alre kinge.
Ich æm þin aȝe mon :	Ich ham þin owene man :
moni lond ich habbe þurh-gan.	manȝ lond ich habbe þorþ gon.
ich cō of treo-wrekes ¹ :	ich con of treo-workes :
wunder feole craftes.	mani wonder craftes.
Ich iherde fuggen :	Ich ihorde tidȝnges :
bi-ȝeonde fæ neowe tidende.	of þine bolde cnihtef.
þ̃ þine cnihtef :	þat hii þat ² þine borde :
at þine borde gunnen fihte.	folde fake arere.
a midewinteres dæi :	10 in on midewȳnteres daȝ :
moni þer feollen.	manȝe þar follen.
for heore muchele mode :	
morð-gomēn wrohten.	
and for heore hehȝe cunne :	for hire heȝe cunne :
ælc wolde beon wið inne.	ech wolde beo wiþ ine.
Ah ich þe wulle wurche :	Ac ich þe wolle wirche : [f. 106.c.1.]
a bord fwiðe hende.	a bord fwiþe hende.
þat þer mazen fetten to :	þat þar maze fitte to :
fixtene hundred & ma.	fixtene hondred and mo.
al turn abutē :	20 al teurne aboute :
þat nan ne beon wið utē.	þat non ne beo wiþ oute.
wið uten and wið inne :	
mō to-ȝæines monne.	

of all] kings! I am thine own man; through many land I have gone; I know of tree-works (carpentry) 'wondrous many [many wondrous] crafts. I heard say 'beyond *the* sea new' tidings, 'that thy knights gan to fight [of thy bold knights, that they should strife arear] at thy board; on [a] mid-winters day many there fell; 'for their mickle mood (pride) wrought murderous play, and' for their high lineage each would be within. But I will thee work (make) a board exceeding fair, that thereat may sit sixteen hundred and more, all turn about, so that none be without; 'without and within, man against man.' [And] when thou wilt ride, with thee thou mightest it carry,

¹ treo-werkes?² at?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Whenne þu wult riden :'	And wane þou wolt ride :'
wið þe þu miht hit leden.	mid þe þou miht hit leade.
and settē hit whar þu wulle :'	[c. 2.] and setten it ware þou wolle :'
after þine iwille.	after þine wille.
and ne dert þu nauere adrede :	þanne ne þert þou neuere adrede :
to þere worlde longen.	to þare worle longe.
þ æuere æine modi cniht :	þat euere eni modi cniht :
at þine borde makie fiht.	at þine borde makie fiht.
for þer ſcal þe hehze :	for þar ſal þe heze :
beon æfne þan loze.	10 be efne to þan lowe.
Timber me lete biwinnen :	Týmme ¹ me lette bringe :
and þat beord bi-ginnen.	and þat bord bi-gýnne.
to feouwer wikene uirſte :	in four wekene firſte :
þat wrec ² wes iuorðed.	þat worc was ihended.
To ane heze dæie :	He lette in one daize :
þat hired wes ifomned.	al þat folk gaderi.
and Arður him ſeolf beh :	and Arthur him wende :
ſone to þan borde.	a-non to þan borde.
and hehte alle his cnihtes :	and hehte alle his cnihtes :
to þan borde forð rihtes.	20 to borde forþ rihtes.
þo alle weoren ifeten :	þo alle weren ifete :
cnihtes to heore mete.	cnihtes to þare mete.
þa ſpæc ælc wið oðer :	þo ſpac ech wiþ oþer :
alfe hit weore hiſ broðer.	aſe hit were broþers.

and set it where thou wilt, after thy will; 'and [then] thou needest never fear, to the worlds end, that ever any moody knight at thy board may make fight, for there shall the high be even with the low.' Timber was caused to be brought, and the board to be begun; in four weeks time the work was completed. 'At a high day the folk was assembled [He caused on a day all the folk to be gathered], and Arthur him 'self' approached 'soon [anon] to the board, and ordered all his knights to 'the' board forth-right. When all were seated, knights to their meat, then spake each with other, as if it

¹ tymber?² werec?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle heo feten abutē :
 nef² þer nan wið uten.
 Æuereælches cunnes cniht :
 þere wes swiðe wel idiht.
 alle heo weoren bi ane :
 þe hehze & þa laze.
 ne mihten þer nan ȝelpē :
 for oðere kunnef ſcenchē.
 oðer hiſ iueren :
 þe at þan beorde weoren. 10
 þis wes þat ilke bord :
 þat Bruttes of ȝelpeð.
 and fugeð feole cunne leſinge :
 bi Arðure þan kinge.
 Swa deð auer alc mon :
 þe oðer luuien ne³ con.
 ȝif he iſ him to leof : [f. 132^b. c. 1.]
 þenne wule he liȝen.
 and fuggen on him wurð-ſcipe :
 mare þenne he beon wurðe. 20
 ne beo he no swa luðer mon :
 þat hiſ freond him wel ne on.
 Æft ȝif ð uolke :

alle hii fete wiþboute¹ :
 nas þar non wiþ vte.
 Euereche cunnes cniht :
 þar was wel i-diht.
 alle bi one :
 þe hehe an þe lowe.
 þis was þat ilke bord :
 þat Bruttes of cleopieþ.
 and ſeggeþ mani leſinge :
 bi Arthur þan kinge.
 So wole ech man :
 þat oþer louie can.
 ȝef he hiſ him to leof : [c. 2.]
 þanne wole he leȝe.
 and ſegge on him worſipe :
 more þan he hiſ worþe.
 ne beo he no ſwa luðer mon :
 þat hiſ freond him wel ne on.
 Æft ȝif ð uolke :

were 'his brother [brothers] ; all they sate about ; was there none without. Every sort of knight was there exceeding well disposed ; all 'they were' by one (seated separately), the high and the low ; 'might none there boast of other kind of drink other *than* his comrades, that were at the board.' This was the same board that Britons 'boast [speak] of, and say many 'sorts of' leasing, respecting Arthur the king. So 'doth every [will each] man, that *another* can love ; if he is to him too dear, then will he lie, and say of him more honor than he is worth ; 'no man is he so wicked, that his friend will not act well to him. Eft if among folk enmity areareth,

¹ aboute ?² ne, *pr. m.*³ *Redundant ?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

feond-scipe arereð.

an æuer æi time ⁊

bitweone twō monnen.

me con bi þan læðe ⁊

lafinge fuggen.

þeh he weore þe bezfte mon ⁊

þe æuere æt at borde.

þe mon þe him weore lað ⁊

him cuðe laft findē.

Ne al soð ne al lef ⁊

þat leod-scopes fingeð.

ah þis if þat soððe ⁊

bi Arðure þan kinge.

Nes næuer ar swulc king ⁊

swa duhti þurh alle þing.

for þat soðe stod¹ a þan writen ⁊

hu hit if iwurðen.

ord frō þan ænden ⁊

of Ardure² þan kinge.

no mare no laffe ⁊

buten alfe his lazen weoren.

Ah Bruttes hine luuedē fwiðe ⁊

& ofte him on lizeð.

Ac euere bi þan loþe ⁊

harm me can finde.

þoh he were þe bestre man ⁊

þat euere heat at borde.

to wam þat he his loþ ⁊

he can him laft finde.

10 Nis noht al soþ ne al les ⁊

þat many men seggeþ.

ac þis his þat soþe ⁊

bi Arthur þan kinge.

Nas neuere non soch king ⁊

so mihti þorh alle þing.

for þat soþe his iwrete ⁊

ou hit his i-worþe.

orde fram þan ende ⁊

of Arthur þan kinge.

20

Ac Bruttes hine louede ⁊

and lome of him lezede.

in ever any time between two men,' [But ever] men can 'say leasing [find harm] of the hateful *one*, though he were the best man that ever ate at board; 'the man that to him were [to whom that he is] loath, [he] can him last find! [It is] not all sooth nor all falsehood that 'minstrels sing [many men say]; but this is the sooth respecting Arthur the king. Was never 'ere' such king, so 'doughty [mighty] through all things! For the sooth 'stands in the writings [is written] how it is befallen, from beginning to the end, of Arthur the king, 'no more nor less but as his laws (*or* acts) were.' But Britons loved him 'greatly,' and oft of him 'lie [lied], and say many things re-

¹ stond?² R. Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and fuggeð feole þinges :

bi Arðure þan kinge.

þat næuere nes iwurðen :

a þiffere weorlde-richen.

inoh he mai fuggen :

þe soð wule uremmen.

feolcuðe þinges :

bi Arðure kinge.

þa wes Arður fwiðe heh :

hif hired fwiðe hende. [c.2.] 10

þ̃ nas na cniht wel itald :

no of hif tuhlen¹ fwiðe bald.

inne Wales no in Ænglelond :

inne Scot² no in Irlond.

in Normandie no īne France :

inne Flandres no inne Denemarc.

no in nauere none londe :

þe a þeos halfe Mungiu ftondeð.

þet weoren ihalde god cniht :

no his deden itald oht. 20

bute of⁴ he cuðe of Ardure⁵ :

& of aðelen hif hirede.

hif wepnē and hif weden :

and feggeþ fale þingef :

bi Arthur þan kinge.

þat neuer nas i-worþe :

in þiffe worle-riche.

inoh he may finde :

þat soþ wole fegge.

of many cunneþ þing :

bi Arthur þan kinge.

PO was Arthur fwiþe heh :

his folk fwiþe hende.

þar nas non cniht wel itold :

in Wales ne in Engeland :

ine Normandie nen³ Franche :

in Flandref ne in Denemarche.

ne in neuere none londe :

þat a þis half Muntioye ftondeþ.

þat were iholde god cniht :

ne his dedes itold oht.

bote he couþe of Arthur :

specting Arthur the king, that never was transacted in this worlds realm ! Enow may he 'say [find], who *the* sooth will 'frame [say], 'marvellous things [of many kind of thing] respecting Arthur [the] king. Then was Arthur most high, his folk most fair ; 'so that' [there] was no knight well esteemed, 'nor of his manners (*or* deeds) much assured,' in Wales nor in England, 'in Scotland nor in Ireland,' in Normandy nor in France, in Flanders nor in Denmark, nor in ever any land, that on this side of Muntgiu standeth, that were esteemed good knight, nor his deeds accounted (*brave or* aught), unless he could 'discourse [say any speech] of Arthur, 'and of his noble court, his

¹ tuhtlen ?² Scotland ?³ ne in ?⁴ Redundant ?⁵ R. Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& his horf-ledē.

suggen and fingen :

eni spelle fegge. [f. 106^b. c. 1.]

of Arðure þan ginge.

and of his hired-cnihten :

and of his stronge cnihtes :

and of heȝe heore mihten.

and of here mihtes.

and of heore riche-dome :

and of hire richedome :

and hu wel hit heom bicomē.

and ou wel hit ȝam bi-come.

þeñe weore he wilcume :

þanne were he welcome :

a þiffere weorlde-richen.

in euereche riche.

come þer he come :

10

come ware he come :

and þeh he weore i Rome.

þeh he were at Rome.

al þat iherde :

alle þat ihorde :

of Ardure¹ telle.

of Arthur telle.

heom þuhte muchel feollic :

heom þohte mochel wonder :

of felen þan kinge.

of fele þan kinge.

And swa hit wes iuuren iboded :

Ac al þis was iboded :

ær he iboren weoren.

here he i-bore were.

Merlin.

swa him sæide Merlin :

so him sayde Merlȝn :

þe witeȝe wes mære.

þat witti was an erþe.

þat a king sculde cume :

20

þat þar solde come soch a fone :

of Vðere Pendragune.

of Vther Pendragone.

þat gleomen sculden wurchē burd :

þat gleomen folde wirche bord :

of þas kiges² breosten.

of þis kinges breofte.

and þer to fitten :

weapons, and his garments, and his horsemen ; say and sing of Arthur the young, and of his [strong] knights, and of their ' great ' might, and of their wealth, and how well it them became. Then were he welcome in this worlds [in every] realm, come whereso he came, ' and ' though he were at Rome ; all that heard of Arthur tell, *it* seemed to them great ' marvel [wonder] of the good king ! ' And so it [But all this] was ' fore ' boded, ere he were born ; so said him Merlin, that was ' a prophet great [witty on earth], that ' a king [such a son there] should come of Uther Pendragon ; that gleemen should make a board of this kings breast, ' and thereto *should* sit poets most good, '

¹ R. Arðure.² R. kinges.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fcopef swiðe fele. [f. 133. c. 1.]
 and eten heore wullen ⁊ and eaten hire¹ ⁊
 ær heo þenne fufden. hi þanne wende.
 and winfcenches ut teon ⁊
 of þeos kinges tungen.
 and drinken & dreomen ⁊
 daies & nihtes.
 þif gomen heom fculde i-laften ⁊ þif folde i-laſte ⁊
 to þere weorlde longe. to þare worle lange.
 And ȝet him feide Marlin ⁊ 10 And ȝet he faide more ⁊
 mare þat wes to comene². Merlȝn þe wiſe.
 þat al þat he lokede on ⁊ þat al þat he lokede on ⁊
 to foten him fculde buȝen. to him folde aboue.
 þa ȝet him fæide Mærlin ⁊ And ȝet faide Merlȝn ⁊
 a fellic þe wes mare. þat waſ more.
 þat fculde beon unimete care ⁊ þat folde beo onimete care ⁊
 of þas kinges forð-fare. after þes kinges forþ-fare.
 And of þas kinges ende ⁊ And of his eande ⁊
 nulle hit na Brut ileue. nele no Brut ileue.
 buten hit beon þe leſte dæð ⁊ 20 bote hit beo þan laſte dæg ⁊
 at þā muchele dome. at þare mochele dome.
 þenne ure drihte ⁊ wane oure drihte ⁊
 demeð alle uolke. alle wole deame.

and eat their will, ere they thence departed, 'and wine-draughts out draw from this kings tongue, and drink and revel day and night'; this 'game' should last 'them' to the worlds end. And yet 'said him Merlin more that was to come [he said more, Merlin the wise], that all that he looked on 'to his feet' to him should bow. 'The [And] yet said 'him' Merlin, 'a marvel' 'that [what] was greater, that *there* should be immoderate care (sorrow) 'at [after] this kings departure. And of 'this kings [his] end (death) will no Briton believe 'it,' except it be the last 'death [day], at the great doom, when our Lord 'judgeth [will judge] all 'folk'. 'Else [Otherwise] we

¹ Two words belonging to this and the succeeding line are wanting.

² numene, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Ælles ne cunne we demē :
 of Arðures deðen.
 for he feolf sæide :
 to fele hif Brutten.
 suð inne Cornwale :
 þer Walwain wes for-faren.
 and him feolf wes for-wūded :
 wunder ane fwiðe.
 þat he uaren wolde :
 into Aualune. 10
 in to þan æit-londe :
 to Argante þere hende.
 for heo sculde mid haleweie :
 helen hif wunden.
 and þene he weore al hal :
 he wolde sone com̄ heom¹.
 þis ilefde Bruttes :
 þet he wule cumen þus. [c. 2.]
 & lokieð a whenne :
 he cume to his londe. 20
 swa he heom bihahte :
 ar he heonne wende.
 Arður wes an weorlde :
 wif kīg and riche.

Oper weief ne con we telle :
 of þes kinges deaþe.
 for he him feolf faide : [c. 2.]
 to gode his Bruttus.
 þar he stod in Cornwale :
 þar Wawein waf for-fare.
 and him seolf was for-wonded :
 wonderliche fwiþe.
 þat he vare wolde :
 in to Auelun.
 in to þan ýllonde :
 to Argane þare hende.
 for 3eo folde mid halewei :
 heale his wondes.
 and wane he hol were :
 and² he wolde azen come here.
 þis ileueþ Bruttus :
 þat he wole come þus.
 and lokeþ and waiteþ :
 wane he come to londe.
 afe he 3am bi-hehte :
 are he fram 3am wende.
Arthur was on worle :
 wis king and riche.

cannot 'deem [tell] of 'Arthurs [this kings] death; for he [him]self said to his good Britons, 'south [where he stood] in Cornwall, where Walwain was slain, and himself was wounded wondrously much, that he would fare into Avalon, into the island, to 'Argante [Argane] the fair; for she should with balm heal his wounds; and when he were 'all' whole, he would 'soon [again] come 'to them [here]. This 'believed [believe] *the* Britons, that he will thus come, and look 'ever [and expect] when he shall come to 'his' land, as he promised them, ere he 'hence [from them] went. Arthur was in

¹ ham? hom? i.e. home. Cf. v. 23124.

² Redundant?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

god mon and grið-ful :	god man and griþ-fol :
hif gumen hine luueden.	his men hine louede.
Cnihtes he hafede prute :	Cnihtef he hadde proute :
and græte on heore mode.	and of grete mode.
& speken to þan kinge :	and speken to þan kinge :
of feollichen þinge.	of felliche þinge.
and þuf þat hired cleopede :	
to heze þan kīge.	
Lauerd Arður faren we :	Louerd Arthur wende we :
to Francene riche.	10 to Francene riche.
and iwinnen al þat lond :	and iwinne al þat lond :
to þire azere hond.	to þin owene hond.
flemen alle þa Freīscen :	fleome þe Frence :
heore king feollen.	and hire king falle.
alle þa castles bonien :	alle hire castles :
and setten heom to mid Brutten.	fette mid Bruttus.
& rixlien a þere riche :	and rixli in þan lond :
mid rehære strengðe.	mid boldere strengþe.
þa andfwarede Arður :	þo answereðe Arthur :
aðelest kingē.	20 wifest alre kinge.
Eouwer wille ich wulle dō :	Euere we solle wel don : [f.107.c.1.]
ah ær ich wulle to Norweiē.	ac her ich wolle to Norewei teon.
and ich wulle mid me ledē :	and ich wolle mid me leade :
Lot mīne oðem.	min opom Loth þe kene.

the world wise king and powerful; good man and peaceful; his men him loved. Knights he had proud, and 'great in their [of great] mood; and *they* spake to the king of marvellous thing; 'and thus the assemblage said to the high king': "Lord Arthur, go we to *the* realm of France, and win all the land to thine own hand; drive away 'all' the French, [and] their king slay; all 'the [their] castles 'occupy, and' set (garrison) 'them' with Britons; and rule in the 'realm [land] with 'fierce [bold] strength. Then answered Arthur, 'noblest of [wisest of all] kings: "'Your will I will [Ever we shall well] do, but ere (previously) I will [go] to Norway; and I will lead with me Loth [the keen] my brother-in-law; 'he [who] is Walwains

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he if Wælwaynef ¹ fader :	þat his Waweynes fader :
þa ich wel luuie.	wan ich moche louie.
For beoð icumen of Norweize :	For me beoþ tȳdinge icome :
niwe tidende.	vt of þan londe.
<i>Sich[elin.]</i> þat Sichelin king þer if ded :	þat þe king of Cifille ² his dead :
his duzeðen bileued.	
& hæ ³ hafeð al his kineriche :	
bi-queðe her Loððe. [f.133 ^b .c.1.]	
For þe kīg if al bidæled :	and eȳr naueþ he nanne.
sune & eke dohteren.	10
and Lot if his fuster sune :	Ac Loth his is fostre fone :
þe bet him scal iwurðe.	þat lond wole ⁴ to him . . . e.
for ich hine wulle in Norwæze :	and ich wolle in .orweye :
neowe king makien.	newe king makie.
and hine wæl lere :	
to witezen wel þa leoden.	
And þenne ich þus habbe idon :	And wane ich þus habbe idon :
ich wullen seoððen cumen ham.	ich wole come aȝein hom.
and ȝarkien mine ferde :	an ȝarki mine ferde :
& faren into France.	20 and wenden in to France.
and ȝif þe king me stont wið :	and ȝef þe king me stōd wiþ :
and nulle ȝeornen mi grið.	and nele ȝeorne nan griþ.

father, whom I 'well [much] love. For 'new' tidings are come 'from Norway [to me out of the land], that Sichelin [the] king is 'there' dead, 'his people *has* left; and he hath ere bequeathed all his kingdom to Loth'. 'For the king is of all bereaved, son and eke daughter [and heir hath he none]; 'and [But] Loth is his sisters son,—'the better to him shall *it* befall,—for [the land *I* will to him give, and] I will make 'him' new king in Norway, 'and well instruct him to govern well the people.' And when I have done thus, I will 'afterwards [again] come home, and get ready my army, and pass into France; and if the king withstandeth me, and will not yearn 'my

¹ Wælnes, *pr. m.*² Evidently a blunder.³ he?⁴ ich wole? giue?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ich hine wulle mid fehte :
fallen to þan grunde.

Arður lette blawen :
hornes and bemen.

and lette beoden to fæ :
Bruttes swiðe balde.

Scipen he hæfde gode :
bi þere fæ flode.

fiftene hundred :

fufden from londe. 10

and fluȝen after þere fæ :
swulc heo fluht hafden.

& buhȝen in to Norwæȝe :
mid baldere ftrēgðen.

Sone swa heo comē :
hafne heo nomen.

mid muchelere ftrengðe :
ftepen a þa riche.

Arður fenden hif fonde :
wide ȝeond þan londe. 20

& hæhte heom cumen fone :
and Lot habben to kinge.

& ȝif heo þat nolden :

alle heō he wolde a-flan. [c. 2.]

ich wolle hine mid fihte :
falle to þā grunde.

Arthur lette blowe :
hornes and bumēs.

and lette beden to féé :
cnihtes fwiȝe bolde.

Sipes he hadde gode :
bi þan féé flode.

fiftene hundred :

wende fram londe.

and wende in milde féé :

in to Noreweie.

Sone so hii comen :
hauene hii nemen.

mid mochelere ftrengȝe :
wenden in þan londe.

Arthur fende hif fonde :
oueral þan londe. [c. 2.]

hehte ȝam come fone :
to Loth hire kinge.

and ȝef hii þat nolde :

he ȝam wolde a-cwelle.

[any] peace, I will fell him with fight to the ground." Arthur caused to be blown horns and trumpets, and caused to be summoned to *the* sea *the* Britons [knights] most bold. Ships he had good by the sea-flood; fifteen hundred pushed from *the* land, and 'flew along the [proceeded on *the* calm] sea, 'as if they had flight (wings), and bent *their course*' into Norway, 'with bold strength'. So soon as they came, they took haven; with mickle strength *they* stept (disembarked) on the 'realm [land]. Arthur sent his messengers 'wide over [over all] the land, 'and' ordered them to come soon, 'and have Loth for [to Loth, their] king; and if they would not that, he would 'slay [kill] them 'all'. Then [they] took their messengers, *the* Norwegian earls

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þa nomen heore fonden ⁊	þo nem ¹ hii hire fonde ⁊
eorles Noreniffce.	þe eorles of þan londe.
and fenden to þan kingen ⁊	and fende to þan kinge ⁊
and hahten hine azain wenden.	and hehten him azen wende.
& ȝif þu nult azæin faren ⁊	And bote þou azen fare ⁊
forhȝen þu ſcalt habben & kare.	her þou ſalt habbe care.
for lōge bið auere ⁊	for lang beoþ euere ⁊
þat ne iwurð næuere.	þat ne worþ neuere.
þat we uncuðne mon ⁊	þat we vncouþe man ⁊
to kinge ſcullen hæbben.	to kinge wollep habbe.
For ȝif Sikelin iſ forð-faren ⁊	
her beoð oðere icoren.	
þe we mazen bi vre iwille ⁊	
hæbben to kinge.	
& þiſ iſ þat ſoðe ⁊	þiſ hiſ þat ſoþe ⁊
nif þer nā oðer.	of vs naueſt þou non oþer.
oðer far þe awæiward ⁊	oþer far þe a-weiward ⁊
and wēd þe riht hamward.	oþer ² wend þe riht hamward.
oðer to dæi a ſeoueniht ⁊	oþer to dai a ſoueniht ⁊
þu ſcalt habben græt fiht.	þou ſalt habbe ſwiþe ſtrang fiht.
þa eorleſ Noreniffce ³ ⁊	p E eorleſ Noreiniſſe ⁊
nomen heom to ræde.	nemen heom to-reade.

[the earls of the land], and sent to the king, and bade him back go,—
 “And ‘if thou wilt not [unless thou] depart, thou shalt have [here] ‘sorrow
 and ‘care; for *so long as* is ever, that shall never come to pass, that we
 ‘shall raise [will have] a foreign man for king. ‘For if Sichelin is departed
 (dead), here are others choice, whom we may by our will raise to *be* king.
 And ‘this is the sooth; ‘there is [of us thou hast (wilt have)] no other;
 either move thee awayward, and turn thee right homeward, either to-day
 a se’nnight, thou shalt have ‘great [most strong] fight.” The Norwegian

¹ nemen?² and?³ The last two words of this line are on an erasure, by second hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat king heo wolden habben :	wat king hii wolde habbe :	
of feoluen heore cunden.	of feoluere cunde.	
for al Sikelines quiden :	ac al hire speche :	
sotscipe heo heolden.	to fot-sipe ȝeode.	
And swa longe swa beoð æuere :		
ne scal hit stonde næuere.		
ah we scullen nimen Riculf :	We folle nime Riculf :	<i>Riculf.</i>
þe if fwiðe riche eorl.	and hebben hine to kinge.	
and hebben hine to kinge :	þat his an eorl kene :	
þif if uf iqueme.	to euereche neode.	10
and sumen ure ferde :	and somni vre ferde :	
ȝeond al þissen ærde.	oueral þes erþe.	
and faren to Arðure :	and wende to Arthur :	
& flemmen hine mid fehte.	and fleme hine mid fihte.	
& Lot we scullen fufen :	and Loth we sollen fufe :	
and flemē of londen.	and fleme of londe.	
oðer we mid fehtē :	oþer we mid fihte :	
sculleð hine fallen.	his cnihtes folle a-cwelle.	[f. 134. c. 1.]
Heo nom Riculfe :	Al þis was i-don :	
þene eorl of Norene.	ase hii þare demde.	20 [f. 107 ^b . c. 1.]
and hefuen hine to kinge :		
þeh hit neore him noht icūde.		
and sumneden uerde :	and somnede hire ferde :	
ȝeōd Nornisce ærde.	oueral þan erþe.	

earls betook them to counsel, 'that *a* [what] king they would have of 'their' own race; 'for all Sichelins words they held *to be* [but all their speech went to] folly.—“‘ And so long as is ever, it shall not ever stand! But' we shall take Riculf, who is [an] earl 'exceeding powerful [keen, at every need], and raise him to *be* king,—‘this is to us pleasing,’—and assemble our forces over all this country, and march *towards* Arthur, and defeat him with fight; and Loth we shall chase, and drive from land, or *else* we shall 'fell him [kill his knights] with fight.” ‘They took Riculf, the earl of Norway, and raised him to *be* king, though it were not to him by right [All this was done, as they there deemed]; and *they* assembled [their] host over

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

And Arður an his ende :
 ȝuōd þat lond gō wende.
 þat lond he þurh arnde :
 burhȝes he uor-barnde.
 æhte he nom inoh :
 muche moncun he þer of-floh.
 And Riculf him gon ridē :
 to-ȝæines Arðure anan.
 to-gædere heo fufden :
 and veht heo bigunnen. 10
 Bruttes buȝen heom to :
 balu þer wes riue.
 luken vt of ſcaþe :
 sweordes longe.
 hefden fluȝen a þene uelde :
 faluwede nebbes.
 beorn aȝein beorne :
 ſcaft ſette an breoſte.
 burnen þer breken :
 Bruttes biſie weoren. 20
 bruſtleden ſceldes :
 ſcalkes þer ueolen.
 & ſwa al þene dæi-liht :
 ilaſte þiſ muchele fiht.

And Arthur þe wile :
 in þan lond wende.
 and hit þorh earnde :
 and tounes for-barnde.
 orf he nam inoh :
 and moche folk he þare floh.
 And Riculf cō ride :
 to-ȝeines Arthure a-non.
 to-gadere hii wende :
 and fiht þar bi-gonne.
 Bruttus ȝam wende to :
 þar was wo riue.
 drowen vt of ſeaþe :
 ſweordes ſwiþe longe.
 heuedes þar floȝe in felde :
 falewede nebbes.
 brunies þer breke :
 Bruttus buſie were.
 þus alle dai-liht :
 ilaſte þat ſtronge fiht.

'Norways [all the] land. And Arthur 'on his part, over [the while in] the land 'gan march [marched]; 'the land he [and it] through passed, [and] *the* 'burghs [towns] 'he' consumed; 'goods [cattle] he took enow, [and] much folk he there slew. And Riculf gan 'him' ride against Arthur anon; together they came, and fight 'they [there] began. *The* Britons advanced to them,—woe there was rife! Swords [exceeding] long *they* 'plucked [drew] out of sheath; heads flew 'on the [there in] field; faces paled; 'man against man set shaft to breast'; burnies there brake; *the* Britons were busy; 'shivered shields, warriors there fell!' 'And so [Thus] all 'the' daylight lasted 'this great [the strong] fight; 'moved they east, moved they

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ferden heo æft ferden heo west : ferde ou hit verde :	
þer Noreine wes þa wurfe.	
ferden heo fuð ferden heo norð :	
þe Norrene þer feollen.	þe Norreif euere folle.
Bruttes weoren balde :	Bruttuf weren bolde :
þa Noreine heo aqualden.	þe Norreine hii a-cwelde.
Noreinifce men þer feollen : [c.2.]	fif and twenti þoufend :
fif and twenti þufend.	hii leide to þan grunde.
and Riculf king þer wes of-flaȝen :	and Riculf king þar was of flaȝe :
and idon of lif-dæȝen.	10 and idon of lif-daȝe.
lutel þer eode to læne :	lute he þare lefde :
of þan leod-folke.	of þan ilke folke.
wulc swa hafuede þat wracche lif :	and woche wrecchef hadde þat lif :
ȝirde ¹ Arðures grið.	hii ȝornde Arthur his griþ.
Ardur ² biſæh a Lot :	þo cleopede Arthur :
þe leof him wes swiðe.	Loth þat he louede.
and þuſ him cleopien agon :	and þuſ him þare faide :
Arður þe riche mō.	to his oþom deore.
Lot wend hider to me :	
þu art mi wine deore.	20
Her ich þe biteche :	Here ich þe biteche :

west, there was *it* the worse to *the* Norwegians; moved they south, moved they north [fare howso it fared] the Norwegians 'there [ever] fell. *The* Britons were bold, the Norwegians they killed; 'the Norwegian men there fell, [they laid to the ground] five and twenty thousand; and Riculf *the* king was there slain, and deprived of life-day; little there 'remained [he left] of 'the [that] folk; 'whoso had the wretched [and *those* wretches which had the] life, [they] yearned 'Arthurs [Arthur his] peace. Arthur 'looked on [then called] Loth, 'who was to him well dear [whom he loved], and thus 'gan to him to call, Arthur the rich man [said him there to his dear son-in-law]: " 'Loth, wend hither to me, thou art my dear relative.' Here

¹ ȝirnde ?² R. Arður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

al þas kineriche.	al þis kineriche.
of me þu scalt halden ¹ :	of me þou hit falt holde :
and habbē me to munde.	and habbe me in munde.
þa wes Walwaī þider icumen :	þo was Wowein þider icode :
Lottes ældeste fone.	Loth his eldeste fone.
of Rome from þan Pape :	fram Rome þan Pope : [c. 2.]
þe Supplice wes ihate.	þat Supplis was ihote.
þa longe him wes dihte :	he hadde þat child itaht :
and makede hine to cnihte.	and idobbid to cniht.
Wælle wel wes hit bitoȝen :	Wel wel was hit bi-toȝe :
þat Walwaī wes to monne iboren.	þat Waweȝn was to manne ibore.
for Walwæin wes ful aȝelmod :	for Woweȝn was edmod :
an ælche þeouwe he wes god.	of eche þeue he was god.
he wes mete-cuſti :	he was mete-couſti :
and cniht mid þan bezſte.	and cniht mid þan beſte.
Al Arȝures hired :	Alle þe cnihtes þorh him :
wes swiȝe ifurȝed ² .	were ſwiȝe ibalded.
for Walwaine þan kene :	
þe icumen wes to hirede.	
and for hiſ fader Lote :	20 and for his fader þinge :
þe iloten wes to kinge.	þat hi-houe was to kinge.

I give to thee all this kingdom; of me thou shalt [it] hold, and have me for protector." Then was Walwain thither come, 'Loths [Loth his] eldest son; from the pope of Rome, who was named Supplice, 'who long had him brought up [he had the child instructed], and 'made him [dubbed] knight. Full well was it bestowed, that Walwain was born to *be* man, for Walwain was 'full noble-minded, in [gracious, of] each virtue (*or* quality) he was good; he was liberal, and knight with the best. All 'Arthurs folk was [the knights through him were] greatly emboldened, 'for Walwain the keen, that was come to *the* host'; and for his 'father Loth [fathers sake], who was 'chosen [raised] to *be* king. Then spake Arthur

¹ Apparently written habben at first.

² Originally written iforȝen, but corrected by the same hand.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa spac Arður him wið :<sup>[[f. 134^b.
c. 1.]</sup> þo spac Arthur Loth w..
 and hehte hine halden god grið. and bad hine holde god
 and hehte hine luuien :
 his griðfulle leoden.
 & þa grið nolden halden : and þaie þat grið nolde holde :
 fallen heom to grunde. legge heom to grunde.
 þa ȝet cleopede Arður : þo faide Arthur :
 aðelest kingen. to his cnihtes bolde.
 Whær beo ȝe mine Bruttes :
 fareð nu forð rihtes. 10
 ȝarkieð bi þan flode : ȝarkeþ bi þan flode :
 mine scipen gode. mine fipes gode.
 Al duden þa cnihtes : All. dude þe cnihtes :
 swa Arður heom hæhte. afe Arthur ȝam hehte.
 þa þa scipen weoren ȝaru : þo þe fipes were ȝare :
 Arður gon to sæ faren. Arthur gan forþ fare.
 mid him he mon¹ his cnihtes : mid him he nam forþrihtes :
 his Noreniffce þeines. his Noreine cnihtes.
 and balden his Bruttes :
 and bah forð mid vðes. 20 and wende forþ in wilde féé.
 and þe duhtie kīg :
 com to Denenarke². in to Denemarche.

with 'him [Loth], and bade him hold good peace, 'and bade him love his peaceful people,' and [those] that would not hold peace, to 'fell [lay] them to ground. 'The yet called [Then said] Arthur, 'noblest of kings [to his knights bold]: "'Where be ye, my Britons? March *ye* now forth-right'; prepare *ye* by the flood my good ships." All did the knights as Arthur them ordered. When the ships were ready, Arthur gan 'to *the* sea [forth] fare; with him he took his 'knights [forth-right] his Norwegian 'thanes [knights], 'and his bold Britons'; and proceeded forth 'with *the* waves [in *the* wild sea]; 'and the doughty king came' [in]to

¹ nom?² R. Denemarke.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he lette flæn teldes :'	he lette flean his teldes :
wide ȝeond þa feldes.	oueral þan feldes.
bemen he lette blawen :	
and his cume bodien.	
þa wes inne Denemarke :	þo was in Denemarche :
a king of mucle mæhte.	a king of mochele mihte.
[Æf]cil. Æscil wes ihate :	Afcil was ihote :
hext ouer Denene.	þe hexfte of þan londe.
he ifah þat Ardur ¹ bi-won :	he ifah þat Arthur bi-wan :
al þat him wes on willen.	10 al þat he lokede an.
Æscil king hine biþohte :	Afcil king bi-þohte :
whæt he don mahte.	wat he don mhte ² .
lað him wef to leofen :	loþ him was leofe :
leouen his leoden.	leoue his cnihtes.
He ifah þat ³ strengðe :	He ifah þat mid strengþe :
ftonden he ne mahte.	ftonde he ne mihte. [f.108.c.1.]
aȝain Arðure :	
mid nauere nane compe. [c.2.]	
He fende gretinge :	He fende gretinge :
to Arðure kinge.	20 to Arthur þan kinge.
hundes & hauekes :	hundes and hauekes :
& swiðe gode horffes.	and fwiþe heȝe horfes.
seoluer and ræd gold :	seoluer and red gold :

Denmark; he caused [his] tents to be pitched, 'wide over [over all] the fields; 'trumpets he caused to be blown, and his coming to be announced.' Then was in Denmark a king of much might; *he* was named Æscil, [the] highest 'over *the* Danes [of the land]; he saw that Arthur won all that 'was to him in will [he looked on]. Æscil *the* king bethought him what he might do; loath *it* was to him to lose his dear 'people [knights]. He saw that with strength he might not stand 'against Arthur, with ever any combat.' He sent greeting to Arthur [the] king; hounds and hawks, and horses exceeding 'good [fine]; silver and red gold, with prudent words. And yet

¹ R. Arður.² R. mihte.³ þat mid ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid ræh-fulle ¹ worden.	mid red-folle wordes.
& ȝet dude mare :'	And ȝet he dude more :'
Æscil þe mære.	þe king of Denemarche.
he fende to þan hæxten ² :	he fende to þan hexfte :
of Arðures hireden.	þat weren mid þā kinge.
and bad heom aȝdien him :	and bad ȝam him helpe :
to hæhȝen þan kingen.	to þan bolde kinge.
þat he moſte hiſ mō bicumen :	þat he moſte his man bi-come :
& to ȝiſle bitæchen hiſ fune.	and take to hoſtage hiſ ſone.
and ælche ȝere hiſ fēden :	and eche ȝer hiſ fende :
gael of hiſ londe.	gael of hiſ londe.
æne bæſt mid ifunde :	ane bot mid ifunde :
from breorde to grunde.	fram toppe to þan grunde.
of golde & of gæfume ³ :	of gold and of garifome :
& of godliche pallen.	and of riche palles.
and ſeoððen he wolde ſweriē :	and ſuppe ſwerie ich wolle :
ſwiken þat he nalden.	ſwike þat ich nolle.
þiſ iherden Arður :	þiſ ihorde Arthur :
aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt alre kinge.
þat Æſcil Denene king :	þat Aſcil Denene king :
20 wolde beon hiſ vnderling.	wolde beon hiſ onderling.
buten ælche nihte ⁴ :	wiþ oute eni cnihte :
he and alle hiſ cnihtes.	for-lede to þan fihte.

[he] did more, 'Æscil the great [the king of Denmark]; he sent to the highest 'of Arthurs folk [that were with the king], and prayed them to 'intercede for [help] him with the 'noble [bold] king; that he might his man become, and deliver his son for hostage, and each year send him tribute of his land, a boat of gold and of treasure, and of rich garments, *filled* from *the* top to *the* bottom, in safety. And afterwards 'he would [I will] swear, that 'he would [I will] not prove false. Arthur heard this, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, that Æscil, king of *the* Danes, would be his underling, without 'each (any) fight, he and all his knights [any knight leading forth to the

¹ ræd-fulle?² hæxtent *pr. m.*, but t expuncted.³ gærfume?⁴ fihte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa iwarð ¹ iaðeled :	þo was igladed :
Arður þe riche.	Arthur þe riche.
and þus andfwærede :	þus þo answerede :
mid aðmode worden.	mid milde his wordes.
Wel wurðe þan monne :	Wel worþe þane man :
þe mid wiðdome.	þat folweþ wiðdome.
biwineð him g ⁱ ð & frið :	and bi-winneþ loue and griþ :
& freond-scipe to halden.	and freofipe holdeþ.
þene he ifiht þet he bið :	wane he sicþ þat he his :
mid strengðe ibunden.	10 mid strengþe ibunde.
iðarked al to leofen :	and wendeþ al to lofe :
leofue his richen.	leoue hið freondes.
mid liſte he mot leoðien :	mid fleþþe he mot flakie :
luðe his bendes. [f.135.c.1.]	loþe his bendes. [[c.2.]
Arður hehte þene king cume :	A rthur hehte þane king come :
and bringen hið aldeſte ſune.	and bringe hið eldeſte ſone.
and he ſwa dude ſone :	and he ſo dude ſone :
þe king of Denemarke.	þe king of Denemarche.
Arðures iwille :	Arthureſ wille :
ſone he gon fulle.	20 al he gan fulle.
to-ſomne heo comen :	to-gadere hii comen :
and ſæhten iwarðen.	and ſahnedede ſone.
þa ȝet cleopede Arður :	þo ſaide Arthur :

fight]. Then was gladdened Arthur the rich, 'and' thus [then] answered with [his] mild words : " Well worth the man, that 'with wisdom [followeth wisdom, and] obtaineth to him 'peace and amity [love and peace], and friendship 'to hold [holdeth] ! When he seeth that he is bound with strength, [and] his dear 'realm ready [friends go] all to destruction, with art he must slacken his odious bonds." Arthur ordered the king to come, and bring his eldest son ; and he so did soon, the king of Denmark. Arthurs will 'soon [all] he gan to fulfill ; together they came, and were reconciled [soon]. 'The yet [Then] said Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings : " Fare I

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt alre kinge.
Faren ich wulle to France :	Faren ich wolle to France :
mid muchele mire ferde.	mid bolde mine ferde.
ich wulle hebben of Noreweie :	ich wolle habbe of Noreweie :
nize þuſend cnihtes.	nize þouſend cnihtes.
& of Denemarke ich wulle leden :	and of Denemarche ich wolle leade :
nize þuſend of þan leodē.	nize þouſend of þan leode.
and of Orkaneie :	and of Orcaneyē :
enleuen hūdred.	eolleue hundred.
and of Mureinen :	and of Moraine :
þreo þuſeond monnen.	þreo þouſend manne.
and of Galeweien :	and of Galeweyē :
fiſ þuſend of þā leoden.	fiſ þouſend of þan leode.
and of Irlonde :	and of Irlonde :
elleuen þuſend.	eolloue þouſend.
and of Brutaine :	and of Brutayne :
mine cnihtes balde.	mine cnihtes bolde.
ſcullen præſten bi-foren me :	ſolle præaſte me bi-vore :
þritti þuſunde.	þrittie þouſend.
and of Gutlonde ich wulle leden :	and of Gutlond ich wolle leade :
ten þuſeond of þan leoden.	ten þouſend of þan leode.
and of Friſlonde :	and of Iſlonde :
fiſ þuſend monnen.	fiſ þouſend manne.
and of Brutaine :	and of Lute Brutaine :
Howel þene balde.	Howel þan heande.
and mid ſwulche uolke :	and mid ſoche folke :
Frāce ich wulle iſechen.	France ich wolle ſeche.

will to France, with my 'mickle [bold] host. I will have of Norway nine thousand knights; and of Denmark I will lead nine thousand of the people; and of Orkney eleven hundred; and of Moray three thousand men; and of Galloway five thousand of the folk; and of Ireland eleven thousand; and of Britain my knights bold shall march before me, thirty thousand; and of Gutland I will lead ten thousand of the people; and of 'Frisland [Iceland] five thousand men; and of [Little] Britain Howel the 'bold [fair]; and with

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

And fwa ich ibiden godes ære :	And so ich abide godes ore :
ȝet ich wulle haten mare.	ȝet ich wolle hote more.
þat of alle þan londē :	þat of al þan londe :
þat stondeþ a mire honden. [c. 2.]	þat stondeþ in mine honde.
ich haten ælcne ohtne ¹ mon :	ich wolle hote echne man :
þe his wepnen beren con.	þat his wepne bere can.
alfe he wule liuien :	afe he wole libbe :
and his lumen habben.	and his leomes habbe.
þat he faren wið me :	þat he wende wiþ me :
to fehten wið Frolle.	to fihte wiþ Frolle.
þat is Francene king :	þat his Francene king :
fæie he fcal iwurðe.	fæy he fal iworþe.
he wes iboren i Rome :	he was ibore in Rome : [f. 108 ^b . c. 1.]
of Romanifce cunne.	of Romaniffe cunne.
Forð ferde Arður :	Forþ wende Arthur :
þat he com to Flandref.	þat he to Flandres cō.
þat lond he gon biwinnen :	þat lond he gan bi-winne :
and fette hit mid his monnen.	and fette hit mid his manne.
and feodðe ² he beh þanene :	and fupþe he wende þanene :
in to ³	in to Boloýne.
Buluinef lond :	and al Boloýnes lond :
nō hit to his aȝere hond.	nam to his owene hond.
and seoððen he nom þene wæi :	and fupþe he forþ þane way :

such folk France I will seek. And as I expect Gods mercy, yet I will promise more; that of all the lands, that stand in my hand, I [will] order each 'brave' man, that can bear his weapons, as he would *wish to live*, and have his limbs, that he go with me, to fight with Frolle, who is king of *the French*,—slain he shall be!—he was born in Rome, of Romanish kin." Forth proceeded Arthur, until he came to Flanders; the land he gan conquer, and set it with his men. And next he marched thence, into Boulogne, and all Boulognes land took 'it' in his own hand. And afterwards he took

¹ *Written at first ohtene, but e expuncted.*

² *feodðe?*

³ *A portion of two lines is here deficient, supplied by the other text.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe in touward France læi.

þa bed he his bod :

allen hiſ beornen.

for þær heo uoren :

þat na wiht heo ne ne¹ nomē.buten he² mid rihte :

hit biȝitē mihte.

mid rihte chepinge :

i þas kinges hirede.

þat iher³ Frolle :

þer he wes inne France.

of Arðures iſpede :

and of alle hiſ deden.

and hu⁴ al bi-wonne :

þat he lokede on.

and al hit him to beh :

þat he mid eȝene iſah.

þa wes þe king Frolle :

laðliche of-fered.

A þere ilke worlde :

þa þiſ wes iworðen.

wes Francene lond :

Gualle ihatē.

þat toward France lay.

þo bad Arthur :

alle hiſ cnihtef.

wende woder hii wende :

þat noht hii ne neme.

bote hii mid rihte :

hit bi-ȝete mihte.

10 Al þiſ ihorde Frolle :

þar he was in France.

of Arthur hiſ ſpede :

and of alle hiſ deade.

and ou he al bi-won :

þat he lokede an.

and al hit him to beh :

þat he mid heȝene iſeh.

þo was þe king Frolle :

loþliche afered.

20 A þare ilke worle :

þo þiſ was iworþe.

was Francene lond :

Galle ihote.

[Fra]nce.

[proceeded] the way that 'in' toward France lay. Then bade 'he [Arthur] 'his command' to all his 'men [knights], that fare wheresoever they should fare, they should take 'no whit [nought], unless they might it obtain with right; 'with just purchase, in the kings host.' Frolle heard 'that [all this], where he was in France, of 'Arthurs [Arthur his] speed (success), and of all his deeds; and how [he] all won that he looked on, and *how* it all to him submitted that he saw with eyes; then was the king Frolle horribly afraid! At the same time 'that [when] this was transacted, *the* land of *the* French was named Gaul; and Frolle was from Rome come into France,

¹ Redundant?² heo?³ iherde?⁴ hu he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and Frolle wes from Rome :
 ifaren into France.
 and ælche ȝere fende :
 gauel of þan lōde.
 ten hundred punde :
 of seoluer and of golde.
 Nu iherd Frolle :
 þe ældeſ wes of France.
 of þere lond¹-forȝe :
 þe Arður dude an londe. 10
 Sonde he fende fone :
 an ueſt touward Rome.
 and hehte Romanifce folc :
 redē heom bi-tweonen.
 hu feole þuſend cnihten :
 heo þider wolden fendē².
 þat he þa æð mihte :
 wið Arðure uihte.
 and ulemen of londe :
 Arður þene ſtronge. 20
 Cnihtes gunnen riden :
 vt of Rom-leoden.
 fif and twenti þuſēd :
 ferden touward France.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and Frolle waſ fram Rome :
 ifaren into Frāce.
 and eche ȝer fende :
 gauel of þan londe.
 ten hundred pund :
 of seoluer and of golde.
 Nou ihorde Frolle :
 þat king was in France.
 of þare mochele forewe :
 þat Arthur dude in londe. 10
 Sonde he fende fone :
 towardes Rome.
 and bad Romaniffe folc :
 readen heom bi-twine.
 ou fale þouſend cnihtes :
 hii þider wolde fende. [c. 2.]
 þat he þe bet mihte :
 wiþ Arthure fihte.
 and fleomen of londe :
 Arthur þan ſtronge. 20
 Cnihtes gonne ride :
 vt of Rom-leode.
 fif and twenti þouſend :
 wende toward France.

and each year sent tribute of the land, ten hundred pounds of silver and of gold. Now heard Frolle, who was 'chief of [king in] France, of the [great] sorrow that Arthur did in *the* land. He sent messengers soon '*the* nearest way' toward Rome, and bade *the* Romanish folk advise them between, how many thousand knights they thither would send, that he might the 'easier [better] fight with Arthur, and drive from *the* land Arthur the strong. Knights gan to ride out of Rome-land; five and twenty thousand proceeded toward France. Frolle heard this, with his mickle host, that the Romanish

¹ Written originally londe, but e erased.² fen, pr. m.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þis iherde Frolle :
 mid muchele his ferde.
 þat þe Romanisce uolc :
 riden touward londe.
 Frolle & hif ferde :
 heom to-zeines ferde.
 þa heo comē to-somne :
 kene men and wihte.
 of alle þan ærde :
 vnimete uerde.
 10 þæt iherde Arður :
 aðeleft kingen.
 & sumnede hif ferde :
 and heō to-zeines wende.
 Ah næs næuere king nan : [c.2.]
 þa quic wes an eorðen.
 þe eouere ær an uolde¹ :
 swulc folc a-walde.
 for of alle þan kine-londe :
 þe Arður hafuede an hōde. 20
 forð he ladde mid him :
 alle þa kennefte men.
 þat nuſte he neuere² on weorlde :

þis ihorde Frolle :
 mid mochele his ferde.
 þat þe Romaniffe :
 come toward londe.
 Frolle and his ferde : [Fr]olle.
 3am to-zenef wende.
 þat hii come to-gadere :
 kene men and wipte.
 of alle þan erþe :
 onimete moche ferde.
 10 **Þ** At i-horde Arthur :
 boldeft alre king.
 and ſomnede his ferde :
 and 3am to-zeines wende.
 Ac naſ neuere king nō :
 þat cwik was on erþe.
 þa euere her on folde :
 ſoch folk a-welde.
 for of alle þan kine-londe :
 20 þat Arthur hadde an honde.
 forþ he ladde mid him :
 þe alre kennefte men.
 þat nuſte no man þere :

'folk' 'rode [came] toward *the* land. Frolle and his host marched against them, so that they came together, keen men and brave, of all the earth an 'immense [immensely great] force. Arthur heard that, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, and assembled his army, and advanced against them. But never was *there* any king, that was alive on earth, that ever ere on land such folk (multitude) commanded; for from all the kingdoms that Arthur had in hand, forth he led with him 'all the keenest men [the keenest men of all], so that 'he' knew 'never in *the* world [no man there] how many thousands

¹ The last two words of this line are *sup. ras.*, as are also the last three words of the next line but two, but in both cases by the original hand.

² At first written *neouere*, but *o* expuncted.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hu feole þuſēd þer weoren.	ou fale þouſend þar were.
Sone swa heo comen to-fomne :	Sone ſo hii to-gadere come :
Arður & Frolle.	Arthur and Frolle.
harliche ¹ heo igrættē :	heardliche hii gretten :
al þat heo imette.	al þat hii metten.
Cnihtes ſwiðe ſtronge :	Cnihtes ſwiþe ſtronge :
igripen ſperen longe.	igrepe ſperes lange.
and ræſden heō to-gædere :	and reafeden ȝam to-gadere :
mid ræþzere ſtrēgðe.	mid rezere ſtrengþe.
Alle dæi þer weore :	10 Alle dai þar weren :
duntes ſwiðe riue.	duntes ſwiþe riue.
folc feol to uolden :	folk ful to folde :
and fæie-fið worhtē.	
græmende ſegges :	
gras-bæd iſohten.	and þane grunde ſohte. [f. 109. c. 1.]
gullen þa helmes :	ȝolle þe helmes :
ȝeoumereden eorles.	ȝeomerede eorles.
ſceldeſ þær ſcenden :	
ſcalkeſ gūnē reoſen.	
þa cleopede Ardur ² :	20 þo cleopede Arthur :
aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt of kinges.
Whar beo ȝe mine Bruttes :	Ware beo ȝe mine Bruttus :
balde mine þainef.	bolde mine enihtes.
þe dæi him forð ȝeōgeð :	þe dai him forþ goþ :

there were. So soon as they came together, Arthur and Frolle; hardily (hostilely) they greeted all that they met. Knights most strong grasped long spears, and rushed them together, with fierce strength. All day there were blows most rife; *the* folk fell to ground, and 'wrought destruction; *the* angry warriors' sought *the* grass-bed [the ground]; the helms resounded, murmured earls; 'shields there shivered, warriors gan fall.' Then called Arthur, 'noblest [boldest] of kings: "Where be ye, my Britons, my bold 'thanes [knights]? The day it forth goeth; this folk against us standeth.

¹ hardliche?² R. Arður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

þiſ folc uſ aȝein ſtondeð.
 lette we heom to gliden :
 ſcærpe gares inoȝe.
 & techen heō to riden :
 þene wæi touward Romen.
 Æfne þan worde :
 þe Ardur¹ iſeide.
 he ſprong forð an ſtede : [f. 136. c. 1.]
 ſwa ſparc ded² of fure.
 Him weore fuliende :
 fiſti þuſende.
 hærdre here-kempē :
 hælden to fihte.

ſmiten uppen Frolle :
 þær he wes on ulocke.
 and brohten hine of fleme :
 mid muclen hiſ folke.
 þer Ardur¹ of-floh :
 muchel uolc and vniuoh.
 þa fleh in to Pariſe :
 Frolle þe riche.
 and þa ȝeten tunden :
 mid teonen inoȝe.
 and þa³ word ſeide :

þiſ folk vs a-ȝen ſtondeþ.
 lete we to ham glide :
 ſarpe gares inowe.
 and teche ȝam to ride :
 þane wei toward Rome.
 Efne þan worde :
 þat Arthur þo ſaide.
 hii ſpronge forþ vppen ſtedes :
 aſe ſparc doþ of fure.
 Him were folȝende :
 fiſtie þouſend.

and ſmiten vppe Frolle :
 þar he was on flocke.
 and brohte hine on fleome :
 mid alle hiſ folke.
 þar Arthur of-sloh :
 mochel folk and onifoh.
 þo fleh in to Paris :
 Frolle þe riche.
 and þe ȝeatel tunde :
 mid teone inowe.
 and þeſ word ſaide :

Cause we to glide to them sharp darts enow, and teach them to ride the way toward Rome!" Even with the words that Arthur [then] said, 'he [they] sprang forth 'on steed [upon steeds], as spark doth of fire. Fifty thousand were following him; 'the hardy warriors rushed to the fight,' [and] smote upon Frolle, where he was in the flock, and brought him to flight, with 'his mickle [all his] folk; there slew Arthur much folk and innumerable. Then fled into Paris Frolle the powerful, and fastened the gates, with grief enow; and these words said, sorrowful in heart: "Liefer

¹ R. Arður.² deð?³ þas?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Paris.

forhful an heorte.

Leouere me weore :

þ̅ ich iboren neore.

þa weoren inne Paris :

plihliche spelles ful iwif.

sorghfulle iberen :

burhmen gunnen beouien.

walles heo gunnen rihten :

þa ȝæten heo gunnen dihten.

mete heo nomen :

al þat heo neh comen.

an ælchere halue :

heo heolden to burȝe.

heo uerden þider alle :

þe heolden mid Frolle.

þat iherde Arður :

aðelest kingen.

þat inne Paris wunede Frolle :

mid unimete uerde.

and feiden þat he wolde :

wið Arðure stonden.

To Paris ferde Arður :

ærhðe bi-deled.

and bi-læi þa walles :

and arede¹ his teldes.

forhfolle on heorte.

Leuere me were :

þat ich ibore nere.

þ̅O weren in Paris :

fori tidynge foliwis.

sorghfolle speches :

þe borhmen gonne buuie.

walles hii rihten :

ȝeatel hii dihten.

meate hii nemen :

al þat hii neh comē.

in euereche halue :

hii ladde to borewe.

hii wenden þider alle :

þat helde mid Frolle.

þat ihorde Arthur :

wifest alre kinge.

þat in Paris was Frolle : [c. 2.]

mid onimete ferde.

and faide þat he wolde :

wiþ Arthur at-stonde.

To Paris wende Arthur :

arhþe be-dealed.

and bi-lai þe walles :

and arerde his teldef.

were *it* to me, that I were not born!" Then were in Paris 'grievous speeches [sorry tidings], full surely, sorrowful 'cries; [speeches; the] burgh-men gan to tremble; *the* walls they 'gan repair [repaired], 'the' gates they 'gan to form [formed]; meat (provisions) they took, all that they came nigh; on 'each [every] side they carried *it* to *the* burgh; thither came they all, that held with Frolle. Arthur heard that, 'noblest of [wisest of all] kings, that Frolle 'dwelt [was] in Paris, with *an* immense force, and said that he would Arthur withstand. To Paris marched Arthur, of

¹ arerde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

a feower halue he heo bi-lai :	a four halue he hine bi-lai.
fouwer wiken and enne dæi. [c. 2.]	four weke and one dai.
Auared weoren þa leden :	A-fered weren fore :
þa þere weoren wið innen.	þat wiþ ine were.
þa burh wes wið innen :	þe borh was wiþ ine :
afulled mid mōnien.	i-fulled of manne.
and æten sone þene mete :	and eote sone þane meate :
þe þer wes ifomned.	þat þar was igadered.
þa feouwer wiken weoren aȝōged :	þo four wike were agon :
þa Arður wes þær atstōden. 10	þat Arthur hadde þare ibeon.
þæ wes inne burȝe :	þo was ine borwe :
vnimete forȝe.	onimete forewe.
mid wræcche þā falke ¹ :	mid þan wrecche folke :
þe leie þer an hungre.	þat lai þar for-hongered.
þer wes wop þe ² wes rop :	þar was weping strong :
and reouden ³ vniuohȝe.	þar was gredinge a-mong.
Heo cleopeden to Frolle :	Hii cleopede to Frolle :
and beden hine frið wurchen.	and bede him griþ wirche.
Arðures mon bi-cumen :	Arthur his man bi-come :
and hiȝ monscipe bruken. 20	and his mansipe brouke.
and þēe kīedō ⁴ halden :	and þane kinedom holde :
of Arðure þan kenen.	of Arthur þan stronge.

fear void, and belay the walls, and areared his tents; on four sides he belay it (the city), four weeks and a day. 'The people' that were 'there' within were [sore] afraid; the burgh was within filled with men; and *they* ate soon the meat that was there gathered. When four weeks were gone, that Arthur 'was [had] there 'stationed [been], then was in *the* burgh sorrow extreme, with the wretched folk that lay there 'in hunger [famished]; there was weeping, 'there was lament, and distress great [strong, there was crying among]. They called to Frolle, and bade him make peace; become 'Arthurs [Arthurs his] man, and his *own* honor enjoy, and hold the kingdom of Arthur the 'keen [strong]; and let not the 'wretched' folk [that

¹ folke?² reouðen?² R. þer.⁴ This word is sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and no lete noht þat wræcche uolk: and lete noht for-fare mid hongre: /
 uor-faren al mid hungre. þat folk þat was wiþ ine.
 þa andfwarede Frolle: þo answereðe Frolle:
 freo he wes an heorte. freo man on heorte.
 Nai swa me helpe god: Nai se¹ me helpe god:
 þæ alle domes awalt. þat alle domes weldeþ.
 ne scal ich nauere his mon bicume: ne fal ich neuere his man bicomē:
 no he mi kine-lauerd. no he min kine-louerd.
 mi seolf ich wulle fihte: Mi seolf ich wolle fihte:
 a gode if al þat rihte. 10 in god his alle þe rihte.
 þa ȝet cleopede Frolle:
 freo mon an heorte.
 Næi swa me helpe drihten:
 þe scop þas dæies lihten.
 nulle ic nauere mare:
 ȝirnen Arðures ære.
 ah fehten ich wulle:
 butē ælche cnihte. [f. 136^b. c. 1.]
 licame wið licame: licame wiþ licame:
 biforen mine leoden. 20 bi-vore mine cnihtes.
 hond aȝain honde:
 wið Arðure kige. [wakere: wiþ Arthur þan stronge. [f. 109^b. c. 1.]
 whaðer unkere swa beoð þere
 sone he bið þe laðere.

was within] perish 'all' with hunger. Then answered Frolle,—free 'he was [man] in heart:—"Nay, so help me God, that all dooms wieldeth, shall I never his man become, nor he my sovereign! Myself I will fight; in God is all the right!" 'The yet spake Frolle, free man in heart: "Nay, so help me *the* Lord that shaped the day-light, will I nevermore yearn Arthurs grace; but fight I will, without each knight (singly), body against body, before my 'people [knights]; hand against hand, with Arthur *the* king [the strong]! 'Whetherso (whichsoever) of us is the weaker, soon he will be the loather; whetherso of us there may live, to his friends he

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

wahðervinkere ¹ fwaþermaluuien:ʒ	
hiȝ freondē he bið þe leouere.	
and whader ² unkere þe mæi of o-	waþer fo maȝ of oþer:ʒ
þat betere biwinne.	[ðere:ʒ þat betere bi-winne.
habben al þiȝ oðeres lond:ʒ	habbe al þeos oþeref lond:ʒ
and sette hit an hiȝ aȝere hond.	to his owene hond.
þiȝ ic wulle ȝirne:ʒ	þiȝ ich wolle onderfon:ʒ
ȝiȝ Arður hit wule ȝetten.	ȝeȝ Arthur hit wole don.
and þiȝ ich wulle fwerien:ʒ	and þiȝ ich wolle fwerie:ʒ
uppen mine fweorden.	10 vppe mine fweorde.
and ȝiȝles ich wulle finden:ʒ	and ȝiȝles ich wolle finde:ʒ
þreo kingene funen.	þreo kingene fones.
þ̃ ich þiȝ forward wulle:ʒ	þat ich þiȝ foreward:ʒ
faȝtliche halden.	wolle faȝtliche holde.
þat nulle ich hit liȝen:ʒ	þat ich hit nelle leȝe:ʒ
bi mine quike liuen.	bi mine cwike liue.
For leouere me iȝ to liggen:ʒ	For leuere me hiȝ ligge:ʒ
bi-fore mine leoden.	bi-vore mine cnihteȝ.
þan ich iȝeo an uolde:ʒ	þane ich ȝam here iȝe:ʒ
for-faren heō mid hungre.	20 for-fare mid hunger.
For we habbeoð mid fehte:ʒ	For we habbeþ ine fihte:ʒ
ure cnihtes uor-farene ³ .	for-lore oure cnihteȝ.
ȝcalkes auællled:ʒ	in þan wiþer-happes:ʒ
fiȝti þuȝende.	fiȝtie þouȝend.

will be the liefer; and' whether of us 'that' may of *the* other obtain the better (superiority), have *he* all this others land, 'and set it' in his own hand. This I will 'yearn [undertake], if Arthur will it 'grant [do]; and this I will swear upon my sword. And hostages I will find, three kings sons, that I will hold firmly this covenant; that I will it not violate, by my quick life! For liefer *it* is to me to lie *dead*, before my 'people [knights], than *that* I should see them 'on *the* ground [here] perish with hunger. For we have 'with [in] fight 'destroyed [lost] our knights—'men felled [in the conflicts] fifty thou-

¹ R. unkere.² whaðer?³ forene, *pr. m.*, but corrected, and uor interlined.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and mōi ænne gode wifmon :
iwhorht to bleðere¹ widewe.

moni child faderlæs :

and frouer bidaled.

and nu þis folc mid hungre :

wunderliche ihærmede. [c. 2.]

For þi hit if betere :

bi-twixen unke feoluen.

to-dælen and to-dihten :

þis kine-lond mid fihte. 10

and habbe hit þa betere :

and bruken hit on wunne.

Frolle nom twalf cnihtes :

mid þissen worden forð rihtes.

and fende heom an fonde :

to Arðure kinge.

&² iwufte ȝif he wolde :

þis forewarde halde.

and mid his aȝere hond :

bi-telen þat kinelond. 20

oðer uore-liggē :

his leoden to harmen.

and ȝif he hit bi-talden :

hafde hit on³ an onwalde.

and mani child faderles :

frouere bi-deled.

For þi hit his betere :

bi-twixte ous feolue.

to-dealen and to-dihte :

þis kinelond mid fihte.

and habbe hit þe betere :

and brouc hit mid winne.

Frolle nam twealf cnihtes :

mid þes worde forþrihtes.

and fende ȝam on fonde :

to Arthur þan kinge.

hi-wite ȝef he wolde :

þis forewarde holde.

and mid his owene hond :

bi-telle þat kinelonde.

sand ; and ‘ many a good woman *have* made miserable widow,’ many a child fatherless, ‘ and ’ bereaved of comfort ; ‘ and now this folk with hunger *have* wondrously harmed.’ It is better therefore betwixt ourselves to deal and to dispose of this kingdom with fight ; and have it the better *man*, and possess it ‘ in [with] joy ! ’ ” Frolle took twelve knights, with these words forth-right, and sent them in message to Arthur [the] king, to know if he would hold this covenant, and with his own hand win the kingdom, ‘ or lie *dead* before, to *the* harm of his people ; and if he it won, should have it in *his* power.’

¹ bletere, *pr. m.*

² *Superfluous ?*

³ *Redundant ?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat iherde Arður :
 aðeleſt kingen.
 næs he neuere swa bliðe :
 ær an hiſ liue.
 for him likede tidende :
 from Frolle þan kinge.
 and þaſ word ſeide :
 Arður þe ſele.
 Wel faið Frolle :
 þe kīg iſ of France.
 betere iſ þat wit tweiē :
 bitelen þaſ riche.
 þene þer beon of-flazene :
 ure þeines ſnelle.
 þiſ foreward ich bi-luue :
 bi-fore mine leoden.
 to ane iſette dæie :
 to don þat he beodeð.
 þat ſcal beon tomarzen :
 biſoren unker monnen.
 þ̅ fehtē wet ſcullen unc ſeoluen :
 & falle þe forcuðere. [l.137.c.1.]
 And whaðer unker þe geð abake :
 & þiſ ſeoht wulle for-ſake.
 beð he in ælche londe :

þiſ ihorde Arthur :
 baldeſt alre kinge.
 naſ he neuere ſo bliþe :
 er on hiſ liue. [c.2.]
 for him likede þe tȳdinge :
 fram Frolle þe kinge.
 and þeoſ wordes ſaide :
 Arthur þe ſele.
 Wel faiþ Frolle :
 þat king hiſ of France.
 betere þat we tweiē :
 bi-telle þeſ riche.
 þane beon of-ſlaȝe :
 oure cnihteſ ſnelle.
 þiſ foreward ich wolle holde :
 bi mine cwike liue.
 to on i-feat daie :
 to don þat he me biðdeþ.
 þat ſal beon to-morwe :
 to-vore oure mannen.
 þat fihte we ſolle ouſ ſeolue :
 and falle þe forcouþere.
 And waþer þat goþ a-back :
 and þeſ foreward wolle for-ſake.
 beo he in eche londe :

Arthur heard 'that, nobleſt of [this, boldeſt of all] kings; waſ he never ſo blithe ere in hiſ life, for [the] tiding liked to him from Frolle the king; and theſe wordſ ſaid Arthur the good: "Well ſaiþ Frolle, who iſ king of France; better 'it iſ' that we two conteſt thiſ realm, than 'there' ſhould be ſlain our brave 'thaneſ [knightſ]. Thiſ covenant I 'approve, before my people [will hold, by my quick life], at an appointed day to do what he [me] biddeth; that ſhall be to-morrow, before our men, that fight we ſhall *by* our ſelveſ, and fall the worſt *of uſ*! And whether (which) 'of uſ' that goeth aback, and thiſ 'fight [covenant] will forſake, be he in each land

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

iqueðe for ane sconde.	icwepe for on sconde.
þenne mæie me finge :	þanne mai me finge :
of ane fwulche kīge.	of one fwindene kinge.
þe his beot haueð imaked :	þat his beot haueþ imaked :
and hif cniht-scipe for-fakē.	and hif cniht-sipe for-fake.
þæt iherde Frolle :	þat i-horde Frolle :
þe king wes of France.	þat king was of France.
þat Arður fehten wolden :	þat Arthur wolde fihte :
him feolf buten cnihte.	boute eni cniht.
Strong mon wes Frolle :	10 Strang man was Frolle :
and sterc mon on mode.	and starc cniht of mode.
and his beot imaked hafde :	and his beot hadde imaked :
bi-foren al hif duzeðe. [chelen :	bi-vore al his cnihtes.
and ne ¹ ne mihte for scome mu-	he ne miht for scame :
scenden hine feoluē.	fynde him feolue.
bi-læuen hif balde ibeot :	
þ he i burh hafde ifeid.	
Sæide þ he sæide :	Ac faide wat he faide :
to soðe he hit wende.	to sope he hit wen ² .
þat Arður hit wolde for-faken :	þat Arthur hit wolde ³ :
and nawiht to þan fehte taken. 21	
for 3if hit wuste Frolle :	for 3ef he hit hadde hi-wift : ^[f. 110. c. 1.]
þe king wes ane ⁴ France.	to soþere þinge.

proclaimed for a recreant! Then may men sing of one 'such [worthless] king, that his brag (*or* threat) hath made, and his knighthood forsaken!" Frolle heard that, who was king of France, that Arthur would fight 'himself', without [any] knight. Strong man was Frolle, and stark 'man in [knight of] mood; and his boast *he* had made, before all his 'people [knights], and he might not for 'much' shame disgrace himself; 'quit his bold bragging that he had said in *the* burgh.' [But] said *he* whatever he said, in sooth he it weened, that Arthur would it forsake, and no whit take to (accept) the fight. For if 'Frolle [he], 'who was king in France,' had it

¹ he?² wende?³ Part of this and the whole of the next line are wanting.⁴ an? of?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat Arður him ȝettē wolde :'	þat Arthur him grantȝ wolde :
þat he ȝirnd hafde.	þat þe he ȝornde.
don he hit nolde :	don he hit nolde :
for a ſcip ful of golde.	for on ſipfol of golde.
Neoðeles wes Frolle :	Noþeles was Frolle :
to fihte fwide ¹ kene.	to fihte fwiþe kene.
muche cniht & ſtrōg mon :	mochel cniht and ſtrong man :
and modi on heortē.	and modi on heorte.
and ſæide þat he wolde :	and ſaide þat he wolde :
þene dæi halde.	þane dai holde.
in þan æit-londe :'	in þan ȝllonde :
þe mid watere iſ bi-ȝeōge.	þat mid watereſ his bi-ȝonge.
þat æit-lond ſtondeð ful iwiſ :	þat ȝllond ſteond foliwiſ :
inne þere burh of Paris.	a-midde þan borh of Paris.
þer ich wulle mid fehte :	þar ich wolle mid fihte :
bi-tele mine irihte.	bi-telle mine rihte.
mid ſcelden ² :	
and mid cnihtes iweðe.	
nu to-marȝen bið þe dæi :	nou to morwe his þe dai :
habben þe hit hit ³ biȝiten mæi.	habbe þat hit bi-ȝete mai.
Comen þa tiðende :	Come þe tȝdinge :
to Arðure þan kinge.	to Arthur þan kinge.
þat Frolle wolde mid fæhte :	þat Frolle wol.. mid fihte :

known [in sooth thing], that Arthur would grant him that [that] he 'had' yearned, he would not do (have done) it for a ship-ful of gold! Nevertheless was Frolle to *the* fight exceeding keen; tall knight and strong man, and moody in heart; and said that he would hold the day, in the island that with water is surrounded,—the island standeth full truly 'in [amid] the burgh of Paris.—“There I will with fight obtain my rights, ‘with shield, and with steed, and with knights weed;’ now to-morrow is the day; have it he that may it win!” The tiding came to Arthur the king, that Frolle

¹ fwiðe? ² mid ſcelden mid ſtede? ³ Sic MS.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

France bitellē.
 næs he næuere fwa bliðe :
 ær an hif liue.
 and he lehȝen agon :
 ludere stæfnen.
 and þas word feide :
 Arður þe kene.
 Nu ich wat þat Frolle :
 wið me wulle fihte.
 to-marȝe in þan dæie :
 alfe he feolf demde.
 i þan ait-londe :
 þat mid watere if biſtonde.
 for hit bicumeð kinge :
 þat his word ſtonde.
 Leteð blawen bemen :
 and bodien mine monnen.
 þat æuer ælc god mon :
 to-niht wakien for þon.
 and bidden ure drihtē :
 þe alle domes awalt.
 þat he me iſcilde :
 wið Frolle þene wilde.
 and mid hif riht hōde :
 witeȝe me wið ſconde.

bi-telle hif
 Arthur gan to lahȝe :
 loudere ſtemne.
 and þeos word ſaide :
 Arthur þe kene.
 Nou ich wot þat Frolle :
 wole mid me fihte.
 to-morewe in þan daie :
 afe he him ſeolf demep.
 Letep blowe bumef :
 and bodie mine mannef.
 þat euerech god man :
 to-niht wakie for þan.
 and bidde oure drihte :
 þat alle domes weldeþ.
 þat he me ſcilde :
 fram Frolle þan wilde.
 and mid his riht honde :
 witie me fram ſconde.

would with fight win 'France [his *rights*]; 'was he never so blithe ere in his life!' 'And he [Arthur] gan to laugh, with loud voice; and said these words Arthur the keen: "Now I know that Frolle will with me fight, to-morrow in the day, as he [him]self 'determined [determineth], 'in the island that with water is surrounded; for it becometh a king, that his word should stand.' Let *the* trumpets blow, and bid my men, that every good man watch to-night for that, and pray our Lord, that all dooms wield-eth, that he preserve me from Frolle the fierce, and with his right hand protect me from disgrace. And if I may obtain this kingdom to mine own

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

And ȝif ich mæi þis kinelōd :	And ȝef ich mai þis kinelond : [c. 2.]
biȝiten to mire aȝere hon ¹ .	bi-ȝete to min owene hond.
auereælche ærmen mon : [f. 137 ^b . c. 1.]	euerech neod-fol man :
þe æð ſcal iwurðen.	þe bet ſal iworþe.
and wurchen ic wulle :	
muchel godes wille.	
Nu me uulſten þer to :	Nou me fulſte þar to :
þe alle þing mai wel don.	þe king þat al maȝ do.
þe heȝe heueneliche king :	þe heȝe heuenliche [king] :
ſtōde me an helping.	10 ſtonde me an helping.
for ich hine luuien wulle :	
þa while þe ich liuie.	
þer wes al longe niht :	þar was alle lange niht :
songes and ² caldel-liht ³ .	ſonges and candel-liht.
hæhliche fungen clarkes :	hehliche ſonge clearkes :
hali godes ſalmes.	heȝe godeſ phalmes ⁴ .
þa hit dæi we ⁵ amarȝen :	þo hit dai was a morewe :
duȝeðe gunne ſturien.	þat folk gā to ſtorie.
hiſ wæpnen he nom an honden :	his wepne he nam an honde :
Arður þe ſtronge.	20 Arthur þan ſtrōge.
warp he an hiſ rugge :	warp he on his rugge :
a ræf ſwiðe deore.	a reaf ſwiþe deore.
æne cheifil ſcurte :	ane cheifelne feorte :

hand, every 'poor [needy] man the 'easier [better] shall be, 'and work I will *the* great Gods will!' Now aid me thereto [the king] that all 'things' may 'well' do; the high heavenly king stand me in help; 'for him I will love (*or* praise), the while that I live!' " There was all *the* long night songs and candle-light; loudly sung clerks holy psalms of God. When it was day on *the* morrow, 'people [the folk] gan to stir. His weapons (armour) he took in hand, Arthur the strong; he threw on his back a garment most precious, a cheisil shirt, and a cloth kirtle; a burny exceeding

¹ hond?² *At first written an, but d interlined by the same hand.*³ candel-liht?⁴ psalmes?⁵ wes?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& ænne pallene curtel.	and one pallene curtel.
ænne burne fwiðe deore :	ane brunie fwiþe deore :
ibroiden of ftele.	hii-brode al of ftele.
Sette he an hefde :	He fette on his heued :
ænne helm godne.	one helm godne.
to his fide he fwende :	to his fyde he fweinde :
hif fweorde Caliburne.	his sweord Caliburne.
hif fconken he helede :	his legges he helede :
mid hofen of ftele.	mid hofen of ftele.
and duden on hif uoten :	and dude on his fote :
fpuren fwiðe gode.	fpores fwiþe gode.
þe kīg mid hif weden :	þe king mid his wede :
leop on his ftede.	leop on his ftede.
me him to rehte :	me him to reahte :
anē fcelde gode.	one fceald riche.
he wes al clane :	he was al cleane :
of olifantef bane.	of holifantef bone.
Me falde him an honde :	Me tok him an honde :
enne fcaft ftronge. [c.2.]	ane faft ftronge.
þer wes a þan ænde :	þar was in þan eande :
a fpærere ¹ swiðe hende.	an hefd fwiþe hende.
hit wes imaked i Kairmeðin :	hit was i-maked in Ker-merþin :
a fmið þe hehte Griffin.	a smiþ þat hehte Griffin.
hit ahte Vðer :	
þe wes ær king her.	

Griffin.

precious, embroidered [all] of steel. He set on [his] head a good helm; to his side he suspended his sword Caliburn; his legs he covered with hose of steel, and placed on his feet spurs most good. The king with his weeds leapt on his steed; men reached to him a 'good [rich] shield; it was all clean of elephants bone (ivory). Men gave him in hand a strong shaft; there was at the end a 'spear [head] most fair; it was made in Caermarthen by a smith that hight Griffin; 'Uther it possessed, who was ere king here.'

¹ spære?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa þe iwepned wes þe rahȝe :	þo þe iwepnid was þe king :
þa gon he to uarene.	þo gan he to wende. [f. 110 ^b .c.1.]
he mihte þa bi-halde :	he mihte þo bi-holde :
þe þer bihalfuef weore.	þat þar bi-halues were.
þene king richne :	þane richne king :
rehliche riden.	boldeliche ride.
feodðen ¹ þif weorlde wes a-ftald :	suppe þes worle was a-ftald :
nes hit no whar itald.	nas hit noþware itald.
þat æuere ai mon fwa hende :	þat euere eny man fo hende :
wunden uppen horfe.	10 wonde vppe horfe.
swa him wes Arður :	
fune Vðeres.	
Riden after þan kīge :	Riden after þan kinge :
balde here-ðringes.	bolde heredringes.
a þen feoremeste flocke :	in þan forste flocke :
feouwerti hundred.	fourti hondred.
heȝe here-kempē :	baldere Bruttus :
bihonged mid stelen.	bi-honge mid stele.
baldere Brutten :	
bifie mid wepnē.	20
Aft ² þan fufden :	After þan wende :
fifti hundred.	fifti honder.
þeo Wælwain ladde :	þa Waweyn ladde :
þe wæs a wæl-kempe.	þat was a bald kempe.

When that the 'stern *man* [king] was weaponed, then gan he to advance ; then might he behold, who were there beside, the mighty king ride boldly ; since this world was made, was it nowhere told, that ever any man so fair rode upon horse, 'as Arthur he was, son of Uther!' Bold chieftains rode after the king ; in the 'foremost [first] flock forty hundred, 'noble warriors [bold Britons], clad in steel, 'bold Britons, busy with weapon.' After that marched fifty hundred, that Walwain led, who was a [bold] champion. Afterwards there 'gan out follow [out thronged] sixty thousand

¹ feodðen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Seoððen þer gunnen ut fiȝen : fixti þuſēde.	Suppe þar vt þronge : sixti þuſend.
Bruttus ſwiðe balde : þat wes þa bac-warde.	Bruttus ſwiþe bolde : þat was þe bac-ward.
þer wes þe king Angel : þer wes Lot and Urien.	þar was þe king Angel : þar was Loth and Vrien.
þer wes Vrienes ſune : Ywæin ihaten.	þar was Vrienef ſone : Eþayn ihote.
þer wes Kæi and Beduer : and biwuſten þa uerde þer.	þar waſ Kay and Bedewer : and bi-wiſte þe ferde þar.
þer wes þe king Howel : hah mon of Brutlond. [f. 138. c. 1.]	þar was þe king Howel : heh man of Brutlond.
Cador þer wes æc : þe kene weſ on flocke.	Cador þar was eke : þat kene was on flocke.
þer wes of Irlonde : Gillomar þe ſtron ¹ .	þar was of Yrlonde : Gillomar þe ſtrangge.
þer wes Gonwaif þe king : Orka ef ² deorling.	þar was Gonwayſ þe king : Orcaneief deorling.
þer wes Doldamin þe kene : ut of Gutlonde.	þar was Doldanim þe kene : vt of Gutlonde.
	and Rumaret þe ſtrongge : vt of Winet-londe.
þer wes Eſcil þe king : Denemarkes deorling.	þar was Aſcil þe king : Denemarches deorling.

Britons most bold ; that was the rearward. There was the king Angel ; there was Loth and Urien ; there was Uriens son, named Ywain ; there was Kay and Beduer, and commanded the host there ; there was the king Howel, noble man of Britanny ; Cador there was eke, who was keen in flock ; there was from Ireland Gillomar the strong ; there was Gonwais the king, Orkneys darling ; there was Doldanim the keen, out of Gothland, 'and Rumaret the strong, out of Winet-land' ; there was Æscil the king, Denmarks darling. Folk there was on foot, so many thousand

¹ strong?² Sic MS. : read Orkaneies.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Folc þer wes a fotē ⁊	folk þar waf a fote ⁊
swa feole þufend monnen.	so fale þoufend manne.
þat naf nauere na fwa wit-ful mon ⁊	þat naf neuere so wit-fol man ⁊ [c. 2.]
a þiffere weorlde-richen.	in þiffe worle-riche.
a nauere nane fpelle ⁊	in neuere none fpelle ⁊
þat mihte þa þufend telle.	þat mihte þe þoufendes telle.
bute he hauede mid rihte ⁊	
wifdom of drihtene.	
oðer he hafde mid him ⁊	bote he hadde mid him þe wit ⁊
þat him hafde Mærli.	þat hadde Merlȝn.
Arður forð gon liðe ⁊	Arthur forþ gan wende ⁊
mid vnimete folke.	mid onimete folke.
þat he com fuliwif ⁊	þat he com foliwis ⁊
into þere burh of Paris.	into þare borh of Paris.
a weft halue þā watere ⁊	a weft half þan watere ⁊
mid mucle hiſ genge.	mid alle hiſ folke.
An æſt hælf wes Frolle ⁊	An eſt half was Frolle ⁊
mid mucchelere ferde.	mid mochele hiſ ferde.
ȝaru to þan fehte ⁊	ȝaru to þan fihte ⁊
biforen hiſ cnihtes alle.	bi-vore alle hiſ cnihtes.
Arður nom ænne bat godne ⁊	Arthur nam ane bot ⁊
& bæh þer an inne.	and dude him þar ine.
mid ſcelde mid ſtede ⁊	[mid] ſhelde and mid ſtede ⁊
and mid alle hiſ iwede.	and mid al hiſ wede.
and he þat ſcip ſtronge ⁊	and þane bot ſtronge ⁊

men, that was never a man in this worlds-realm so wise, that might tell the thousands, in ever any speech, unless 'he had with right wisdom of *the* Lord, or *unless*' he had with him 'what [the wit that] Merlin 'he' had. Arthur forth gan march, with innumerable folk; until he came full surely unto the burgh of Paris; on *the* west side of the water, with 'his mickle [all his] folk. On *the* east side was Frolle, with [his] great force, ready to the fight, before all his knights. Arthur took a 'good' boat, and 'went [placed himself] therein, with shield [and] with steed, and with all his weeds (armor); and 'he' shoved the strong 'ship [boat] from the land, and stept upon the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

scaf from þan londe ¹ .	scaf fram þan londe.
and stop uppen þat æit-lond:ʔ	and f... .. þat ýllond:ʔ
and ladde his ftede an his hond.	and la... his ftede an his h...
his men þe hine þer brohte:ʔ [c.2.]	... men þe hine þar brohte:ʔ
alse þe king hehte.	ase þe king hehte.
leten þene bat buȝen:ʔ	lette wende þane bot:ʔ
forð mid þan vðen.	forþ mid þan watere.
Frolle into scipe ferde:ʔ	Frolle to bote wende:ʔ
þe kīg wes unuele.	þe king was onfeale ² .
þat he auere þohte:ʔ	10 þat he euere þoht:ʔ
wið Arðure to to ³ fehte.	wiþ Arthur to fihte.
Ferde to þan æite:ʔ	He wende to þan ýllond:ʔ
mid aðele his wēpnen ⁴ .	mid gode his wepne.
uppen þan æit he stop:ʔ	he stop vppe þat ýllod:ʔ
& his ftede him after droh.	and nam his ftede on his hond.
þeo men þe hine þer brohten:ʔ	þe men þat hine þar brohte:ʔ
alse þe king hehte.	ase þe king ȝam hehte.
lette þene bat fufen:ʔ	lette þane bot wende:ʔ
forð mid þan vðen.	forþ mid þan watere.
and þa kinges tweien:ʔ	20 and þe kinges tweie:ʔ [f.111.c.1.]
ane þer wuneden.	þare ine weren beiene.
þa me mihte bihalden:ʔ	
þe þer bihalues weoren.	

island, and led his steed in his hand; his men that brought him there, as the king commanded, let the boat drive forth with the 'waves [water]. Frolle went 'into ship [to boat]; the king was uneasy that he ever thought with Arthur to fight. [He] proceeded to the island, with his good weapons; he stept upon the island, and 'drew [took] his steed 'after him [in his hand]; the men that brought him there, as the king commanded [them], let the boat drive forth with the 'waves [water]; and the two kings 'alone there remained [therein were both]. Then 'men might behold, that were there beside,' *the* folk on 'the land, exceedingly [both sides were] afraid;

¹ lon, *pr. m.*² onfeale?³ Sic MS.⁴ R. wepnen.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

folc a þan uolde :'	þo weren a-drad :
feondliche adredde.	folk in boþe fyde.
heo clumben uppen hallen :	hii clemde vppe halles :
heo clumben uppen wallen.	hii clemde vppe walles.
heo clūben uppen bures :	hii clemde vppe toures :
heo clumben uppe tures.	hii clemden vppe boures.
þat comp to bihalden :	þat fiht to bi-holde :
of þan tweom kingen.	of þeos tweie kinges.
Arðures men beden :	Arthur his men :
mid muchele æðmoden.	10 bede mid mochele edmode.
godd þene gode :	god þane gode :
and þa hali hiſ moder.	and his holy moder.
þat heore lauerd þere :	þat hire louerd þare :
fiȝe moſte habben.	þe ouere hadde.
and þa oðere eke :	and þe oþ ⁹ eke :
bede for heore kinge.	bede for hire kinge.
Arður ſtop ¹ a ſtel boȝe :	A rthur leop þare :
and leop an his blancke.	vppe on his ſtede.
and Frolle mid hiſ iwede :	and Frolle mid his wede :
leop on hiſ ſteden.	20 leop on his ſtede.
þe an an hiſ ænde :	
a þan æit-londe.	
and þæ oðer an hiſ ænde :	
i þan æit-londe.	

[f.138^b.c.1.]

they climbed upon halls, they climbed upon walls; they climbed upon 'bowers [towers], they climbed upon 'towers [bowers], to behold the 'combat [fight] of 'the [these] two kings. 'Arthurs [Arthur his] men prayed with much humility to God the good, and 'the holy his [his holy] mother, that their lord might have there 'victory [the over *hand*]; and the others eke prayed for their king. Arthur 'stept in steel *saddle*-bow, and' leapt [there up-] on his steed; and Frolle with his weeds leapt *also* on his steed; 'the one at his end, in the island; and the other at his end, in the island';

¹ Originally written ſtod.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

heo quehten heore scaftes :'	hii cwehten hire faftes :'
kinewurðe cnihtes.	kineworpe knihtes.
heo græneden heore ftedē :'	hii greinede hire ftedes :'
gode cnihtes heo weoren.	godeli cnihtes hii weren.
Næs he næuere ifunde :'	Nes he neuere ifunde :'
a næuere nane londe.	in neuere none londe.
nan fwa wihtful ¹ mon :	nan fo witfol man :
þat hit wufte ær þan.	þat hit wufte er þan.
whæðer of þan kingen :	waþer of þan kinges :
ouer-cumen fculde liggen.	10 ouer-come folde ligge.
for beiē heo weoren cnihtes kene :	for hit were kene cnihtes :
ohte men and wihte.	ohte men and wiþte.
muchele men on mihte :	
and a maine swiðe fstronge.	
Heo muneþeden heore fteden :	Hii muneþede hire ftedes :
and tofomne gunnen riden.	to-gadere hii gonne ride.
fufden feondliche :	fufden feondeliche :
þat fur him ² fprōg after.	þat fur him ³ fparng ⁴ after.
Arður fmat Frolle :	Arthur smot Frolle :
mid feond fstronge maine.	20 mid fwiþe fstronge mayne.
uppen þene fceald hehze :	vp þan feald heze :
5	þat he to grunde fulle.
and þe ftede þe wes god :	and þe ftede þat was god : [c.2.]

they couched their shafts, *the* royal knights; they urged their steeds,—
 'good [goodly] knights they were. Never was he found in ever any land,
 any man so wise, that should know it ere that *time*, whether (which) of
 the kings should lie overcome; for 'both they [it] were keen knights,
 brave men and active, 'mickle men in might, and in force exceeding
 strong.' They made ready their steeds; 'and' together [they] gan
 ride; rushed fiercely, so that fire sprang after them! Arthur smote
 Frolle with might excessive strong, upon the high shield, [so that it
 fell to *the* ground]; and the steed that was good leapt out in the flood.

¹ wit-ful?² heom?³ ham?⁴ fprang?⁵ A line is here deficient.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

leop ut i þe ulod.	leop vt in þane flod.
Arður ut mid his sweorde :	Arthur vp mid his spere :
balu wes a þan orde.	balu was on þan orde.
and puinden uppen Frolle :	and pungde vppen Frolle :
þer he wes an ulode.	þar he was on grunde.
ær heore cōp weore :	
icumen to þan ænde.	
Ah Frolle mid honde :	Ac Frolle mid his honde :
igræp hif spere longe.	igrop his spere longe.
and kept Arður anan :	and kepte Arthur anon :
10 alfe he aneouft com.	afe he a-neoufte com.
and þene ftede balde :	and þare ftede balde :
fmat i þere breofte.	fmat in þare breofte.
þat þat spere þurh raf :	þat þe spere þorh rof :
and Arður adun draf.	and Arthur a-dun drof.
þa araf þe mon-drem :	[c. 2.] þo a-rof þe mannes drem :
þat þe uolde dunede a-zen.	þat þe wolkne dunede azen.
aqueðen þa weolcne :	
for reme of þan uolke.	
þær Br ^u ttes wolden :	20 þar Bruttus wolde :
ouer water buzen.	ouer water bouwe.
3if Arður up ne fturte :	3ef Arthur vp ne ftorte :
ftercliche fone.	ftarcliche fwipe.
and igræp hif fæld godne :	and igrop his feald godne :
ileired mid golde.	ileýred mid golde.

Arthur 'out [up] with his 'sword [spear],—mischief was on the point,—and struck upon Frolle, where he was 'in *the* flood [on *the* ground], 'ere their combat were come to the end.' But Frolle with [his] hand grasped his long spear, and observed Arthur anon, as he came nigh, and smote the bold steed in the breast, *so* that the spear pierced through, and Arthur down drove. Then arose the multitudes clamor, that the 'earth [welkin] dinned again, 'the welkin resounded for shout of the folk.' There would *the* Britons over *the* water pass, if Arthur had not started up very quickly, and grasped his good shield, adorned with gold, and against Frolle, with 'hostile glances

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and to-ȝaines Frolle :
 mid feondliche lechen.
 breid biforen breoften :
 godne ſceld brade.
 And Frolle him to fuſden :
 mid hiſ feond ræſe.
 and hiſ ſweord up ahof :
 and a-dun riht floh.
 and ſmat an Arðures ſceld :
 þat he wond a þene feld. 10
 þe helm an hiſ hæuede :
 and hiſ hereburne.
 gō to falſie :
 foren an hiſ hafde.
 & he wunde afeng :
 feouwer unchene long.
 heo ne þuhte him noht ſær :
 for heo næs na mare.
 þat blod orn a-dū :
 ouer al hiſ breoſte. 20
 Arður wes abolȝe :
 ſwiðe an hiſ heorte.
 and hiſ ſweord Caliburne :
 ſwipte mid maine. [hælm :
 and ſmat Frolle uppen þæne
 þat he atwa helden.

and to-ȝenes Frolle :
 mid ſtarcliche maine.
 breid bi-vore breoſte :
 hiſ gode ſeald brode.
 And Frolle to him reaſde :
 mid hiſ feond reaſes.
 and vt droh hiſ gode ſweord :
 and a-dun ſwipte.
 and ſmot vp Arthur hiſ ſealde :
 þat he fleh in þane felde.
 þe healm on hiſ hefd :
 and hiſ hereburne.
 þat he gan to fauſie :
 a-forn neȝein hiſ hefd.
 and he wonde onderfeng :
 four vnchene lang.
 hit ne þohte him noht for :
 for þe wonde naſ na mor.
 þat blod orn a-dun :
 oueral hiſ breoſte.
 Arthur was a-bolwe :
 ſwiþe on hiſ heorte.
 and hiſ ſweord Caliburne : [f. 111^b.
 c. 1.]
 ſwipte mid mayne.
 and ſmot Frolle vppe þan helm :
 þat he atwo to-ȝeode.

[strong force] cast before *his* breast [his] good broad shield. And Frolle to him rushed with his fierce assault, and 'up heaved [out drew] his [good] sword, and struck down 'right,' and smote [vp] on 'Arthurs [Arthur his] shield, so that it 'fell [flew] on the field; the helm on his head, and his mail [that it] gan to give way, in front of his head; and he received a wound four inches long;—it seemed not to him sore, for 'it [the wound] was no more;—the blood ran down over all his breast. Arthur was enraged greatly in his heart, and his sword Caliburne swung with main, and smote

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þurh ut þere burne-hod :	þorh vt þane brunie-hod :
þat hit at his breofte at-ftod.	þat at þe breofte hit a-ftod.
þa feol Frolle :	þo ful Frolle :
folde to grunde.	dun to þan grunde.
uppen þan graf-bedde :	vp on þan grafe :
his goft he bi-læfde.	his goft he bi-leuede.
þa Bruttes lohzen :	þo Bruttes lowen :
ludere ftefuene.	loudere ftemne.
and leoden to fleonen :	and þat oþer folk to fleonde :
feōdliche fwiðe.	10 feondeliche fwiþe.
Arður ¹ þe riche :	Arthur þe riche :
wende to londe.	wende to londe.
and þus cleopien agon :	and cleopie agan :
aðeleft kingen.	to his maȝ Waweȝn.
Whær ært þu Walwain :	
monne me leofeft.	
Heot þas Rom-wæren alle :	Hot þis mē alle :
mid griðen liðen heonne.	mid griþe wende hinne.
ælc mō bruke his ham :	ech man brouke his hom :
fwulc godd hit him on.	20 þat god him aleneþ.
hat ælcne mon halde grið :	
uppen leome & uppen lif.	
and ich hit wulle dihten :	and ich ȝam wole dihte :

Frolle upon the helm, so that it parted in two; throughout the burnys-hood, so that at 'his [the] breast it (the sword) stopt. Then fell Frolle [down] to [the] ground; upon the grass-'bed' his ghost he left. Then laughed *the* Britons, with loud voice; and 'people [the other folk] *gan* to fly exceeding quickly. Arthur the powerful went to land, and 'thus' gan to call, 'noblest of kings: "Where art thou, [to his relative] Walwain, 'dearest of men to me?' Command these 'Rome'-men all with peace to depart hence; each man enjoy his home, 'as [that] God granteth 'it' him; 'order each man to hold peace, upon *pain of* limb and upon life'; and I will 'it [them] order to day a se'nnight; command 'this folk then

¹ R. Arður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to-dæi a feouennihte.	to-dai a foueniht.
hat þif folc þenne :	hot ȝam wēde hinne :
liðen al to-somne :	alle to-gaderesf.
and cumen to me feoluen :	and comen to mi feolue :
þæ bet heom ſcal iwurden ¹ .	þe bet ȝam ſal iworþe.
Heo ſcullen me mō-radene :	Hii ſolle hire manradene :
mid monſcipe ² frēmē.	mid manſipe bi-take.
and ich heom wulle holden :	and ich ȝam wolle holde :
a mine onwolden.	in mine onwolde.
and ſetten i leode :	and ſetten þan folke :
laȝen ſwiðe gode.	lawes ſwiþe gode.
For nu ſcullen Romanifce laȝē :	For nou ſolle Romaniffe lawes :
to þan grude ³ reofen.	to þan grunde falle.
þa iuurn here :	þat iuorn here :
ftoden mid Frolle.	ftode mid Frolle.
þe lið on æite of-flaȝen :	þat liþ in þan ȝllond of-slawe :
and idon of lif-daȝen.	and idon of lifdaȝe.
Her after ful fōe :	Her after ful ſone :
ſcal hiſ cun of Rome.	ſal hiſ cun of Rome.
heren tidinge :	ihere tȝdinge :
of Arðure þan kīge.	of Arthur þan kinge.
for ich heom wulle wið ſpeken :	for ich þenche wiþ ȝam ſpeke :
and Rome walles to-breken.	and Rome walles to-breke.
& munegie heom hu king Belin :	and munéȝi of king Belȝn :
Bruttas ladde þider in.	þat Bruttus ladde þider in.

to march [them to go hence] all together, and come to myself,—the better *it* shall be for them. They shall 'perform [give their] homage 'to me' with honor, and I will hold-them in my sovereignty, and set laws most good 'among *the* people [to the folk]. For now shall *the* Romanish laws fall to the ground, that before stood here with Frolle, who lieth slain in [the] island, and deprived of life-day. Hereafter full soon shall his kindred of Rome hear tidings of Arthur the king, for I 'will [think to] speak with them, and break down Rome walls, and remind 'them how [of] king Belin,

¹ iwurðen ?² monſcipe ?³ grunde ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and iwon him þa londes alle :'	and alle þe londes awan :'
þat ftondeð into Rome.	þat liggeþ to Rome.
Arður beh to þan ȝæte :'	Arthur wende to borewe :'
forn at þere burȝe.	þar þe ȝatef were.
comen wit-fulle men :'	and ¹ alle þe wit-fulle men :'
þe þa burh biwuften.	þat þane borh wifte.
and Arður letten binnen :'	and lette Arthur binne.
mid alle his monnen.	mid alle his manne.
bitahten him halles :'	
bitahten him castles.	10
bitahten him ful iwif :'	hii toke him foliwis :'
al þa burh of Paris.	al þe borh of Paris.
þer wes muchel bliffce :'	þar was mochel bliffe :'
mid Brutifce uolke.	mid Bruttiffe folke.
þe dæi fæh to burhȝe :'	þe dai nehlehte :'
þe Arður ifet hafde.	þat Arthur ifet hadde.
com al þa mō-weorede :'	comen alle þe men :'
and his men bicomē.	and his men bi-come.
Arður nom his duȝeðe :'	Arthur nam his enihtes :'
and atwa heom to-dalde.	20 and atwo to-dealde.
and þa haluendæle :'	and þat haluendeale :'
Howele bitætte.	Howel he bi-tahte.
and hehte hine uaren fone :'	and bad him wende fone :'

[who] led *the* Britons in thither, and won 'to him' all the lands that 'stand unto [lie to] Rome. Arthur proceeded to 'the gate, before the burgh [*the* burgh, where the gates were; and all the] wise men (magistrates) that took charge of the burgh, came, and let Arthur within, with all his men; 'delivered to him *the* halls, delivered to him *the* castles'; [they] delivered to him, full surely, all the burgh of Paris,—there was mickle bliss with *the* British folk! The day 'came to burgh [nighed], that Arthur had set; came all the 'populace [men], and his men became. Arthur took his 'folk [knights], and divided them in two; and the half part [he] gave to Howel, and bade him march soon, with the mickle host, with *the* British men

¹ camen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

mid muchele þere uerde.

mid Brutifce mōnen ⁊

londes iwīnen.

Howel dude al fwa ⁊

alfe Arður hine hehte.

he biwon Barri ⁊

and alle þa landes þer bi.

Angou and Turuine ⁊

Aluerne and Gascunne.

and þa hafuenes alle ⁊

þe herden to þan landes.

Guitar.

Guitard þe duc hæhte ⁊

þe Peytouwē ahte.

he nolde buzen Howele ⁊

ah heold to-Ƿæines him æuere.

nolde he ȝirnen na grið ⁊ [f. 139^b.c. 1.]

ah Howel him faht wið.

ofte he uolc ualde ⁊

and ofte he ulem makede.

Howel al þat lond weste ⁊

& of-floh þa leode.

þa ifæh Guitard ⁊

þe i Peitou wes lauerd.

mid mochele þare ferde.

mid Bruttuffe manne ⁊

londes a-winne.

Al dude Howel ⁊

afe Arthur hine heahte.

he b wan¹ Berri ⁊

and alle þe landes þar bi.

Angoize and Turuine ⁊

Aluerne and Gascoyne.

10 and þe homes alle ⁊

þat leieþ to þan ilke landes.

G Witard þe duk hehte ⁊

þat Peyto hahte.

he nolde to Howel bouwe ⁊

ac heold hine mid fihte.

he ne ȝornde no griþ ⁊

ac euere he faht Howel wiþ.

ofte he folk fulde ⁊

and ofte he fleom makede.

20 Howel þat lon² weaste ⁊

and of-floh þe leode. [f. 112.c. 1.]

þo ifah Gwitard ⁊

þat in Peyto was lauerd.

to conquer lands. Howel did all 'thus' as Arthur him bade; he conquered Berry, and all the lands thereby; Anjou and Touraine, Alverne and Gascony, and all the 'havens' [habitations], that 'belonged' [lay] to the [same] lands. Guitard hight the duke, who possessed Poitou; he would not submit to Howel, but held 'ever' against him [him with fight]; he would ask no peace, but 'Howel fought with him' [ever he fought with Howel]; oft he felled *the* folk, and oft he made flight. Howel wasted 'all' the land, and slew the people. When Guitard saw, who was lord in Poitou, that all 'his

¹ R. bi-wan.² lond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat alle his leoden :
 him to lofe eodē.
 wið Howele he grið makede :
 mid al his monweorede.
 and bicom Arðures mon :
 þas aðele kingen.
 Arður him warð liðe :
 and luuede hine swiðe.
 & hehte hine his lond bruken :
 for he him bæh to foten. 10
 þa hafde Howel :
 hæhliche agūnen.
 Arður hafde France :
 and freoliche heo fette.
 he nō þa hif ferde :
 and wende ȝeōd þan ærde.
 to Burguine he wēde :
 and fette hit an his honde.
 and seodðen¹ he gon liðen :
 in to Loherne. 20
 and alle þa londes :
 fette him feolue an honde.
 al þat Arður ifæh :
 al hit him to bæh.

þat alle þe leode :
 him to lofe eode.
 wiþ Howel he griþ makede :
 mid al his manferde.
 and bi-com Arthur his man :
 baldest alre kinge.
 Arthur him warþ liþe :
 and louede hine swiþe.
 and hehte him hif lond brouki :
 for he him beh to fote.
 þo hadde Howel :
 hehliche a-gonne.
 Arthur hadde France :
 and freoliche hit fette.
 he nam þo hif ferde :
 and wende oueral þan erþe.
 to Borgoïne he wende :
 and fette hit mid hif manne.
 and suppe he gan wende :
 into Loherenne.
 and alle þe londes :
 he nam to his hondes.
 al þat Arthur ifeh :
 al hit him to beh.

[F]rance.

[B]ur-
guine.

[the] people went him to loss, with Howel he made peace, with all his host, and became 'Arthurs [Arthur his] man, 'the noble king [boldest of all kings]. Arthur became gracious to him, and loved him greatly, and bade him enjoy his land, for (because) he bowed to his feet;—then had Howel nobly succeeded! Arthur had France, and freely it settled; he took then his host, and marched over [all] the territory; to Burgundy he proceeded, and set it 'in his hand [with his men]; and afterwards he gan fare into Loraine, and all the lands 'set to himself in hand [he took in his hands]; all that Arthur saw, all it submitted to him; and afterwards he went, full truly,

¹ seoððen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and feoððen he wende ful iwif:⁹	and suppe he wende foliwis:⁹
aȝain hā to Paris.	aȝen in to Parif.
þa hafde Arður Frāce:⁹	þo Arthur hadde France:⁹
mid gode griðe aſtalde.	after his wille.
ifet and ifemed:⁹	
þat fel was an þeoden.	
þa hehte he þa cnihtes alden:⁹	þo hehte he þe cnihtes:⁹
þa he hafde ȝare at-halden.	þat þar mid him were.
þat heo to þan kinge comen:⁹ [c. 2.]	þat lang hadde ileued:⁹
and heore læn a-fængē.	10 and in fihte moche ilofed.
for heo feole ȝeren:⁹	þat hii to him come:⁹
hafden ibon ¹ hiſ iueren.	and ȝeſtes a-fenge.
Summen he ȝæf lond:⁹	Somme he ȝaf lond:⁹
ſummen ſeoluer and gold.	ſomme ſeoluer and gold.
ſummen he ȝæf caſtleſ:⁹	ſomme he ȝaf caſtles:⁹
fūmen he ȝaf claðes.	ſomme he ȝaf cloþes.
hehte heom uaren an wūne:⁹	
and beten heore ſunnen.	
for-bed heom to berne wapmen ² :⁹	
for ælde heom eode ouenan.	20
and hehte heom luuien ſwiðe:⁹	and bad ȝam loueie ſwiþe:⁹
godd in þiſſen liue.	godd in þiſſe lifue. [c. 2.]
þat he an ende ful iwis:⁹	

again 'home [in] to Paris. When Arthur had France 'established with good peace [after his will], 'settled and composed, so that prosperity was among *the* folk,' then ordered he the 'old' knights, that 'he had long retained [were there with him, that long had remained, and in fight much *had* lost], that they should come to 'the king [him], and receive 'their reward [gifts]; 'for they many years had been his companions.' To some he gave land, some silver and gold; to some he gave castles, some he gave clothes; 'bade them go in joy, and amend their sins; forbade them to bear weapon, because age upon them went,' and bade them love God greatly in this life, 'that he at *the* end, full surely, might give them his paradise,' that they

¹ ibeon?² wapnen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ȝefen heom his paradis.	
þæt heo moften bruken :	þat hii mihten brouke :
blisse mid ænglen.	blisse mid englene.
Alle þa cnihtes alde :	Alle þe cnihtes holde :
foren to heore londe.	wende to hire londe.
and þa ȝunge bilæfden :	and þe ȝonge bi-lefde :
mid leouen heore kīgen.	mid leue hire kinge.
Alle þa niȝē ȝere :	Alle þe niȝe ȝere :
Arður wuneden þere.	Arthur wonede þere.
niȝen ȝere he heold France :	niȝe ȝer he heold France :
freoliche on hōde.	freoliche an honde.
and feoððen na lengere :	and suppe no lengere :
þat lond he ne walde.	þat lond he ne wolde.
Ah þa while þe þat kinelond :	Ac þe wile þat þe kinelond :
ftod an Arðures hond.	ftod in Arthures hond.
þinges feolcuðe :	þinges felcoupe :
fizen to þere þeode.	come to þan folke.
monienne modfulne mon :	manȝ one godne man :
Arður makede ¹ milde.	he makede milde.
and mōiēne hehne mon :	and manȝ ane hehne man :
he helde to hif foten.	he heold to his fote.
Hit wes an ane æftere :	Hit was in on easter :
þat men hafden iuaſte.	þat men hadde ifaſte.
þat Arður an æftere dæi hafde :	þat al Arthur his folk :

might enjoy bliss with *the* angels. All the old knights proceeded to their land, and the young remained with their dear king. All the nine years Arthur dwelt there; nine years he held France freely in hand, and afterwards no longer the land he governed. But the while that the kingdom stood in Arthurs hand, marvellous things came to the folk; many 'proud [a good] man 'Arthur [he] made mild, and many a high man he held at his feet! It was on an Easter, that men had fasted, that 'Arthur on Easter-day had his noble men together [all Arthur his folk was gathered to him];

¹ *At first written make, but de interlined by the original hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

his aȝele men at-fomne. [f. 140. c. 1.] to him was igadered.
 al þat hæhfte mon-cun :'
 þat herden ī to Francen.
 & of alle þan londen :'
 þe þider in læien.
 þer he ȝette his cnihten : and he þare eche cnihtes :'
 alle heore irihten. he¹ ȝef alle hire rihtes.
 elc² ane he ȝif æhte : ech one he ȝaf heahte :'
 alfe he iærned hafde. afe hii i-fareued hadde.
 þuſ hī iquaȝ Arȝur : 10 þo him faide Arthur :'
 aȝeleſt kingē. baldeſt alre kinge.
 Kæi biſih þe hiderward : Bi-ſih þe Keay hiderward :'
 þu ært min haxte ſtiward. þou hart min oweſtiward.
 her ich Angou ȝiue þe : her ich Angoye þe ȝefue :'
 for þire wel-dede. for þine wel deade.
 and alle þa irihte :'
 þe þiden³ in beoȝ idihte.
 Cneole me to Beduer : Cneole to me Beduer :'
 þu art min hexte birle her. þou hart min hexſte borle her.
 þa while þa ich beo an liue : 20 þe wile ich ham a-liue :'
 luuien ich þe wulle. louie ich þe wolle.
 her ich ȝiue þe Neuftrie : her ich þe ȝeue Neuftrie :'
 aneuſte mire riche. nexſte mine riche.

Kæy.

Beduer.

'all the highest persons that belonged to France, and of all the lands that lay thither in'; [and] there he gave 'his knights [each knight] all their rights; to each one he gave possessions, as 'he had earned [they had deserved]. Thus 'quoth [said] him Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Kay, look thee hitherward; thou art mine 'highest [own] steward; here I give thee Anjou, for thy good deeds, 'and all the rights that thither in are set.' Kneel to me, Beduer; thou art my highest cup-bearer here; the while 'that' I am alive, love thee I will. Here I give thee Neustrie, nearest to my realm." Then hight Neustrie *the land* that now hight Normandy.

¹ *Superfluous?*² *aelc, pr. m., but a erased.*³ *R. þider.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa hehte Neufst ⁱ e :	þo hehte Neuftrie :	<i>Neuftrie.</i>
þat nu hatte Normandie.	þat nou hatte Normandie.	
þe ilke tweien eorles weoren :	þe ilke tweie eorles weren :	
Ardures ¹ deore men.	Arthur his deore men.	
at rede and at rune :	at reade and at roune :	
an æuer ælche tune.	in euereche toune.	
þa ȝet him feide Arður :	þe ȝet him feide Arthur :	
aðelest kingen.	wifest alre kinge. [f. 112 ^b . c. 1.]	
Wend þe hider Howeldin :	Wend þe hider Holdeyn :	<i>Howeldin.</i>
þu ært mi mon and mi cun. 10	þou hart min man and min cun.	
haue þu Bulune :	haue þou Boloynne :	
and bruc his on wunne.	and brouk hit on winne.	
Cumme ner Borel :	Com me near Borel :	<i>Borel.</i>
þu art cniht wif and war.	þou hart cniht wis and war.	
her ich þene Mans þe :	here ich þe þane Mans :	
mid monscipe bitæche.	mid mansipe bi-take.	
and bruc þu his on wunne :	and brouc hit on winne :	
for þire wel-dede.	for þine wel-deade.	
þus Arður þe king delde : [c. 2.]	þus Arthur þe king :	
his drihtliche londes. 20	dealde his londes.	
after heore iwurhte :	after hire deades :	
for he heom þuhte wurðe.	for he ham wiste worþe.	
þa weoren bliðe spelles :	þo weren bliþe spelles :	

The same two earls were 'Arthurs [Arthur his] dear men, at counsel and at communing, in every place. The yet said him Arthur, 'noblest of [wisest of all] kings : "Wend thee hither, 'Howeldin [Holdeyn]; thou art my man and my kin; have thou Boulogne, and possess it in prosperity. Come near, Borel; thou art knight wise and wary; here I deliver thee the Mans, with honor, and possess 'thou' it in prosperity, for thy good deeds." Thus Arthur the king dealt his 'lordly' lands, after their 'actions [deeds]; for he 'thought [knew] them *to be* worthy. Then were blithe speeches in 'Arthurs

¹ R. Arðures.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in Arðuref hallen.	in Arthur his halles.
þer wes harepinge and fong :	þar was harping an fong :
þe ¹ weoren bliffen imong.	þare weren bliffes among.
þa æstre wes aȝonge :	þo easter was a-gon :
and Aueril eode of tune.	and Auerel eode of toune.
and þ̅ graf was riue :	and þat gras was riue :
and þat water wes liðe.	and þat water liþe.
and men gunnen fpilien :	and men faide ² :
þat wes Mæi at tune.	þat Maȝ was in toune.
Arður nom hiȝ folc feire :	10 Arthur nam his ferde :
and to þere sæ uerde.	and to féé wende.
and lette bonien hiȝ ſcipen :	and lette banni his fipes :
wel mid þan bezſten.	wel mid þan beſte.
& ferde to þiſſen londe :	and wende to þiſſe londe :
and up cō at Londen.	and vp com at Londene.
up he com at Lūdene :	
leoden to bliffen.	
Al hit weſ bliðe :	Al hit was bliþe :
þat hine iſæh mid eȝen.	þat hine iſeh mid ehȝene.
ſone heo gunnen fīȝe :	20 ſone hii gonne finge :
of Arðure þan kinge.	of Arthur þan kinge.
and of þere wurðſcipe muchele :	and of þe worſipe :
þe he iwunne haȝde.	þat he awonne haȝde.

[Arthur his] halls; there was harping and song, there were blisses among! When Easter was gone, and April went from town, and the grass was riſe, and the water 'was' calm, and men 'gan to ſay [ſaid in ſpeech] that May was in town, Arthur took his 'fair folk [hoſt], and proceeded to 'the' ſea, and cauſed his ſhips to be aſſembled, well with the beſt; and ſailed to this land, and came up at London; 'up he came at London, to *the* bliſs of *the* people.' All it was bliſſe that ſaw him with eyes; ſoon they gan to ſing of Arthur the king, and of the 'great' worſhip that he haȝ won.

¹ R. þer.² faide in rounne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer cufte uader þene fune : þar cufte fader þane fone :
 and feide to him welcume. and faide to him wolcome.
 dohter þa moder :
 broðer þene oðer. broþer þan oþer :
 sufter cufte fuster : softer þane broþer.
 þa foftere heom wes an heorten.
 A monie hundred ftūden¹ : In many hundred ftude :
 ftoden bi þan weie. ftode bi þan weye.
 folc frainige² : þat folk axinge :
 of feole cūne þīgē. 10 of many cunnes þing.
 and cnihtes heom talden : [f.140^b. c.1.] and cnihtes ȝam tolde : [c.2.]
 of heore onwalden. of hire anwolde.
 and heore ȝeolp makeden : and hire ȝelp makede :
 of muchele biȝeten. of mochele bi-ȝeate.
 Ne mihte na mon fuggē : Ne mihte no man fegge :
 nære he na fwa hende mon. in þiſſe worle-riche.
 of halue þan bliſſen : of haluendel þe bliſſe :
 þa weoren mid þan Brutten. þat were þo mid Bruttus.
 Ælc ferde an hiſ neode :
 ȝeond þas kine-þeode. 20
 from burhȝe to burhȝe :
 mid bliſſen uniuoȝe.
 and þuſ hit ane ftude³ : and þuſ one ftund :

There kissed father the son, and said to him welcome; 'daughter the mother,' brother the other; sister 'kissed sister [the brother]; 'the softer it was to them in heart.' In many hundred places [the] folk stood by the way, asking of things of many kind; and *the* knights told them of their conquests, and made their boast of mickle booty. Might no man say, 'were he man ever so skilled [in this worlds-realm], of half the blisses that were [then] with 'the' Britons! 'Each fared at his need over this kingdom, from burgh to burgh, with great bliss'; and thus 'it' a time stood in the same *wise*,—bliss was in 'Britain [this land] with the bold king.

¹ ftuden?² frainige?³ ftunde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ftod a þan ilke.
 bliffe wes on Brutene :
 mid balde þan kinge.
 þa æstre wes azeonge :
 and fumer com to londe.
 þa nom Arður his red :
 wið reche his mōnē.
 þat he wolde inne Karliū :
 bere his crune him on.
 and a White-funedæi : 10
 his folc þer ifomnie.
 A þen ilke dazen :
 mē gunnē demen.
 þat nes i nane londe :
 burh nan fwa hende.
 na swa wide cuð :
 swa Karliun bi Ufke.
 buten hit weoren þa burh riche :
 þe Rome if ihaten.
 þa ȝet wes mid þan kinge : 20
 moni mon an londe.
 þat quidde þa burh of Karlion :
 ricchere þene Rome.
 and þat Ufke weore :
 feleſt alre wateren.
 Medewes þer weoren brade :

hit ftod a þan ilke.
 bliffe was in þiſſe londe :
 mid balde þan kȳnge.
 þo eafter was agon :
 and fomer com to toune.
 þo nam Arthur his read :
 wiþ riche his manne.
 þat he wolde in Cairlion :
 beare his croune him on.
 to þan Witeſonneday :
 his folk folde be hi-gadered.
 In þan ilke tȳme :
 men gonne deame.
 þat nas in none londe :
 borh al ſo hende.
 ne ſo couþ wide :
 ſo Cayrlion bi Vfke.
 bote hit were þe borh riche :
 þat Rome his ihote.
 And ȝet was mid þan kȳnge :
 many man in londe.
 þat held þe borh of Cayrlion :
 richere þane Rome.
 and þat Vfke were :
 feleſt alre watere.
 Medewes þar were brode :

When Easter was gone, and summer come to 'land[town], then took Arthur his counsel, with his noble men, that he would in Kaerleon bear on him his crown, 'and on [at the] Whitsunday his folk 'there assemble [should be gathered]. In 'those days [that time] men gan deem, that 'no' burgh [all] so fair was [not] in any land, nor so widely known as Kaerleon by Usk, unless it were the rich burgh that is named Rome. 'The [And] yet many a man was with the king in land, that 'pronounced [held] the burgh of Kaerleon richer than Rome, and that Usk were *the* best of all waters.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

bihalues þere burhȝe.	[c. 2.]	bi-halues þare borewe.	
þer wes fiſc : þer wes fuȝel :		þar was fiſc þar was fowel :	
and fæierneſſe inoȝe.		and biſſef ¹ inowe.	
þer wes wude and wilde deor :		þar was wode and wilde deor :	
wunder ane monie.		wonderliche manie.	
þer wes al þa murhðe :		þar was al þe murthe :	
þe æi mon mihte of þenche.		þat enȝ man mihte an þinche.	
Ah nauer ſeoððen Arður þider		Ac neuere ſupþe þat Arthur þider	
þa burh ſeoððe no ipæh.		[bæh : þe borh ſupþeneþeh. [f. 113. c. 1.]] [beh :	
no nauere ne ² mæi :	10	ne neuere more ne maȝ :	
bi-twene þiſ and domeſ-dæi.		bi-twix þiſ and domes-day.	
Sūme bokes fuggeð to iwiffe :		Somme bokes feggeþ to iwiffe :	
þat þa burh wes biwucched.		þat þe borh was i-wicched.	
and þæt iſ wel iſene :		þat hiſ wel of ſene :	
foð þat hit funde.		foþ þat hit þinche.	
I þære burh weoren :		In þare borh were :	
twa munſtres ſwiðe mære.		tweie riche muneftres.	
þat an mūſtre wes of ſeint Aaron :		þe on was of ſeint Aaron :	<i>Aaron.</i>
þer inne wes muchel halidō.		þar in was manȝ halidom.	
þatoðer of þan martir ſeint Juliaen :		þe oþer of ſeint Julian :	<i>Julian.</i>
þe heh iſ mid drihten.	21	þat heh hiſ mid drihte.	
þer weoren nunnan wel idon :		þar in were nonnes wel idon :	

Meadows there were broad, beside the burgh; there was fish, there was fowl, and 'fairness [blisses] enow; there was wood and wild deer, wondrous many; there was all the mirth that any man might think of. But never since [that] Arthur thither came, the burgh afterwards thrived, nor ever-[more] may, 'between [betwixt] this and dooms-day. Some books say certainly that the burgh was bewitched, and that is well seen (probable), sooth that it 'be [seem]. In the burgh were two minsters 'exceeding noble [rich]; one 'minster' was of Saint Aaron; therein was 'mickle [many] relique; the other of 'the martyr' Saint Julian, who is high with *the* Lord; there[in] were nuns good, many a high born woman. The bishops stool was at Saint

¹ *R.* bliffes.² *Interlined by a second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

moni heh iboren wifmon.	maný heh bore womman.
þe biscop stole wes at fein ¹ Aarō :	þe biſſopes ſtol was at feint Aaron :
þer wes moni fel mon.	þar in was maný canoun.
canunes þer weoren :	
þe cuð weoren widen.	
þer wes moni god clarc :	þar was mani god cleark :
þe wel cuðe a leore.	þat moche couþe of lore.
muchel heo ferden mid þan craſte :	moche hii vſede þat craft :
to lokien in þan leoſte.	to lokie in þan luſte.
to lokien i þan ſteorren :	10
nehȝe and feorren.	
þe craft iſ ihate :	þe craft hiſ ihote aſtronomie :
Aſtronomie.	in oþer kunnes ſpeche.
wel ofte heo þan kīge :	wel ofte hii þan kinge tolde :
ſeide of feole þinge.	of mani þinges.
heo cuddē him on leoden :	
what him ſculde ilimpē. [f. 141. c. 1.]	
Swulc wes þe burh of Karliun :	Soch was þe borh of Caýrlion :
þer weſ muchel ricchedom.	þar was moche richedom.
þer wes muchel bliſſe :	20
mid biſie þan kinge.	
þe king nom hiſ fonde :	þe king nam hiſ fonde :
and ſende ȝeōd hiſ londe.	and ſende to maný londes.

Aaron ; there[in] was many a 'good man [canon] ; ' canons there were, who known were wide' ; there was many a good clerk, who 'well [much] could (were well skilled) in learning. Much they used the craft to look in the sky ; 'to look in the stars, nigh and far' ;—the craft is named Astronomy [in speech of other kind]. Well often they 'said [told] of many things to the king ; 'they made known to him what should happen to him in the land.' Such was the burgh of Kaerleon ; there was much wealth ; 'there was much bliss with the busy king.' The king took his messengers, and sent 'over his land ; [to many lands, and] bade come 'earls ; [kings, and]

¹ feint?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hæhte cumen eorlef:⁹	and hehte come kinges:⁹	
hehte cumen beornef.	and hehte come eorles.	
hehte cumen kinges:⁹	biffopes and clearkes:⁹	
and æc here-ðringes.	cnihtes and fweines.	
hehte cumen biscoppes:⁹		
hehte cumen cnihtes.		
hæhte alle þa freo-men:⁹		
þauere ¹ weoren an londe.		
bi heore life hehte heom beon:⁹	bi hire lifue he hehte ȝam beon:⁹	
a White-funedæi at Kærleon. 10	a Witfondaȝ at Cairlyon.	<i>Kairliun.</i>
Cnihtes gūnen riden:⁹	Cnihtes gonne ride:⁹	
vnimete whiden.	onimete wide.	
riden touward Kairliun:⁹	and come to Cairlyon:⁹	
of feole cunne londen.	of manȝ cunne londes. [c. 2.]	
To þan White-funedæie:⁹	To þan Witfoneday:⁹	
þer com þe king Angel.	com þe king Angel.	<i>Angel.</i>
king of Scotlonde:⁹	king of Scotlonde:⁹	
mid fceone hif folke.	mid kene hif folke.	
moni wes þe faire mon:⁹		
þe folȝede þan kingen. 20		
Of Murieue kīg Vrien:⁹	Of Morayne þe kin ² Vrien:⁹	<i>Vrien.</i>
and hif fæire fune Ywæin.	and his faire fone ȝeuan.	
Stater king of Suðwales:⁹	Stater king of Supwales:⁹	

bade come 'barons [earls]; 'bade come kings, and eke chieftains; bade come bishops, bade come knights [bishops and clerks, knights and swains]; 'bade all the free men that ever were in *the* land'; by their life [he] bade them be at Kaerleon on Whitsunday. Knights gan to ride exceeding wide, [and] 'rode toward [came to] Kaerleon from lands of many kind. At the Whitsunday 'there' came the king Angel, king of Scotland, with his 'fair [keen] folk; 'many was the fair man that followed the king'. Of Moray [the] king Urien, and his fair son Ywain; Stater, king of South-Wales,

¹ þa euere?² king?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

	and Cadwaðlan ¹ king of Norð- and Cadwal þan king of Norþwales.	
<i>Cador.</i>	Cador eorl of Cořwale : ' [wales. Cador eorle of Cornwale : ' þa þe king luuede. þat Arthur moche louede. Moruið of Glouchæstre : ' Morewiþ of Gloucestre : ' Maurin of Winchafstre. Maurin of Wichestre ² .	
<i>Gurguint.</i>	Gurguint eorl of Herford : ' and Beof eorl of Oxeuord. and Beofs eorl of Oxeneford. Gurfal þe balde : ' Cursal þe bolde : ' from Baðe þer com ride. fram Baþe þar com ride.	
<i>Vrgent.</i>	Vrgent of Chaftre : ' [c. 2.] 10 Vrgent of Caftre : ' Jonataf of Dorcheftre. Jonathas of Dorcheftre.	
<i>Ar[nald.]</i>	Ærnald of Salefburi : ' Arnold of Salufburi : '	
<i>Kinm[arc.]</i>	and Kinmarc of Cantuare-buri. and Kinemark of Canterburi. Balien of Silechæstre : ' Balien of Cireceftre : ' Wigein of Leirchæstre. Wigen of Leyceftre. Argal eorl of Warwic : ' Argal eorl of Warewike : ' mid folk fwiðe fellic. mid folke fwiþe fellich.	
<i>Dunw[ale.]</i>	Dunwale Apries fune : ' and Kegein Elauðes fune. and Kekeyn Elaupes fune. Kineuf þer ³ wes Coittes fune : ' Kýneuf þat was Coýtet fune : ' & Cradoc Catelles fune. 21 and Cradoc Catellus fune.	
<i>Ædla[n.]</i>	Ædlein Cledaukes fune : ' Aleýn Cledaukes fune : ' Grimarc Kimmarkes fune. Trimarc Kinemarket fune.	

and Cadwal, the king of North-Wales; Cador, earl of Cornwall, whom 'the king [Arthur much] loved; Morvith of Gloucester; Maurin of Winchester; Gurguint, earl of Hereford, and Beof, earl of Oxford; Cursal the bold, from Bath there came riding; Urgent of Chester; Jonathas of Dorchester; Arnald of Salisbury, and Kinmare of Canterbury; Balien of 'Silchester [Cirencester]; Wigen of Leicester; Argal, earl of Warwick, with folk exceeding strange (*or* numerous); Dunwale, son of Apries, and Kegein, son of Elauth; Kineus, that was Coits son, and Cradoc, Catels son; 'Ædlein [Aleyn], Cledauks son; 'Grimarc [Trimarc], Kinmarks son;

¹ Cadwal þan?² R. Winchestre.³ þat?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Run Margoitt & Netan :'	Run Margoȳt Nethan :'	<i>Run.</i>
Clofard Kīcar and Aikan.	Gloffarc Kȳngar and Aȳcan.	
Kerin Neton and Peredur :'	Kerȳn Neton and Peridur :'	<i>Kerin.</i>
Madoc Traher and Elidur.	Madoc Traharn and Elidur.	<i>Madoc.</i>
þiſ weoren Arðures :'	þis weren bolde :'	
aðele eorles.	Arthu ¹ his eorlef.	
and þa haxte þeines ohte :'	and þe hexſte men :'	
of alle þiſſere þeode.	of al þiſſe londe.	
wið uten þan beorēn :'	wiþ vte þe bolde :'	
of Arðureſ borden.	at Arthureſ borde.	
þa na man ne mihte ikennē :'	þat no man ne miht kenne :'	
ne al þat folc inemnen.	ne al þat folk nemni.	
þa weorē ærchebiſcopes þreo :'	þo weren archebiſſopes þreo :'	[f. 113 ^b . c. 1.]
inne þiſſere þeode.	in þiſſe kinelonde.	
inne Lundē and in Eouuerwic :'	ine Londene and in Euerwich :'	
and inne Karliun fein ² Dubric.	and ine Cayrlion feint Dubrch ³ .	
he wes wiðe hali mon :'	he was ſwiþe holȳ man :'	
þurh alle þinge wel idon. [ſtol :'	þorh alle þinge wel idon. [ſtol :'	
To Lundene læi þe ærchebiſcop	To Londene laȳ þe archebiſſopes	
þe to Cantware-buri wes feoððe	þat to Cantelburi was ſupþe idon.	
feoððe Engliſcemen :'	[idon. þo þat Engleſſe men :'	
þiſ lond heom iwunnen.	þis lond hadde awonne.	
To tellen þat folc of Kairliun :'	To telle þat folk of Cayrlion :'	

Run, Margoit, 'and' Netan; Clofard, Kincar, and Aican; Kerin, Neton, and Peredur; Madoc, Trahern, and Elidur. These were 'Arthurs noble [Arthur his bold] earls, and the highest 'thanes brave [men] of all this land, without (besides) the 'nobles of [bold *men* at] Arthurs board, that no man might ken, nor all the folk name. Then were archbishops three in this 'country [kingdom]; in London, and in York; and in Kaerleon, Saint Dubrich,—he was *a* man exceeding holy, through all things excellent! At London lay the archbishops stool, that to Canterbury was subsequently removed, 'after [when] that Englishmen had won 'to them' this land. To

¹ *R.* Arthur.² feint?³ *R.* Dubrich.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C, xiii.

	ne mihte hit na mon idon.	ne mihte no man hit don.
<i>Gillomar.</i>	þer wes Gillomar þe king: [f. 141 ^b . c. 1.]	þar was Gillomar king :
	Irifce mōnen deorling.	Iriffe menne deorlyng.
	Malueruf king of Iflonde :	Maluerus king of Islond :
<i>Doldanet.</i>	Doldanet king of Gutlonde.	Doldanet of Gutlond.
	Kinkailin of Friflonde :	king Calin of Friffelond :
	Æfcil king of Denelōde.	Afcil king of Denenelond.
	þer wes Loð þe kene :	þar was Loth þe kene :
	þe kīg wes bi Norðe.	þat king was bi Norþe.
<i>Gonwais.</i>	and Gonwæis Orcaneie king : 10	and Gonwas Orcaneyes king :
	utlazen deorling.	and many cnihtes mid him.
	þider com þe wilde :	þider com þe wilde :
	þe eorl of Builune.	þe eorl of Boloïne.
	Læzer wes ihatē :	
	and his leoden mid him.	
	of Flandres þe eorl Howeldin :	of Flandres þe eorl Holdein :
	of Chæstres ¹ þe eorl Cherin.	of Chartres þe eorl Gerȳn.
	þeof ferede mid him :	
	al þat Frenſce moncun.	
	twalf eorles swiðe ræihe : 20	twelf eorles heze :
	þe rixleden ouer France.	þat rixlede in France.
	Guitart eorl of Peiters :	Gwitard eorl of Peyters :
	Kæi þe orl of Angerf.	Keay þe eorl of Angers.

tell (number) the folk of Kaerleon, no man might it do ! There was Gillomar 'the' king, of Irish men *the* darling ; Malverus, king of Iceland ; Doldanet 'king' of Gutlond ; 'Kinkalin [king Calin] of Frisland ; and Æscil, king of Denmark. There was Loth the keen, who was king by *the* North ; and Gonwais, king of Orkney, 'of outlaws *the* darling [and many knights with him]. Thither came the fierce *man*, the earl of Boulogne, 'who was named Læzer, and his people with him' ; of Flanders the earl Howeldin ; [of Chartres the earl Geryn]. 'This *man* brought with him all the French men' ; twelve earls 'most' noble, who ruled 'over [in]

¹ Chærtres ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Beduwer¹ eorl of Normandie :
 þat lond hehte þa Neuftrie.
 of þe Māf com þe eorl Borel :
 of Brutaine þe eorl Howel.
 Howel eorl wes freo mon :
 and faire weoren his iwede.
 and al þat folc Frenfce :
 bihongen weoren feire.
 iwepned wel alle :
 and horf ho² hafden uatte. 10
 þer weoren bifides :
 fiftene biscopes.
 Nef na cniht ne na fwein :
 ne oht mon þat weore þein.
 from þa porz of Spaine : [c. 2.]
 to þan tune of Alemaine.
 þat þider icomen nere :
 ȝif he iboden weore.
 al for Arðures æie :
 aðelef cunnef. 20
 þa al þif hired wes icuninen⁵ :
 ælc king mid hif folke.

Beduer eorl of Normandie :
 þo hehte Neuftrie.
 of þe Mans com þe eorl Borel :
 of Britaine þe eorl Howel.
 Howel þe eorl was freoman :
 and of gode þewes.
 and al þat folk Frence :
 faire weren icloþed.
 and iwepned were alle :
 and mid horfen heȝe.
 þar weren bi-fides : [c. 2.]
 fiftene biſſopes.
 Nas no chniht ne no ſeweýne³ :
 ne oht man þat were þeyn.
 fram þe Poche⁴ of Spayne :
 to þan toune of Alemaýne.
 þat þider icome neore :
 ȝef he ibode were.
 al for Arthur his heýe :
 baldeſt alre kinge.
 þo al þis folk was icome :
 afe hii ihote were.

Howel.

France. Guitard, earl of Poitiers; Kay, earl of Angers; Bedver, earl of Normandy,—‘the land’ then hight Neustrie;—of the Mans came the earl Borel; of Britanny the earl Howel. Howel [the] earl was free man, and ‘fair were his weeds [of good qualities]. And all the French folk were clothed fair, [and were] all well weaponed, and ‘horses they had fat [with fine horses]. There were besides fifteen bishops. Was *there* no knight nor any swain, nor good man that werethane, from the ports of Spain to the towns of Alemaine, that thither would not have come, if he were (had been) invited; all for ‘Arthurs [Arthur his] dread, ‘of noble race [boldest of all kings]. When all this folk was come; ‘each king with his people

¹ Bedware, *pr. m.*² heo?³ ſweýne?⁴ *Sic MS.*⁵ icumen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þer me mihte bihalde :	þar me mihte ifeon :
þe þer bi-halues weore.	þat þar bi-halues weore.
moni feolcudne ¹ mon :	many felcuþ man.
þe ifiȝen wes to burhȝen.	þat þar was to burhȝen.
and feole cunne tiðende :	and many tidȳnge :
mid Arðure þan kinge.	mid Arthur þan kinge.
þer wes moni fellic clað :	þar was many wonder cloþ :
þer wes moni cniht wrað.	þar was many chniht wroþ.
þer weoren herberȝe :	þar weoren herberȝe :
hæhliche awurðe.	10 hæhliche awurðe.
þer þa innes weoren :	þar weren innes :
mid ftrengðe biwunnen.	mid ftrengþe bi-wonne.
þer weorē on uelden :	þare werē in feldes :
moni þuſend telden.	many þouſend teldes.
þer com ſpic and water ² :	þar com fleaf and wete :
and aten vnimete.	[tale : and ote onimete.
ne mai hit na mon fuggen on hiſ	ne maȳ noman telle in tale :
of þan win and of þan ale.	of þan wȳn and of þan ale.
þer com heȳ þer com g ^{as} :	þar com heie þar cō gras :
þer com al þat god waſ.	20 þar com al þat neod was.
þa al þiſ folc ifomned was :	þo al þiſ was idon :
at fele þan kīgge.	at fele þan kīgge.

[as they were bidden], there men might 'behold [see], 'who were there beside,' many *a* strange man, 'who was come to *the* burgh,' and many 'kind of' tidings (novelties) with Arthur the king. There was many *a* marvellous cloth (garment); there was many *a* wrath knight; 'there were lodgings nobly prepared; 'there were 'the' inns, built with strength; there were on *the* fields many thousand tents; there came 'lard [flesh] and wheat, and oats without measure; may no man 'say it [tell] in 'his' tale, of the wine and of the ale; there came hay, there came grass; there came all that was 'good [needful]! When all this 'folk was assembled [was done] 'by the good king,' when the Whitsunday came, 'as *the* Lord it sent', 'then [there]

¹ felcuðne?² wete? whæte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa com þe White-funedæi :	þo þe Witsonedai com.
alfe drihten hine fende.	
þa comen þa biscopes alle :	þar come þe biffopes alle :
biuoren heore kinge.	to-vore þan bolde kinge.
and þa ærchebiscopes þreo :	
biuoren Arðure.	
and þene kine-helme nome :	and þane croune neme :
þa him wef icunde.	þat him was icunde.
and setten uppen his hafde :	and fete vppe his hefd :
mid hezere bliffe.	mid mochelere bliffe.
swa heo hine gūnen lede :	and so hii gonne him leade :
al mid godes rede.	al mid godes reade.
Seint Dubrif eoden biuorē :	Seint Dubriþ ȝeode bi-vore :
he wes criste icoren.	to crist he was icore.
þe ærchebiscop of Lundene :	þe archebiffop of Londene :
eode an his riht honden.	wende him bi-fide.
and bi his luft fide :	and in þan oþer halue :
þe ¹ of Eouerwike.	þe ilke of Euerwike. [f. 114. c. 1.]
fiftene biscopes biuoren :	fiftene bi-vore :
of feole londen icoren.	of fale londe icore.
heo weoren bi-hangen alle :	hii hadde aboute ȝam alle :
mid palle fwiðe balde.	fwiþe riche palles.
þe weoren alle ibrufted :	
mid barninge golde.	

came all the bishops before 'their [the bold] king, 'and the archbishops three, before Arthur'; and took the crown, that was to him *by* right, and set upon his head with great bliss; [and] so they gan him lead, all with Gods counsel. Saint Dubrich went before,—he was to Christ chosen;—the archbishop of London walked 'on his right hand [beside him], and 'by his left [on the other] side the same of York. Fifteen 'bishops' *went* before, of many lands chosen; they 'were all clothed with [had about them all] garments most rich, 'that were all embroidered with burning gold.' There

¹ þe ilke?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Cador.

þer feouwer kinges eoden :	þar four kinges ȝeode :
biuoren þan kaiferen.	bi-vore þan kayfere.
heo weȝe on heore honde :	hii beore on hire honde :
feouwer fweord of golde.	four fweordes longe.
þuſ hehte þa an :	þuſ hehte þe on :
þe wes a fwiðe duhti mon.	þat was a wel dohti man.
þat wes Cador þe king :	þat was Cador þe king :
Ardures ¹ deorling.	Arthur his deorling.
þe oðer of Scotlonde :	þe oþ ⁹ of Scotlond :
sweord he weide an honde.	10 fweord bar an hond.
& þe king of Norð Walles :	and þe king of Norþwales :
& þe king of Suð Wales.	and þe king of Suþwales.
& þ ⁹ heo gunnen leden :	þeos gonne leade :
þe king to chirechen.	þane king toward chirche.
þeo biſcopes gunnen finge :	and þe biſſopes mid fonge :
biuoren þā leod-kinge.	bi-vore hire kinge.
bemen þer bleowen :	bumes þar blewen :
bellen þer ringedē.	belles þar rongen.
cnihtes gunnen riden :	cnihtes gonne ride :
wifm̄ forð gliden.	20 wifmen forþ glide.
To iwiffen hit if ifaid :	To iwiffe hit his ifaid :
and foð hit if ifūden.	and foþ hit his ifunde.
þat no iſæh no mon nauer ær :	þat ne ſeh noman ear :

walked four kings before the kaiser ; they bare in their hands four swords 'of gold [long]. Thus hight the one, who was a 'most [well] doughty man, that was Cador the king, 'Arthurs [Arthur his] darling ; the second of Scotland, 'he' bare sword in hand ; and the king of North-Wales and the king of South-Wales. 'And thus they [These] gan lead the king 'to [to-ward] church ; [and] the bishops 'gan sing [with song] before 'the monarch [their king] ; trumpets there blew ; bells there rung ; knights gan ride, women forth glide. In certainty it is said, and sooth it is found, that no man 'ever' ere saw here with earthly men half 'so great [the] pomp, in

¹ R. Arðures.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid eorðliche monne her. [c. 2.] mid erþliche manne her.
 half fwa hahne ricchedom : half þane richedom :
 a nauer nane hepen. in neuere none heape.
 swa mid Arðure waf : so was mid þan kinge :
 aðelef cunnef. in alle fcines¹ þinge.
 Into chirchen bicom : Into chirche bi-com :
 Arður þe riche mon. Arthur þe heze man.
 Dubriz þe arche-biscop : Dubrich þe archebiffop :
 drihten him wes ful god.
 of Rome he wef legat : 10 þat was of Rome legat.
 and of þan hirede prelat.
 he song þa hali maffe : hee fang þe holy maffe :
 biuoren þan leod-kinge. bi-vore þan riche kinge.
 Comen mid þere quene : Comen mid þare cwene :
 wifmē wel idone. wifmen fwiþe scene.
 þere richchere mōne wif alle : þe richefte wifmen alle :
 þe wunede on lōde. þat were in londe.
 and þere hehere monnen dohtere :
 þa quene hafden iſohte.
 al fwa þe quene hafde ihate : 20
 bi hire fulle wite.
 I þere chireche i þere ſoð halue : In þe churches ſuþ half :
 ſat Arður þe king him ſeolf. ſat Arthur þe king him ſeolf.

ever any assembly, as was with 'Arthur, of noble race [the king, of things of all kind]. Into church came Arthur the 'rich [high] man; Dubrich the archbishop,—*'the* Lord was to him full good'; of Rome 'he [that] was legate, 'and prelate of the people,'—he sang the holy mass before the 'monarch [rich king]. Came with the queen women [most] fair; all 'wives of the rich men that dwelt [the richest women that were] in the land, 'and daughters of the noble men the queen had sought (*or* selected), all as the queen had ordered, on *pain* of their *paying* full penalty.' In the 'church, in the [churches] south half sate Arthur the king himself; by the north side

¹ allef cines?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bi þere norð fide :
 Wenhæiuer þa quene.
 þer comen hire bi-foren :
 feouwer quenen icoren.
 ælc bar on luft honde :
 enne beh of rede gold.
 & þreo fnau-white¹ culueren :
 ſentē² an heore ſculderen.
 þæt weoren þa feouwer quenē :
 þere cnihte³ wifen. 10
 þa beren an heore heonden :
 þe feouwer sweordes of golde.
 biuorē Arðure :
 aðeleſt kingen.
 Moni mæidechild wes þere :<sup>[f. 142^b.
c. 1.]</sup>
 mid mære þere quene.
 þær wes moni pal hende :
 on faire þā uolke.
 of monies cunneſ lōde :
 þer wes muchel onde. 20
 for ælc wende to beon :
 betere þene oðer.
 Feole cnihtes anan :
 comen to þere chirechen.

bi þare norþ fide : [c. 2.]
 Gwenayfer þe cwene.
 þare comen hire bi-vore :
 four cweanen icore.
 ech bar an honde :
 ane ȝeord of reade golde.
 and þreo wite coluere :
 ſeate on hire foldre.
 þat were þe kingene wifues :
 þat beare þe four sweordes :
 bi-vore Arthur þe king :
 Bruttene deorling.
 þar was mani mayde :
 mid þare faire cweane.
 þar waſ mochel honde :
 of manicunnes londe.
 for ech wende to beon :
 betere þan oþer.
 Many cnihtes come :
 þreafte to chirche.

Wenhaver the queen. There came before her four chosen queens; each bare in 'the left' hand a 'jewel [wand, *i. e.* sceptre] of red gold, and three 'snow'-white doves sate on their shoulders; who were the 'four queens, wives of the kings [kings wives] who bare 'in their hands' the four swords 'of gold' before Arthur, 'noblest of kings [the king, Britons darling]. There was many a maid-'child' with the 'noble [fair] queen; there was many a rich garment on the fair folk; there was mickle envy from land of many kind; for each weened to be better than other. Many knights 'anon'

¹ R. fnau-white.² ſetten?³ kingen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

sūme for guðinge :'		somme to bi-holde :'
fumme for þan kinge.		wifmen þat weren bolde.
summe to bihalden :'		þar was so moche murthe :'
þa wifmen þat weoren balde.		of alle cunnes þinge.
Songes þer weoren murie :'		þat þeh hit hadde i-laste :'
þa ilaste fwiðe longe.		folle foue ȝere.
ich weone ȝif hit weore :'		þat ȝet hii wolde more :'
ilaft feoue ȝere.		þat þar ine were.
þa ȝet heo weolden mare :'	10	þo þe masse waf ifonge :'
þe þer at weoren.		of chirche hii þronge.
þa þe masse wes ifugē :		þe king mid his folk :'
of chircchen heo ðrunge.		to his mete wende.
þe king mid his folke :'		
to his mete uerde.		
mid mucle his duȝeðe :'		
drem wes on hirede.		
þa quene on oðer halue :'		þe cweane on oþer halue :'
hire hereberwe ifohte.		hire homte.
heo hafde of wifmonne :'		ȝeo hadde of wifm..
wunder ane monien.	20	...derliche manȝe.
þa þe king wes ifete ¹ :		þo þ. was ifete :
mid his monnen to his mete.		mid his man.. .. þe mete.
to þan kinge com þæ biscop :		to þan kinge
feīd ² Dubriz þe wes swa god.		feint Dubrich þe holȝ man.

came [crowding] 'to the' church; some 'for gain (?)'; some for the king; some 'to behold' 'the' women that were noble. 'Songs there were merry, that lasted very long; I ween if [There was so much mirth of all kind of thing, that though] it had lasted [full] seven years, the yet they would more, that were thereat [therein]. When the mass was sung, from church they thronged; the king with his folk went to his meat, 'with his mickle folk,—joy was among *the* people.' The queen on *the* other side sought her lodging; she had of women wondrous many. When the king was set, with his men to his meat, to the king came the 'bishop [holy man] Saint

¹ *Written at first ifeten, but n expuncted.*² *feint?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and nom of his hafde :
 his kine-hælm hæhne.
 for þan mucle golde :
 þe king hine beren nalde.
 & dude enne lasse crune : [c. 2.]
 on þas kinges hafde.
 and feoððen he gō do :
 a þere quene al swo.
 Inne Troie þis wes laze¹ :
 bi heore ælderne daze¹. 10
 þa Bruttes of come :
 þe weoren wel idone.
 alle þa wepmen :
 at heore mete fetē.
 sundi bi heom feoluen :
 þat heom þuhte wel idon.
 and al swa þa wifmen :
 heore iwune hafden.

þa þe kīg wes ifete :
 mid alle his duzeðe to his mete.
 eorles and beornes : 21
 at borde² þas kinges.
 þe stiward com steppen :
 þo com þe stiward stappe :

and nam of his hefd :
 his kinehelm heze.
 for þane mochele golde :
 þe king hine beare nolde.
 and dude one lasse croune :
 on þan kinges hefd.
 and suppe he gan do :
 on þan cweane al so. [f. 114^b. c. 1.]
 In Troye þis was lawe :
 bi hire hilderne daie.
 þat Bruttus of come :
 þat were wel idone.

Dubrich, 'who was so good,' and took from his head his rich crown; on account of the mickle gold the king would not it bear; and placed a less crown on the kings head; and afterwards he gan do to the queen also (like-wise). In Troy this was *the* custom in their elders days, of whom Brutus came, who were excellent *men*; 'all the men at their meat sate asunder by themselves; that to them seemed well done; and also the women their station had.' When the king was set with all his 'people [knights] to 'his [the] meat, 'earls and barons, at the kings board,' [then] came stepping the steward, who was named Kay, highest knight in land under the king,

¹ Originally written *lazen* and *dazen*, but the final letters erased by the same hand.

² The last four letters of this word are by second hand, *sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe Kæy wes ihaten.
 hæxt cniht on londe :'
 vnder þan kinge.
 of alle þan hæpe :'
 of Arðuref hirede.
 Kay hehte¹ him biuoren :'
 moni hæh mō icoren.
 þer weoren a þusen³ cnihtef⁴ bald :'
 wunder wel italde.
 þat þeineden þan kīgē :'
 & hif here-ðringen.
 ælc cniht hafde pal on :'
 and mid golde bigon.
 and alle heore uīngeres :'
 iriuen mid gold ringes.
 þaf beorn þa funde :'
 from kuchene to þan kinge.
 An oðer half wes Beduer :'
 þaf kingef hæȝe birle.
 mid him weoren eorlene sunen :'
 of aðele cunne iboren. [[f.143.c.1.]
 and þere hehȝe cnihtene sunen :'
 þa þider weoren icunen⁵.

þat Kay was ihote.
 heheft cniht on londe :'
 onder þan kinge.
 Kay hadde him bi-vore :'
 mamȝ² heb man ibore.
 þar weren cnihtef bolde :'
 a þoufend itolde.
 ech cniht hadde pal on :'
 and mid golde bi-gon.
 and alle hire fingref :'
 fol of gold ringef.
 þes beare þe fondes :'
 fram kuchene to þan kinge.
 An oþer half was Beduer :'
 þe kinges eȝe borle.
 mid him were eorlene fones :'
 of fwiþe heȝe cun icome.
 þe wet inne Kechene.
 of icouen and of golde :

Kay

Beduer.

'of all the assemblage of Arthurs folk.' Kay had before him many a noble man 'chosen [born]; there were a thousand bold knights 'wondrous well' told, 'that served the king and his chiefs'; each knight had a cloth on, and adorned with gold, and all their fingers 'covered with [full of] gold rings. These bare the *things* sent from *the* kitchen to the king. On *the* other side was Beduer, the kings high cup-bearer; with him were earls sons of 'noble [most high] race born, 'and the noble knights sons, who were thither come'; [and] seven kings sons, that 'with him moved [bare in *the*

¹ hafde?² R. many.³ þusend?⁴ cnihte, *pr. m.*⁵ R. icumen.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

feouen kingene funen :	and foue kingene fones :
þat mid him quehtē.	þat wýn in beare.
Bedeuer a uormest eode :	Beduer forst ȝeode :
mid guldene bolle.	mid gildene coupe.
after him a þusend :	and after him a þousend :
þraften to hirede.	come to borde.
mid alle þaf cunnes drenche :	mid alle cunnes drenche :
þe me cuðe on biðenche.	þat man coupe an bi-þenche.
And þa quene an hire ende :	e cweane on hire ean..
wifmen fwide ¹ hende.	10 ...men fwiþe hende.
a þusend hire eode biuorē :	. .usend hire ȝeode bi-vore :
riche men ² and wel icoren.	.. hehȝe cunne hi-bore.
to þæinen þere quene :	to faruȝ þe cweane :
and þan þat mid hire weoren.	and þaie þat mid hire were.
Nes he næuere iboren :	Nas he neuere icore :
of nane cnihte icoren.	ne of none wifue ibore.
ilæred no læwed :	leared ne lewed :
a nauere nare leode.	in neuere none londe.
þe cuðe him ³ itelle :	þat hit coupe telle :
an æief cunnes fpelle.	20 in enȝ cunnes fpelle.
of halue þan richedome :	of half þan richedom :
þe wef inne Kairliune.	þat waf in Cayrlyon. [c. 2.]
of feoluere and of golde :	of seoluer and of golde :

wine]. Beduer went 'foremost [first], with golden 'bowl; [cup, and] after him a thousand 'pressed towards the folk [came to the board], with drink of all 'the' kinds that men could think of. And the queen at her end, women most fair *attended*; a thousand walked before her, 'rich and well choice [of high kin born], to serve the queen, and them that were with her. Was he never 'born [chosen, nor] of any 'man chosen [woman born], clerk nor layman, in ever any land, that could tell it in speech of any kind, of half the wealth that was in Kaerleon, of silver and of gold, and 'good [of rich]

¹ fwiðe?² Sic MS.[³ hit?]

him dat. effieus

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and gode iwedē.

of hehȝe iborene monnen :

ȝa inne hirede wuneden.

of horfen and of hafueken :

of hunden to deoren.

and of riche iweden :

ȝa a ȝan hirede weoren.

& of alle ȝan folke¹ :

ȝe wuneden ȝer on folde.

weſ ȝiffes londes folk :

leodene hendest itald.

& al ſwa ȝa wimmen :

wunliche on heowen.

and hahlukeſt iſcrudde :

& alre beſt itoȝene.

For heo hafden on iqueðen alle :

bi heore quike liue.

ȝat heo wolden of ane heowē :

heore claðes habben.

Sum hafde whit ſum hafde ræd :

ſum hafde god grene æc.

and alcheſ cunneſ fah clað :

heom weſ wunder ane lað.

and of riche wede.

of heȝe ibore men :

ȝat were ȝare to-gadere.

10 Of alle ȝeſ londes folk :

weren Bruttus beſt itold.

and al ſo ȝe wifmen :

faȳreſt hii were.

and hehlokeſt iſcrud :

[[c.2.] in euereche wiſe.

For hii were hi-hote alle :

bi hire cwike liſue.

ȝat hii folde of one hewe :

hire cloþes habbe.

21

weeds; of high born men that dwelt among *the* folk [were there together]; 'of horses, and of hawks, of hounds for deer, and of rich weeds, that were among the people. And of all the folk that dwelt there in land,' '*the* folk of this land was accounted *the* fairest of people [Of all this lands folk were *the* Britons best accounted], and also the women, 'comely in hue [fairest they were], and most nobly clothed, 'and best of all educated [in every wise]. For they all had 'in declaration [ordered *or* promised], by their quick lives, that they 'would [should] have their clothes of one hue. 'Some had white, some had red; some had eke good green; and variegated cloth of each kind

¹ At first written folken, but n erased.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& elche untuhtle :	
heo taldē vñwurðe.	
þa hafde Ænglene ard :	þo hadde þis lond :
þat alre bezste hereword.	þat heheft hereword.
and þif leodisce uolc æc :	of alle cune londes :
leofuest þan kinge.	war men wonieþ.
þa wifmen hehze iborene :	þe wifmen were ihote :
þa wuneden a þiffen londe.	mid grettere hefte.
hafden iqueðen alle :	
ō heore quidef soðe.	10 þat non take ne folde :
þat nan lauerd taken nolde :	louerd in londe.
inne þiffere leode.	
næuer næenne cniht :	
neore he noht fwa wel idiht.	
bute he icostned weoren :	bote he were þries :
þrie inne compe.	ifonded in fihte.
& his oht-scipen icudde :	and his manede icud :
& ifonded hine feolue.	and him seolf icnowe.
baldeliche he mitte þenne :	þanne ¹ mihte brude :
þirnen him brude.	20 boldeliche habbe.
For þere ilke tuhtle :	For þan ilke þinge :
cnihtes weoren ohte.	cnihtes weren stronge.

was to them wondrous odious; and each ill-usage they accounted unworthy.' Then had 'English [this] land the 'best [highest] fame of all [kind of lands where men dwell]; 'and this country-folk eke *was* dearest to the king.' The 'high born' women 'that dwelt in this land' had 'all' 'declared in their sooth words [ordered with strict command], that none 'would [should] take lord (husband) in 'this' land, 'never any knight, were he nought (never) so well formed,' unless he were (had been) thrice tried in 'combat [fight], and his 'courage [manhood] made known, and himself approved; then might he boldly 'ask him [have] a bride. For that 'usage [thing] *the* knights were 'brave [strong], 'the women excellent, and the better

¹ þanne he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa wifmen wel idone :	
and þa betere biwitene.	
þa weoren i Brutene :	
bliffen inoze.	
þa þe king iȝetē hafde :	þo þe kīg iȝeate hadde :
and al hiȝ mon-weorede.	and alle hiȝ cnihtef.
þa buȝen ut of burhȝe :	þo wenden vt of borwe :
þeineȝ fwiȝe balde.	cnihtef fwiȝe bolde.
alle þa kinges :	alle þe kinges :
and heore hereþringes. [f. 143 ^b . c. 1.]	and hire heredringes.
alle þa biȝcopes :	11
and alle þa clærckes.	
alle þa eorles :	
and alle þa beorneȝ.	
alle þa þeines :	
alle þa fweines.	
feire iȝcrudde :	wandri in þan feldeȝ :
helde ȝeond felde.	and pleoyen bi þan teldes.
Summe heo gunnen æren :	Somme gon hors earne :
summe heo gunnen urnen.	20 somme afote eorne.
summe heo gunnen lepen :	somme hii gonne leape :
summe heo gunnen ſceotē.	and ſomme hii gonnen ſceate.
summe heo wræſtledē :	somme þar wraxlede :
and wiȝer-gome makeden.	and wiȝer-game makede.
ſumme heo on uelde :	somme in þan felde :
pleouweden vnder ſcelde.	pleoyde onder ſealde.

behaved ; then were in Britain blisses enow.' When the king had eaten, and all his 'people [knights], then proceeded out of *the* burgh *the* thanes [knights] most bold ; all the kings, and their chieftains ; 'all the bishops, and all the clerks ; all the earls, and all the barons ; all the thanes, *and* all the swains, fairly clad,' 'spread over *the* fields [to disperse in the fields, and play by the tents]. Some 'they' gan to ride [horses] ; some 'they gan' to race [on foot] ; some they gan to leap, [and] some they gan to shoot ; some 'they [there] wrestled, and contest made ; some 'they' in [the] field

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

sūme heo driuē balles :

wide ȝeond þa feldes.

Monianes kunnef gomen :

þer heo gunnen driuen.

& wha fwa mihte iwinne :

wurðscipe of his gomene.

hine me ladde mid fonge :

at-forē þan leod-kinge.

and þe kīg for his gomene :

ȝæf him ȝeuen gode. 10

Alle þa quene :

þe icumen weoren þere.

and alle þa lafdief :

leoneden ȝeond walles.

to bihalden þa duȝeden :

and þat folc plæie.

þis ilæste þreo dæȝes :

swulc gomes & fwulc plæȝes.

þa a þā ueorðe dæie :

þe king gon to spekene. 20

and aȝæf his gode cnihten :

al heorere¹ rihten.

he ȝef feoluer he ȝæf gold :

somme driuen balles : [f. 115. c. 1.]

oueral þan feldes.

Manione cunnef game :

þar hii gonne pleoye.

and wo fe worfipe mihte a-winne :

þorh eni cunnes ginne.

þe king him folde ȝeue :

ȝeftes fwiþe riche.

Alle þe cweanes :

þat .comen were.

and alle þe leafdief :

leonede ouer walles.

to bi-holde þe cnihtes :

and þat folk pleoye.

þis ilaste þreo dæȝes :

soch game and foch playes.

þo in þan feorþe daiwe :

þe king ȝaf his cnihtes.

seoluer and read gold :

played under shield; some 'they' drove balls 'wide over [over all] the fields. Games of many a kind there they gan to play; and whoso might win honor 'of his game [through art of any kind], 'men lead him with song before the sovereign, and' the king 'for his game' 'gave [should give] him gifts 'good [most rich]. All the queens, that 'there' were come, and all the ladies, leaned over *the* walls, to behold the 'people [knights], and the folk play. This lasted three days, such games and such plays. Then on the fourth day, the king 'gan to speak, and' gave his 'good' knights 'all their rights; he gave 'silver, 'he gave [and red] gold; 'he gave [to some]

¹ heore?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

he ȝef horf he ȝef lond.	[c.2.]	fomme horf fomme lond.
castles & clathes eke :		
his monnen he iquende ¹ .		
þer wes moni bald Brut :		þar was many bold Brut :
biuoren Arðure.		bi-vore Arthure.
Nu comen to þan kinge :		Ac nou þar come to þan kinge :
neouwe tidinde.		neowe tidyinge.
Arður þe bade ² king :		A rthur þe bolde king :
sat at ane borde.		fat at one borde.
biuoren him seten kinges :	10	bi-vore him seate kinges :
and feole here-ðringes.		and fale heredringes.
bisopes and clærekes :		bissopes and clearekes :
and fwiðe ohte cnihtes.		and fwiþe heze cnihtes.
þer comen in to halle :		þar comen into halles :
spelles feolcuðe.		felcouþe spells.
þer comen twalf þeines ohte :		þar comen twealf cnihtes :
mid palle bi-þehte.		ohte men and wihte.
hæze ³ here-kempen :		
hehze men on wepne.		
ælc hafde on heonde :	20	
grætne rīg of golde.		
and mid æne bende of golde :		
ælc hafde his hæfd biuonge.		
Æuer tweie and tweie :		Euere tweine and tweyne :

horses, 'he gave [to some] land; 'castles eke and clothes; his men he pleased,'—there was many *a* bold Briton before Arthur. [But] now came to the king new tidings! Arthur the bold king sate at a board; before him sate kings, and many chieftains; bishops and clerks, and knights most 'brave [noble]. There came into *the* hall marvellous tales!—there came twelve 'thanes [knights] bold [men and active], 'clad with pall; noble warriors, noble men with weapon; each had on hand *a* great ring of gold, and with a band of gold each had his head incircled.' Ever two and

¹ R. iquemde.² R. balde.³ The first two letters of this word are sup. ras.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. 1x.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

tuhte to-fomne.	wenden i-vere.
ælc mid his honde :	
heold his iuere.	
and gliden ouer ulore :	and gliden ouer flore :
biuoren Arðure.	bi-foren Arthure.
fwa longe þat heo comen :	so lang þat hii come :
bi-uoren Arðure þan leod-kinge.	bi-voren þan kinge.
Heo grættten Arður anan :	Hii grette Arthur anon :
mid aðelen heore worden.	mid bolde hire wordes.
Hal seo þu Arður king :	10 Hæyl beo þou Arthur þe king :
Bruttene deorling.	Bruttene deorling.
and hal seo þi duzeðe :	
and al þi drihtliche uolc.	
We funden twælf cnihtes :	We beoþ twealf cnihtes : [c. 2.]
icumen her forð rihtes.	icome her forþrihtes.
riche and wel idone :	riche and wel idon :
we fūdeð of Rome.	we beoþ ut of Rome.
Hider we funden icumene : [f. 144. c. 1.]	
frō ure kaifere.	Houre kayfer ous fende :
Luces if ihaten :	20 þat Lucas his ihote.
þe waldoð Rome-leoden.	
he hahte uf hider wende :	he hehte ous hider wende :
to Arðure þan kinge.	to Arthur þan kinge.
and þe hat græten :	and þe he greteþ :
mid his grim worden.	mid his grame wordes.

two walked 'together [in company]; 'each with his hand held his companion'; and glided over *the* floor, before Arthur, so long that they came before 'Arthur,' the 'sovereign [king]. They greeted Arthur anon with their 'noble [bold] words: "Hail be thou, Arthur [the] king, darling of Britons; 'and hail be thy people, and all thy lordly folk!' We are twelve knights come here forthright, rich and noble; we are 'from [out of] Rome. 'Hither we are come from [Sent us] our emperor, [who] is named Lucas, 'who ruleth Rome-people.' He commanded us to proceed hither, to Arthur the king, and 'bade thee to be greeted [thee he greeteth] with his

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

& fæið ¹ þat he awundred if :	and feiþ þat he awondred his :
wūder ane fwiðe.	wonderliche fwiþe.
whar þu þat mod nime :	war þou þat mod nime :
a þiffe middenerde.	in þiffe worle-riche.
þat þu derft of Rome :	þat þou darft of Rome :
wið-fuggen æi dome.	wiþ-fegge eni domes.
oðer hebbē up þin eȝen :	oþer þin eȝene vp hebbe :
aȝein ure ældrē.	to-ȝenes vre heldre.
and wha hit þe durre ræden :	
þat þu fwa reh ært iwurðen. 10	
þat þu þrattien darft :	
domes walden ² .	
Luces þene kaifere :	
hexft of quicke monnen.	
þu haldeft al þi kinelond :	þou holdeft al þine kinelond :
a þire aȝere hond.	in þin owene hond.
and nult noht þene kaifere :	and nelt noht þine herre :
of londe ihere.	of londe i-here.
of þan ilke londe :	of þan ilke londe :
þe Julius hafde an honde. 20	þat Julius hadde an honde.
þa inne iuuŕ dazæn :	þat in vorne daze :
biwon hit mid fehtē.	bi-wan hit mid fihte.
and þu hit haueft at-holde :	and þou hit haueft at-holde :

grim words, and saith that he is astonished, wondrously much, where thou tookest the mood in this 'middle-earth [worlds-realm], that thou darest of Rome oppose any doom (will), or heave up thine eyes against our ancestors; 'and who dared it thee to counsel, that thou art so doughty become, that thou darest threaten *the* lord of dooms, Lucēs, the emperor, highest of men alive!' Thou holdest all thy kingdom in thine own hand, and wilt not serve 'the emperor [thy lord] of *the* land; of the same land that Julius had in hand, who in former days won it with fight; and

¹ fæiðe, *pr. m.*² waldend?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

a þire anwolde.	in þin anwolde.
mid balden þine cnihten :	mid bolde þine cnihtes :
binimeſt uf ure irihten.	bi-nimeſt vre rihtes.
Ah ſæi uf Arður ſone :	Ac ſay ous Arthur ſone :
and word ſend to Rōe.	and word ſend to Rome.
we ſculleð bere þin ærde ¹ :	we ſolle þin herende bere :
to Lucas ure kaiſere.	to Lucas þan kayſere.
ʒif þu wult icnawen :	ʒef þou wolt icnowe :
þat he iſ king ouer þe.	þat he his þin louerd.
and þu hiſ mon bicumen wulle :	
and hine for lauerd icnawen. [c. 2.]	
and don riht þan kaiſere :	12 and don riht þan kaiſere :
of Frolle þan kinge.	of Frolle þan kinge.
þat þu mid woʒe :	þat thou mid woʒe :
at Pariſ aſloʒe.	at Pariſ of-floʒe.
& nu haldeſt al hiſ lond :	and nou holdeſt al þin lond :
mid unrihte a þire hond.	mid onriht in þine hond.
ʒif þu i þiſſen twælf wiken :	ʒef þou in þiſſe twealf wýke :
temeſt to þan rihten.	temeſt to þan rihte.
and þu wult of Rome :	20 and þou wolle of Rome :
þolien æi dome.	þolie eni domes. [f. 115 ^b . c. 1.]
þenne miht þu libben :	þanne miht þou libbe :
imong þine leoden.	and þine leomeſ habbe.

thou it haſt retained in thy power; *and* with thy bold knights deprivest 'us' of our rights. But ſay us, Arthur, ſoon, and ſend word to Rome; we ſhall thine errand bear to Lucas 'our [the] emperor, if thou wilt acknowledge that he is 'king over thee [thy lord], 'and *if* thou wilt his man become, and acknowledge him for lord,' and do right to the emperor *on account* of Frolle the king, whom thou ſlewſt with wrong at Paris, and now holdeſt all 'his [thy] land with un-right in thy hand. If thou *within* theſe twelve weeks turn to the right, and *if* thou wilt of Rome any doom ſuffer, then mighteſt thou live, 'among thy people [and have thy limbs].

¹ ærnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and ȝif þu fwa nult don :	and ȝef þou fo nolt don :
þu ſcalt wurfen vnder-fon.	þou ſalt worfe onder-fon.
þe kaiſere wule her cumē :	þe caiſere wole here come :
fwa king ſcal to hiſ aȝen.	aſe king ſal to hiſ howene.
king ſwiðe kene :	king ſwiþe kene :
and nimen þe mid ſtrengðe.	and nime þe mid ſtrengþe.
ibunden þe lede :	and ibunde þe leade :
biuoren Rō-leoden.	mid him to Romleode.
þenne moſt þu þoliē :	þanne moſt þou þolie :
þat þu ærſt for-hoȝedeſt.	þat þou her for-hoȝedeſt.
Æfne þiſſe wordē :	Eafne þiſſe worde :
Brutteſ buȝen from borden.	Bruttes leap fram borde.
þer wes Arduref ¹ hird :	þar were Arthur hiſ men :
hehliche awraððed.	ſtranliche ² iwrapþed.
and muchene að ſworē :	and mochelne oþ ſwore :
uppen mære ure drihten.	vppen oure drihte.
þat alle heo dede weoren :	þat alle hii dead weren :
þa þeos arunde beden ³ .	þat þeos earende bearen.
mid horſen al to-draȝene :	
dæð heo ſculden þolie.	
þer heo ⁴ buȝen to :	þar hii leope ȝam to :
Bruttes ſwiðe wraðe.	Bruttus ſwiþe wroþe.
luken heom bi uaxe :	and tiere ȝam bi þan héere :

And if thou wilt not so do, thou shalt receive worse, *for* the emperor will come here, as king shall to his own, king most keen; and take thee with strength, [and] lead thee bound 'before [with him to] Rome-folk;—then must thou suffer what thou erst despisedest!" At these words *the* Britons leapt from *the* board; there 'was Arthurs court exceedingly [were Arthur his men strongly] enraged; and swore mickle oath, upon our 'mighty' Lord, that they all were (should be) dead, who this errand bare; 'with horses drawn in pieces, death they should suffer.' There [they] leapt towards them *the* Britons exceeding wrath; [and] tore them by [the] hair,

¹ R. Arðuref.² ſtrangliche?³ beren?⁴ heom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and laiden heom to grūde.	and droȝe ȝam to grunde.
ȝer weoren men Romanisce :	ȝar weren Rom-cnihtes :
reouliche atoȝene.	vuele idihte.
ȝif Arður ne leope to : [f. 144 ^b . c. 1.]	ȝef Arthur nadde ileope to :
fwulc hit a liun weore.	soch hit a lȝon were.
and ȝaf word feide :	and ȝeos word faide :
wifest alre Brutten.	wifest alre Bruttes.
Bilæueð bilaueð fwiðe :	Bi-leueȝ bi-leueȝ :
ȝaf cnihtes on liue.	ȝes cnihtes on lifue.
ne sceollen heo on mine hirede :	ne folle hii in londe :
nēne harm ȝolien.	11 soffri none sconde.
heo beoð hider iriden :	hii beoȝ icome of Rome :
ut of Rom-leoden.	
fwa heore lauerd heom hehte :	afe hire louerd ȝam hehte.
Luces if ihaten.	
Ælc mon mot liðen :	Ech man mot wende :
ȝer hiȝ lauerd hine hateð gan.	woder his louerd hoteȝ.
nah ¹ na man demen :	ne fold no man deame :
erendef-mon to dæðen.	herendrake to deape.
bute he weoren fwa ufele biwiten :	bote he were fo for-ȝete :
ȝet he weore lauerd-fwike.	21 ȝat he were louerd-fwike.
Ah fitteð adun stille :	Ac fitteȝ adun stille : [c. 2.]
cnihtes inne halle.	cnihtes in halle.

and 'laid [drew] them to *the* ground. There were (would have been) *the* 'Romanish men pitifully [Rome-knights evilly] treated, if Arthur had not leapt to *them*, as *if* it were a lion; and said these words,—wisest of all Britons!—"Leave *ye*, leave 'quickly' these knights alive! They shall not in 'my court [land] suffer any 'harm [disgrace]; they are 'hither ridden out of [come from] Rome, as their lord commanded them, '*who* is named Lucas.' Each man must go 'where [whither] his lord biddeth 'him go'; no man 'ought to [should] sentence *a* messenger to death, unless he were so 'evilly behaved [so forgetful], that he were traitor of *his* lord. But

¹ ne ah? naht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and ich me biræde wulle :	and ich me wolle bi-reade :
of fwulchere neode.	of fochere neode.
wulc word heo scullen aȝen beren :	wat word hii folle a-ȝein bere :
to Lucas þan kaiferen.	to Lucas þan caifere.
þa feten adun alle :	þo feten hii alle :
þa duȝeðe on heore benche.	a-dun on hire benches.
and þa luding alæid :	ād þe loudinge alay :
biuoren þan leod-kīge.	for drede of þan kinge.
þa stod Arður him up :	þo stod vp Arthur :
adeleſt ¹ kingen.	baldeſt alre kinge.
and he cleopede him to :	and cleopede to neode :
feouen fune kinges.	al þat coupe of reade.
eorleſ and beorneſ :	kingeſ and eorleſ :
& þa þe weoren baldeſt.	biffopes and clearkes.
and alle þa wiſeſte men :	and alle þe wiſeſte men :
þa wuneden a þen folke.	þat wonede in londe.
wenden in to ane huſe :	and wende into one boure :
þe weſ bicluſed faſte.	þat was bi-tunde faſte.
an ald ſtanene weorc :	of hold ſtonene worc :
ſtiðe men hit wurhten.	witti men hit makede.
þer men ² gunnen rune :	þar ine hii gonne rouny :
hiſ red-ȝeuen wiſe.	hiſ readȝeueſ wiſe.

sit *ye* down still, knights in hall; and I will me counsel of such need, what word they shall bear back to Lucas the emperor. Then sate [they] all down, 'the folk' on their benches, and the clamor ceased 'before [for dread of] the 'monarch [king]. Then stood 'him' up Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, and he called to 'him seven sons of kings, earls and barons, and those that were boldest [need all that knew of counsel, kings and earls, bishops and clerks], and all the wisest men that dwelt in 'the folk [land; and] went into a 'house [chamber] that was fast inclosed, of old stone work,—'strong [witty] men it 'wrought [made],—there[in] they gan to

¹ aȝeleſt?² heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

wulc andswere he ȝiuen wolde :	wat answere hii wolde ȝeue :
Luceſ þan kaifere.	Luces þan caifere.
þa iboȝen weoren alle :	
beorneſ to benche.	
þa wes hit al ſtille :	
þat wuneden inne halle.	
þer wes vnimete æie :	
mid mære þan kinge.	
ne durſte þer na mā ſpeken :	
leſte þe king hit wolde awreken.	
þa ſtod þer up Cador :	11 þo ſtod þar vp Cador :
þe eorl ſwiðe riche ær.	þat eorl was ſwiþe riche her.
and þaſ word ſæide :	and þeos word ſaide :
bifore þan riche kinge.	bi-vore þan kinge.
Ich þonkie mīe drihte :	Ich þonki mine drihte :
þat ſcop þeſ dæieſ lihte.	þat ſop þeſ daizes lihte.
þiſſeſ dæieſ ibiden :	þiſ daies a-bide :
þa to hirede iſ iboȝen.	
and þiſſere tidinge :	
þe icumen iſ to ure kīge.	20 þat icome hiſ to londe.
þat we ne þuruen na mare :	þat we ne þorhfe na mare :
aſwunden liggen here.	aſwonde ligge here.
For idelneſſe iſ luðer :	For yðilniſſe doþ harm :
on ælchere þeode.	in euereche londe.
for idelneſſe makeð mon :	yðilniſſe makeþ man :

commune, his wise counsellors, what answer 'he [they] would give to Luces the emperor. 'When all *the* nobles were come to bench (seated), then was it all still that dwelt in *the* hall; there was great awe with the mighty king; durst there no man speak, least the king would it punish.' Then stood there up Cador, 'the [who was] earl most rich here, and said these words before the 'rich' king: "I thank my Lord, who formed the daylight, to abide (have abode) this day, that is 'arrived to *the* folk, and this tiding that is' come to 'our king [land]; so that we need no more lie here inert! For idleness is 'evil [doth harm] in 'each [every] land; 'for'

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hif monſcipe leofe.

his manſipe leafe.

ȝdelneffe makeð cnihte ⁊

ȝdelniſſe makeþ cniht ⁊

for-leoſen hif iriht.

for-leaſe al his riht.

idelneffe græiðeð ⁊

ȝdilniſſe greiþeþ ⁊ [f.116.c.1.]

feole uuele craften.

fale luþer craftes.

idelneffe makeð leoſen ⁊

feole þuſend monnen.

þurh eðeliche¹ dede ⁊

þorh ȝdele deade ⁊

lute men wel ſpedeð.

lute man mai ſpede.

For ȝare we habbeoð ſtille ileien ⁊ For ȝare we habbeþ ſtille ileȝe ⁊

ure wurðſcipe iſ þa laſſe.

11 vre manſipe hiſ þe laſſe.

ah nu ic þokie² drihtne ⁊

ac nou ich þonkie drihte ⁊

þæ ſcop þaſ daȝeſ lihte.

þat ſop þaſ daiȝeſ-lihte.

þat Romaniſce leodē ⁊ [f.145.c.1.]

þat Romaniſſe folk ⁊

funden ſwa ræie.

ſo bolde beoþ i-worþe.

& heore beot makieð ⁊

and hire þret makieþ ⁊

to cumen to ure burhȝeſ.

to come to vre borewes.

ure king binden ⁊

oure king binde ⁊

and to Rome hine bringen.

and to Rome hine bringe.

Ah ȝiſ hit iſ ſoð þat men ſaið ⁊ 20 Ac ȝeſ hit hiſ ſop þat me ſeiþ ⁊

aſe ſegges hit telleð.

aſe þiſ wiſe telleþ.

þat Romaniſce leoden ⁊

þat Romaniſſe men ⁊

funden ſwa ræȝe.

ſo bald beoþ iworþe.

idleness maketh man lose his manhood; idleness maketh knight lose [all] his rights; idleness causeth many wicked crafts; 'idleness destroyeth many thousand men'; through idle deeds little 'men well-speed [man may speed]. For long we have lain still; our honor is the less! But now I thank *the* Lord, who formed the day-light, that *the* Romanish folk are [become] so 'fierce [bold], and make their threat to come to our burghs, our king to bind, and to Rome him bring. But if it is sooth that men say, as 'people it [the wise] tell, that *the* Romanish people [men]

¹ ideliche?² þonkie?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and funden swa balde :

and fwa balufulle.

þat heo wulleð nu liðen :

into ure londen.

we heom scullen ȝarekien :

ȝeomere spellef.

heore ræhscipe scal heom feoluen : hire baldfipe fal ȝam feolue :

to reoupe iwurðen.

For nauere ne lufede ich longe :

grið inne mine londe.

for þurh griðe we beoð ibundē :

and wel neh al a-fwūden.

þat iherde Walwain :

þe wes Ardures¹ mæi. [fwide² :

and wraððede hine wið Cador

þa þaf word kende.

and þuf andfwærede :

Walwain þe fele.

Cador þu ært a riche mon :

þine ræddes ne beoð³ noht idon. þeine reades ne buþ noht agon.for god⁴ if grið and god⁴ if frið :

þe freoliche þer haldeð wið.

þat hii come wolle :

in to oure londe.

we ȝam folle teche :

Bruttiffe speche.

to moche roupe teorne.

For neuere ne louede ich lange :

griþ in mine londe.

for þorh griþe we beoþ i-bunde :

and wel neh afwonde.

þis i-horde Waweyn :

þat was Arthures may.

and wreþþede hine wiþ Cador :

þat þes wordes faide.

and þus him answerede :

Waweyn þe feale.

Cador þou hart riche mā :

þeine reades ne buþ noht agon.

for godd⁵ his griþ and godd⁵ his

þat freoliche hit holdeþ wiþ. [friþ :

are [become] so 'fierce [bold], 'and are so bold, and so mischievous,' that they will 'now' come into our land, we shall 'prepare for [teach] them 'rueful [British] tales; their 'fierceness [boldness] shall turn to themselves to [much] sorrow. For never loved I long peace in my land; for through peace we are bound, and well nigh 'all' in swoon." 'That [This] heard Walwain, who was Arthurs relative, and angered him 'much' with Cador, who said these words; and thus answered [him] Walwain the good: "Cador, thou art a powerful man; thy counsels are not good; for good is peace and good is amity, whoso freely 'therewith [with it] holdeth, and God him-

¹ R. Ardures.² fwiðe?³ beoð?⁴ godd, *pr. m.*, but d erased.⁵ There appears a mark of expunction under one of the dd in each instance.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and godd fulf hit madeð :
 þurh hið godd-cunde.
 for grið makeð godne mon :
 gode workes wurchen.
 for alle monnen bið þa bet :
 þat lond bið þa murgre.

þa iherde Arður :

þat flit of þiffen eorlen.

and þuð spac þe riche :

wið razē hið folke. [c. 2.] 10

Sitte¹ adun fwiðe :mine cnihte² alle.

and ælc bi hið lifen :

luſte mine worden.

Al hit wes ſtille :

þat wunede inne halle.

þa ſpak þe king balde :

to riche hið folke.

Mine eorles mine beornes :

balde mine þeines. 20

mine duhti men :

mine freond deoren.

þurh eou ich habbe biwunnen :

vnder þere funnen.

and godd seolf hit madeð :

þorh hið god cunde.

þis ihorde Arthur :

[c. 2.]

þat ſtrif of þis cnihtes.

and þuð ſpac þe riche :

to bolde hið folk.

Sitteþ adun alle :

mine cnihtes ſwiþe.

and ech bi hið lifue :

luſte mine wordes.

Alle hit was ſtille :

þat wonede in þe halle.

þo ſpac þe king bolde :

to leoue hið folke.

Mine eorles mine beornes :

bolde mine cnihtes.

þorh ȝou ich habbe a wonne :

onder þare fonne.

self it made, through his divinity; 'for peace maketh a good man work good works, for all men are the better, and the land is the merrier.' " Then [This] heard Arthur, the dispute [strife] of these knights; and thus spake the mighty *man* 'with [to] his 'fierce [bold] folk: " Sit *ye* down quickly, my knights all, and each by his life listen my words!" All it was still that dwelt in [the] hall. Then spake the bold king to his 'noble [dear] folk: " My earls, my barons, my bold 'thanes [knights], 'my doughty men, my dear friends'; through you I have conquered under the sun, so that I

¹ Sitteþ?² cnihtes?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat ich æm fwiðe riche mon :'	þat ich ham richeft king :'
reh wið mine feonden.	þat wonieþ in londes.
gold ich habbe and gærfume :	
gumenen ich æm ælder.	
no biwan ich hit noht ane :	ne wan ich hit noht one :
ah dude we alle clæne.	ac dude 3e alle cleane.
To moni feohte ich habbe eou ilad :	To many fiht ich habbe 3ou ladde :
and æuere 3et weoren wel irad.	and euere 3e were wel i-rad.
swa þat feole kinelondeſ :	so þat fale cune lond :
ſtōdeð a mine honde.	10 ſtond in mine owe hond.
3e beoð gode cnihtes :	
ohte men and wihte.	
þat ich habbe iuonded :	
i wel feole londen.	
þa 3et hī ſpac Arður :	
aðeleſt kingen.	
Nu 3e habbeoð iherd :	Ac nou 3eo habbeþ ihord :
hæ3e mine þeines.	he3e mine kempes.
what Romaīſce men :	wat Romaniffe men :
redeð heom bi-twenē.	20 readeþ 3am bi-twine.
and wulc word heo ſendeð uſ here :	and wat word hii hider ſendeþ :
into ure londe.	into vre londe.
mid write & mid worde :	mid writ and mid worde :
wið grætere wræððe.	and mid grettere wreþþe.

am 'man most powerful, *and* fierce against my enemies [*the* most powerful king that dwelleth in land]; 'gold I have and treasure; of men I am ruler.' I won it not alone, but 'we [ye] did, all clean. To many *a* fight I have led you, and ever ye were well skilled, so that 'many kingdoms [lands of many kind] stand in my [own] hand. 'Ye are good knights, brave men and active; that I have proved in well many lands.'" The yet spake him Arthur, noblest of kings': "[But] now ye have heard, my noble 'thanes [champions], what *the* Romanish men counsel them between, and what words they send 'us' 'here [hither], into our land, with writ and with words, [and] with great wrath. Now we must bethink how we may with right defend

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Nu we mote bi-ðenchen :	Nou we mote bi-þenche :
hu we ure þeoden.	ou we oure þeode.
and ure muchele wurðſcipe :	and oure mochele worſipe :
mid rihte mazen biwitezen.	mid rihte mawe biȝete ¹ .
wið þiſ riche moncun :	wiþ þiſ riche moncun :
wið þaſ Rōm-leoden.	wiþ þiſ riche leode.
and andſware heom fenden :	and anſwere heom fende :
mid aðelen ure worden.	mid our wiſe wordes.
mid mucle wiſdome :	mid mochele wiſdome :
vre writ fenden to Rome.	oure writ fende to Rome.
& iwiten at þan kæiſere :	and iwite of þan caiſere : [c. 116 ^b . c. 1.]
for whan he uſ ofcunnen ² .	and of þan Romaniſſe heare.
for whan he uſ mid þrætte :	wi hii ouſ mid þrete :
& mid hokere igræteð.	and mid hokere greteþ.
Swiðe ſære me gromeð :	Swiþe fore me ſameþ :
& vninete ³ me ſcomeð.	and onimete me grameþ.
þat he atwit uſ ure luren :	þat hii atwiteþ ouſ oure lure :
þat we iſeoſ habbeoð forloren.	þat we ilore habbeþ.
Heo fuggeð þ̅ Juliuf Cefar hit bi-	Hii ſeggeþ þat Julius Cefar :
mid compe i fehten.	[won : hit awan mid fihte.
Mid ſtrengðe and mid fehte :	Mid ſtrengþe and mid fihte :
me deð feole vnrihte.	me deaþ fale onrihteſ.
for Cefar iſohte Bruttene :	ſo Cefar ſohte Bruttuſ :

our country and our great honor, against this powerful folk, against this 'Rome-people [powerful people], and send them answer with our 'good [wise] words; with much wisdom send our writ to Rome, and learn 'at [of] the emperor, 'for what *thing* he us hateth; for what *thing* he greets [and of the Romanish army, why they greet] us with threat and with scorn. Exceeding sorely *it* 'incenseth [shameth] me, and immoderately *it* 'shameth [incenseth], that 'he reproaches [they reproach] us our loss that we 'before' have lost (sustained). They say that Julius Cæsar won it (Britain) with 'combat in' fight. With strength and with fight men do

¹ bi-wite?² ofcunnen?³ R. vnimete.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid baldere strēgðe.	mid bolde his strengþe.
no mihte Bruttes wið him :	ne mihte Bruttus wiþ him :
heore lond werien.	hire lond werie.
ah mid streðe ¹ heo eoden an hond :	ac mid strengþe he ȝeode an hond :
and bitahten him al heore lond.	and bi-nam ȝam hire lond.
and þer after fone :	and hii þar after fone :
alle hif men bicomē.	al his men bi-come.
Sum ure cun heo hadden iflaȝen :	Somme oure cun he hadde iflaȝe :
and sum mid horfen to-draȝen.	and mani mid him awei idraȝe.
summe heo ladde ibunden :	10 ut of þiffen londen.
and þus ² lond biwunne :	and þus þis lond he awon :
mid unrihte and mid funnen.	mid onriht and mid funne.
& nu axeð mid icunde :	[c.2.] and nou axeþ þorh cunde :
gael of þiffen londe.	truage ³ of þis londe.
Al fwa we maȝen don :	Al fo we mawe don :
ȝef we hit don wulleð.	ȝef we hit wollep.
þurh rihte icunde :	þorh rihte cūde :
of Beline kīge.	of Belȝn þan kinge.
and of Brennen hif broðer :	20 and of Brenne his broþer :
þan duc of Burgunne.	duk of Borgoyne.
þeos weoren ure ældre :	þeos weren oure eoldre :

many wrongs; 'for [so] Cæsar sought 'Britain [*the* Britons] with [his] bold strength. *The* Britons might not against him defend their land, but with strength 'they [he] went in hand, and 'delivered him all [took from them] their land; and [they] thereafter soon all became his men. Some of our kin 'they [he] had slain, and 'some with horses drawn in pieces [many with him away *had* drawn]; 'some they led bound out of this land'; and thus this land [he] won with wrong and with sin, and now asketh 'by [through] right tribute of this land! All so we may do, if we it do 'will'; through right of Belin [the] king, and of Brenne, his brother, 'the' duke of Burgundy. These were our ancestors, of whom we are come; these belay

¹ strengðe?² þus þis?³ *A later hand has written gael in the margin.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þa we beoð of icumene.	þat we beoþ of icome.
þeof bilæie Rome :'	þes bi-leýe Rome :
and þa riche al biwunnen.	and þe riche a-wonne.
& biuoren Rome þere fstronge :	
heore ȝifles an-henge. [lond :	
and feoððen heo nomen al þat	and fupþe hii neme al þat lond :
and fetten hit an heore aȝere hond.	and fette hit in hire owe hond.
and þuſ we mid rihte ahten :	and þuſ hahte Rome :
Rome uſ biriden.	beon oure cunde.
Nu ich wulle leten Belin :'	10 Nou ich wolle bi-leue :'
and Brenne bilæuen.	[c. 2.] Belýn and Brenne.
and ſpekē of þan kaiſere :	and ſpeke of þan caýſere :
Coſtantin þan fstronge.	Conſtantýn þan fstronge.
he wes Helene fune :	he was Eleýnes ſone :
al of Brutten icume.	al of Bruttes icome.
he biwon Rome :	he bi-wan Rome :
and þa riche awelde.	and eke al þe riche.
Lete we nu of Coſtantin :	Leate we nou of Conſtantin :
þe Rome iwō al to him.	þat Rome wan al to him.
and ſpeken of Maximiaen :	20 and ſpeke we of Maximien :
þat waſ a ſwiðe ſtrog ¹ mon.	þat waſ a ſwiþe ſtrong man.
he wes king of Brutene :	he was king here :
he biwon France.	and he a-wan France.

Rome, and the realm 'all' conquered, 'and before Rome the strong their hostages up-hung'; and afterwards they took all the land, and set it in their own hand; and thus ought we with right to besiege Rome [Rome to be our right]. Now will I 'let remain [leave] Belin and Brenne, and speak of the caiser, Constantine the strong; he was Helens son, all of Britons come (descended); he won Rome, and 'possessed [eke all] the realm. Let (leave) we now of Constantine, who won Rome all to him, and speak [we] of Maximian, who was a man most strong; he was king 'of Britain [here, and] he conquered France. Maximian the strong he

¹ strong?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Maximien þe stronge :	Maximien þe stronge :
Rome he nom an honde.	Rome nam an honde.
and Alemaine he biwon eke :	and Alemaine he bi-won :
mid wūder muchele strengðe.	mid mochelere strengþe.
and al from Romaine :	and al fram Romaine :
into Normandie. [f. 146. c. 1.]	into Normandie.
And þeos weoren mine ælderen :	And alle þeos weren min eldre :
mine aððele uore-genglen.	of wan we beoþ i-spronge.
and ahten alle þa leoden :	and adde alle þe londes :
þa into Rome leien.	10 þat into Rome leie.
and þurh fwuche dome :	and þorh foche domes :
ich ahte to biȝeten Rome.	ich hahte ohni Rome.
Heo ȝirneð me an honde :	He ȝornt of mine lond :
gauel of mine londe.	truage to habbe.
al swa ic wille of Rome :	and so ich wolle of Rome :
ȝif ich ræd habbe.	ȝef ȝe me readeþ.
Ich wilnie a mine þōke :	Ich ¹ ȝeorne in mine þonke :
to walden al Rome.	to habbe al Rome.
and he wilneð me in Brutene :	and he wilneþ in þis lond :
to binde fwiðe uafte.	20 binde me fafte.
and flæn mine Bruttes :	slean mine Bruttes :
mid hiſ balu refes.	mid hiſ wiþer reafes.
Ah ȝif hit on mi drihtē :	Ac ȝef hit wole drihte :

took Rome in hand, and Alemaine (Germany) he won 'eke,' with 'wondrous' great strength, and all from Rome into Normandy. And [all] these were my ancestors, 'my noble progenitors [of whom we are descended]; and 'possessed [had] all the lands that unto Rome lay; and through such authority I ought to 'obtain [possess] Rome. 'They yearn of me in hand tribute of my land; all [He yearneth of my land tribute to have; and] so will I of Rome, if 'I have [ye me] counsel. I desire in my thoughts to 'possess [have] all Rome; and he desireth in 'Britain [this land] to bind me 'most' fast, 'and' slay my Britons, with his 'evil [hostile] attacks. But if 'my' Lord 'grant [will] it, who formed 'day and night [the day-

¹ R. Ich.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þe scop dæiȝes and nihtten.	þat fop þis daies lihte.
he fcal hiȝ balde ibeot :	he fal for his balneffe :
fære abuggen.	mochel harm habbe.
& hiȝ Rō-leoden :	and his Romleode :
þer fore fcullen reofen.	þar vore folle reofe.
and ic wulle ræh beon :	
þer he nu rixleð on.	
Wunieð nu ftille alle :	Sitteþ alle nou ftille : [c. 117. c. 1.]
ic wulle fuggen mine iwille.	ich wolle fegge mine wille.
ne fcal hit na man oðer idon :	ne fal no man oþer don :
ah hit fcal ftonden þer on.	alle hii folle ftonde þar on.
He wilneð al : and ich wilni al :	He wilneþ al and ich wilnȝ al :
þæt wit beiene aȝæð.	þat we beie oweþ.
habben hit nu and aȝe :	habbe hit nou and euere :
þe hit æð mæȝen iwīne.	wo fe hit maȝ a-winne.
for nu we fcullen cūne :	
wham hit godd unne.	
þuȝ fpac þe balde :	þuȝ fpac þe bolde :
þe Brutene hafde an onwalde.	þat Bruttes hadde in anwolde.
þat was Arður þat waȝ Arður ¹ þe	þat was Arthur þe king :
Bruttene deorling. [c. 2.] [king :	Bruttene deorling.
Setten hiȝ kēpen :	22 Sete his kempes :
and hiȝ quides luften.	and hiȝ ſpeche luſte.
sūme heo fæten ftille :	sonime hii ſeten ftille :
mucle ane ftunde.	 one ftūde.

light], he shall 'sorely pay for his bold threat [have mickle harm for his boldness], and his Rome-people shall therefore perish ; 'and I will be bold, wherein he now ruleth !' 'Dwell [Sit] *ye* now all still, I will say my will ; no man shall do 'it' otherwise, 'but it [all they] shall stand thereon. He desireth all, and I desire all that we both possess ; have it now and ever who[so] may it 'easier' win, 'for now we shall prove to whom God will grant it !' " Thus spake the bold *king*, that had 'Britain [*the* Britons] under *his* rule, that was Arthur the king, Britains darling ! His warriors sate, and to his 'words [speech] listened ; some they sate still, a great

¹ *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fumme heo muche runen :'	so... ..uning :
ræhten heom bitweonē.	 ne.
summe hit þuhte heom god :	somme h.. .. . ȝam god :
fumme hit mengden heore mod.	somm. ... meinde hire mod.
þa heo hafden longe :	þo hii hadde lāge :
i-luftned þan kinge.	i-luftned þan kinge.
þa spac Howel þe hende :	þo spac Howel :
hah mon of Brutene.	heh man of Britaine.
and hif quidef ræhte :	and þeos wordes faide :
bi-uoren raiē þan kinge.	10 bi-vore þan kinge.
Lauerd king hercne me :	.ouard king hercne me :
alfe ich ær dude þe.	 ear dude þe.
þu hafest ifæid word soðe :	þou ha..ft ifaid wordes :
felehðe þe beoð ȝifðe.	þat beoþ fwiþe soþe.
Hit wes ȝare iqueðen :	for hit was ȝare ifaid :
þat we nu sculleð cuðen.	þat nou we folle finde.
i þan iurn ȝere :	
þat nu if ifunden here.	
Sibeli hit fæide :	Sibily hit faide :
hire quidef weoren soðe.	20 hire wordes weren soþe.
and fette hit on bocke :	and fette hit in boke :
uolke to biſne.	folke to bȳfne.
þat þreo kes ¹ ſculden buȝen :	þat þreo kingef folde wende :
ut of Brutlonde.	vt of Brutlonde.
þa biwinnen ſculden Rome :	þat biwinne folde Rome :

while ; some they made much communing between them ; some it seemed to them good ; some it disturbed their mood. When they had long listened to the king, then spake Howel 'the fair,' noble man of Britanny, and said these words before the 'fierce' king : " Lord king, hearken to me, as I ere did to thee. Thou hast said 'sooth words [words that are most sooth],—'may fortune be given to thee !'—[For] it was of old said, what we now shall 'learn [find], 'in the years before what is now here found.' Sibeli it said ; her words were sooth ; and set it in book, for example to folk, that three kings should go out of Britain, who should conquer

¹ kinges ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiiii.

and al þa riche.	and alle þe riche.
and alle þa londes :	and alle þe londes :
þe rer ¹ to liggeð.	þat þar to liggeþ.
þe uorme wes Belin :	þe vorme was Belȳn :
þat wef a Bruttisc king.	þat was Bruttene king. [c.2.]
þe oðer wes Coſtantin :	þe oþer was Coſtantin :
þe king wef on Brutene.	þat Rome wan al to him.
þu ſcalt beon þe þridde :	þou ſalt beon þe þridde :
þe Rome ſcal habben.	þat Rome ſalt habbe.
And ȝif þu hit wult bi-ginnen :	ȝef þou þiſ wold bi-ginne :
þu hit ſcalt biwinnen.	þou hit ſalt awinne.
and ich wulle þer to helpe : ^[f.146^b. c.1.]	and ich wole þar to helpe :
mid haȝere ſtrenðe.	mid heȝere ſtrengþe.
ich wulle ouer ſæ ſende :	and ich wole ouer ſée ſende :
to ſelen mine þeinē.	to ſele mine cnihtes.
to balden mine Brutten :	
þa bet we ſcullen fuſen .	
Ich wulle haten alle :	and hote ȝam alle :
þa aðele of Bruttainne.	
bi leomen and bi heore liue :	20 bi hire cwiſe lifue.
ȝeond alle mine londe.	
þat heo beon ȝarewe ſone :	þat hii beo redi ſone :
mid þe uaren to Rome.	mid þe fare to Rome.
Mi lond ich wulle ſette :	Min lond ich wolle ſette :

Rome, and all the realm, and all the lands that thereto lie. The first was Belin, who was 'a British [Britains] king; the other was Constantine, who 'was king in Britain [won Rome all to him]; thou shalt be the third, that Rome shalt have. 'And' if thou 'wilt it [wouldst this] begin, thou shalt it win, and I will thereto help, with great strength; [and] I will send over sea, to my good 'thanes [knights], 'to my bold Britons,—the better we shall proceed;—'I will [and] command [them] all, 'the noble of Britain,' 'by *their* limbs and' by their [quick] lives, 'over all my lands,' that they be ready soon with thee to march to Rome. My land I will set 'in pledge

¹ R. þer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to wedde for feoluere.

and alle þe æhten of mine londe :

for feoluere and for golde.

and swawe scullen uaren to Rome :

& flan Luceſ þene kaifere.

& bi-tellen þine irihten :

i¹ þe lede ten þufend cnihtes.

þus Howel ſpilede :

hext of Brutaine.

þa þe Howel iſeid hafde :

þat him ſel þuhte.

þa ſpæc Angel þe king :

Scotlondes deorling.

and ſtod uppen ane boncke :

& beien hiſ broðeren.

þat waſ Lot and Vrien :

tweie ſwiðe aðele men.

þuſ Angel þe kig² ſeide :

to Arðure þan kene.

Læuerd³ Arður ich ſugge þe :

þurh ſoðe quides mine.

þat ilke þ̅ Howel haf⁵ iſpeken :

ne ſcal hit na man awreken.

for ſeoluer and for golde.

and ſo we ſolle to Rome fare :

and flean þane kaifere.

and for to bi-ȝeten þin rihtes :

ich leane þe ten þouſend cnihtes.

þuſ ſpac Howel :

heh man in londe.

þo Howel hadde i-ſaid :

wat him god þohte.

þo ſpac Angel þe king :

Scotlondes deorling.

and ſtop vp on benche :

and hiſ broþers beine.

þat waſ Loth and Vrien :

tweie ſwiþe bolde men.

20 Arthur þou ha⁴ wel iſaid :

ercne mine wordes.

þat ilke þat Howel haueþ iſpeke :

ne ſal hit no man a-wreke.

for silver, and all the possessions (*or* goods) of my land' for silver and for gold; and so we shall proceed to Rome, and slay 'Luces' the emperor; and [for to] win thy rights, I will 'lead [lend] to thee ten thousand knights.' Thus spake Howel, 'noblest of Britanny [noble man in *the* land]. When 'that' Howel had said what seemed good to him, then spake Angel the king, Scotlands darling, and 'stood [stept] upon 'a' bench, and both his brothers, that was, Loth and Urien, two most 'noble [bold] men. 'Thus said Angel the king to Arthur the keen: "Lord' Arthur, 'I say to thee through my sooth [thou hast well said; hearken my] words; the same that Howel hath spoken, no man shall it avoid, but we shall perform

¹ ich?² king?³ læuer, *pr. m.*⁴ haueſt?⁵ haſeð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ah we hit scullen ilæsten : [c.2.]	ac we hit folle ileaste :
bi ure quicke liuen.	bi oure cwike lifue.
And lauerd Arður þe hæhȝe :	And louerd Arthur þe heȝe :
luſt me ane ſtunde.	luſt me one wile.
cleope þe to ræde :	cleope þe to reade :
þine eorles riche.	þine eorles riche.
and alle þa hæxte :	and alle þe hexſte :
þa beoð in þine hirede.	þat beoþ in þine londe. [f.117 ^b .c.1.]
& bide heom þe fuggen :	and bide ȝam þe ſegge :
mid foðen heore worden. 10	mid foþe hire wordes.
whæt heo þe wulleð fulſte :	wat hii þe wollep helpe :
þine iuan to for-donne.	to winne þine rihte.
Ich þe leden wulle :	Ich þe leane wolle :
cnihtef of mire leode.	cnihtef of mine londe.
þreo þuſend kempen :	þreo þouſend kempes :
ohte alle icorene.	to fihte ſwiþe kene.
ten þuſend men a uote :	ten þouſend men a fote :
to uehte ſwiðe gode.	to fihte ſwiþe gode.
and fare we to Rome :	and wente ¹ to Rome :
and iwinnen þa riche. 20	and i-win þe riche.
ful ſwiðe uſ mæi ſcomien :	fol fore ous maȝ ſamie :
and ful ſwiðe uſ mæi gromien.	and wel fore gramie.
þat heo ſculle ſenden ſonden :	þat hii folle ſende ſonde :

it by our quick lives ! And, lord Arthur the noble, listen to me a while ; call to thee to counsel thy earls rich, and all the highest that are in thy 'folk [land], and bid them say to thee with their sooth words, *in* what they will help thee thy 'foes to destroy [rights to win]. I will 'lead [lend] to thee knights of my land, three thousand champions 'brave, all chosen [to fight most keen] ; ten thousand men on foot, to fight most good ; and go we to Rome, and conquer the realm. Full 'greatly [sorely] *it* may shame us, and 'full greatly [well sorely] '*it* may us' anger, that they should send messengers after tribute 'to [of] our land. But so help us *the* Lord

¹ wend we ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

after gauele to ure londe.	after gael ¹ of oure londe.
Ah swa uf helpe drihte :	Ac so ouf helpe drihte :
þæ scop þaf dazef lihte.	þat sop þis daiȝes lihte.
heo hit scullen abugge :	hii hit solle a-bugge :
mid heore bare liue.	mid hire bare rugge.
for þenne we habbeoð Rome :	for wane we habbeþ Rome :
and alle þa riche.	and alle þe riche.
we scullen nimen þa londes :	we folle nime þe londes :
þa þer to liggeð.	þat þar to liggeþ.
Peoile ² and Alemaine :	10 Pullȝe and Alemaine :
Lumbardie & Brutaine.	Lombardie and Brutayne.
France & Normandie :	France and Normandie :
þa hit hæhte Neuftrie.	þo hit hehte Neuftrie.
and swa we sculleð meðegie :	and so we folle temie :
heore mod vnimete ³ .	hire mod onimete.
þa þe kīg ifaid hafde :	þo he ifaid hadde :
þa andswarede alle.	þo answere ⁴ alle.
Iniðered wurðe þe ilke mon :	[f.147. c.1.] Aneþered worþe þe ilke man :
þe þer to nule helpen.	þat nele þar to helpe.
mid ahtē and mid wepnen :	20 mid wepne and mid hahte :
and mid alle hif imihten.	and mid al his mihte.
þa wes Arðures hired :	þo were Arthur his men :
sturneliche awraððed.	stranliche ⁵ iwreþþed.

that formed the day-light, they shall pay for it with their bare 'life [back] ! For when we have Rome, and all the realm, we shall seize the lands that thereto lie ; Poille (Apulia ?) and Alemaine, Lumbardy and Britanny, France and Normandy,—then it hight Neustrie,—and so we shall tame their immoderate mood (pride).” When the king had said (spoken), then answered all : “ Disgraced be that man that will not help thereto, with goods and with weapons, and with all his might ! ” Then was ‘Arthurs folk sternly [Arthur his men strongly] incensed ; knights were *so* enraged,

¹ *A second hand has written truage in the margin.*

² *At first written Peouile, but u erased.*

⁴ *answereðe ?*

³ *vnnimete pr. m.*

⁵ *strangliche ?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

cnihtes an burfte weorē :

þat alle heo gunnen biuiē.

þa Arður iherd hafde :

his hired iberen.

þa cleopien agō :

þe king wef abolȝen.

Sitteð adun stille :

cnihtes inne halle.

and ich eou wulle telle :

what ich don wulle. 10

Mine writen ich wulle maken :

þa wel beon idihte.

and fende þan kæifere :

mondef forȝe and muchel kare.

and ich wulle ful sone :

faren into Rome.

Nulle ich þider na gael bringe :

ah þane kaifer ich wulle binden. ac þane cayfer ich wulle binde.

and feoððen ich wullen hine an-
hon :

and al þat lond ich wulle uor-don.

and foruaren þa cnihtes alle : 21

þe aȝein me ftondeð i fehte.

Arður his writ nom an honden :

mid wiðer-fulle worden.

cnihtes a-borft weren :

þat al hi gonne buuie.

ÞO Arthur ihorde hadde :

his cnihtes bi-hefte.

þo cleopede he anon :

þe king was a-bolwe. [c. 2.]

Sitteþ adun alle :

cnihtes in halle.

and ich ȝou wolle telle :

wat ich don wolle.

Mine writes ich wolle makie :

and to Lucas fende.

þat ich wolle after sone :

come toward Rome.

Nolle ich non gael bringe :

and suppe ich wolle hine an-hon :

and al þat lond ich wolle fordon.

and for-faren alle þe cnihtes :

þat aȝeȝn me in

..... his writ in :

... wiþer-foll.

that all they gan to be agitated. When Arthur had heard *the* 'clamor [promises] of his 'folk [knights], then 'gan he call [called he anon],—the king was angry,—“ Sit *ye* down still, knights in hall, and I will you tell what I will do. My writs I will make, 'that shall be well indited,' and send to 'the emperor [Lucas] 'minds sorrow and mickle care'; 'and [that] I will 'full [after] soon 'fare into [come toward] Rome. I will not 'thither' any tribute bring, but the emperor I will bind, and afterwards I will him hang; and all the land I will destroy, and all the knights put to death, that stand against me in fight!” Arthur took his writ in hand, with hostile

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and þan beořen¹ hit bitahte : ... hit þan cnihtes
 þæ þa ærnde hafde ibrohte. þat þe earende brohte.
 and feoððe he lette heo scruden : and fupþe he lette ȝam scrude :
 mid ælchere pruden. mid allere prude.
 mid þan hæxte scrude :
 þa he hafde on bure.
 and hehte heō faren sone : [c.2.] and bad ȝam wende sone :
 to Lucas of Rome. to Lucas of Rome.
 and he cumen after wolde : and .e comen after wolde :
 fwa raðe fwa he mihte. 10 fo he mihte.

words, and delivered it to the 'men [knights], that 'had' brought the errand; and afterwards he caused them to be clothed with 'each [all] pomp, 'with the noblest garments that he had in bower,' and bade them fare soon to Lucas of Rome, and he would come after *them* as quickly as he might.

¹ beořen, *pr. m.*

END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY RICHARD AND JOHN E. TAYLOR,

RED LION COURT, FLEET STREET.



ERRATA IN VOL. II.

- p.* 18. *l.* 5. *for* truth *read* troth.
- 20. *l.* ult. *for* pe? *read* pa?
- 22. *l.* 8. *for* Lucius *read* Livius.
- 25. *l.* 7. *for* Gallus *read* 'Gallus [Livius].
- 27. *v.* 10849. *for* luuuede *read* luuede.
- *ib.* *l.* 5. *for* books *read* book.
- 28. *v.* 10862. *for* if *read* of.
- *ib.* *l.* 6. *for* his *read* 'Gloies [Gloi his].
- 49. *l.* 10. *for* came *read* came to.
- 69. *l.* 8. *for* sore *read* sorry.
- 72. *vv.* 11915. 11922. (*sec. t.*). *These lines should be transposed, as shown by the translation.*
- 101. *l.* 9. *them should be marked by superior commas.*
- 109. *l.* 4. *for* Britain *read* Bretagne or Britanny.
- 111. *v.* 12835. *for* wæpmōnef *read* wæpmōnef.
- 114. *v.* 12898. (*sec. t.*) *for* the *read* þe.
- 115. *l.* 9. *for* Then became he *read* When he became.
- 142. *l.* 7. *the before fire should be in brackets, and not in italics.*
- 155. *v.* 13854. (*sec. t.*) *for* gonde *read* goude.
- 158. *v.* 13926. (*sec. t.*) *for* þane þonre *read* þane Þonre.
- 159. *v.* 13952. (*sec. t.*) *for* wiþe *read* fwipe.
- 161. *l.* 8. *for* inn *read* inns.
- 164. *l.* 1. *for* no rrobbers *read* nor robbers.
- 165. *v.* 14099. (*sec. t.*) *for* deathe *read* deape.
- 167. *v.* 14137. *for* legge *read* ligge.
- *ib.* *l.* 8. *for* 'I [we thus] *are read* 'I am [we thus are].
- 171. *l.* 9. *for* events *read* event.
- 172. *l.* 8. *for* Hengist *it would read* Hengist 'it' would.
- 187. *l.* 5. *the superior comma should be before hate, instead of before but.*
- 189. *l.* 1. *insert word to after sent.*
- 193. *l.* 7. *for* this *read* his.
- 194. *l.* 6. *for* Vortiger *read* Hengest.
- 195. *l.* 8. *for* Louis *read* Lupus.

- p.* 229. *v.* 15599. (*sec. t.*) *for* [f. 72^b.] *read* [f. 73^b.]
 — 231. *v.* 15642. (*sec. t.*) *for* nonneric *read* nonnerie.
 — 232. *l.* 1. *insert* ` *before* with.
 — 235. *v.* 15751. *for* feolc *read* feole.
 — 236. *v.* 15755. *for* luste *read* luste.
 — 239. *l.* 6. *for* the *read* thy.
 — 240. *v.* 15853. (*sec. t.*) *for* fursite *read* furste.
 — 251. *v.* 16111. *for* herede *read* hirede, *and in the foot-note, for* hirede *read* herede.
 — 266. *v.* 16481. *for* the *read* þe.
 — 283–4. *vv.* 16885–7. 16903–4. (*sec. t.*) *The punctuation is faulty, and requires correction, as occasionally in some other passages.*
 — 296. *v.* 17196. *for* strēgðe *read* strēgðe.
 — 308. *l.* 9. *dele* merry, *and insert* good *before* folk, *in the next line.*
 — 315. *l.* 2. *dele* to *before* the king.
 — 317. *v.* 17672. (*sec. t.*) *for* þare *read* þane.
 — 320. *v.* 17750. (*sec. t.*) *dele* the hyphen in a-cnowe.
 — 330. *l.* 4. *dele* that *before* gan, *and insert* that *before* there.
 — 332. *v.* 18023. *for* Whar *read* whar.
 — 338. *l.* ult. *for* oer *read* oðer.
 — 343. *v.* 18283. (*sec. t.*) *for* gonnewende *read* gonne wende.
 — *ib.* *l.* 4. *insert* land *after* Humber.
 — 348. *v.* 18401. *for* talleð *read* tælleð.
 — 349. *v.* 18440. *for* aueremeste *read* auoremeste.
 — 351. *v.* 18477. *for* Lunde *read* Lundē.
 — 359. *l.* 5. *insert* and *before* over.
 — 368. *v.* 18886. *for* I scal *read* i scal.
 — 371. *v.* 18956. (*sec. t.*) *for* evereideal *read* euereideal.
 — *ib.* *l.* 1. *for* thy *before* people *read* the.
 — 385. *v.* 19267. *for* quikemonnen *read* quike monnen.
 — 393. *v.* 19468. *for* strengðe *read* strengðe.
 — 394. *l.* 2. *for* own *read* our.
 — 396. *v.* 19543. *for* hæfeuene *read* hæfenene.
 — 400. *l.* 2. *for* craft *read* crafts.
 — 403. *l.* 9. *for* sweneninge *read* sweueninge.
 — 406. *v.* 19763. *for* bi-nihte *read* bi nihte.
 — 409. *l.* 1. *for* the *before* worlds, *read* this.
 — 411. *v.* 19888. (*sec. t.*) *for* while *read* wile.
 — 413. *l.* 7. *for* gold *read* good.
 — 424. *l.* 4. *for* When *read* Then, *and in the next line substitute a full-stop after* York.
 — 427. *v.* 20282. (*sec. t.*) *for* the *read* þe.

- p.* 451. *v.* 20837. *for* for-uaren *read* for-uaren.
- 456. *v.* 20965. (*sec. t.*) *for* learedemen *read* learede men.
- 470. *v.* 21296. (*sec. t.*) *for* londe *read* loude.
- 498. *l.* 7. *great ought to be marked by superior commas.*
- 521. *v.* 22490. *for* ben *read* bin.
- 523. *l.* 7. *for* lieth *read* lie.
- 525. *v.* 22576. *for* bire *read* pine.
- 530. *l.* 6. *for* fiddleing *read* fiddling.
- 534. *v.* 22798. *for* bene *read* pine.
- 535. *v.* 22806. (*sec. t.*) *for* finat *read* finot.
- 543. *l.* 8. *the round bracket should be after* brave.
- 553. *v.* 23231. (*sec. t.*) *insert a hyphen in* of flaze.
- 560. *v.* 23385. *for* of *read* of.
- 578. *l.* 7. *instead of superior commas, square brackets should have been used.*
- 580. *v.* 23873. (*sec. t.*) *for* yllod *read* yllōd.
- 585. *l.* 10. *for* then *read* thence.
- 587. *l.* 24033. (*sec. t.*) *for* wit-fulle *read* wit-folle.
- 592. *v.* 24158. (*sec. t.*) *for* oweftiward *read* owe fteward.
- 603. *l.* 1. *insert the after* Kay.
- 614. *v.* 24666. (*sec. t.*) *for* londc *read* londe.
- 625. *v.* 24926. (*sec. t.*) *dele the hyphen in* daiʒef-lihte.
- 627. *vv.* 24960. 24981. (*sec. t.*) *read* god-cunde *and* a-wonne.
- 631. *l.* 9. *he should be marked by superior commas.*
- 635. *l.* 7. *for* noble *read* nobles.
- 640. *v.* 25267. *for* heo *read* heō.



Layamon,

Layamons Brut, or chronicle of Britain a poetical semi-Saxon paraphrase of
the Brut of Wace ; now first published from the Cottonian manuscripts in
the British Museum
Bd.: Vol.II

London 1847

P.o.angl. 199 k-2

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10747257-1